

# 2018 Project Manual

McDonald's US Restaurant Design  
Standard Building Program

NOVEMBER 2018



**SECTION 000110 - TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>SECTION TITLE</b>	<b>ISSUE DATE</b>
<b>DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS</b>		
000011	Project Manual .....	
000110	Table of Contents .....	
002100	Instructions to Bidders .....	
003132	Geotechnical Data .....	
004100	Bid Form .....	
007000	General Conditions .....	
008000	Supplementary Conditions .....	
<b>DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>		
011000	Summary .....	
011001	Glossary of Terms .....	
012300	Alternates .....	
012500	Substitution Procedures .....	
012600	Contract Modification Procedures .....	
012900	Payment Procedures .....	
013100	Project Management and Coordination .....	
013200	Construction Progress Documentation .....	
013233	Photographic Documentation .....	
013300	Submittal Procedures .....	
014000	Quality Requirements .....	
014200	References .....	
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls .....	
015639	Temporary Tree and Plant Protection .....	
015713	Erosion and Sedimentation Control .....	
015719	Temporary Environmental Controls .....	
016000	Product Requirements .....	
017300	Execution .....	
017329	Cutting and Patching .....	
017410	Progress Cleaning .....	
017430	Hazardous / Universal Waste Management and Disposal .....	
017700	Closeout Procedures .....	
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data .....	
017839	Project Record Documents .....	
017900	Demonstration and Training .....	
018113.02	Sustainable Design Requirements .....	
<b>DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS</b>		
024119	Selective Demolition .....	
<b>DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE</b>		
033000	Cast-In-Place Concrete .....	
035416	Hydraulic Cement Underlayment .....	
<b>DIVISION 04 - MASONRY</b>		
042000	Unit Masonry .....	
044313.13	Anchored Stone Masonry Veneer .....	
<b>DIVISION 05 - METALS</b>		
051200	Structural Steel Framing .....	
052100	Steel Joist Framing .....	
053100	Steel Decking .....	
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing .....	
055000	Metal Fabrications .....	
055213	Pipe and Tube Railings .....	
057000	Decorative Metal .....	

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

061053	Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry .....
061600	Sheathing .....
061733	Wood I-Joists .....
061753	Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses .....
061800	Glued-Laminated Construction .....
062023	Interior Finish Carpentry .....
066400	Plastic Paneling .....

**DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

071113	Bituminous Dampproofing .....
071416	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing .....
071900	Water Repellents .....
072100	Thermal Insulation .....
072419	Water-Drainage (EIFS) .....
072500	Weather Barriers .....
074113.16	Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels .....
074213.13	Formed Metal Wall Panels .....
074646	Fiber-Cement Siding .....
075423	Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing .....
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim .....
077100	Roof Specialties .....
077200	Roof Accessories .....
078100	Applied Fireproofing .....
078413	Penetration Firestopping .....
078446	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems .....
079200	Joint Sealants .....

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

081113.13	Standard Hollow Metal Doors and Frames .....
081416	Flush Wood Doors .....
083113	Access Doors and Frames .....
084113	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts .....
085659	Service Window Units .....
087100	Door Hardware .....
087113	Automatic Door Operators .....
088000	Glazing .....

**DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

092216	Non-Structural Metal Framing .....
092400	Portland Cement Plastering .....
092900	Gypsum Board .....
093000	Tiling Interior .....
093001	Tiling – Exterior .....
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings .....
096522	Rubber Recreational Flooring .....
097200	Wall Coverings .....
098433	Sound-Absorbing Wall Units .....
099100	Painting .....
099653	Elastomeric Coatings .....

**DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

101400	Signage .....
102113.15	Stainless-Steel Toilet Compartments .....
102600	Wall and Door Protection .....
102800	Toilet Accessories .....
107114	Fixed Aluminum Sun Screens .....

- DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT – Not Used**
- DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS – Not Used**
- DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – Not Used**
- DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT – Not Used**

**DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

210548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping Equipment.....
211313	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems .....

**DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing.....
220513	Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment.....
220516	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping.....
220519	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping .....
220523	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.....
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment .....
220548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.....
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.....
220700	Plumbing Insulation .....
221116	Domestic Water Piping .....
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping .....
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties .....
221413	Facility Storm Drainage Piping .....
221423	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties .....
223300	Electric Domestic Water Heaters .....
223400	Fuel-Fired Domestic Water Heaters .....
224000	Plumbing Fixtures .....

**DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

230500	Common Work Results for HVAC.....
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.....
230516	Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping.....
230523	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.....
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.....
230548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment.....
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.....
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.....
230700	HVAC Insulation .....
230900	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.....
231123	Facility Natural-Gas Piping .....
233113	Metal Ducts.....
233300	Air Duct Accessories.....
233423	HVAC Power Ventilators.....
233433	Air Curtains .....
233713	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles .....
233813	Commercial-Kitchen Hoods .....
234100	Particulate Air Filtration.....
237413	Packaged, Outdoor, Central Station Air-Handling Units.....

**DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

260500	Basic Electrical Requirements .....
260510	Basic Electrical Materials and Methods .....
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.....
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.....
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems.....
260548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.....
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems .....
260923	Lighting Control Device.....
262200	Low-Voltage Transformers.....
262413	Switchboards .....
262416	Panelboards.....
262726	Wiring Devices.....
262813	Fuses.....
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers .....
262913	Enclosed Controllers.....
265100	Interior Lighting .....
265600	Exterior Site Lighting.....

**DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS**

- 271300 Voice and Data Communication Cabling .....
- 271500 Control/Signal Transmission Media .....

**DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

- 283111 Fire Alarm System .....

**DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK**

- 311000 Site Clearing .....
- 312000 Earth Moving.....
- 312500 Erosion and Sediment Control .....
- 313116 Termite Control.....

**DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

- 321216 Asphalt Paving.....
- 321236 Asphalt Sealcoats .....
- 321313 Concrete Paving .....
- 321613 Concrete Curbs & Gutters.....
- 321713 Parking Bumpers .....
- 321723 Pavement Markings .....
- 329300 Plants.....

**DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES**

- 330513 Manholes & Structures.....
- 331116 Site Water Utility Distribution Piping.....
- 333100 Site Sanitary Utility Sewerage Piping.....

**END OF SECTION**

## DOCUMENT 002100 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Related Documents: Conditions of the Contract, Division 01 - General Requirements, and Drawings apply to Work of this Section.

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Bidding documents include the Advertisement for Bid, Instructions to Bidders, the bid forms, and the proposed Contract Documents including any Addenda issued prior to receipt of Bids.
- B. Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued prior to the execution of the Contract which modify or interpret the bidding documents, including Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarifications or corrections. Addenda will become part of the Contract Documents when the Construction Contract is executed.
- C. \_\_\_\_\_ will be hereafter referred to in this Project Manual as "Owner's Representative" and all correspondence shall be addressed to  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

- D. A Bid is a complete and properly signed proposal to do the Work for designated portion thereof for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.
- E. The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents as the base, to which work may be added or from which work may be deleted for sums stated in Alternate Bids.
- F. An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from the amount of the Base Bid in the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents or in the proposed Contract Documents.
- G. A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials or service as described in the Bidding Documents or in the proposed Contract Documents.
- H. A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid.
- I. A Sub-Bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials or labor for a portion of the Work.

### 1.3 TIME OF COMPLETION

- A. Time of completion of this Contract is of importance to the Owner and may be considered in the award of the Contract. Payments on the Contract shall be made as provided by the Contract.

### 1.4 EXAMINATION OF DOCUMENTS AND SITE

- A. Each Bidder, by making his Bid, represents that he has read and understands the Bidding Documents.
- B. Each Bidder, by making his Bid, represents that he has visited the site, performed investigations and verifications as he deems necessary, and familiarized himself with the local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and will be responsible for any and all errors in his proposal resulting from his failure to do so.
- C. The location and elevations of the various utilities and pipe work included within the scope of the work are offered as a general guide only, without guarantee as to accuracy. The Contractor shall verify and investigate to his own satisfaction the location and elevation of all utilities, pipe work, and the like and shall adequately inform himself of their relation to the work before submitting a proposal.
- D. Each Bidder by making his Bid represents that his Bid is based upon the materials, systems and equipment required by the Bidding Documents without exception.

### 1.5 BIDDING PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare Bids on forms provided by Architect and Owner and submitted in accordance with these Instructions to Bidders. The Architect and Owner will furnish Bidders with a Bid Form which will provide for the following Bid Items:
  1. A single contract price for each Bid Item as detailed and described in these Specifications.
  2. Acknowledgment of Addenda.
  3. Number of calendar days to complete project.
  4. Alternate Bids (if requested).
  5. Unit Prices (if requested).

- B. A Bid is invalid if it has not been deposited at the designated location prior to the time and date for receipt of bids indicated in the Advertisement for Bids, or prior to any extension thereof issued to the Bidders.
  - C. Unless otherwise provided in any supplement to these Instructions to Bidders, no bidder shall modify, withdraw or cancel his Bid or any part thereof for 60 days after the time designated for the receipt of Bids in the Advertisement for Bids.
  - D. Prior to the receipt of Bids, Addenda will be mailed or delivered to each person or firm recorded by the Architect and Owner as having received the Bidding Documents and will be available for inspection wherever the Bidding Documents are kept available for that purpose. Addenda issued after receipt of Bids will be mailed or delivered only to the selected Bidder.
  - E. Bids shall not contain any recapitulation of the Work to be done and no oral or telephone proposals or modifications will be considered.
  - F. Make no additional stipulations on the Bid Form nor limit or qualify Bid in any other manner. Bids so qualified will be subject to disqualification.
  - G. Only written instructions will be binding. The Architect and Owner will not be responsible for any oral, telegraphic or telephonic instructions.
  - H. Submit for approval by the Architect and Owner names of Subcontractors and material suppliers proposed to be employed before they are employed. Subcontractors and material suppliers must be known to perform work of a high standard in their respective trades. If the Architect has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity, and notifies the Bidder in writing of such objection, the Bidder shall provide an acceptable substitute person or entity in accordance with the General Conditions.
- 1.6 DISCREPANCIES AND AMBIGUITIES
- A. Each Bidder shall examine the Bidding Documents carefully and, not later than 10 days prior to the date for receipt of Bids, shall make written request to the Architect for interpretations or correction of any ambiguity, inconsistency or error therein which he may discover. Any interpretation or correction will be issued as an Addendum by the Architect. Only a written interpretation or correction by Addendum shall be binding. No Bidder shall rely upon any interpretation or correction given by any other method.
- 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS
- A. Each Bidder represents that his Bid is based upon the materials and equipment described in the Bidding Documents.
  - B. Product or material substitutions will only be considered by Owner and Architect/ Engineer after receipt of Bid. Bidders are to price the products and materials as specified and documented with the Bid Documents. Bidder shall provide line item pricing (cost or deduct) if any, as well as completed substitution request form for each proposed substitution submitted with their bid, for review by Owner and Architect/ Engineer. All requests for substitution must meet the requirements of section 012500, Substitution Procedures.
- 1.8 BASIS OF BID
- A. Include unit cost items and alternates shown on the Bid Form; failure to comply may be cause for rejection. No segregated Bids or assignments will be considered.
- 1.9 PREPARATION OF BID
- A. Submit Bid on forms furnished by Architect. Correctly fill in blank spaces on forms and state prices, written in words and in figures.
  - B. Where there is discrepancy between the price written in words and the price written in figures, the price written in words shall govern.
  - C. If Bid is submitted by an individual, his name must be signed by him or his duly authorized agency. If the Bid is submitted by a firm, association or partnership, the name and address of each member must be given, and the Bid must be signed by an official or duly authorized agent. Powers of attorney authorizing agents or others to sign Bids must be properly certified and must be in writing and submitted with the Bid.
- 1.10 FILING BID
- A. No Bid will be considered unless it is filed with the Owner within the time limit for receiving Bids as stated in the Advertisement.
- 1.11 MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BID
- A. Bid may not be modified after submittal. Bidders may withdraw at any time before opening, but may not resubmit them.
  - B. No Bid may be withdrawn or modified after the Bid opening except where the award of the Contract has been delayed beyond 60 days after date of Bid.

- C. If written confirmation of the modified or withdrawn bid received by telegram is not received within two days from the closing time, no consideration shall be given to the telegram.
- 1.12 OPENING BID
- A. The Bids submitted will be opened at the time stated in the Advertisement for Bids, privately opened, and shall thereafter remain on file with the Owner.
- 1.13 IRREGULAR BID
- A. Bids will not be considered if they show any omissions, alterations of form, additions, or conditions not requested, unauthorized alternate Bids or irregularities of any kind.
  - B. However, the Owner reserves the right to waive any irregularities and to make the award in the best interest of the Owner.
- 1.14 REJECTION OF BID
- A. The Bidder acknowledges the right of the Owner to reject any or all Bids and to waive any informality or irregularity in any Bid received.
  - B. In addition, the Bidder recognizes the right of the Owner to reject a Bid if the Bidder failed to furnish any required Bid security, or to submit the data required by the Bidding Documents, or if the Bid is any way incomplete or irregular.
- 1.15 SUBMISSION OF POST-BID INFORMATION
- A. The selected Bidder shall, within 7 calendar days thereafter submit the following:
    - 1. A statement of cost for each major item of Work included in the Bid.
    - 2. A designation of the Work to be performed by the Bidder with his own forces.
    - 3. List of anticipated subcontractors.
- 1.16 AWARD OF CONTRACT
- A. After Bids are opened, the Bids will be tabulated for comparison on the basis of the Bid prices and quantities shown in the Bids. The Owner reserves the right to withhold the award of the Contract for a period of 60 days from the date of opening Bids and no award will be made until the Owner is satisfied as to the responsibilities of the low Bidders. Until final award of the Contract, the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids or proceed to do the work otherwise in the best interest of the Owner.
  - B. Upon notification by Owner and prior to award of Contract, Contractor will provide Contractor's Qualifications Statement (AIA Document A 305), and insurance certificate within three (3) working days. Contractor will authorize Owner or Owner Representative to inquire, of any reference, with regard to Contractor's credentials and qualifications in performing the work.
- 1.17 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT
- A. The person or persons, partnership, company, firm, association or corporation to whom a contract is awarded shall within 10 days after such award, sign the necessary agreements entering into the required Contract with the Owner.
  - B. No contract shall be binding on the Owner until it has been executed by the Owner or his duly authorized representative, and delivered to the Contractor.
- 1.18 BID GUARANTY
- A. No Bid shall be considered unless it is accompanied by a certified check on any State or National Bank in Texas or acceptable Bid Bond, payable unconditionally to the Owner.
  - B. The certified check or Bid Bond shall be in the amount of not less than 5 percent of the total amount of the Bid.
  - C. The Bid guaranty is required by the Owner as evidence of good faith and as a guarantee that, if awarded the contract, the Bidder will execute the contract and furnish the required bonds within 10 days after the Bid is accepted. Said bonds shall further guarantee that if the Bid is withdrawn after the Bids have been opened or if the Contractor refuses to execute the contract in accordance with his Bid, the Contractor and the Surety shall become liable to the Owner for damages incurred.
  - D. If a Bidder's bond is used, the Surety thereon shall designate an agent resident in the local county, to whom requisite notices may be delivered and upon whom service of process may be had. If a Bidder's bond is used, an acceptable Surety shall be determined from the latest United States Treasury Department list of companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds.



- E. As soon as possible after prices have been tabulated for comparison of Bids, the Owner may, at the Owner's discretion, return the Bid guaranties accompanying the Bids, which in the Owner's judgment, would not be considered in the award; all other Bid guaranties will be retained by the Owner until the required contract and bonds have been executed, after which they will be returned. No Bid guaranties will be returned until at least 2 days have elapsed from time of opening Bids.
- 1.19 PERFORMANCE BOND AND LABOR AND MATERIAL PAYMENT BOND
- A. The Owner will not require Performance and Labor and Material Payment Bonds.

**END OF DOCUMENT 002100**

## **DOCUMENT 003132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA**

### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This document includes information pertaining to geotechnical data.

### **1.2 INVESTIGATION**

- A. An investigation of subsurface soil conditions at the building site was authorized by the Owner, and was subsequently performed by \_\_\_\_\_, Project No. \_\_\_\_\_, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

### **1.3 REPORT**

- A. The Geotechnical Investigation Report is for information only, and is not a warranty of subsurface conditions.
- B. The Report is made available for information only, and is not a Contract Document.
- C. The information contained in the Report represents design criteria, recommendations, and guidelines that were utilized as the basis of design for the engineering of the earthwork operations, paving design, and foundation design indicated in the Contract Documents. No changes in this design criteria will be considered or permitted without approval of the geotechnical professional of record. Where options are indicated, the options were considered by the respective design team members and implemented in the construction documents.

### **1.4 RESPONSIBILITY**

- A. Bidders are expected to examine the site and subsurface investigation reports and then decide for themselves the character of the materials to be encountered.
- B. The Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for variations in subsoil conditions, quality, or stability, or for the presence, level, and extent of underground water or items unbeknown to the Architect or Owner.
- C. The Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for Bidder's interpretation of data contained in the Report.

**END OF DOCUMENT 003132**

**DOCUMENT 004100 - BID FORM**

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_  
TO: \_\_\_\_\_  
RE: \_\_\_\_\_

Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the Instruction to Bidders, the undersigned has thoroughly examined the Bidding Documents and the Site, understands the work to be done, and hereby proposes to do all the work as provided in the Bidding Documents and subject to the observation and approval of the Owner and Architect, and binds themselves on acceptance of this bid by Owner for performing and completing the said work within the time stated and to furnish all required guarantees for the following prices:

**BASE BID**

For the construction of the additions to the \_\_\_\_\_ and including all labor, materials, services, and equipment necessary for the completion of the Work as indicated in the construction documents.

The Sum of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

**ALTERNATES**

Alternate No. 1: \_\_\_\_\_

The Sum of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

**UNIT PRICES**

Unit Price No. 1: \_\_\_\_\_

The Sum of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS

**EXTRA WORK FEES**

The undersigned agrees that for additional work added to the Contract and for extra costs resulting from changes in the work, the allowance for overhead and profit combined shall be in accordance with the following schedule, but in no case shall it exceed a maximum of 15 percent, (Overhead shall include payroll taxes and supervision):

**PART 1** - For the Contractor, for any work provided by his own forces: 10% of the cost. For the Contractor, for work produced by his subcontractors: 5% of the amount due the subcontractor.

**PART 2** - The General Contractor shall not be allowed to charge the Owner for "extended overhead" charges relating to change orders or weather delays.

**ADDENDA**

This will acknowledge receipt of the following addenda which are part of the Bidding Documents:

Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_

Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_

Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_

**OTHER CONDITIONS**

**PART 3** - The undersigned agrees to the following: Will furnish all labor and materials as shown and specified.

**PART 4** - Will substantially complete the base proposal work (and any alternates selected) by \_\_\_\_\_, including days lost to inclement weather.

**PART 5** - Will start work \_\_\_\_\_ days after notice of award of contract.

**PART 6** - Agrees that their Bid shall be good and may not be withdrawn for a period of 60 calendar days after the scheduled closing time for receiving bids.

**PART 7** - Understands that the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids and to waive any informalities in the Bidding, and to assign the Work to the Bidder who, in the opinion of the Owner, serves the Owner's best interest.

**PART 8** - Attests that the bid is submitted without collusion with any other bidder.

**BID ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

The undersigned affirms that they are duly authorized to execute this contract, that this company, corporation, firm, partnership, or individual has not prepared this bid in collusion with any other bidder, and that the contents of this bid as to prices, terms, or conditions of said bid have not been communicated by the undersigned nor by any employee or agent to any other person engaged in this type of business prior to the official opening of this bid.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor's authorized signature Date  
Firm Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Address \_\_\_\_\_  
City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone \_\_\_\_\_ Facsimile \_\_\_\_\_ Email \_\_\_\_\_

**END OF DOCUMENT 004100**

**DOCUMENT 007000 - GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1.1 GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction", AIA Document A201, Sixteenth Edition, 2007, Articles 1 through 15 inclusive, is a part of this Contract, and is available for review from the Architect. The General Conditions and all modifications listed hereinafter shall apply to all various subcontracts and sub-subcontractors.
- B. Refer to Document 008000 for Supplementary Conditions.

**END OF DOCUMENT 007000**

## **SECTION 008000 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**

### **1.1 SUPPLEMENTS**

- A. The following supplements modify, change, delete from or add to the "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction", AIA A201, Sixteenth Edition, 2007. Where any Article of the General Conditions is modified or any Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause thereof is modified or deleted by these supplements, the unaltered provision of the Article, Paragraph, Subparagraph or Clause shall remain in effect.

### **1.2 REFERENCE TO DIVISION 01**

- A. With regard to provisions of General Conditions related to project administrative or work-related requirements of the Contract, some of those paragraphs are modified or deleted from General Conditions, and are specified in Division 01, "General Requirements" of the Specifications.

## **ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS**

Add the following new paragraphs:

### **MISCELLANEOUS DEFINITIONS**

The term "Product" as used in these Contract includes materials, systems, and equipment.

The term "provide" as used in this Project Manual means to furnish and install.

### **CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT**

Add the following new subparagraphs:

The inter-relation of the Project Manual, the Drawings and the schedules is as follows: The Project Manual determines the quality, nature and setting of the several materials; the Drawings establish the quantities, dimensions and details; and the schedules give the location. They are to be considered as one and whatever is called for by any one shall be as binding as if called for by all.

Should the drawings disagree in themselves, or with the Project Manual, or if proprietary information disagrees with performance requirements in either the Drawings or the Project Manual, the better quality or greater quantity of the Work or materials shall be estimated upon, and unless otherwise ordered by the Architect in writing, shall be performed or furnished. Should discrepancies or doubt occur, do not proceed with the Work without clarification from the Architect. Contractor shall request clarification in sufficient time to avoid delays and increases in the contract sum.

## **ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACTOR**

### **REVIEW OF CONTRACT AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR**

Add following sentences to subparagraph 3.2.2:

If a dimensional discrepancy exists, Contractor shall take field measurements required for proper fabrication and installation of work. Upon commencement of any item of work, Contractor shall be responsible for dimensions related to such item of Work and shall make any corrections necessary to make work properly fit at no additional cost to Owner.

Before ordering any material or doing any work, Contractor shall verify dimensions and check conditions in order to assure himself that they properly reflect those on the Drawings. Any inconsistency shall be brought to attention of the Architect. In the event that discrepancies occur between ordered material and actual conditions, of which Architect was not notified beforehand, costs to correct such discrepancies shall be borne by Contractor.

### **SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES**

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

### **LABOR AND MATERIALS**

Add the following new paragraph:

After the Contract has been executed, the Owner and the Architect will consider a formal request for the substitution of products in place of those specified only under the conditions set forth in the General Requirements of the Specifications, Division 01. Refer to Division 01 for supplemental information.

#### WARRANTY

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### ALLOWANCES

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### SAMPLES AT THE SITE

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### USE OF SITE

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### CUTTING AND PATCHING

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

#### CLEANING UP

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

### ARTICLE 6 - CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

Add the following new paragraph

Coordinated construction work under this Contract includes, but not be limited to, providing concealed blocking as noted for attachment of separate contract items in locations necessary for the actual items to be installed. Providing proper dimensional coordination of separate contract supplied items for general construction work and trim that is to meet and/or adjoin Furniture, Fixtures, Equipment and Accessories.

It is a requirement of the Contractor's work schedule to provide the cooperation, coordination and exchange of information necessary for a timely execution of separate contract work.

### ARTICLE 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

#### GENERAL

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

Add the following new paragraphs:

Except as provided in this article, no oral statement, or direction of Architect or Owner shall be treated as a Change Order or entitle Contractor to an adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

Unit prices shall be inclusive of all costs including mark-up for overhead and profit and shall be applied to units of measure as defined in the Contract for each category of Work.

### ARTICLE 8 - TIME

#### DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

Add the following new paragraphs

Apart from extension of time, no payment or claim for damages shall be made to Contractor as compensation for damages for any ordinary delays or hindrances from any cause whatsoever in the progress of the Work, notwithstanding whether such delay be avoidable or unavoidable.

In order to claim an inclement weather delay day, Contractor must:

Address, in writing, that the weather on the particular day was of such nature (rain, wind, snow, ice, and subsequent resultant effects) that it significantly impacted its ability to make progress on critical path work items. Inclement weather delay days will not be granted for weekends or holidays unless Contractor can demonstrate that it had been and intended to work on these days.

Submit such delay claims on a weekly basis, not more than 7 days following the day of occurrence.

Summarize the number of days claimed for the entire month accompanying each month's application for payment.

## ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### SCHEDULE OF VALUES

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

### APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

Add the following new subparagraph:

Unless otherwise stated in the Owner-Contractor Agreement, the Owner will retain, until Final Payment, 10 percent of the amount due the Contractor on account of progress payments, payable 30 days after Substantial Completion and/or satisfactory evidence to the owner that all payments, bills, and claims have been paid.

Add following Sub-subparagraphs:

Monthly Applications for Payment shall include waivers of liens for all work included in previous months' application for payment. Waiver of Liens for subcontractors and materialmen shall be total amount paid prior to previous months' application for payment.

### DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION

Add following Sub-subparagraph 9.5.1.8 to Subparagraph 9.5. Failure to submit written plan indicating action by Contractor to regain time schedule for completion of Work within Contract Time.  
Failure to keep records current.

### SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

### FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT

Add the following new paragraph:

In addition to the items listed in 9.10.2, the Contractor shall deliver 4 sets of the following items to the Owner before final payment will be made:

1. Other close-out submittals as specified in Division 01.
2. Project records as specified in Division 01.
3. Operations and maintenance data as specified in Division 01.
4. All warranties as required on specific products or portions of the Work, in format outlined in Division 01.
5. Spare parts, overages, and maintenance materials as outlined in Division 01 and described in the various technical sections.
6. Certificates of occupancy.
7. Copies of all inspection tags from authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

## ARTICLE 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS

### CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE



Add the following new Sub-subparagraphs:

Liability insurance shall include all major divisions of coverage and be on a comprehensive basis including:

- .1 Premises Operations (including X-C-U).
- .2 Independent Contractor's Protective.
- .3 Products and Completed Operations.
- .4 Contractual including specified provisions for the Contractor's obligations under Paragraph 3.18.
- .5 Broad Form Property Damage including Completed Operations.
- .6 Personal Injury Liability with Employment Exclusion Deleted.
- .7 Owner's and Contractor's Protective.
- .8 Excess Umbrella.

Insurance certificate(s) shall specify Owner as the certificate holder and (except for Workers' Compensation) as an additional insured.

Add the following to the first sentence after the word "law":

"or as otherwise required by the Owner"

#### ARTICLE 13 - MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

##### TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

Supplement as provided in Division 01.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 011000 – SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS; DEFINED TERMS.
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
  - B. Capitalized terms which are not defined herein shall have the meaning ascribed to them in the glossary included as Section 011001 of this Project Manual.
- 1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- A. The Project consists of the renovation, remodeling, rebuilding or construction of a McDonald's Restaurant, including but not limited to, all site work, building and finishes.
    - 1. Owner: McDonald's USA, LLC, or any of its subsidiaries, is hereinafter referred to as "McDonald's," whose home corporate address is McDonald's USA, LLC, 110 N Carpenter St, Chicago, IL 60607
  - B. The Work will be performed under a single prime contract, with the exception of co-branded oil site locations.
  - C. Alternates: An Alternate is an amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain Work defined within the Bidding Requirements that may be either added to or deducted from the Base Bid amount if McDonald's elects to accept a corresponding change in either the amount of the construction to be completed, or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
    - 1. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate the Alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.
    - 2. Coordination: Modify or adjust the affected adjacent Work as necessary to completely integrate that Work into the Project.
      - a. Include, as part of each Alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not mentioned as part of the Alternate.
    - 3. Notification: Immediately following the award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each Alternate. Include whether Alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to Alternates.
    - 4. Execute accepted Alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
    - 5. McDonald's will have the option to choose any or all Alternates, in any order.
- 1.3 WORK FURNISHED AND INSTALLED UNDER OTHER CONTRACTS
- A. McDonald's reserves the right to do such work as they shall elect and to let other contracts in connection with the Work. Contractor shall afford other contractors full opportunity for the installation of equipment and storage of their material, and the execution of their work, and shall properly connect and coordinate the Work with theirs so that there will be no interference or delay in any matter with the work of McDonald's or of other contractors.
  - B. Signage Contract is awarded by McDonald's to an approved Signage Manufacturer. The cost of this contract will be borne by the Operator. Signage Manufacturer will select a local Signage Contractor who, after securing the signage permit, will receive and be responsible for the installation of the following:
    - 1. Signage final terminations to circuit wiring provided for under Electrical Sub-Contract.
    - 2. Standard Building Design: Roof Cap Element, Awning/Welcome Signs, Drive-Thru Pylons, Clearance Signs with Merchandiser, "Order Here" Canopy, and "Bollard Signs." Signs are to be installed on foundations provided by Contractor with anchor bolts, conduit and wire pulled from electrical distribution panel and located as per building plot plan.
    - 3. Contractor to construct foundations with anchor bolts as detailed on Drawings provided by the Signage Manufacturer for free-standing main road signage.
    - 4. Mount the road signage on the anchor bolts provided in the foundations and connect electrical service to the signage. Contractor shall provide necessary conduit and pull all wiring from building electrical distribution panel to signage location, providing a minimum of a three-foot "pigtail."
    - 5. "Entrance," "Exit," "Drive-Thru Display Board" and "Speaker Post" signage shall be installed on foundations provided by Contractor with anchor bolts, conduit and wire pulled from electrical distribution panel and located as per building plot plan.
    - 6. Install flagpoles on foundations provided by Contractor with anchor bolts supplied by Signage Manufacturer.

7. Install McDonald's wall logo signage.
  8. Install McDonald's roof signage on mounting brackets provided by Contractor.
  - C. Food Service Equipment, including refrigeration and beverage system contracts shall be awarded by McDonald's. Cost of these contracts will be borne by the Operator. This equipment shall be delivered for installation only at the authorization of the Area Construction Manager. Construction of building must be substantially completed by Contractor and written authorization must be issued by the Area Construction Manager to manufacturer of equipment prior to the equipment being moved into the building.
    1. Unloading and installation of the food service equipment items shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer(s).
    2. Contractor shall unload and store cooler/freezer and accessories upon equipment arrival to jobsite.
  - D. Seating and Décor Contract shall be awarded separately by McDonald's. Contractor shall coordinate its work and leave conditions and surfaces ready to receive such items to be installed by Seating and Décor Contractor.
  - E. Cooperate fully with separate contractors to insure work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under the Contract. Coordinate the Work of the Contract with work performed under separate contracts.
- 1.4 USE OF PREMISES
- A. General: Contractor shall have full use of premises for construction operations, including use of Project site, during construction period. Contractor's use of premises is limited by applicable laws, such rules and regulations for the conduct of the Work as McDonald's may establish and McDonald's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
  - B. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to work in areas indicated on Drawings or as indicated in writing by the Area Construction Manager.
    1. Limits: Confine construction operations to contract limits indicated on Drawings or as otherwise identified in writing by the Area Construction Manager.
    2. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to McDonald's, McDonald's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Before starting the Work, Contractor shall ascertain from the Area Construction Manager what entrances, routes or roadways shall be used for access to the Work, and use only those designated for movement of personnel, materials and vehicles to and from the Project site. Close coordination will be required of Contractor with McDonald's, other contractors and others having an interest in the Project to assure that work on the Project site, access to and from the Project site and the general conduct of operations is maintained in a safe and efficient manner, and that disruption and inconvenience to existing streets and property is minimized. Contractor is responsible to review the site and be familiar with all existing conditions within and around the Project site including local conditions and requirements.
    3. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
  - C. Contractor shall confine its apparatus, storage of materials, and the operation of its work-force to limits indicated by Drawings, the written instructions of the Area Construction Manager and law, ordinances, permits, and shall not encumber the premises with its materials outside of these limits.
  - D. Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the building structure to be loaded with a weight that will endanger its safety or compromise its integrity.
  - E. All materials on the premises shall be so stored and handled to preclude the inclusion of any foreign material in the Work, and to prevent damage from exposure to weather or ground.
  - F. Construction personnel shall be allowed to park vehicles within the jobsite construction limits subject to Contractor's restrictions imposed to comply with safety requirements and to avoid interference with progress of the Work.
- 1.5 MCDONALD'S OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS
- A. McDonald's may, prior to the completion of the Work, store goods and otherwise occupy any portion thereof, which has been deemed structurally safe to occupy, and said occupancy will not substantially interfere with, increase the cost of, nor delay the Work.
    1. No such occupation or use shall take place until Contractor has given its written authorization setting forth the portions of the facility available for use and conditions of such occupancy have been agreed upon between Contractor and the Area Construction Manager
    2. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from McDonald's and authorities having jurisdiction over the Work.
  - B. Occupancy Permit: Contractor shall obtain an occupancy permit and deliver same to Area Construction Manager at the completion of the Work.

1. Obtain and submit all pertinent operating certificates, final inspection/test reports/certificates, and similar releases that enable McDonald's full and unrestricted use of the Work and full access to all services and utilities.
2. Make final change-over of locks and transmit keys to McDonald's.

#### 1.6 SCOPE OF WORK - OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for acceptance of McDonald's furnished products, including unloading, storage, handling, and installation in compliance with all local codes, ordinances, and normal guarantees. This work shall include the provision of any support system as required to receive McDonald's equipment and mechanical and electrical connections for the following:
1. Ventilating fan units and related materials.
  2. Counter-top, supplied and installed by Kitchen Equipment Supplier (KES). If counter top is supplied by a source other than KES, Contractor shall be responsible for installation, including any accessories and supports.
  3. Heating and air conditioning equipment and related materials/accessories.
  4. Freezer/cooler, supplied and installed by KES
  5. Power/control outlet boxes
  6. Furnish and install roof-mounted equipment and refrigeration compressor pad where indicated on Drawings.
- B. McDonald's Furnished Products Installed by McDonald's: The items listed below shall be furnished and installed by McDonald's. Contractor shall be responsible for receiving, unloading, storage, and security items on the premises until McDonald's is ready to install said items.
1. Kitchen equipment
  2. Soda system
  3. Refrigeration
  4. Seating and décor
  5. Play place equipment
- C. McDonald's shall be responsible for the following in connection with products furnished by McDonald's:
1. Arrangement for and delivery of all necessary shop drawings, product data, templates, and samples to Contractor. Contractor shall review shop drawings, product data, and product samples and return Area Construction Manager with any notations regarding any anticipated discrepancies or problems associated with the use of the product and application.
  2. Expenses relating to the delivery of McDonald's-furnished items in accordance with the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  3. Following delivery, Area Construction Manager shall inspect McDonald's-furnished items for any damages.
  4. If McDonald's-furnished items are damaged, defective, or missing, the Operator/ Franchisee shall arrange for replacement.
  5. Arranging for any required manufacturer's field services and for the delivery of manufacturer's warranties to the appropriate contractor responsible for installation.
  6. Coordinate delivery dates of all McDonald's-furnished items with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  7. Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of any McDonald's-furnished items from damage, including damage from exposure to the elements. Contractor shall repair or replace items damaged as a result of its operations.

#### 1.7 APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT

- A. Contractor shall review and must comply with McDonald's payment procedures and requirements. Contractor shall review with local McDonald's Regional Construction Department of jurisdiction prior to commencement of construction activities.

#### 1.8 MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor shall review and must comply with McDonald's contract modification procedures. Contract shall review with local McDonald's Regional Construction Department of jurisdiction prior to the commencement of construction activities.

#### 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. Contractor shall review progress and coordination meeting requirements and related procedures with the local McDonald's Regional Construction Department of jurisdiction prior to the commencement of construction activities.

- 1.10 SUBMITTALS
- A. Must be submitted to the architect of record, McDonald's Area Construction Manager
- 1.11 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS
- A. Contractor shall review and must comply with McDonald's substitution policy and procedure requirements. Contractor shall review with the local McDonald's Regional Construction Department and US Restaurant Design when applicable, prior to commencement of construction activities.
- 1.12 CONTRACT CLOSEOUT
- A. Contractor shall review and must comply with McDonald's contract closeout procedure requirements. Contractor shall review with the local McDonald's Regional Construction Department of jurisdiction prior to the commencement of construction activities.
- 1.13 SPECIFICATION FORMATS AND CONVENTIONS
- A. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using the 50-division format and CSI/CSC's "MasterFormat - 2004" numbering system.
1. Section Identification: The Specifications use Section numbers and titles to help cross-referencing in the Contract Documents. Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete because all available Section numbers are not used. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of Sections in the Contract Documents.
- B. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated, shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural, and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.
2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor. Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by others when so noted.
- a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS – Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION – Not Used**

**END OF SECTION 011000**

## SECTION 011001 - GLOSSARY OF TERMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract for Construction, including General Conditions and other sections including Divisions 01 " 28 Specification Sections provided as a part of this Project Manual.

#### 1.2 Terms Used:

- A. Terms used below are used and or referred to throughout the Contract Documents and are provided to give definition to terms used.
1. Owner: McDonalds USA, LLC, or any of its subsidiaries, is hereinafter referred to as McDonalds, with a corporate address of McDonalds USA, LLC, 110 N Carpenter St, Chicago, IL 60607
  2. Area Construction Manager: McDonalds project representative responsible for administration of the contract for construction between McDonalds and the Contractor.
  3. Contractor: The person or entity who has a contract with the Owner and has overall responsibility for coordination and execution of Work, including the day-to-day oversight of the construction site, management of vendors and trades, and communication of information to involved parties throughout the course of the Project.
  4. Subcontractor: a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor for performance of a portion of the Work. .
  5. Bid Form: Form for submission of bid(s) from proposing general contractors to McDonalds
  6. Project: Construction of new restaurant or remodel of existing restaurant as described in the Contract Documents located at the project address provided in the Contract Documents.
  7. Bidding Requirements: Requirements for submittal of bids for the Project as described in the Contract Documents.
  8. Base Bid: The Contractors proposed cost for all Work included in the Contract Documents, including overhead & profit, but not including proposed add or deduct alternates.
  9. Change Order or Field Work Authorization means a written directive, issued by an authorized representative of McDonalds pursuant to which the Contractor shall implement a change to the Work.
  10. Contract Documents: The Contract between the Owner and Contractor, Drawings, Specifications, the Project Manual, Addenda issued prior to the execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Contract and modifications which describe the scope of the Work.
  11. Contract Sum is the amount to be paid to the Contractor by McDonalds in connection with its performance of the Work on a Project.
  12. Drawings means the graphic and pictorial documents showing design, location and dimensions and generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.
  13. Owner/Operator or Franchisee: The McDonalds franchisee/lessee of the restaurant facility that will own and operate the facility upon completion of the Work.
  14. Signage Manufacturer: Manufacturer responsible for the fabrication and delivery of building and site signage for the Project.
  15. Signage Installer: Subcontractor/vendor responsible for receipt and installation of building and site signage for the Project.
  16. Seating & Décor Contractor: Subcontractor/vendor responsible for fabrication, delivery and installation of building décor and seating as applicable.
  17. Specifications are the written requirements for materials, equipment, construction systems, standards and workmanship and performance of related services.
  18. Kitchen Equipment Supplier: Subcontractor/vendor responsible for fabrication, delivery and installation of kitchen equipment as applicable.
  19. McDonalds Regional Construction Department: McDonalds Regional department responsible for administration of construction within a specified region.
  20. U.S. Restaurant Design: McDonalds Home Office department that translates the standards to be incorporated into the corporate prototype and Project Manual.
  21. U.S. Restaurant Development: McDonalds Home Office department that defines the restaurant development plan in the United States.
  22. Work means the tasks, collectively, which Contractor is engaged by McDonalds to perform, pursuant to and as described in the Contract Documents.

**END OF SECTION 011001**

## **SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 012300**

## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
    - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
    - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
    - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
    - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES or other agency approved by local authority.
    - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
    - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
    - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
    - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.



3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
  - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided per Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
    - c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
    - i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after commencement of the Work. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
  1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
    - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
    - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - d. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided per Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
    - e. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - f. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - g. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - h. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - i. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - j. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

- k. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 012500**

## SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- 1.4 Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

#### 1.5 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use CSI Form 13.6D, "Proposal Worksheet Summary," and Form 13.6C, "Proposal Worksheet Detail" or other forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to .
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.6A, "Change Order Request (Proposal)," with attachments CSI Form 13.6D, "Proposal Worksheet Summary," and Form 13.6C, "Proposal Worksheet Detail" or other form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701 or other form acceptable to Architect.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 012600**

## SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
    - b. Submittal schedule.
    - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
    - b. Description of the Work.
    - c. Name of subcontractor.
    - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
    - e. Name of supplier.
    - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
    - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
      - 1) Labor.
      - 2) Materials.
      - 3) Equipment.
  - 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
    - a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Sustainability documentation and other Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
  - 5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
  - 6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

- a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
- 7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
- 8. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
- 9. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  - 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.

- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's liens from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms, acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  5. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  7. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  8. Copies of building permits.
  9. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  10. Initial progress report.
  11. Report of preconstruction conference.
  12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  13. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 012900**

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. General coordination procedures.
  2. Coordination drawings.
  3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
  4. Project Web site.
  5. Project meetings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, on Project Web site, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

#### 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
- C. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.



1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
  - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
  - b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
  1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
  9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
  1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using Portable Data File (PDF) format.
  3. BIM File Incorporation: coordination drawing files into Building Information Model established for Project.

- a. three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.
- 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
  - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
  - b. Digital Data Software Program: Refer to Section 011000 "Summary" for digital data software program.
  - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
  - 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
  - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Project number.
  - 3. Date.
  - 4. Name of Contractor.
  - 5. Name of Architect.
  - 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  - 7. RFI subject.
  - 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  - 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  - 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  - 12. Contractor's signature.
  - 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  - 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Software log with not less than the following:

1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- 1.8 PROJECT WEB SITE
- A. Use Architect's Project Web site for purposes of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion. Project Web site shall include the following functions:
1. Project directory.
  2. Project correspondence.
  3. Meeting minutes.
  4. Contract modifications forms and logs.
  5. RFI forms and logs.
- 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS
- A. General: meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Tentative construction schedule.
    - b. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
    - c. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - d. Lines of communications.
    - e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - f. Procedures for RFIs.
    - g. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - j. Submittal procedures.
    - k. Preparation of record documents.
    - l. Use of the premises.
    - m. Work restrictions.
    - n. Working hours.
    - o. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - p. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - q. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - r. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - s. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - t. Parking availability.
    - u. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - v. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - w. First aid.
    - x. Security.

- y. Progress cleaning.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
  - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Review of mockups.
    - i. Possible conflicts.
    - j. Compatibility requirements.
    - k. Time schedules.
    - l. Weather limitations.
    - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - n. Warranty requirements.
    - o. Compatibility of materials.
    - p. Acceptability of substrates.
    - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - r. Space and access limitations.
    - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - u. Installation procedures.
    - v. Coordination with other work.
    - w. Required performance results.
    - x. Protection of adjacent work.
    - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of record documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Submittal of written warranties.
    - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - i. Submittal procedures.
    - j. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.



## SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  1. Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Daily construction reports.
  3. Material location reports.
  4. Site condition reports.
  5. Special reports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
  2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
  2. PDF electronic file.
- B. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- C. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- D. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- E. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- F. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- G. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.

2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
3. Discuss constraints, including phasing work stages.
4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of final completion.
  1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  2. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  3. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  4. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.
    - d. Mockups.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Sample testing.
    - g. Deliveries.
    - h. Installation.
    - i. Tests and inspections.
    - j. Adjusting.
    - k. Curing.

- l. Building flush-out.
      - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
    - 5. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
      - a. Structural completion.
      - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
      - c. Permanent space enclosure.
      - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
      - e. Completion of electrical installation.
      - f. Substantial Completion.
  - D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion, and the following interim milestones:
    - 1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
    - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
  - F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
    - 1. Unresolved issues.
    - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
    - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
    - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
    - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
  - G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
  - H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- 2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)
- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
  - B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
  - C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
    - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for commencement of the Work.
      - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
    - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
    - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
    - 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
  - D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
    - 1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
      - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
      - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
      - c. Purchase of materials.
      - d. Delivery.
      - e. Fabrication.
      - f. Utility interruptions.
      - g. Installation.



- h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    - i. Testing.
    - j. Punch list and final completion.
    - k. Activities occurring following final completion.
  - 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
  - 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
  - 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
    - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
  - 5. Cost- and Resource-Loading of CPM Schedule: Assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Do not assign costs to submittal activities. Obtain Architect's approval prior to assigning costs to fabrication and delivery activities. Assign costs under main subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project record documents, and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
    - a. Each activity cost shall reflect an appropriate value subject to approval by Architect.
    - b. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.
  - E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
  - F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
    - 1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
    - 2. Description of activity.
    - 3. Main events of activity.
    - 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
    - 5. Early and late start dates.
    - 6. Early and late finish dates.
    - 7. Activity duration in workdays.
    - 8. Total float or slack time.
    - 9. Average size of workforce.
    - 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
  - G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
    - 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
    - 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
    - 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
    - 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
    - 5. Changes in the critical path.
    - 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
    - 7. Changes in the Contract Time.
  - H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
    - 1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
    - 2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
    - 3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
    - 4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
      - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
- 2.3 REPORTS
- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
    - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
    - 2. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
    - 3. Equipment at Project site.
    - 4. Material deliveries.
    - 5. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.

6. Accidents.
  7. Meetings and significant decisions.
  8. Unusual events (see special reports).
  9. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  10. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  11. Emergency procedures.
  12. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  13. Change Orders received and implemented.
  14. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
  15. Services connected and disconnected.
  16. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  17. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- 2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS
- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE
- A. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.
1. In-House Option: Owner may waive the requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
  2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

**END OF SECTION 013200**

## **SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  1. Preconstruction photographs.
  2. Periodic construction photographs.
  3. Final completion construction photographs.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
  2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
  3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date photograph was taken.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

#### **1.4 USAGE RIGHTS**

- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA**

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
  1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
  1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
  2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
  1. Flag before taking construction photographs.
  2. Take photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.

3. Take photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs monthly, coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Photographs: Take photographs as indicated, to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
1. Frequency: Take photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment.
  2. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by and Contractor, photographer to select vantage points. During each of the following construction phases, take not less than of the required shots from same vantage point each time to create a time-lapse sequence as follows:
    - a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
    - b. Above-grade structural framing.
    - c. Exterior building enclosure.
    - d. Interior Work, through date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
1. Do not include date stamp.

**END OF SECTION 013233**

## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
  1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings and Project record drawings.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
    - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in software program noted in Section 011000 "Summary."
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
    - d. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
      - 1) Floor plans.
      - 2) Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).
  3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
    - f. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - g. Category and type of submittal.
    - h. Submittal purpose and description.
    - i. Specification Section number and title.

- j. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
  - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  - m. Related physical samples submitted directly.
  - n. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  - o. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
  - p. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
  - q. Other necessary identification.
  - r. Remarks.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Architect's Info Exchange Folder (Newforma) specifically established for Project.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
  - 2. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
  - 3. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
  - 4. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
    - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
- 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.

- f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - h. Availability and delivery time information.
4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
  3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
  4. BIM File Incorporation: Shop Drawing files into Building Information Model established for Project.
    - a. Prepare Shop Drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Drawings.
    - b. Refer to Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for coordination drawings.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.



6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
  5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
- I. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- J. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- K. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- L. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- M. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- N. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- O. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- P. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- T. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  1. Name of evaluation organization.
  2. Date of evaluation.
  3. Time period when report is in effect.
  4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  5. Description of product.
  6. Test procedures and results.
  7. Limitations of use.
- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- W. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- X. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.
- C. BIM File Incorporation: Incorporate delegated-design drawing and data files into Building Information Model established for Project.
  1. Prepare delegated-design drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- B. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- C. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- D. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**END OF SECTION 013300**

## SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
  - 1. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
  - 2. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data : For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of commencement of construction, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
  - F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
    - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
  - G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
    - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
    - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
  - H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
  - I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
  - J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
    - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
      - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
      - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
      - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
      - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
      - e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
    - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
    - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
    - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
    - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
    - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
      - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
    - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
    - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
  - L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup . Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.
- 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
    - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
    - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.

- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.



1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 014000**

## **SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### **1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS**

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### **1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 014200**

## SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract between General Contractor and Owner, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- 1.3 USE CHARGES
  - A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
  - C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
  - D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
  - B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
  - D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
    - 1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
    - 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
    - 3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  - E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
    - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
    - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
    - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
    - 4. Waste handling procedures.
    - 5. Other dust-control measures.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
  - B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
  - C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts.
- B. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.
- C. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - 3. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  - 4. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures".
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
  - D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
  - E. Heating: Provide temporary heating required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
    - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
  - G. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
    - 1. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner. Coordinate with local power company.
  - H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
    - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
    - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
  - I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
    - 1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
      - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine in each field office.
      - b. Provide one telephone line(s) for Owner's use.
    - 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
      - a. Police and fire departments.
      - b. Ambulance service.
      - c. Contractor's home office.
      - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
      - e. Architect's office.
      - f. Engineers' offices.
      - g. Owner's office.
      - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
    - 3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
  - J. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
    - 1. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, and faxing, or separate units for each of these three functions.
    - 2. Internet Service: Wireless, broadband modem, router and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 384 Kbps upload and 1 Mbps download speeds at each computer.
- 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION
- A. General: Comply with the following:
    - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
    - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
  - B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated on Drawings.
    - 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
  - 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  - 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- F. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - 3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

#### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to .
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.

- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- J. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- K. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.
  - 2. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  - 3. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  - 4. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  - 5. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - 6. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- L. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
  - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  - 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  - 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  - 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  - 5. Do not install material that is wet.
  - 6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  - 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
  - 1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  - 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.

- b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
- c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

**END OF SECTION 015000**



## SECTION 015639 - TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape or the average of the smallest and largest diameters at 6 inches above the ground for trees up to, and including, 4-inch size; and 12 inches above the ground for trees larger than 4-inch size.
- B. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- C. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Organic Mulch: 1-pint volume of organic mulch; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch.
  - 2. Protection-Zone Fencing: Assembled Samples of manufacturer's standard size made from full-size components.
  - 3. Protection-Zone Signage: Full-size Samples of each size and text, ready for installation.
- C. Tree Pruning Schedule: Written schedule detailing scope and extent of pruning of trees to remain that interfere with or are affected by construction.
  - 1. Species and size of tree.
  - 2. Location on site plan. Include unique identifier for each.
  - 3. Reason for pruning.
  - 4. Description of pruning to be performed.
  - 5. Description of maintenance following pruning.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified arborist and tree service firm.
- B. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.
- C. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings indicated to remain, which establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by construction activities.
  - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video.
  - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Arborist Qualifications: .
- B. Tree Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree and plant protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to temporary tree and plant protection including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, personnel, and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Enforcing requirements for protection zones.

- c. Arborist's responsibilities.
- d. Field quality control.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - 3. Foot traffic.
  - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - 5. Impoundment of water.
  - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust toward protection zones.
- C. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones and organic mulch.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated top layer of the soil profile or manufactured topsoil; containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 1 inch in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, and toxic and other nonsoil materials.
  - 1. Obtain topsoil only from well-drained sites where topsoil is 4 inches deep or more; do not obtain from bogs or marshes.
- B. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing for trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
  - 1. Type: Shredded hardwood.
  - 2. Size Range: 3 inches maximum, 1/2 inch minimum.
  - 3. Color: Natural.
- C. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting the following requirements. Previously used materials may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Chain-Link Protection-Zone Fencing: Galvanized-steel fencing fabricated from minimum 2-inch opening, 0.148-inch- diameter wire chain-link fabric; with pipe posts, minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts, and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts; with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails and 0.177-inch- diameter bottom tension wire; with tie wires, hog ring ties, and other accessories for a complete fence system.
    - a. Height: 6 feet.
  - 2. Gates: Single swing access gates matching material and appearance of fencing, to allow for maintenance activities within protection zones; leaf width 36 inches.
- D. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering and as follows:
  - 1. Size and Text: As shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Lettering: 3-inch- high minimum, white characters on red background.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Examine the site to verify that temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by arborist, listing conditions detrimental to tree and plant protection.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag each tree trunk at 54 inches above the ground.
- B. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.
- C. Tree-Protection Zones: Mulch areas inside tree-protection zones and other areas indicated.

1. Apply 4-inch average thickness of organic mulch. Do not place mulch within 6 inches of tree trunks.

### 3.3 TREE- AND PLANT-PROTECTION ZONES

- A. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering protected area except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.
  1. Chain-Link Fencing: Install to comply with ASTM F 567 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Posts: Set or drive posts into ground one-third the total height of the fence without concrete footings. Where a post is located on existing paving or concrete to remain, provide appropriate means of post support acceptable to Architect.
  3. Access Gates: Install where indicated; adjust to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations in a manner approved by Architect. Install one sign spaced approximately every 20 feet on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than four signs with each facing a different direction.
- C. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.
- D. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
- E. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to Architect and remove when construction operations are complete and equipment has been removed from the site.
  1. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
  2. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION

- A. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated within protection zones according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Trenching near Trees: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, hand excavate under or around tree roots or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
- C. Redirect roots in backfill areas where possible. If encountering large, main lateral roots, expose roots beyond excavation limits as required to bend and redirect them without breaking. If encountered immediately adjacent to location of new construction and redirection is not practical, cut roots approximately 3 inches back from new construction and as required for root pruning.
- D. Do not allow exposed roots to dry out before placing permanent backfill. Provide temporary earth cover or pack with peat moss and wrap with burlap. Water and maintain in a moist condition. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently relocated and covered with soil.

### 3.5 ROOT PRUNING

- A. Prune roots that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune roots as shown on Drawings and as follows:
  1. Cut roots manually by digging a trench and cutting exposed roots with sharp pruning instruments; do not break, tear, chop, or slant the cuts. Do not use a backhoe or other equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
  2. Cut Ends: Do not paint cut root ends.
  3. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
  4. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
  5. Backfill as soon as possible according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Root Pruning at Edge of Protection Zone: Prune roots 12 inches outside of the protection zone, by cleanly cutting all roots to the depth of the required excavation.

- C. Root Pruning within Protection Zone: Clear and excavate by hand to the depth of the required excavation to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.
- 3.6 CROWN PRUNING
- A. Prune branches that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune branches as shown on Drawings and as follows:
    1. Prune trees to remain to compensate for root loss caused by damaging or cutting root system. Provide subsequent maintenance during Contract period as recommended by arborist.
    2. Pruning Standards: Prune trees according to ANSI A300 (Part 1) and the following:
      - a. Type of Pruning: .
      - b. Specialty Pruning: .
    3. Cut branches with sharp pruning instruments; do not break or chop.
    4. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.
  - B. Chip removed branches and dispose of off-site.
- 3.7 REGRADING
- A. Lowering Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.
  - B. Lowering Grade within Protection Zone: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade away from trees as recommended by arborist unless otherwise indicated.
    1. Root Pruning: Prune tree roots exposed by lowering the grade. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
  - C. Raising Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated above existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.
  - D. Minor Fill within Protection Zone: Where existing grade is or less below elevation of finish grade, fill with topsoil. Place topsoil in a single uncompacted layer and hand grade to required finish elevations.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Inspections: Engage a qualified arborist to direct plant-protection measures in the vicinity of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain and to prepare inspection reports.
- 3.9 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT
- A. General: Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Arborist
    1. Submit details of proposed root cutting and tree and shrub repairs.
    2. Have arborist perform the root cutting, branch pruning, and damage repair of trees and shrubs.
    3. Treat damaged trunks, limbs, and roots according to arborist's written instructions.
    4. Perform repairs within 24 hours.
    5. Replace vegetation that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Arborist.
  - B. Trees: Remove and replace trees indicated to remain that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition before the end of the corrections period or are damaged during construction operations that Architect determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
    1. Provide new trees of same size and species as those being replaced for each tree that measures or smaller in caliper size.
    2. Plant and maintain new trees as specified in Section 329300 "Plants."
  - C. Soil Aeration: Where directed by Architect, aerate surface soil compacted during construction. Aerate 10 feet beyond drip line and no closer than 36 inches to tree trunk. Drill 2-inch- diameter holes a minimum of 12 inches deep at 24 inches o.c. Backfill holes with an equal mix of augered soil and sand.
- 3.10 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS
- A. Disposal: Remove excess excavated material, displaced trees, trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 015639**

## **SECTION 015713 - EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes providing temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Temporary measures shall include the following but not limited to..
  - 1. Silt fences and straw bales.
  - 2. Sediment barriers and check dams.
  - 3. Stabilized construction entrance.
  - 4. Construction of temporary swales and sedimentation basins as required.
  - 5. Seeding, sodding, and hydromulching.
- B. Comply with all local, state, and federal regulations regarding erosion control including the applicable provisions of the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) regulations from the Federal Clean Water Act.
- C. Should any provisions of this section be at variance with erosion control plan prepared by the civil engineer, the civil engineer's directive shall take precedence.

#### **1.2 NOTICE OF INTENT**

- A. Contractor and Owner shall jointly submit an EPA Notice of Intent (NOI) prior to construction.
- B. Contractor shall prepare the report, coordinate with Owner, and file in accordance with regulations.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SILT FENCE**

- A. Filter Fabric: Non-woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide thermoplastic fibers with non-raveling edges. The fabric shall be non-biodegradable, inert to most soil chemicals, ultraviolet resistant, unaffected by moisture or other weather conditions, and permeable to water while retaining sediment. The filter fabric shall be supplied in rolls a minimum of 36 inches wide.
  - 1. Acceptable Products: Lundin "Silt Buster", Mirafi "Envirofence" or acceptable substitution.
- B. Wire Fence Support: Welded wire fabric 2 x 4 - W1.0 x W1.0.
- C. Fence Posts: Painted or galvanized steel Tee or Y-posts with anchor plates, not less than 5 feet in length with a minimum weight of 1.3 pounds per foot . Hangers shall be adequate to secure fence and fabric to posts. Posts and anchor plates shall conform to ASTM A-702.

#### **2.2 STRAW BALES**

- A. Standard rectangular hay bales bound by baling wire.

#### **2.3 SEDIMENT TRAPS**

- A. Standard manufacture designed to fit the intended inlet.

#### **2.4 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE**

- A. Aggregate: Graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448 and TEX 401-A coarse-aggregate; with 0 percent being retained by a 5-inch sieve and 100 percent being retained by a 3-inch sieve.

#### **2.5 GRASS**

- A. Materials and seeding and sodding shall conform to applicable Division 32 section.

#### **2.6 FERTILIZER**

- A. Use commercial grade fertilizers to insure germination and growth. Analysis by weight shall be 16-4-8 or 15-5-10 for Nitrogen, Phosphoric Acid and Potash.

#### **2.7 WATER**

- A. Use clean potable water for maintaining the grass.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Keep disturbed areas to a minimum required to adequately perform the work. At all times maintain the site in such a manner that minimizes erosion of the site. The execution of work under this section shall be in conformance with the NPDES rulings and the site Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.

### 3.2 SILT FENCES

- A. Silt fence shall be a minimum of 24 inches high. Posts shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches in the ground, placed a maximum of 8 feet apart and set on a slight angle toward the anticipated runoff source.
  - 1. When directed by the Engineer or designated representative, posts shall be set at specified intervals to support concentrated loads.
- B. Securely attach filter fabric to posts and wire support fence, with the bottom 12 inches of filter fabric buried in a trench a minimum of 6 inches deep and 6 inches wide to prevent sediment from passing under the fence.
  - 1. When silt fence is constructed on impervious material, a 12-inch flap of fabric shall be extended upstream from the bottom of the silt fence and weighted to limit particulate loss.
  - 2. No horizontal joints will be allowed in the filter fabric.
  - 3. Vertical joints shall be overlapped a minimum of 12 inches with the ends sewn or otherwise securely tied.
- C. Silt fence shall be maintained for the duration of the project, and repaired, replaced, and/or relocated when necessary or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Accumulated silt shall be removed when it reaches a depth of 6 inches.

### 3.3 EROSION CONTROL BARRIERS

- A. Provide erosion control barriers at intervals along swales and ditches as shown on the Drawings or as necessary to meet the requirements of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.
- B. Barriers: Silt fence or hay bales placed as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Maintain barriers in good working condition and replace when damaged.

### 3.4 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE

- A. Remove trees, brush, stumps, obstructions, and other objectionable material and disposed of in a manner that will not interfere with the excavation, grading, and construction of the entrance as indicated on the Drawings.
  - 1. Stabilized construction entrance shall not drain onto the public right-of-way and shall not allow surface water runoff to exit the construction site.
  - 2. When necessary, vehicle wheels shall be cleaned to remove sediment prior to entrance onto public right of way.
    - a. When vehicle washing is required, it shall be done on an area stabilized with crushed stone, which drains into an approved sediment trap or sediment basin.
  - 3. Sediment shall be prevented from entering any storm drain, ditch or watercourse through use of sand bags, gravel, boards, silt fence or other methods approved by the Engineer or designated representative.
- B. The entrance shall be maintained in a condition that will prevent tracking or disposition of sediment onto public right of way. Provide periodic top dressing with additional stone as conditions demand, as well as the repair and/or cleanout of any measures used to trap sediment. Sediment that is spilled, dropped, washed, or tracked onto public right-of-way shall be removed immediately.

### 3.5 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT SWALES

- A. Description:
  - 1. Provide temporary and permanent drainage swales as required to carry drainage away from the work area to an approved outfall point.
  - 2. Unless otherwise shown on the drawings, swales shall be earthen "V" shaped channels graded to a sufficient depth and slope to carry the anticipated runoff, but at least 2 feet deep with a slope of 0.1 percent.
  - 3. Swales not designated to remain in place at the completion of the contract shall be cleaned of any muck, debris and other unsuitable material and filled with approved fill before final grading operations begin.
  - 4. Swales shall have erosion control barriers as required.
  - 5. All permanent swales shall be sodded to a minimum width of 10 feet on either side of the centerline of the swale.

- B. Maintenance:
  - 1. During the course of construction maintain temporary swales constructed for this contract so as to allow proper drainage from the construction area. Before Contractor leaves the site at the end of construction, place temporary swales to remain in good working condition.
  - 2. Work with other contractors at the site in maintaining existing swales and ditches.
  - 3. Where necessary for access to the work areas, install adequately sized culverts and maintain to provide the access without disturbing the site drainage.
  - 4. Take care not to rut and damage sodded swales. Immediately repair damaged swales.
  - 5. Keep sodded swales mowed.

### 3.6 DRAINAGE DITCHES

- A. Immediately hydro-mulch drainage ditches upon final grading.
- B. Repair erosion of the banks of the drainage ditches immediately and re-stabilize.
- C. Place sediment barriers at intervals along the ditch as shown on the plans or as necessary to help trap sediment on the site. Daily remove sediment and other debris trapped by the barriers.
- D. Maximum Ditch Side Slopes: 3 feet horizontal to 1 foot vertical.
- E. Maintenance of the ditches during construction shall include but not be limited to mowing, re-grading, sediment removal, re-hydromulching, bank repair and debris removal.
- F. Sediment removed from the ditches may be re-spread on the site as directed by the Owner.

### 3.7 FILL AND CUT SLOPES

- A. Fill slopes in all cases shall be no steeper than 3:1 unless specifically stated on the plans or approved by the Owner's soils engineer.
- B. When cut slopes exceed 2:1 for depths over 3 feet, proper bracing and shoring per OSHA requirements shall be used and maintained.
- C. For permanent slopes, cut or fill, between 2:1 and 10:1, erosion protection shall be provided with hydromulching, sodding, seeding, or other method as approved.

### 3.8 SEDIMENTATION BASINS

- A. Description:
  - 1. Provide sedimentation ponds where indicated.
  - 2. Route drainage from cleared areas through the sedimentation basin.
  - 3. Operate and maintain the pond during construction.
- B. Maintenance:
  - 1. Maintain the pond and the outfall and sediment retarding structure in good working condition throughout the time the pond is to be in operation.
  - 2. When sediment and debris fill the pond to over one third (1/3) its designed capacity, clean out the pond and dispose of legally
  - 3. Stockpile, in its' own separate area, the sediment from the clearing operation, or remove from the site, as required. Make adequate drainage provisions such that drainage from the sediment stockpile drains back into the sediment pond. When approved by the Owner, sediment removed from the pond may be spread over the site.

### 3.9 SEEDING

- A. Seed disturbed portions of the site and stockpile areas within 14 days if the phasing of the construction operations are anticipated to leave those portions of the areas unworked for 21 days or more.
- B. Maintain seeded areas until the project is accepted by the Owner. Maintain by watering, fertilizing, reseeding, mowing and erosion repair as may be required. Cut grass when the average height of the grass reaches 6 inches. Clippings may be mulched back into the seeded areas.

**END OF SECTION 015713**

## SECTION 015719 - TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:
  - 1. Ceiling access control of airborne contaminants.
  - 2. Refer to CBRE HS-60-01, Above Ceiling Permit Policy, latest edition, and Interim Life Safety Policy

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Containment Areas: (Negative Pressurization) As determined by Architect and as shown on the Drawings as Containment Areas. Includes area of construction, adjacent staging and storage areas, and passage areas for contractors, supplies, and waste; includes ceiling spaces above and adjacent to construction.
- B. "Minor" ceiling access is defined as visual observation or minor adjustments or other activity that does not disturb dust. Acoustical panels shall be replaced or access panel shall be closed immediately when the contractor leaves the work site.
- C. "Major" ceiling access describes any other access not defined as "minor."
- D. "Thorough" cleaning of surfaces which become exposed to dust shall be accomplished by the use of either a HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaner or Water Vac with HEPA Filtration on outlet. Note: Wet mop shall not be used since moisture will activate dormant fungus and mold spores in dust.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements: Owner will establish acceptable, baseline levels of airborne contaminants based on air monitoring of existing conditions prior to start of Work.
  - 1. Aspergillosis and related nosocomial fungal infections are caused through inhalation by immuno-compromised patients of aspergillus spores, or other related spores which can be present in the construction environment. The spores are known to be prolifically present in construction dust, debris, and earthwork excavation dust. Control of construction dust, debris, and excavation dust, as required in this Section, is imperative to help prevent outbreaks of aspergillosis or related nosocomial fungal infections in immuno-compromised patients.
    - a. Inhalation of aspergillus spores or other fungal spores by immuno-compromised patients can lead to serious complications and death.
    - b. Aspergillus and other related spores are present in the natural environment and thus are not a risk to healthy construction workers.
    - c. Construction workers are required to attend an orientation session.
  - 2. Design system, including containment and disposal procedures, equipment, and related work, to meet specified requirements.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Progress Schedules: Submit work areas and procedure schedules for containment of airborne contaminants. Refer to Section 013100.
- B. Work Plan: Drawings and details of construction of necessary temporary barriers and description of procedures to be used to achieve and maintain control of construction-related airborne contaminants.
- C. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's literature on:
  - 1. Vacuum cleaning machines, air compressors, pressure washers, and cleaning related equipment accessories.
  - 2. Labels.
- D. Record Drawings: Upon completion of the project, submit one set of red-marked duct layout drawings showing the location of new access holes and openings installed in the duct systems to accommodate the cleaning process.
- E. Test Reports: Written results of testing specified in Part 3.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Air Samples: Owner will provide baseline particle counts and conduct periodic air sampling of areas during construction to monitor effectiveness of containment procedures.



- B. Contractor Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this extent and nature with minimum five year' experience.
  - C. Regulatory Requirements: Ensure flammable components comply with applicable portions of local, state, and federal codes, laws, and ordinances for flame spread and smoke developed indices.
- 1.7 OWNER'S USE OF SPACE
- A. Accomplish work with a minimum of interruptions to Owner's operation within the building. Coordinate work with the Owner's Representative.
  - B. In the event HVAC systems provide space heating the duration of system shut downs must be limited or the contractor shall provide temporary heating systems to ensure room temperatures of at least 50 degrees F. are maintained.
- 1.8 PROTECTION
- A. If work is being done above a lay-in ceiling and if work must be performed while the space below is occupied, provide temporary work surfaces to provide a safe working platform and protect the ceiling and the spaces below from falling objects and materials. Take necessary precautions to protect the people and spaces below from injury due to the contractor's operations.
  - B. Exercise caution when handling fluids, particularly heating water, in the interstitial space. When working with fluids provide a water-tight barrier beneath the work area to catch and retain spillage before it reaches the ceiling below.
  - C. Notify the Architect at least 48 hours prior to commencing work in ceiling or interstitial spaces above occupied areas to allow at-risk patients to be relocated or protected.
- 1.9 COORDINATION OF WORK
- A. Submit a cleaning work schedule for each HVAC unit/duct system a minimum of 30 days prior to beginning work. Indicate dates, times and activities for each phase or portion of the work. In addition, describe in detail what systems, fans, and HVAC equipment will be affected (no air flow) and what rooms, spaces or areas will require access. Include procedures proposed for the project.
  - B. Coordinate work activities with other affected trades and Subcontractors.
  - C. Do not begin cleaning activities until other construction activities are complete except for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) activities in which case TAB activities shall be performed after acceptance of cleaning activities.
  - D. Prearrange and pre-schedule with the Architect and Owner's Representative the switching off of any HVAC unit to commence a cleaning operation.
- 1.10 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE
- A. Conduct pre-installation conference in accordance with Section 013100.
  - B. Before Work begins, conduct an orientation session including presentation by Owner's Representative for training and instructing construction and related personnel on precautions to be taken. Do not permit workers to access work areas until successfully completing orientation session.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 EQUIPMENT
- A. Negative Air Machines: Include pre-filters, final filters, HEPA filters and filter static pressure gauges.
    1. HEPA filters: 99.97 percent efficient at 0.3 micron particle size.
    2. Acceptable product and manufacturer:
      - a. Micro Trap MT-C Negative Air Filtration Units by Micro-Trap, Inc., 38 North Pine Avenue, Maple Shade, NJ 08052.
      - b. CRSI 2000 by Control Resource System Incorporated, 670 Marine Drive, Michigan City, IN 46360, 1-800-418-1264.
  - B. Air Pressure Monitor: Differential switch/gauge to monitor differential pressure between construction Containment Area and Protection Area.
    1. Install switch/gauge in NEMA rated enclosure.
    2. Provide power wiring, transformers, and relays to operate the system.
    3. Provide audio-visual alarm that will activate upon sensing pressure differences beyond the range set points.
    4. Provide a switch that will enable activation of either audio, visual, or both alarms.
    5. Provide a manual reset switch to reset gauge after an alarm condition.
    6. Acceptable product and manufacturer, Switch/gauge:

- a. Dwyer Model 3000-0 with range of 0 to 0.5 inches of water gauge, and high-low adjustable set points.
  - C. Vacuum Collection Machine:
    - 1. Portable vacuum cleaning machine designed for duct cleaning mounted on wheels.
    - 2. Filter section with filter bags and final HEPA exhaust filtration.
    - 3. Anti-spark construction, made of non-ferrous material.
    - 4. Fan shall have a minimum of 4,000 CFM 1t 1.5" static pressure.
    - 5. Unit shall maintain a minimum 1" S.P. on duct at all times.
  - D. Air Compressor:
    - 1. Portable air compressor unit consisting of compressors, tanks, and controls ASME rated.
    - 2. Minimum Capacity: 17 CFM free air at 175 psi.
    - 3. Accessories: Hoses and velocity nozzles.
- 2.2 MATERIALS
- A. Carpet or Mats: Provide carpets or mats at enclosure entrances, vacuumed or changed as often as necessary to prevent accumulation of dust. At Owner's option, provide adhesive faced contamination control mats with disposable sheets in lieu of vacuumed mats. Vacuuming of areas not under negative pressure shall be with a certified HEPA-filtered vacuum.
    - 1. Acceptable product and manufacturer - Adhesive faced contamination control mat:
      - a. Tacky Mat by Liberty Industries, 133 Commerce Street, East Berlin, CT 06023, 1-800-828-5656.
  - B. Dust Caps: Block off existing ventilation ducts within construction area. Capping method shall be dust tight and withstand air flow.
  - C. Portable Enclosures: Sufficient to seal off area tight to ceiling.
  - D. Temporary Prefabricated Partition for work in Sterile Corridors:
    - 1. Acceptable product and manufacturer:
      - a. Kontrol Kube by Fiberlock Technologies, Inc., P.O. Box 432, Cambridge, MA, 617-876-8020, including the following:
        - 1) Adjustable Aluminum Frame #6440.
        - 2) Vinyl Enclosure #6442.
        - 3) Wheel Base Platform #6443.
        - 4) Inspection window and pressure differential porthole.
        - 5) Nilfisk 87 cfm vacuum device and manometer.
  - E. Polyethylene: ASTM D210, Minimum thickness: 6 mil, FR treated.
  - F. Biocide: Copper-8-quinolinolate.
    - 1. Acceptable product and manufacturer: MAG Chemical, Vero Beach, FL.
  - G. Spray Adhesive:
    - 1. Acceptable product and manufacturer: Ram-Tack Adhesive from Aramsco, 906 Gray Street, Elgin, IL 60120.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PREPARATION
  - A. Before any demolition or construction begins in occupied areas, a complete field review of all airborne contaminant control policies will be conducted. A checklist will be filled out and signed by the Airborne Contaminant Control Nurse and the Contractor, confirming that the area is ready for work to begin.
  - B. Provide temporary barriers and other controls to control airborne contaminants. Extend barriers above ceilings as required to seal off and contain airborne contaminants.
- 3.2 GENERAL CEILING ACCESS DIRECTIVES
  - A. Perform Work in accordance with Section 017300, applicable local standards, and approved shop drawings and work plans.
  - B. Report to Owner and fill out a ceiling access form. Attach approved work tag to the ceiling access enclosure before work will be allowed to proceed.
  - C. Work Tag:
    - 1. Attach a completed, approved work tag on the ceiling access enclosure before work can proceed.
    - 2. Remove work tag only after work is done and cleanup completed.
    - 3. Tags issued from Owner's representative shall be returned the same day to the office from which it was issued, after work and cleanup for the day has been completed.
  - D. Spray top of ceiling panels to be removed, and surrounding affected panels, with fine water mist to settle dust prior to removal.

- E. Contact Owner's Representative regarding ceiling access problems.
  - F. Special Techniques:
    - 1. Provide special control of sources of contaminants and waste as determined by Owner's Representative. Contain waste materials during removal, bagging, wrapping, and chute use.
    - 2. Use wet cleaning methods and HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners to minimize release of airborne contaminants. Disinfect contaminant and protection areas to effect final cleaning.
    - 3. Perform cleaning of heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) systems and ductwork.
    - 4. Sealing of Openings: Use duct tape or other impenetrable sealant to seal barrier wall seams, cracks around window and door frames, exhaust system ductwork, pipes, joints, and ducts. Seal penetration of dustproof enclosures on all sides and 360 degrees around penetrating objects.
    - 5. Dust Control: Take appropriate steps throughout the term of the Project to prevent airborne dust due to work under this contract. Apply water wherever practical to settle and hold dust to a minimum, particularly during demolition and moving of materials. Prevent accumulation of standing water or saturation of any materials. Use of chemical palliatives is not permitted without permission of Owner's Representative.
      - a. Spray surfaces with water during dust-producing interior demolition activities. Hard surface floors in work area, adjacent hallways and passage areas require vacuuming with HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners during demolition and construction. Protect adjacent carpeted areas with plastic and plywood, and vacuum with HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners.
      - b. Vacuum walk-off mats at least once daily.
      - c. Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent airborne dust from dispersing into atmosphere.
  - G. Airborne contaminant enclosures or infection control enclosures shall be dust-tight. Immediately remove dust tracked outside of enclosure. Clean areas outside enclosure with HEPA-filtered vacuum or other approved method.
  - H. Implement the following procedure when construction personnel are required to pass through a Protected Area to enter the Containment Area.
    - 1. Provide air lock entry vestibules in dustproof enclosures when shown on Drawings or required by Owner's Representative.
    - 2. Personnel shall wear protective clothing while passing through the Protective Area. Protective clothing shall be removed in the air lock vestibule prior to entering the Containment Area.
    - 3. When exiting the Containment Area, personnel shall put protective clothing on before reentering the Protected Area.
  - I. Exterior Work: Direct exhaust from equipment away from building air intakes. Ensure that filters on building air intakes are operational and protected from excessive amounts of airborne contaminants.
  - J. Ceiling access panels opened for investigation beyond sealed areas shall be replaced immediately when unattended.
    - 1. Whenever access panels are opened in occupied areas, for work above ceiling, provide portable enclosure enclosing ladder and seal off opening, fitted tight to ceiling.
  - K. Provide thorough cleaning of existing, exposed surfaces before start of Owner's room occupancy.
  - L. Removal of construction barriers and ceiling protection shall be done carefully, possibly outside of normal work hours. Vacuum and clean adjacent surfaces after removal.
  - M. Perform vacuuming of areas not under negative pressure with a certified, Owner approved, HEPA-filtered vacuum.
- 3.3 AIRBORNE CONTAMINANT CONTROL ENCLOSURES AND BARRIERS
- A. Install dustproof enclosures for work as indicated and when required to protect areas occupied by Owner from dust, debris, and damage.
  - B. It is the Contractor's responsibility to determine when a dustproof enclosure is required to protect any adjoining area; however, Contractor shall provide a dustproof enclosure where indicated and whenever requested by Owner.
  - C. Airborne Contaminant Control General Requirements: Floor to structure, air-tight enclosures, and gypsum board barriers, using tape and foam padding.
    - 1. Keep traffic between Containment Areas and open areas to a minimum. Keep door to areas closed at all times. Transport materials and refuse into an area from an external site without violating patient care areas by transporting in covered containers.
    - 2. Provide negative pressure in construction areas as specified herein.
      - a. Provide adequate forced ventilation of enclosed areas to cure installed materials, to prevent excessive humidity, and to prevent hazardous accumulations of dust fumes, vapors, or gases.

- D. Dustproof Enclosures: Full height, noncombustible construction, with minimum 1/2 inch gypsum board both sides, with 3-1/2 inch, R-11 insulation batts to reduce noise. Use 3-inch wide duct tape to tightly seal top, bottom, and seams, to prevent spread of dust to occupied areas, including above ceiling. Secure tape with Ram-Tack spray adhesive.
1. Enclosure Doors: Four foot minimum width, unless shown otherwise, solid core wood with metal frame and hardware, including closer, tightly weather-stripped to prevent flow of dust. Locate as directed and swing into construction area. Keep enclosures locked outside of working hours. Provide Owner with keys for emergency access.
  2. Install floor mats on both sides of construction entrance prior to starting demolition or construction. Keep inside mat damp to help remove dust and minimize tracking into adjacent clean areas, vacuum mats daily. As an alternative, provide tacky-mats and remove old surface daily.
  3. Obtain Owner's approval of exact location and details of enclosure construction. Precut materials for enclosure in unoccupied areas. No explosive or pneumatic driven fasteners allowed. Provide entrance vestibules as detailed. Provide carpets inside vestibule and inside enclosures at door to vestibule, and keep vacuumed daily.
- E. Enclosure outside work area (including spaces above furred ceilings): Whenever work is necessary outside of construction enclosures, the space where work is being performed, including ladders, shall be contained within a full height portable enclosure or with use of pre-fabricated units as specified herein.
1. Work performed outside construction enclosure, including work in corridors and lobbies, shall be performed outside of normal working hours and shall be schedule in advance with Owner except where specified otherwise.
  2. Storage of construction equipment or material outside the construction enclosure is prohibited.
  3. Immediately clean up dust tracked outside the construction area. Contractor shall provide necessary manpower and equipment (HEPA filtered vacuum, dust mops, brooms, buckets and clean wiping rags) to keep adjacent occupied areas clean at all times.
- F. Power and Lighting: Provide sufficient temporary lighting and power ventilating equipment to ensure proper workmanship and safety everywhere.
- G. Access Provisions: Provide ramps, stairs, ladders, and similar temporary access elements as reasonably required to perform the work and facilitate its inspection during installation.
- H. Where work occurs in occupied areas, provide access opening through existing plaster, or gypsum board walls, and acoustical ceilings, and to restore walls and ceilings to original condition after work is complete and to ensure dust control within access areas.
1. Provide temporary plywood panels anchored to existing steel ceiling support grid for support of workers crawling above ceiling. Panel thickness shall suit spans between existing steel support.
- I. Coordinate and phase remodeling work in certain rooms which serve other rooms with the phasing of the remodeled rooms if required, so that at no time are both rooms simultaneously inoperative. Any downtime necessitated by the remodeling work is to be fully discussed and coordinated with the Owner's Representative in advance of the shutdown.
1. Dust: Generation of significant quantities of airborne dust will not be tolerated. Clean the work area prior to starting work as necessary to minimize existing dust which may become airborne during construction. Provide drop cloths and dust partitions as necessary to contain dust and debris generated by the work.
  2. Remove demolition material, dust, and dirt in tightly sealed, covered, rubber tired plastic dump carts. Containers shall be fitted with clean polyethylene covers, completely sealed at perimeter by wire tying or taping. Before leaving area, all containers shall be wiped clean to prevent tracking of dust. Place rugs inside barrier entrance, keep them clean or changed daily. Provide debris chutes if allowed.
  3. Hot Processes: Welding and flame cutting which generate smoke shall be scheduled with the Owner's fire detection system deactivated.
  4. Use portable vinyl tunnel or a polyethylene enclosure for single ceiling accesses. Enclosure opening shall have a 3-foot overlap of plastic to decrease risk of airborne dust.
- J. Portable vinyl tunnel or polyethylene enclosures, if used, shall remain in place until the ceiling is secured (all accesses closed).
1. If access is larger than vinyl tunnel, use a portable polyethylene enclosure also enclosing the ladder. Enclosures opening shall have a 2-foot overlap of plastic to decrease risk of airborne dust.
  2. Secure polyethylene enclosures/barriers in place to walls and floor with use of tape. Reinforce seam on ceiling with frame and flat head screws.

3. When accessing pipes, ducts, or other building infrastructure to investigate a condition, use additional procedures including masks, disposable white coveralls, and disposable shoe covers, before going into the access. Afterwards, strip off the additional procedures carefully, turning the coveralls "inside-out," and depositing the mask, coverall, and shoe covers into a plastic trash bag inside the enclosure. Secure (tie-off) plastic trash bag and discard as directed by Owner's Representative. Do not discard within "patient care areas."
4. When Contractor leaves the work site, the access, especially at ceiling, shall either be completely closed or protected by an appropriate barrier.
5. In patient care areas, dismantle the apparatus (tunnel or enclosure) and replace access (ceiling tiles); or complete work of access at the end of each day.
6. Thoroughly clean surfaces which become exposed to dust before leaving the area of construction. Accomplish cleaning by use of either an HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaner.

#### 3.4 ENFORCEMENT AND FINES

- A. Owner will monitor aspergillus count in vicinity of project in Protection Areas. Such areas will be located as indicated on Drawings. Whenever safe levels are exceeded, Contractor will be notified to correct conditions immediately to avoid fine and work stoppage described.
  1. All work shall be stopped on the project whenever a hazardous airborne contaminant control deficiency exists in occupied areas.
  2. Contractor shall take immediate action to correct all deficiencies.
- B. Process: Failure to maintain containment areas will result in issuance of written warning; if situation is not corrected within 8 hours of receipt of warning, Owner will have cause to stop the work.
  1. Failure of Contractor to correct deficiencies in containment will result in corrective action taken by the Owner and deducting all costs from the Contractor.
  2. Ceiling Access: Each breach of ceiling access policy will cost violators \$500.00 for each occurrence.
- C. The following will be performed by Owner's Representative:
  1. Periodic Rounds: A photograph will be taken to document each violation.
  2. Contractor and Department information will be extracted from the ceiling work tag.
  3. A record of all violations of required ceiling access procedures will be maintained, whether in occupied area or not.

**END OF SECTION 015719**

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.

2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  3. Products:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
  5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 016000**



## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
6. Progress cleaning.
7. Starting and adjusting.
8. Protection of installed construction.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
  3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
  4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
    - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.
- D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- E. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.
- F. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection

2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
    - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
    - b. Fire separation assemblies.
    - c. Air or smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire-suppression systems.
    - e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
    - f. Control systems.
    - g. Communication systems.
    - h. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
    - i. Conveying systems.
    - j. Electrical wiring systems.
    - k. Operating systems of special construction.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Membranes and flashings.
    - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
    - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
    - e. Equipment supports.
    - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
    - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
  1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with requirements in Section 018113.02 "Sustainable Design Requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.

- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
    - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
    - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
    - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  - C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
    - 1. Description of the Work.
    - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
    - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
    - 4. Recommended corrections.
  - D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - B. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
  - C. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT
- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
  - B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
    - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
    - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
    - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
    - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
    - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
    - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
    - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
  - D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
  - E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
  - 1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
  - 2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 011000 "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  - 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
  - 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
  - 2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

- 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION
- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
  - B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

**END OF SECTION 017300**

## **SECTION 017329 - CUTTING AND PATCHING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
  - A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
  - B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed from Architect. Include the following information:
    - 1. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
  - B. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
  - C. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
  - D. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  - E. Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: List services/systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services/systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services/systems will be disrupted.
  - F. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with original structure.
  - G. Architect's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements, or bracing in any manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
  - B. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - C. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS
  - A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
  - B. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible. If identical materials are unavailable, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.



## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions in which cutting and patching are to be performed.
  - B. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with in-place finishes or primers.
  - C. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Temporary Support: Contractor responsible for designing and providing temporary support of Work to be cut.
  - B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- 3.3 PERFORMANCE
- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
    - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
  - B. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
    - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - C. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - D. Concrete: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - E. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
    - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  - G. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - 1. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
  - H. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
    - 1. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
      - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
    - 2. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or re-hang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - I. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weather-tight condition.
  - J. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

**END OF SECTION**

## **SECTION 017410 - PROGRESS CLEANING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cleaning and maintenance of site premises.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 017420 - Construction/Demolition Waste Management and Disposal: Disposal and removal of non-hazardous construction and demolition waste.
  - 2. Section 017430 - Hazardous/Universal Waste Management and Disposal: Disposal and removal of hazardous construction and demolition waste.

#### **1.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with applicable Federal, State and Local codes and regulations relative to environmental safety regulations.
- B. Hazards Controls: Store volatile waste in covered metal containers and remove from premises daily. Prevent accumulation of wastes which create hazardous conditions.
- C. Pollution Control:
  - 1. Do not burn or bury rubbish and waste materials on the project site.
  - 2. Do not disposal of volatile fluid wastes (such as mineral spirits, oil or paint thinner) in storm or sanitary sewer systems or into streams or waterways.
  - 3. Do not disposal of any toxic chemicals in storm or sanitary sewer systems. Comply with EPA requirements regarding disposal.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CLEANING MATERIALS**

- A. Use only cleaning materials recommended by manufacturer of surface to be cleaned.
- B. Use cleaning materials only on surfaces recommended by cleaning material manufacturer.
- C. Cleaning materials shall be clearly labeled and safely stored when not in use. Maintain control of cleaning materials while in use. Do not leave unattended. No flammable materials or liquids may be stored in the existing building or in the new addition.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 CLEANING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Oversee cleaning and ensure that building and grounds are maintained free from accumulations of waste materials and rubbish.
- B. In exterior work, sprinkle dusty debris with fine water mist to control accumulation of dust. Avoid puddling.
- C. Vacuum clean interior building areas when ready to receive finish painting and continue vacuum cleaning on an as-needed basis until building is ready for acceptance or occupancy.
- D. Schedule cleaning operations so that dust and other contaminants resulting from cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly-painted surfaces.
- E. Clean exterior premises daily. Do not let debris enter customer areas.

#### **3.2 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING AND EXPOSED OVERHEAD STRUCTURE CLEANING**

- A. Clean existing exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings in all areas including non-customer areas such as break rooms, offices, Pharmacy, etc. Clean existing exposed overhead structure within the sales floor area. Surfaces to be cleaned include the following:
  - 1. Acoustical tile ceilings to remain in place including trim, edge moldings, suspension system members, diffusers, speakers, and camera mounts.
  - 2. Exposed overhead structure to remain in place including, but not limited to, structural steel, steel joists, metal deck, drop boxes, ductwork, and bracing members.
- B. Qualifications: Cleaning shall be done by a reputable firm regularly engaged in cleaning of acoustical tile ceilings and overhead structure and shall have been in business for a continuous period of not less than 2 years. Firm shall be experienced in work of the nature and scale similar to this project
- C. Products and Procedure

1. Cleaning Products: Accomplish cleaning using solutions and products specifically formulated and recommended for cleaning the surfaces involved. Products shall be non-toxic and non-caustic to metal or acoustic surfaces. Products shall be enzyme based or of such ingredients to effectively clean, whiten, and dissolve nicotine tar, cooking oils and grease, soiling, soot, smoke, mildew, and dirt films. Products containing bleach will not be allowed. Products shall be by a manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of such products.
  2. Procedure: Cleaning procedure shall be as follows:
    - a. Cover entirely with drop cloths, all merchandise, furniture, equipment, and floors in areas to be cleaned.
    - b. Dust or vacuum tiles and tile suspension system and structural members to remove loose dirt and dust.
    - c. Apply cleaning solutions by spray or mist at a rate recommended by product instructions depending on type and porosity of surface to be cleaned.
    - d. Allow sufficient time as recommended by product instructions for solutions to react.
    - e. Remove solutions with sponges and wipe dry.
    - f. Follow written instructions of product manufacturer where such instructions vary from, or are in addition to, the foregoing procedures.
  - D. Coordination and Scheduling: Perform cleaning during periods when store is closed or during low traffic periods. Coordinate cleaning schedule with Owner/Area Construction Manager for major remodel projects. Submit to the store manager, a mutually agreed upon cleaning schedule at least 7 days prior to commencement of cleaning operations.
  - E. Cleaning shall be completed within 5 days of possession of area cleaned. Schedule with Area Construction Manager.]
- 3.3 TRASH REMOVAL
- A. On a daily basis, clean work areas and access, and dispose of waste materials, rubbish and debris.
  - B. Disposal of non-hazardous demolished materials shall be at Contractors expense as specified in Section 017420.
  - C. Disposal of hazardous materials shall be at Contractors expense as specified in Section 017430.
  - D. Deposit waste materials, rubbish, and debris in waste containers as specified in Section 017420. Perform segregation of waste materials into the various classification and segregated materials.
  - E. Do not allow waste materials, rubbish and debris to accumulate and become an unsightly or hazardous condition.
  - F. Keep streets and access to site free of rubbish and debris.
- 3.4 FINAL CLEANING
- A. Execute final cleaning prior to final inspection as follows:
    1. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    2. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    3. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    4. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    5. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    6. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    7. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, and drainage systems.
    8. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
    9. Vacuum clean all interior floor surfaces.
    10. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    11. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    12. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    13. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint, and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    14. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.

15. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters of equipment operated during construction. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  16. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
  17. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures.
  18. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- B. Cleaning of Toilets Prior to Possession:
1. Immediately prior to possession, clean toilets thoroughly including each toilet fixture and accessory.
  2. Clean entire wall and floor surfaces using cleaning solutions and wipe dry to prevent surface film or residue.
  3. Clean water closets and sinks with scrubbing cleansers to remove stains and deposits.
  4. Clean and polish stainless steel accessories and toilet partitions to a spotless luster using soap, ammonia, or mild detergent and water. Apply with sponge or soft cloth, rinse with clear water, and wipe dry. As an alternate, use a commercial stainless steel cleaner and polish.
  5. Clean mirror surfaces using glass cleaner.
- C. Employ skilled workmen for final cleaning.
- D. Prior to final completion or Owner possession, conduct an inspection of sight-exposed interior and exterior surfaces and all work areas with the Owners Construction Manager to verify that entire Work is clean.

**END OF SECTION**

## **SECTION 017430 - HAZARDOUS / UNIVERSAL WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Management and disposal of hazardous wastes as follows:
  - 1. Management of certain universal and e-scrap wastes by the Contractor and disposal thereof through the services of a pre-selected waste management Company to recycle through Company's waste pick-up and recycle program.
  - 2. Management of and disposal by the Contractor of all other hazardous wastes.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 017400 - Progress Cleaning.
  - 2. Section 017420 - Construction/Demolition Waste Management and Disposal
  - 3. Section 024119 - Selective Demolition.
  - 4. Section 099100 - Paints and Coatings.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
- B. Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA).
- C. Title 40 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (40 CFR):
  - 1. 40 CFR 273 Universal waste regulations.
  - 2. 40 CFR 261.3 Definition of hazardous waste.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Hazardous Waste: As defined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in 40 CFR 261.3, and as de- fined by specific state and local jurisdictions. Identify hazardous wastes that are produced through construction operations in accordance with federal, state and local laws. Materials shall be considered hazardous wastes as ap- propriate according to applicable regulations regardless of source.
  - 1. Hazardous waste for the purposes of this Work shall include, but not limited to paint waste, adhesive waste, solvents, acids/corrosives, fuels and petroleum based products, aerosols, and including liquid residue remaining in containers thereof.
- B. Universal Waste: As defined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in 40 CFR 273 and as defined by specific state and local jurisdictions.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with federal, state, and local standards and regulations regarding the classification, storage, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
  - 2. Comply with Occupational Safety and Health Administration requirements for hazardous waste.
- B. The Contractor shall assume the responsibility as the generator of the hazardous and universal waste generated on the site.
- C. No construction chemicals, hazardous materials or hazardous waste shall remain at the Site upon project completion including those generated or utilized by subcontractors or supplied by Owner, but shall be removed, or appropriately and lawfully reused, recycled, or disposed.
- D. Obtain Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or state Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA) identification number as generator of hazardous waste. Owners EPA or state RCRA identification numbers assigned specifically to the Owner to manage or transport hazardous waste may not be used by the Contractor.

- 3.2 UNIVERSAL AND E-SCRAP WASTE MANAGEMENT AND RECYCLING
- A. Manage universal and e-scrap waste, including collection, sorting, and preparation for pick up by pre-selected Company for recycling.
  - B. Dispose of universal and e-scrap wastes by recycling through Waste Management Company.
  - C. Assume costs associated with disposing of the waste through Waste Management Company.
  - D. Management, recycling and disposal of non-hazardous or hazardous waste not specifically identified in this Section or other Sections is responsibility of Contractor.
- 3.3 HAZARDOUS WASTE MANAGEMENT (EXCLUDING E-SCRAP AND UNIVERSAL WASTE) AND DISPOSAL
- A. Manage and dispose of hazardous wastes generated at the Site, regardless of who supplied the materials.
  - B. Onsite Sorting and Storage:
    - 1. Establish enclosed and fenced storage area on site as specified in Section 01742.
    - 2. Provide signage as required by RCRA including but not limited to the following:
      - a. Post "NO SMOKING" signs in areas containing hazardous waste.
      - b. Mark each container of hazardous waste with the words "HAZARDOUS WASTE" and an accumulation start date (the date the waste was first placed in the container).
    - 3. Accumulate each type of hazardous waste in a separate hazardous waste container with a watertight close-able lid.
    - 4. All open tops must be enclosed behind a fence which will remain locked at all times with access controlled by the Contractor or its designee. Contractor or the designee shall be available at all times of day or night on the jobsite to provide access and control for disposal or shall designate an area immediately outside of the locked area with sufficient space to stage items pending disposal.
    - 5. If a staging area is utilized it shall be located in an area enclosed by fencing but shall be accessible at all times, or if locked those requiring access shall be provided keys. In the event Contractor designates an area for staging waste, the staging area must be cleared and all material properly disposed of twice per 12 hour shift to prevent accumulation of items. Any material in the staging area shall be protected from the elements to prevent any potential runoff while waiting disposal.
    - 6. Contractor shall address in the Hazardous Waste Management and Disposal Plan prevention of unauthorized disposal by persons throwing items over fencing. Prevention measures may include but are not limited to: open tops set back from the fencing, barbed-wire on top of fencing, or lids on the open tops.
  - C. Training:
    - 1. Employees and subcontractors shall be familiar with proper hazardous waste management procedures relevant to their individual responsibilities on the site.
    - 2. Employees and subcontractors shall be familiar with emergency procedures regarding spills, reactions, and fires involving hazardous waste.
  - D. Documentation:
    - 1. Retain copies of hazardous waste disposal manifests at Contractors office in hard copy or electronic form. Hazardous waste disposal documentation shall be available upon request. Retain hazardous waste disposal manifests for not less than 3 years.
    - 2. Document training conducted with each employee and subcontractor and retain documentation in Contractors Field Office.
  - E. Disposal and Transportation:
    - 1. Hazardous waste accumulated from the Site shall be transported to a disposal or recycling facility by a certified hazardous waste hauler.
- 3.4 HAZARDOUS WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL PLAN
- A. Develop a written site-specific Hazardous Waste Management and Disposal Plan including, as a minimum, the proposed plans, processes, and procedures of management and disposal of hazardous waste including, but not limited to, the requirements specified in this Section.
  - B. The Hazardous Waste Management and Disposal Plan shall identify the certified hazardous waste hauler for the project.
  - C. The Contractors employees, sub-contractors, and their employees shall effectively execute the Contractors Hazardous Waste Management and Disposal Plan.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
    - 2. Final completion procedures.
    - 3. Warranties.
    - 4. Final cleaning.
    - 5. Repair of the Work.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
  - B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
  - C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
  - C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.
- 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.
- 1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES
  - A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
  - B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
    - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
    - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
    - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
    - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by . Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
      - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain signature for receipt of submittals.
    - 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
    - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
  - C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
    - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.

2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.
- 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES
- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
- 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)
- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
    - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.



## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.

- n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
    - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
  - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
  - D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK
- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
  - B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
    - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
    - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
      - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
    - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
    - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 017700**

## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
    - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
    - 2. Emergency manuals.
    - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
    - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
    - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
  - A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
  - B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
    - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
    - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
  - B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
    - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
      - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
      - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
  - C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
  - D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
    - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY
  - A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
    - 1. List of documents.
    - 2. List of systems.
    - 3. List of equipment.
    - 4. Table of contents.
  - B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
  - C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
  - D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  - 6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  - 7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  - 8. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
  - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  - 1. Type of emergency.
  - 2. Emergency instructions.
  - 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  - 1. Fire.
  - 2. Flood.
  - 3. Gas leak.
  - 4. Water leak.
  - 5. Power failure.
  - 6. Water outage.
  - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Instructions on stopping.
  - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.

4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.
  9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
  2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  4. Regulation and control procedures.
  5. Instructions on stopping.
  6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  4. Material and chemical composition.
  5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
  2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  5. Repair instructions.

- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

**END OF SECTION 017823**

## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
    - 1. Record Drawings.
    - 2. Record Specifications.
    - 3. Record Product Data.
    - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
    - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
  - B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
  - C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
    - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
  - D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS
  - A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
    - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
      - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
      - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
      - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
      - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
      - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
    - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
      - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
      - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
      - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
      - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
      - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
      - g. Actual equipment locations.
      - h. Duct size and routing.
      - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
      - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
      - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
      - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
      - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.



- n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
- 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
  - 1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  - 3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  - 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
  - 1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
  - 2. Consult Architect for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.
- D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
  - 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  - 2. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  - 3. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  - 5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

### 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
  - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.
  - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

**END OF SECTION 017839**

## **SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  3. Review required content of instruction.
  4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM**

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
  - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
  - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  - c. Operating standards.
  - d. Regulatory requirements.
  - e. Equipment function.
  - f. Operating characteristics.
  - g. Limiting conditions.
  - h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
  - a. Emergency manuals.
  - b. Operations manuals.
  - c. Maintenance manuals.
  - d. Project record documents.
  - e. Identification systems.
  - f. Warranties and bonds.
  - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

#### **3.2 INSTRUCTION**

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
- F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

**END OF SECTION 017900**

**SECTION 018113.02 - SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with Architect's sustainable design and construction requirements
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Divisions 01 through 33 Sections for requirements specific to the work of each of these Sections.
  - 2. Division 1 Section "Construction Waste Management."
  - 3. Division 1 Section "Indoor Air Quality during Construction."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide Waste management plan complying with Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal".

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 LOW-EMITTING MATERIALS

- A. For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, use adhesives and sealants that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), Rule No. 1168, effective date July 1, 2005 and rule amendment date January 7, 2005.
  - 1. See SCAQMD Rule 1168 effective July 1, 2005 and Green Seal Standards GS-11 and GS-03 for items not listed:

Adhesives	VOC Limit (g/L)	Adhesives	VOC Limit (g/L)
Carpet and Carpet Pad Adhesive	50	Special Purpose Contact Adhesive (vinyl wallcovering, wood veneer, melamine)	250
Wood Floor Adhesive	100	Structural Glazing Adhesive	100
Rubber Floor Adhesive	60	Multipurpose Construction Adhesive	70
VCT Adhesive	50	Cove Base Adhesive	50
Ceramic Tile Adhesive	65	Drywall and Panel Adhesive	50
Metal to Metal Adhesive	30	Porous Material Adhesive (except wood)	50
<b>Sealants</b>		<b>Sealant Primer</b>	
Architectural Sealant (includes duct and plumbing sealant)	250	Architectural, non-porous	250
		Architectural, porous	775
<b>Paints</b>		<b>Coatings</b>	
Flat Paints and Primers	50	Clear Wood Finishes	350
Non-flat Paints and Primers	150	Concrete Curing Compound	350
Anti-Corrosive/Anti-Rust Paint	250	Fire Retardant Coating- Pigmented	350
Sealers and Undercoaters	200	Floor Coatings	100
		Waterproofing Sealers	250
		Waterproofing Concrete, Masonry Sealers	400

- 2. For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, use aerosol adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to Green Seal Standard for Commercial Adhesives GS-36 effective October 19, 2000.

- a. For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, use paints and coatings that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to Green Seal Standard GS-11, Paints, First Edition May 20, 1993, Green Seal Standard GC-03, Anti-Corrosive Paints Second Edition, January 7, 1997, and South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), Rule No. 1113, Architectural Coatings, in effect on January 1, 2004
- b. CRI Green Label Plus Certification: Use CRI Green Label Plus-certified carpet and carpeting adhesives with VOC content of less than 50 g/L. An acceptable alternative to CRI Green Label Plus certified carpet is the use of carpeting that meets testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers, including 2004 Addenda.
- c. Urea Formaldehyde Prohibition: Do not use composite wood or agrifiber products or adhesives that contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
- d. FloorScore Certification: Use FloorScore certified hard surface flooring. An acceptable alternative to FloorScore certified flooring is the use of flooring that meets testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers, including 2004 Addenda.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT**

- A. Comply with Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

#### **3.2 CONSTRUCTION INDOOR-AIR-QUALITY MANAGEMENT**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "SMACNA IAQ Guideline for Occupied Buildings under Construction."
  1. If Owner authorizes use of permanent heating, cooling, and ventilating systems during construction period as specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls," install filter media having a MERV 8 according to ASHRAE 52.2 at each return-air inlet for the air-handling system used during construction.

**END OF SECTION 018113.02**

## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
  2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP
- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- C. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.
- D. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Submit before Work begins.
- 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.



1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.
- C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Perform Engage a professional engineer to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
  1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
  2. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs.
  1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
  2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### **3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - c. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- B. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **3.3 PREPARATION**

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL
- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- B. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS
- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- E. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight.
1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
  2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

**END OF SECTION 024119**

## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
  1. Footings.
  2. Foundation walls.
  3. Slabs-on-grade.
  4. Suspended slabs.
  5. Concrete toppings.
  6. Building frame members.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
  1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- E. Samples: For vapor retarder.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  1. ACI 117, Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
  2. ACI 301, Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
  3. ACI 302.1, R-96 Recommended Thickness of Plastic Vapor Retarder.
  4. ACI 302.1R, R-99 Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
  5. ACI 304, Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete.
  6. ACI 305R, Hot Weather Concreting.
  7. ACI 306R, Cold Weather Concreting.
  8. ACI 309, Recommended Practice for Consolidation of Concrete.
  9. ACI 311, Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection.
  10. ACI 315, Manual of Practice for Detailing Concrete Structures.
  11. ACI 318-99, Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
  12. ACI 347, Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork.
  13. ACI 360, R-19 Design of Slabs on Grade.
  14. ACI SP-94, Shop Drawings and Submittals.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-53-99b, Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
  2. ASTM A-82-97a, Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement {Cold Drawn Steel Wire}.
  3. ASTM A-90-95a, Standard Test Method for Weight Mass of Coating on Iron and Steel Articles with Zinc or Zinc-Alloy Coatings.

4. ASTM A-185-97, Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
  5. ASTM A-615-96ae1, Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  6. ASTM C-31-M-98, Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
  7. ASTM C-33-99ae1, Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
  8. ASTM C-39-99, Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
  9. ASTM C-42-99, Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
  10. ASTM C-94-00, Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
  11. ASTM C-109-99, Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars {Using 2-in. Cube Specimens}.
  12. ASTM C-143-98, Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Mortar.
  13. ASTM C-150-99a, Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
  14. ASTM C-171-97a, Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
  15. ASTM C-172-99, Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
  16. ASTM C-173-94ae1, Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
  17. ASTM C-231-97e1, Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
  18. Curing Concrete {VOC Compliant Compound}.
  19. ASTM C-939-97, Standard Test Method for Flow of Grout for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete {Flow Cone Method}.
  20. ASTM C-1019-99, Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout.
  21. ASTM C-1090-96, Standard Test Method for Measuring Changes in Height of Cylindrical Specimens from Hydraulic Cement Grout.
  22. ASTM C-1107-99, Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout {Nonshrink}.
  23. ASTM E-1155-96, Standard Test Method for Determining FF.
  24. ASTM E-1745-97, Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs {Polyolefin Under-Slab Class A Vapor Barriers} {Formerly ASTM D-4397}.
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
1. AWS D12.1, Recommended Practices for Welding Reinforcing Steel, Metal Inserts, and Connections in Reinforced Concrete Construction.
- D. Corp of Engineers (CE):
1. CE CRD-C-572.74, Specifications for PVC Preformed Waterstops.
  2. CE CRD-C-621, Specifications for High Strength, Non-Metallic, Non-Shrink Dry Pack Structural Cement Grout.
- E. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):
1. CRSI, Manual of Standard Practice for Concrete Reinforcing Steel.
- F. United States Standards (US):
- G. US, Standards PS-1, Concrete Form Plywood.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
  2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:

1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
  - E. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
  - F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at .
    1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
      - a. Contractor's superintendent.
      - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      - d. Concrete subcontractor.
      - e. Special concrete finish subcontractor.
    2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers, shoring and reshoring procedures, vapor-retarder installation, steel reinforcement installation, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
  - B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- B. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

### 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Recycled Content: Rebar shall have an average recycled content so that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 80 percent.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- C. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
- D. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn.
- E. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
- F. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, Type 1 coated, as-drawn, plain-steel wire, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch wire length.

### 2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.

- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
  - 2. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

#### 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Regional Content: Products shall be extracted or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of project site. Products required to be regional include:
  - 1. Aggregate, fly ash, and cement.
- C. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II, gray. Supplement with the following:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
- D. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- E. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

#### 2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.

#### 2.6 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM A 820/A 820M, deformed, minimum of 1.5 inches long, and aspect ratio of 45 to 50.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fiber: Type 1, Cold-Drawn Wire:
      - 1) Bekaert; Dramix.
      - 2) Fibercon International, Inc.; Fibercon Drawn Wire.
      - 3) Nycon, Inc.; Nycon SF Type I.
      - 4) Sika Corporation; Sika Fiber SH.
    - b. Fiber: Type 2, Cut Sheet:
      - 1) Bekaert; Wiremix.
      - 2) Fibercon International, Inc.; Fibercon Cut Sheet.
      - 3) Nycon, Inc.; Nycon SF Type II.
- B. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches long.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Monofilament Micro-Fibers:
      - 1) Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Fiberstrand 150.
      - 2) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Grace MicroFiber.
      - 3) Sika Corporation; Sika Fiber PPM.
    - b. Fibrillated Micro-Fibers:
      - 1) Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Fiberstrand F.
      - 2) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Grace Fibers.
      - 3) Sika Corporation; Sika Fiber PPF.

#### 2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; MiraSTOP.
- b. CETCO; Volclay Waterstop-RX.
- c. Greenstreak; Swellstop.
- d. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex.

## 2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15.
    - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Perminator 15 mil.
    - c. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 15.
    - d. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn Type-105.
    - e. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil Class A.
- B. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

## 2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
    - b. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Kure 200.
    - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
    - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX; TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
    - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
    - f. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.

## 2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

## 2.11 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.



3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

#### 2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

#### 2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3500 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. Air Content: 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
  5. Air Content: percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- B. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. Air Content: 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
  5. Air Content: percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- C. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3500 psi at 28 days.
  2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd..
  3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. Air Content: 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
  5. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

#### 2.14 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

#### 2.15 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, and furnish batch ticket information.
  1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
  - C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
    - 1. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
  - D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  - E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
    - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
    - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
  - F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
  - G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
  - H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
  - I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
  - J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
  - K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
  - L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
- 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS
- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - 1. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
- 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS
- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
    - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
    - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
  - B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
  - C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.
- 3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES
- A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
    - 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
  - B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
  - C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

### 3.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

### 3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

### 3.7 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - 5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.8 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

### 3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
    - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
    - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
    - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
  - E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
    - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
    - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
    - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
    - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
    - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
  - F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
    - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
    - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
    - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
  - G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
    - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
    - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- 3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES
- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
    - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
  - B. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS
- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
  - B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
    - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces .
  - C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
    - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view.

2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
  - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
3. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch.

### 3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Equipment Bases and Foundations:
  1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  2. Construct concrete bases 6 inches ( ) high unless otherwise indicated; and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
  3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
  4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
  6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  7. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- C. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- C. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  1. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

### 3.14 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
    - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
    - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
    - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
  - D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
    - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
    - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
    - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
    - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
    - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
    - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
  - E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
  - F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.
- 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
  - C. Inspections:
    - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
    - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
    - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
    - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
    - 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
    - 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
    - 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  - D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
  11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
  14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

**END OF SECTION 033000**

## SECTION 035416 - HYDRAULIC CEMENT UNDERLAYMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible.
- C. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. ACI, Recommended Surface Preparation of Concrete Surfaces.
- B. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
  - 1. ADA, Coefficient of Friction (Slip-Resistance) of Floor Coverings on Accessible Routes.
  - 2. ADA, Floor Thickness Transition Slopes.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C-109-99, Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. Cube Specimens) {Compressive Strength; Portland Cement Based Self-Leveling Floor Underlayment}.
  - 2. ASTM C-190-1991 {Discontinued} Modulus of Rupture Floor Self-Leveling Concrete Underlayment.
  - 3. ASTM C-191-99, Standard Test Method for Time of Setting of Hydraulic Cement by Vicat Needle.
  - 4. ASTM C-348-97, Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars.
  - 5. ASTM D-4263-83(1999), Standard Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method {Moisture Content; Concrete}
  - 6. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning Characteristics Flame Spread/Smoke Developed; Portland Cement Based Self-Leveling Floor Underlayment}.
- D. International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI)
- E. ICRI Technical Guidelines as applicable.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
- B. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- D. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.



- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
  - A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
    - 1. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate application of underlayment with requirements of floor-covering products and adhesives, to ensure compatibility of products.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 HYDRAULIC-CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENTS
  - A. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thickness of 1/4 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Ardex; K-15 Self-Leveling Underlayment Concrete.
      - b. Dayton Superior Corporation; LeveLayer.
      - c. MAPEI Corporation; Ultraplan Easy.
      - d. Maxxon Corporation; Level-Right.
      - e. Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., an H.B. Fuller company; TEC Smooth Start TEC EZ Level.
      - f. Teck Specialties; Teck 2800.
      - g. USG Corporation; Levelrock SLC 300.
    - 2. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
    - 3. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - 4. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer, formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
  - B. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch; or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
    - 1. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
  - C. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than 70 deg F.
  - D. Reinforcement: For underlayment applied to wood substrates, provide galvanized metal lath or other corrosion-resistant reinforcement recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
  - E. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
    - 1. Primer shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.
    - 2. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- 2.2 ACCESSORIES
  - A. Sound Mat:
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Maxxon Corporation; Acousti-Mat CLP.
      - b. USG Corporation; Levelrock Brand Sound Reduction Mat.
  - B. Sound Reduction Board:
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. USG Corporation; Levelrock Brand Sound Reduction Board.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - 2. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
- C. Wood Substrates: Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks. Sand to remove coatings that might impair underlayment bond and remove sanding dust.
  - 1. Install underlayment reinforcement recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- D. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Sound Control Mat and Board: Install sound control materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the sound control materials.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
  - 1. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
  - 2. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
- D. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
- E. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
- F. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

**END OF SECTION 035416**

## SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Concrete masonry units.
  2. Decorative concrete masonry units.
  3. Mortar and grout.
  4. Steel reinforcing bars.
  5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
  6. Ties and anchors.
  7. Embedded flashing.
  8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
  9. Masonry-cell insulation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
  1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  1. ACI 530, Specifications for Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  1. ANSI A42.3, Standards for Metal Lath.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-82-97a, Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement {Cold Drawn Steel Wire; Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing}.
  2. ASTM A-615-96ae1, Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcing {Deformed Steel Reinforcing Bars}.
  3. ASTM A-641-98, Standard Specifications for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire {Wire for Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing, Class B-2, Minimum 1.50 oz. Zinc Coating per Square Foot}.
  4. ASTM A-951-98, Standard Specification for Masonry Joint Reinforcement {Horizontal Masonry Mortar Joint Reinforcing}.
  5. ASTM C-33-99ae1, Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates {Aggregate for C.M.U.}.
  6. ASTM C-90-99a, Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units {Hollow Load Bearing Standard C.M.U.}.
  7. ASTM C-140-99b, Standard Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units.
  8. ASTM C-144-99, Standard Specification for Aggregate For Masonry Mortar.
  9. ASTM C-150-99a, Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
  10. ASTM C-207-91, Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
  11. ASTM C-270-99b, Standard Test Method for Mortar for Unit Masonry {Masonry Mortar}.
  12. ASTM C-331-98be1, Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units.
  13. ASTM C-404-97, Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Mix.
  14. ASTM C-476-99, Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry.
  15. ASTM C-780-96e1, Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry {Evaluating Mortars}.

16. ASTM C-1357-98a, Standard Test Method for Evaluating Masonry Bond Strength.
  17. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness.
  18. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
  19. ASTM E-119-98, Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials {Fire Resistive Load Bearing C.M.U.}.
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
    1. NFPA 351, Fire Resistive Load Bearing C.M.U.
  - E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
  - F. U.L. 263, Fire Resistive Load Bearing C.M.U.
- 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
    1. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site.
      - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
    2. Recycled Content:
      - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. State percentages specific to product, not average recycled content amounts from manufacturing facility.
      - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - C. Samples for Initial Selection:
    1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
    2. Weep holes/vents.
- 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
    1. Masonry units.
      - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
      - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
    2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
    3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
    4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
    5. Reinforcing bars.
    6. Joint reinforcement.
    7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
  - B. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - C. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
  - B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
  - C. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - D. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
    1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness.
    2. Where masonry is to match existing, erect panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
    3. Clean one-half of exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
    4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.

5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
  - E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
    1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
    2. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 60 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
      - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in each exterior wall mockup.
      - b. Include lower corner of window opening framed with stone trim at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches wide by 16 inches high.
      - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
      - d. Include metal studs, sheathing, air barrier, veneer anchors, flashing, cavity drainage material, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
    3. Where masonry is to match existing, erect mockups adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
    4. Clean one-half of exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
    5. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
    6. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
      - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
      - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    7. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
  - F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
  - B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
  - C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
  - D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
  - E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.
- 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
    1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
    2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
  - B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
  - C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
    1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
    2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.

3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
  1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E 514 as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) ACM Chemistries; RainBloc.
      - 2) BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheapel Plus.
      - 3) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.
- C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
  1. Density Classification: Lightweight.
  2. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
  3. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.
- D. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.
  1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.
  2. Density Classification: Lightweight.
  3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions specified in "CMUs" Paragraph.
  4. Pattern and Texture:
    - a. Standard pattern, ground-face finish.
    - b. Standard pattern, split-face finish.
  5. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  6. Special Aggregate: Provide units made with aggregate matching aggregate in Architect's sample.

### 2.3 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide the following:

1. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

## 2.4 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
  1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
  3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
  4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216 or hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area).

## 2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
    - b. Lanxess Corporation; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
    - c. Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- E. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  1. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Riverton Portland Cement Lime Custom Color.
      - 2) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
      - 3) Lafarge North America Inc.; Eaglebond Portland & Lime.
      - 4) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
  2. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  3. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  4. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of mortar cement by weight.
- F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
- G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- H. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accelguard 80.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
    - c. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.
- I. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ACM Chemistries; RainBloc for Mortar.
    - b. BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Mortar Admixture.
    - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.

J. Water: Potable.

## 2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
1. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content so that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 80 percent.
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
  2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
  3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
  5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.187-inch diameter.
  6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
  7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
- D. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
1. Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches wide, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches wide or less.
  2. Tab type, either ladder or truss design, with 1 side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
  3. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches. Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous horizontal wire in the facing wythe.
- E. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel continuous wire.

## 2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
  2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
  3. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304.
  4. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
  5. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
  6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches parallel to face of veneer.
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches wide.
1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units.
  2. Where wythes do not align or are of different materials, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire ties may be used in interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Connector Section: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.060-inch-thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
    - a. 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch of masonry face, made from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Corrugated Metal Ties: Not allowed.
- E. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:



1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
  - a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.075-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
3. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.25-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
4. Contractor's Option: Unless otherwise indicated, provide any of the following types of anchors:
5. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section. Where continuous insulation occurs outboard of metal studs, provide anchor with prongs to properly transfer load to studs.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; 2 Seal Thermal Wing Nut Anchor.
    - 2) Heckmann #75 Pos-I-Tie ThermalClip.
6. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 210 with D/A 700-708.
    - 2) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; 315-D with 316.
    - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10HS.
  - b. Anchor Section: Sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 3-5/8 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
7. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) ITW Buildex; Teks Maxiseal with Climaseal finish.
    - 2) Textron Inc., Textron Fastening Systems; Elco Dril-Flex with Stalgard finish.

## 2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Dur-O-Barrier Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 3) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
      - 4) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 82 Rubberized-Asphalt Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 5) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Textroflash.
      - 6) W. R. Meadows, Inc.; Air-Shield Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 7) Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard 300.
    - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
- B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
  3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge.
  4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.
- C. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from high-density polyethylene incorporating chemical stabilizers that prevent UV degradation. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts that are designed to be built into mortar bed joints and weep collected moisture to the exterior of CMU walls and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Blok-Flash.

- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze weep vent.
      - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Cell Vents.
      - 3) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 85 Cell Vent.
      - 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Quadro-Vent.
- D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break II.
    - b. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; PolyLite MortarStop.
    - c. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
  - 2. Provide one of the following configurations:
    - a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
    - b. Strips, not less than 1-1/2 inches thick and 10 inches high, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.
    - c. Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
    - d. Sheets or strips not less than 1 inch thick and installed to full height of cavity with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.
- E. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
    - b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.

## 2.10 CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, closed-cell product extruded with an integral skin.
- B. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.

## 2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
    - b. ProSoCo, Inc.

## 2.12 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
  4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
  5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
  3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
  4. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Mix to match Architect's sample.
  3. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
    - a. Decorative CMUs.
    - b. Stone trim units.
    - c. Cast stone trim units.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
  3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
  2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

#### A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

#### B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

#### C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond or bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.

2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078446 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
  1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
  1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
  2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
  3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
  1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### 3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and concrete and masonry backup with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
  2. Embed in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
  3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than 1 anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches, around perimeter.
  5. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 32 inches o.c. horizontally with not less than 1 anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches, around perimeter.

### 3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.

2. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than .
  1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

### 3.9 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide concrete lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.10 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and through inner wythe to within 1/2 inch of the interior face of wall in exposed masonry. Where interior face of wall is to receive furring or framing, carry flashing completely through inner wythe and turn flashing up approximately 2 inches on interior face.
  3. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and 1-1/2 inches into the inner wythe. Form 1/4-inch hook in edge of flashing embedded in inner wythe.
  4. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches; with upper edge tucked under building paper or building wrap, lapping at least 4 inches.
  5. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
  6. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  7. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  8. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  9. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
  10. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
  1. Use specified weep/vent products to form weep holes.
  2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Space weep holes formed from 16 inches o.c.
  4. Fill cavities full height by placing pea gravel in cavities as masonry is laid so that at any point masonry does not extend more than 24 inches above top of pea gravel.
- F. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

- G. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products to form vents.
    - 1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.
- 3.11 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION
- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
    - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
    - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
  - B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
    - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
    - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.
- 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
  - B. Inspections: Level 1 special inspections according to the "International Building Code."
    - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
    - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
    - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
  - C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
  - D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
  - E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
  - F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
  - G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
  - H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.
  - I. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C 1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.
- 3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING
- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
  - B. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  - C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
    - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
    - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
    - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
    - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
    - 5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 6. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.
    - 7. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.

- 3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL
- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
  - B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
    - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
    - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
    - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
  - C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 042000**



## SECTION 044313.13 - ANCHORED STONE MASONRY VENEER

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Stone masonry anchored to unit masonry backup.
    - 2. Stone masonry anchored to cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.
- 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
  - B. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar and other items involving color selection.
- 1.5 REFERENCES
  - A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
    - 1. ACI 530, Specifications for Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing.
  - B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
    - 1. ANSI A42.3, Standards for Metal Lath.
  - C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
    - 1. ASTM A-82-97a, Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement {Cold Drawn Steel Wire; Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing}.
    - 2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware {Masonry Veneer Anchors}.
    - 3. ASTM A-615-96ae1, Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcing {Deformed Steel Reinforcing Bars}.
    - 4. ASTM A-641-98, Standard Specifications for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire {Wire for Horizontal Mortar Joint Reinforcing, Class B-2, Min. 1.50 oz. Zinc Coating per Square Foot}.
    - 5. ASTM C-91-99, Standard Specification for Masonry Cement.
    - 6. ASTM C-126-99, Standard Specification for Ceramic Glazed Structural Clay Facing Tile, Facing Brick, and Solid Masonry Units.
    - 7. ASTM C-144-99, Standard Specification for Aggregate For Masonry Mortar.
    - 8. ASTM C-150-99a, Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
    - 9. ASTM C-207-91, Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
    - 10. ASTM C-216-99, Standard Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale).
    - 11. ASTM C-270-99b, Standard Test Method for Mortar for Unit Masonry {Masonry Mortar}.
    - 12. ASTM C-404-97, Standard Specification for Aggregates for Mortar Mix {Grout Fill Aggregate}.
    - 13. ASTM C-476-99, Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry {Grout Fill Mix}.
    - 14. ASTM C-652-97, Standard Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale) {Hollow Brick in Structural Brick Arches}.
    - 15. ASTM C-780-96e1, Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry {Evaluating Mortars}.
    - 16. ASTM C-1088-96, Standard Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale.
    - 17. ASTM C-1357-98a, Standard Test Method for Evaluating Masonry Bond Strength.
    - 18. ASTM D-638-99, Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics {Tensile Elongation Properties; Masonry Veneer Cavity Cell Vents}.
    - 19. ASTM D-790-99, Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials {Flexural Properties Masonry Veneer Cell Vents}.
    - 20. ASTM D-1056-00, Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials-Sponge or Expanded Rubber {Brick Veneer Expansion Control Joint Filler}.
    - 21. ASTM D-1238-98, Standard Test Methods for Flow Rates of Thermoplastics by Extrusion Plastometer {Flow Rates of Masonry Veneer Cavity Cell Vents}.

- 22. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Durometer Hardness; Masonry Veneer Cavity Cell Vents}.
  - 23. ASTM E-514-90(1996)E1, Standard Test Method for Water Penetration and Leakage Through Masonry {Water Leakage Through Brick Masonry, Effectiveness of Geomatrix Mortar Stop Drainage Masonry Veneer Cavity Fill Mesh and Water Repellent Joint Mortar Additive}.
  - D. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - E. FS QQ-L-101C, Metal Lath Association Standards.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, supply sources, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and source of aggregates.
    - 1. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockups constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect approves such deviations in writing.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
    - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
    - 2. Build mockups for each type of stone masonry in sizes approximately 60 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
      - a. Include stone coping at top of mockup.
      - b. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
      - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
      - d. Include metal studs, sheathing, veneer anchors, flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
    - 3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
    - 4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
    - 5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
  - B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
  - C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, in a dry location, or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
  - D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
    - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  - B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining stone masonry face.
    - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter using coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
    - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
    - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
    - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.
  - C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
  - D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 1.10 COORDINATION
- A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements for placement of reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from single quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality for each cementitious component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
- C. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide stone of varieties and from sources complying with Section 044200 "Exterior Stone Cladding."

### 2.2 LIMESTONE

- A. Material Standard: Comply with ASTM C 568.
  1. Classification: II Medium Density.
- B. Description: Dolomitic limestone.
- C. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  1. As scheduled.
- D. Varieties and Sources: Indiana limestone quarried in Lawrence, Monroe, or Owen Counties, Indiana.
  1. Indiana Limestone Grade and Color: As scheduled.
- E. Match Architect's samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.

### 2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Coordinate requirements in this article with those in "Mortar Mixes" Article.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; natural color or white cement may be used as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
    - b. Lafarge North America Inc.; Eaglebond.
    - c. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
- E. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in stone masonry mortar.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
    - b. Solomon Colors; SGS Mortar Colors.
- F. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The), RPM International Inc.; Accelguard 80.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
    - c. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.
- G. Water: Potable.

### 2.4 VENEER ANCHORS

- A. Materials:
  1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.

2. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.
- B. Size: Sufficient to extend at least halfway, but not less than 1-1/2 inches, through stone masonry and with at least a 5/8-inch cover on exterior face.
- C. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or 0.148-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire.
1. Ties are bent in the form of loops with legs not less than 15 inches in length and with last 2 inches bent at 90 degrees.
  2. Ties are bent in the form of rectangular loops with ends bent downward for inserting into eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
  3. Ties are bent in the form of triangular loops designed to be attached to masonry joint reinforcement specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" with vertical wires passing through ties and through eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement.
- D. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dayton Superior Corporation; D/A 210 with D/A 700-708.
    - b. Heckmann Building Products, Inc; 315-D with 316.
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; DW-10HS.
  2. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
  3. Anchor Section: Sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes in top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 3-5/8 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
  4. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
  5. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.25-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized -steel wire.
- E. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc; Pos-I-Tie.
  2. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
  3. Anchor Section: Zinc-alloy barrel section with flanged head with eye and corrosion-resistant, self-drilling screw. Eye designed to receive wire tie and to serve as head for drilling fastener into framing. Barrel length to suit sheathing thickness, allowing screw to seat directly against framing with flanged head covering hole in sheathing.
  4. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.25-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized -steel wire.
- F. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 by length required to penetrate steel-stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ITW Buildex; Teks Maxiseal with Climaseal finish.
    - b. Textron Inc., Textron Fastening Systems; Elco Drill-Flex with Stalgard finish.
- 2.5 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS
- A. Flexible Flashing: For flashing unexposed to the exterior, use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated, polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Peel-N-Seal.
      - 2) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 3) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Dur-O-Barrier Thru-Wall Flashing.
      - 4) Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
      - 5) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 82 Rubberized-Asphalt Thru-Wall Flashing.

- 6) Polyguard Products, Inc.; .
  - B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
    - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
    - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond wall face, use metal flashing.
    - 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at wall face, use flexible flashing with a drip edge.
    - 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES
- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
  - B. Weep/Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
    - 1. Mesh Weep Holes/Vents: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full width of head joint and 2 inches high by thickness of stone masonry; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
      - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
        - 1) CavClear/Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Weep Vents.
        - 2) Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net Weep Vents.
  - C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
      - b. CavClear/Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
      - c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
      - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
    - 2. Provide one of the following configurations:
      - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches wide, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
      - b. Strips, not less than 1-1/2 inches thick and 10 inches wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
      - c. Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
      - d. Sheets or strips not less than 3/4 inch thick and installed to full height of cavity with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
- 2.7 MASONRY CLEANERS
- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar and grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from stone masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and stone producer.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
      - b. Hydrochemical Techniques, Inc.
      - c. Prosoco, Inc.
- 2.8 FABRICATION
- A. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
    - 1. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
    - 2. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
  - B. Cut stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings and pattern specified in "Setting Stone Masonry" Article.
    - 1. Shape stone specified to be laid in three-course, random range ashlar pattern with sawed beds.
  - C. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
  - D. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors and supports.
  - E. Carefully inspect stone at quarry or fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units before shipment.
    - 1. Clean sawed backs of stone to remove rust stains and iron particles.
  - F. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
    - 1. Thickness: 4 inches plus or minus 1/4 inch. Thickness does not include projection of pitched faces.
  - G. Finish exposed stone faces and edges to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples.

1. Finish: As indicated.

## 2.9 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride.
  2. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  3. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches required consistency. Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in the form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
  1. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type N.
  2. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces indicated to receive stone masonry, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of stone masonry.
- B. Examine substrate to verify that dovetail slots, inserts, reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and other items installed in substrates and required for or extending into stone masonry are correctly installed.
- C. Examine wall framing, sheathing, and weather-resistant sheathing paper to verify that stud locations are suitable for spacing of veneer anchors and that installation will result in a weatherproof covering.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.
- B. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.
- C. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

### 3.3 SETTING STONE MASONRY

- A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
  1. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
  2. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces. Make edges straight and true, matching similar surfaces that were shop or quarry fabricated.
  3. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.
- B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
- C. Arrange stones in range ashlar pattern with course heights as indicated, random lengths, and uniform joint widths, with offset between vertical joints as indicated.
- D. Arrange stones in broken-range ashlar pattern with uniform course heights, random lengths, and uniform joint widths.
- E. Arrange stones in three-course, random-range ashlar pattern with random course heights, random lengths (interrupted coursed), and uniform joint widths.
- F. Arrange stones in coursed rubble pattern with joint widths within tolerances indicated. Insert small stones into spaces between larger stones as needed to produce joints as uniform in width as practical.
- G. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.
- H. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

- I. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than 3/8 inch at narrowest points or more than 1/2 inch at widest points.
  - J. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
    - 1. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
    - 2. Sealing joints is specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
  - K. Install metal expansion strips in sealant joints at locations indicated. Build flanges of expansion strips into masonry by embedding in mortar between stone masonry and backup wythe. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  - L. Install embedded flashing and weep holes at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
    - 1. At stud-framed walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, up sheathing face at least 8 inches, and behind weather barrier.
    - 2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 8 inches, and extend into or through inner wythe to comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
    - 3. At concrete backing, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 8 inches, and insert in reglet. Reglets are specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
    - 4. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than 6 inches into masonry at each end.
    - 5. At sills, extend flashing not less than 4 inches at ends.
    - 6. At ends of head and sill flashing, turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
    - 7. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
    - 8. Install metal sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
    - 9. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch beyond masonry face at exterior, and turn flashing down to form a drip.
    - 10. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
    - 11. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
    - 12. Cut flexible flashing flush with wall face after completing masonry wall construction.
  - M. Coat limestone with cementitious dampproofing as follows:
    - 1. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least 12 inches above finish-grade elevations.
    - 2. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.
    - 3. Allow cementitious dampproofing formulations to cure before setting dampproofed stone. Do not damage or remove dampproofing in the course of handling and setting stone.
  - N. Place weep holes and vents in joints where moisture may accumulate, including at base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and at flashing.
    - 1. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing in stone sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
    - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c.
    - 3. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
  - O. Install vents in head joints at top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated. Use mesh weep holes/vents to form vents.
    - 1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.
- 3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES
- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
  - B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
  - C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed 1/2 inch in 20 feet or 3/4 inch in 40 feet or more.

- D. Measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as a variation of the average plane of each stone face from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.
- E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.
- F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORED STONE MASONRY

- A. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with individual wire veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors in unit masonry mortar joints or grouted cells at a distance of at least one-half of unit masonry thickness.
- B. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement by inserting pintles into eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- C. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement with vertical rods inserted through anchors and through eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- D. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with adjustable, screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors to unit masonry with two screws.
- E. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.
- F. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Anchor stone masonry to metal-stud framing with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Tie anchors to studs.
- H. Embed veneer anchors in mortar joints of stone masonry at least halfway, but not less than 1-1/2 inches, through stone masonry and with at least a 5/8-inch cover on exterior face.
  - 1. Install continuous wire reinforcement in horizontal joints and attach to seismic veneer anchors as stone is set.
- I. Space anchors to provide not less than one anchor per 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.
- J. Space anchors not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.
- K. Space anchors not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and 32 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor per 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.
- L. Anchor stone trim with stone trim anchors where indicated. Install anchors by fastening to substrate and inserting tabs and dowels into kerfs and holes in stone units. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with mortar.
- M. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.
- N. Fill collar joint with mortar as stone is set.
- O. Provide 2-inch cavity between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.
  - 1. Slope beds toward cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
  - 2. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- P. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than 1/2 inch before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.

### 3.6 POINTING

- A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep until a uniform depth is formed.
- B. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers of not more than 3/8 inch deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to it become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- C. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
  - 1. Joint Profile: Concave.



3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:
  - 1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
  - 2. Defective joints.
  - 3. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.
  - 4. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.
- B. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20, Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.
  - 6. Clean stone masonry with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Clean limestone masonry to comply with recommendations in ILLI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.8 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

- A. Excess Stone: Stack excess stone where directed by Owner for Owner's use.
- B. Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including mortar and excess or soil-contaminated sand, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in greatest dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least 2 parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 044313.13**

## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Grout.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
  - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
  - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
- E. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
  - 1. AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
  - 2. AISC "Specifications for the Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings", including the "Commentary" and Supplements thereto issued.
  - 3. AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints using ASTM A-325 or ASTM A-490 Bolts" approved by the Research Council on Riveted and Bolted Structural Joints of the Engineering Foundation.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-6-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling {General Requirements for Delivery of Rolled Steel Plates, shapes, Sheet Piling and Bars for Structural Use}.
  - 2. ASTM A-36-97ae1, Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel {Structural Steel Shapes}.
  - 3. ASTM A-53-99b, Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
  - 4. ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes, Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coating}.
  - 5. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 6. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners, Non-headed Anchor Bolts}.

7. ASTM A-325-97, Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength {High Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints}.
  8. ASTM A-490-97, Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.
  9. ASTM A-500-99, Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes {Structural Steel Grades}.
  10. ASTM A-780-93a, Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings {Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coatings}.
  11. ASTM A-992-98e1, Standard Specification for Steel for Structural Shapes For Use in Building Framing.
  12. ASTM C-109-99, Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. Cube Specimens).
  13. ASTM C-621-84(1995) Standard Test Method for Isothermal Corrosion Resistance of Refractories to Molten Glass.
  14. ASTM C-939-97, Standard Test Method for Flow of Grout for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete (Flow Cone Method).
  15. ASTM C-1019-99, Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout.
  16. ASTM C-1090-96, Standard Test Method for Measuring Changes in Height of Cylindrical Specimens from Hydraulic Cement Grout.
  17. ASTM C-1107-99, Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink).
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code".
- D. Corp of Engineers (CE):
1. CE, CRD-C-621, Specifications for High Strength, Non-Shrink, Dry Pack Structural Cement Grout.
- E. Federal Specification (FS):
1. FS TT-P-636, Steel Primer Paint.
- F. Military Specifications (MIL):
1. MIL-P-21035, Cold Galvanizing.
- G. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
1. SSPC-Paint 13.
- H. SSPC-Paint System 7.01.
- 1.6 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  2. Include embedment Drawings.
  3. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
  4. Identify members and connections of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System.
  5. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
  6. Identify demand critical welds.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data.
- 1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD, or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (AC 172).

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint or to SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8/D1.8M. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
  - 3. AISC 360.
  - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

#### 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated.
  - 2. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.
- B. Moment Connections: Type PR, partially restrained.
- C. Construction: Moment frame.

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50.
- B. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
  - 1. Weight Class: Standard or otherwise indicated on Drawings .
  - 2. Finish: Black.

### 2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain.
- C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- D. Threaded Rods: .
  - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.

- 2. Washers: carbon steel.
  - 3. Finish: .
  - E. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.
- 2.4 PRIMER
- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat specified in Section 099000 "Painting."
- 2.5 GROUT
- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- 2.6 FABRICATION
- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
    - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
    - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
    - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
    - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
    - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
  - B. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
  - C. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
  - D. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
    - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
    - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
    - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.
- 2.7 SHOP PRIMING
- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
    - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
    - 2. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
    - 3. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
  - B. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
- 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
    - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  - B. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
    - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
    - 2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.
  - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### **3.3 ERECTION**

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

**END OF SECTION 051200**

## SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. K-series steel joists.
  - 2. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
  - 3. Joist accessories.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
- B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
  - 2. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
  - 3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
  - 1. AISC, Specifications.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes, Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coating}.
  - 2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 3. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners}.
  - 4. ASTM A-325-97, Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength {High Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints}.
  - 5. ASTM A-490-97, Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.
  - 6. ASTM A-500-99, Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
  - 7. ASTM A-780-93a, Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings {Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coatings}.
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
  - 1. AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code – Steel.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. FS TT-P-636, Steel Primer Paint.
- E. Military Specifications (MIL):
  - 1. MIL-P-21035, Cold Galvanizing.
- F. Steel Joist Institute (SJI):
  - 1. SJI, Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists K-Series.
  - 2. SJI, Standard Specifications for Joist Girders.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Manufacturer certificates.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications" and "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, CJ-Series" in "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, Weight Tables and Bridging Tables, Code of Standard Practice."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
  - 1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
  - 2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live-load deflections no greater than the following:
    - a. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
    - b. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

#### 2.2 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- C. Do not camber joists.
- D. Camber joists as indicated.
- E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

#### 2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

#### 2.4 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Bridging: Fabricate as indicated and according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- C. Furnish ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
- E. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- G. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.



- 2.5 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING
- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
  4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads are applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with Research Council on Structural Connection's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

#### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
1. In addition to visual inspection, test field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, as applicable:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
    - c. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
- C. Visually inspect bolted connections.
- D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Perform additional testing to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

#### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 3.
  2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 052100**

## SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Composite floor deck.
  - 2. Noncomposite form deck.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
  - 1. AISC, Specifications.
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
- C. AISI, Specifications for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes, Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coating} {Formerly ASTM A-386}.
  - ASTM A-385-98, Standard Practice for Providing High-Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip).
  - ASTM A-611-97, Standard Specification for Structural Steel (SS), Sheet, Carbon, Cold-Rolled.
  - ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Formerly ASTM A-446-86, ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526 and ASTM A-527}.
  - ASTM A-780-93a, Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings {Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coatings}.
  - ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Sheet Metal}.
  - ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating} {Formerly ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526, ASTM A-527 and ASTM A-446-71}.
  - ASTM D-1005-95, Standard Test Method for Measurement of Dry-Film Thickness of Organic Coatings Using Micrometers {Kynar 500 Topcoat Thickness}.
  - ASTM D-1400-94, Standard Test Method for Nondestructive Measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Nonconductive Coatings Applied to a Nonferrous Metal Base {Kynar Primer Thickness}.
- E. American Welding Society (AWS):
  - AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code – Steel.
  - AWS D1.2, Specifications for Sheet Steel in Structures.
- F. Factory Mutual (FM):
  - FM Property Loss Prevention Data Sheets 1-28, Design Guide Wind Loads to Roof Systems and Insulated Steel Deck.
  - FM Global Data Sheets 1-29, Revised Issue January 2006, Roof Deck Securement and Above Roof Components.
- G. Steel Deck Institute (SDI):
- H. SDI, Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks and Roof Decks.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
  - B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- 2.2 ROOF DECK
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Cordeck.
    - 2. Epic Metals Corporation.
    - 3. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
    - 4. Verco Manufacturing Co.
    - 5. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
  - B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
    - 1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
      - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
- 2.3 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Cordeck.
    - 2. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
    - 3. Verco Manufacturing Co.
    - 4. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
  - B. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
    - 1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40 minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard gray baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
    - 2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
    - 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0474 inch.
    - 4. Span Condition: As indicated.
- 2.4 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Cordeck.
    - 2. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
    - 3. Verco Manufacturing Co.
    - 4. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.
  - B. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
    - 1. Profile Depth: 1-5/16 inches.
    - 2. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0239 inch.
    - 3. Span Condition: As indicated.
    - 4. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- E. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.
- F. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches apart in the field of roof and 6 inches apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches, and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum or butted at Contractor's option.
- D. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
  - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.
  - 3. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
  - 4. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped or butted at Contractor's option.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- B. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
  - 1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
  - 2. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 053100**

## SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Load-bearing wall framing.
  2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  3. Soffit framing.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  1. AISI, Specifications for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- B. United States Gypsum Company (USG):
  1. U.S.G., Gypsum Construction Handbook.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-568-98e1, Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled {Steel sheet uncoated thickness}.
  2. ASTM A-591-98, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Electrolytic Zinc-Coated, for Light Coating Weight Mass Applications {Electro-Galvanized Coating}.
  3. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Corrosion Resistance}.
  4. ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Coating}.
  5. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating}.
  6. ASTM C-645-00, Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members {Drywall Steel Studs and Runners}.
  7. ASTM C-955-98, Standard Specification for Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing for Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases.
  8. ASTM E-72-98, Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Test of Panels for Building Construction {Transverse Load Tests}.
- D. ASTM E-119-98, Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials {Area Separation Walls}.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
  1. Steel sheet.
  2. Expansion anchors.
  3. Power-actuated anchors.
  4. Mechanical fasteners.
  5. Vertical deflection clips.
  6. Horizontal drift deflection clips.

7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- B. Comply with AISI S230 "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ClarkDietrich.
  - 2. MarinoWARE.
  - 3. Nuconsteel; a Nucor Company.
  - 4. Steel Network, Inc. (The).

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.
    - b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft..
    - c. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height.
  - 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
  - 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - a. Upward and downward movement of 3/4 inch or as otherwise indicated on the structural drawings.
  - 5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
  - 1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
  - 2. Headers: AISI S212.
  - 3. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
- D. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90 or equivalent.

- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
    1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
    2. Coating: G60 and G90 in coastal areas.
- 2.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING
- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
  - B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
  - C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
- 2.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING
- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
  - B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
  - C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. ClarkDietrich.
      - b. MarinoWARE.
      - c. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
  - D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
    1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
    2. Flange Width: 1 inch plus twice the design gap for other applications.
- 2.6 FRAMING ACCESSORIES
- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
  - B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    1. Supplementary framing.
    2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
    3. Web stiffeners.
    4. Anchor clips.
    5. End clips.
    6. Foundation clips.
    7. Gusset plates.
    8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
    9. Joist hangers and end closures.
    10. Hole reinforcing plates.
    11. Backer plates.
- 2.7 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS
- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.



- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50.
  - C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
  - D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
  - E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
    - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
  - F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
  - B. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
  - C. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.
- 2.9 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
    - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
    - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
    - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
      - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
      - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
    - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
  - B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
  - C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
    - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
    - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
  - B. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

### 3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - 1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: As required by design, but not less than 18 inches.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
  - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
  - 2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.

1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
  - I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
  - J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
  - K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION
- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
  - B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
    1. Stud Spacing: As required by design, but not less than 18 inches.
  - C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
  - D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
    1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
    2. Connect vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to building structure.
  - E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 18 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
      - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
    2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
    3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
  - F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
  - C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
  - D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  - E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION
- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 054000**

## SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Metal ladders.
  - 4. Miscellaneous steel trim
  - 5. Metal bollards.
  - 6. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Loose steel lintels.
  - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - 2. Paint products.
  - 3. Grout.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. State percentages specific to product, not average recycled content amounts from manufacturing facility.
    - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Metal ladders.
  - 4. Miscellaneous steel trim
  - 5. Metal bollards.
  - 6. Loose steel lintels.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Association (AA):
  - 1. AA-6063-75. Aluminum Alloy and temper.
- B. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
- C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
- D. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
- E. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- F. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A-36-97ae1, Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel {Plates, Shapes and Bars}.
  2. ASTM A-53-99b, Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
  3. ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes, Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coatings} {Formerly ASTM A-386}.
  4. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  5. ASTM A-185-97, Standard Specification for Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement {Welded Wire Fabric Mesh}.
  6. ASTM A-283-98, Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates {Plates to be Bent or Cold Formed}.
  7. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Standards; Bolts, Nuts and Washers}.
  8. ASTM A-366-97e1, Standard Specification for Commercial Steel (CS) Sheet, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent) Cold-Rolled.
  9. ASTM A-385-98, Standard Practice For Providing High-Quality Zinc Hot-Dipped Coatings.
  10. ASTM A-391-98, Standard Specification for Grade 80 Alloy Steel Chain.
  11. ASTM A-501-99, Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.
  12. ASTM-A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Corrosion Resistance} {Formerly ASTM A-526}.
  13. ASTM A-663-89e1, Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Merchant Quality, Mechanical Properties {Formerly ASTM A-306 Steel Bars}.
  14. ASTM A-780-93a, Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings {Cold Galvanizing Zinc-Rich Coatings}.
  15. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating}. {Formerly ASTM A-525}
  16. ASTM B-26-99, Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings.
  17. ASTM B-85-99, Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Die Castings.
  18. ASTM B-209-96, Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plates.
  19. ASTM B-210-95, Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes.
  20. ASTM B-211-99, Standard Specifications for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Bar, Rod and Wire.
  21. ASTM B-221-96, Standard Specifications for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bar, Rod, Wire, Profiles and Tubes.
  22. ASTM B-241-99, Standard Specifications for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tubes.
  23. ASTM F-1267-91, Standard Specification for Metal, Expanded Metal {Diamond Security Mesh}.
- G. American Welding Society (AWS):
1. AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code – Steel.
  2. AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code – Aluminum.
- H. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-C49z, Bituminous Coating.
  2. FS TT-PD-615, Steel Primer Paint.
  3. FS QQ-F461, Raised Pattern Steel Floor Plate, Class 1 Carbon Steel.
- I. Military Specifications (MIL):
1. MIL-P-21035, Cold Galvanizing.
- J. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
- K. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
- L. SSPC, Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
- 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders alternating tread devices.
- B. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft..
  - 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in..
  - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 4. Alternating Tread Device Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat specified in Section 099100 "Painting."
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

### 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes recommended by partition manufacturer with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- E. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.
- F. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- G. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- H. Galvanize and prime shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- I. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## 2.7 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
  2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  1. Space siderails 16 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- diameter steel bars.
  4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
  6. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to rung.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Harsco Industrial IKG, a division of Harsco Corporation; Mebac.
      - 2) SlipNOT Metal Safety Flooring, a division of W. S. Molnar Company; SlipNOT.
  7. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.

- 8. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
  - 9. Prime ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer and the requirements of Section 099100 "Painting."
  - C. Prime exterior steel ships' ladders, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM
- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
  - B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
    - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
  - C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.
- 2.9 Prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer. METAL BOLLARDS
- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
    - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- thick steel plate.
    - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
    - 3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
  - B.
- 2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES
- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
  - B. Galvanize plates.
  - C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer. primer specified in Section 099100 "Painting."
- 2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS
- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- 2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL
- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
  - B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.
- 2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES
- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
    - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
  - B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
  - C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
    - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.



2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- 3.2 **INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**
- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for ceiling hung toilet partitions overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- 3.3 **INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS**
- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
- C. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner furnishes padlocks.
- D. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- 3.4 **INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**
- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.
- 3.5 **ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**
- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099100 "Painting."

**END OF SECTION 055000**

## SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel pipe railings.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
  - 2. Railing brackets.
  - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Delegated Design: Provide calculations demonstrating that members and fasteners will meet code required loading in the municipality where the project is located.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-36-97ae1, Standard Specifications for Carbon Structural Steel {Plates, Shapes and Bars}.
  - 2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 3. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners, Non-headed Anchor Bolts}.
  - 4. ASTM A-325-97, Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength {High Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints}.
  - 5. ASTM A-490-97, Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Steel Structural Bolts, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength.
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
  - 1. AISC "Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Steel for Buildings".
  - 2. AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
  - 3. AISC Manual of Steel Construction.
- C. American Welding Society (AWS):
  - 1. AWS D1.0, Code for Welding in Building Construction.
- D. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
  - 1. SSPC - SP6, Commercial Blast Steel Surface Preparation.
- E. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. FS TT-P-636, Steel Primer Paint.

- 1.6 Latest edition of each of above governing standards shall apply.
- 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
  - B. Welding certificates.
  - C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
  - D. Product Test Reports: For pipe and tube railings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
  - E. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
  - B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
    - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
      - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
      - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
      - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
    - 2. Infill of Guards:
      - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
      - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
    - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F.
- 2.3 METALS, GENERAL
- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
  - B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.
- 2.4 STEEL AND IRON
- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 30 percent.
  - B. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
  - C. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
    - 1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
  - D. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - E. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
  - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
  - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
  - 3. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
  - 3. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099100 "Painting."
- E. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Section 099100 "Painting."
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- H. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - 1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
  - J. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
    1. As detailed.
    2. By bending.
  - K. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
  - L. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
  - M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
  - N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
    1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
  - O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
  - P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless-steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- 2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES
- A. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    2. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    3. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    4. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - B. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
    1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
  - C. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Section 099100 "Painting."
    1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
  - A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
  - A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
  - B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
    1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
    2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
    3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.

- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
    - 1. Coat, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint, concealed surfaces of aluminum that are in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals.
  - D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
  - E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.
- 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS
- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS
- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with set screws.
  - C. Leave anchorage joint exposed with anchoring material flush with adjacent surface.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
  - B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099100 "Painting."
- 3.6 PROTECTION
- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 055213**

## SECTION 057000 - DECORATIVE METAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product, including finishing materials.
  - B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
    - 1. Recycled Content:
      - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. State percentages specific to product, not average recycled content amounts from manufacturing facility.
      - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative metal.
    - 1. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachment details.
    - 2. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
  - D. Patterns, Models, or Plaster Castings: Made from proposed patterns for each design of custom casting required.
  - E. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design including mechanical finishes.
  - F. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.
    - 1. Sections of linear shapes.
    - 2. Full-size Samples of castings and forgings.
      - a. For custom castings, submit finished Samples showing ability to reproduce detail, cast-metal color, and quality of finish. Samples may be of similar previous work.
    - 3. Samples of welded joints showing quality of workmanship and color matching of materials.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
  - B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
  - C. Welding certificates.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
  - B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
  - C. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings, of type indicated, to aluminum extrusions and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - D. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - E. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - F. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
    - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

3. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
4. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store decorative metal in a well-ventilated area, away from uncured concrete and masonry, and protected from weather, moisture, soiling, abrasion, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
- B. Deliver and store cast-metal products in wooden crates surrounded by enough packing material to ensure that products are not cracked or otherwise damaged.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with decorative metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Use materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Use materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

2.2 ALUMINUM

- A. Fabricate products from alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
- B. Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
- C. Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
- D. Battens ASTM B660, Alloy 6063-T6. Minimum Gage
- E. Tubing: ASTM B 210, Alloy 6063-T832.
- F. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003-H14.
- G. Forgings: ASTM B 247, Alloy 6061-T6.
- H. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

2.3 STAINLESS STEEL

- A. Wire Rope and Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cable Connection (The).
    - b. Carl Stahl DecorCable, Inc.
    - c. Esmet, Inc.
    - d. Feeney Wire Rope & Rigging.
    - e. Hayn Enterprises, LLC.
    - f. Johnson, C. Sherman, Co., Inc.
    - g. Loos & Co., Inc.
    - h. Ronstan International Inc.
    - i. Secosouth, Inc.
  2. Wire Rope: 7-by-7 wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
  3. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.

2.4 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Tubing: .
- C. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
- D. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Steel Sheet, Cold Rolled: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel or structural steel, exposed.



## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  - 1. Aluminum Items: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Items: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 3. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Unless otherwise indicated, select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring indicated items to other types of construction indicated.
- C. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting components and for attaching decorative metal items to other work unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable.
  - 1. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - 1. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats for Steel: Provide products that comply with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- E. Epoxy Intermediate Coat for Steel: Complying with MPI#77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
- F. Polyurethane Topcoat for Steel: Complying with MPI#72 and compatible with undercoat.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

## 2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Assemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Make up wire-ropes assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
- C. Form decorative metal to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with true curves and accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.
- E. Form simple and compound curves in bars, pipe, tubing, and extruded shapes by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces.
- F. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- G. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
- H. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- I. Provide necessary rebates, lugs, and brackets to assemble units and to attach to other work. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in shop welding. Weld behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded joints of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
- K. Provide castings that are sound and free of warp, cracks, blowholes, or other defects that impair strength or appearance. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks.

## 2.8 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative metal.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed to secure decorative metal to in-place construction.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative metal. Set products accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- C. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight, hairline joints or, where indicated, uniform reveals and spaces for sealants and joint fillers. Where cutting, welding, and grinding are required for proper shop fitting and jointing of decorative metal, restore finishes to eliminate evidence of such corrective work.
- D. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
- E. Restore protective coverings that have been damaged during shipment or installation. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at same location.
  - 1. Retain protective coverings intact; remove coverings simultaneously from similarly finished items to preclude nonuniform oxidation and discoloration.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with applicable AWS specification for procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding and requirements for welding and for finishing welded connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- G. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
  - 1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.
- B. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
- C. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099100 "Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- E. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- F. Protect finishes of decorative metal from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by decorative metal fabricator. Remove protective covering at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

**END OF SECTION 057000**

## SECTION 061053 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  2. Wood blocking and nailers.
  3. Wood furring.
  4. Utility shelving.
  5. Plywood backing panels.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  1. AISI, Fasteners.
- B. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):
  1. AITC, Glue Laminated Wood Beam Construction.
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  1. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards
  2. ANSI B 18.2.1, Lag Bolts.
  3. ANSI B 18.6.1, Wood Screws.
- D. American Plywood Association (APA):
  1. APA, Plywood Grading.
  2. APA Form No. E-30D Design / Construction Guide.
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Strength: Steel Bolts}.
  2. ASTM A-563-97, Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts {Hex Nuts}.

3. ASTM D-1413-99, Standard Test Method for Wood Preservatives by Laboratory Soil-Block Cultures {Moisture-Resistance Testing; Lumber}.
  4. ASTM D-3201-94(2003), Standard Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-Retardant Wood and Wood-Base Products.
  5. ASTM D-3345-74(1999), Standard Test Method for Laboratory Evaluation of Wood and Other Cellulosic Materials for Resistance to Termites.
  6. ASTM D-5516-03, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures.
  7. ASTM D-5664-02, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
  8. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning; Lumber and Pegboard}.
  9. ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C {Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber}.
- F. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
1. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
  2. AWPA C9, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  3. AWPA C20, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber {F.R.T. Structural Lumber}
  4. AWPA C27, Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood.
  5. AWPA C31, Fire-Retardant Treated Appendix H-Above Ground {F.R.T. Lumber Not in Contact with Ground}.
  6. AWPA P5, Fire-Retardant Treated-SBX Boron Treated {Waterborne Preservatives}.
  7. AWPA P17, Fire-Retardant Treated-Formulation FR-1 {Fire-Retardant Formulations}.
  8. AWPA UC1 and UC2, Fire-Retardant Treated Using Category System.
  9. AWPB, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber
  10. AWPB, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  11. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
- G. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS FF-N-105, Federal Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- H. National Evaluation Service, Inc. (NES) - National Evaluation Report (NER):
1. NER-303, National Evaluation Report, Evaluation of Fire-Retardant Treated Wood.
- I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA 255, Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- J. National Forrest Products Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA, Structural Values for Wood Beams, Joists and Headers.
- K. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
- L. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB):
1. SPIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- M. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
1. U.L., Building Materials Directory.
  2. U.L., Recognized Wood Components.
  3. U.L. 723, Standard Test Method For Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- N. West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (WCLIB):
1. WCLIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Preservative-treated wood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  3. Power-driven fasteners.
  4. Powder-actuated fasteners.
  5. Expansion anchors.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Required Certification: Composite wood products shall contain No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF) in the product or laminating adhesives used to fabricate the product.
- C. Certified Wood: shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- D. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- F. WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS
- G. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
  - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- H. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- I. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- J. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas.
  - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.

2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 19 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664, and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
1. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry unless otherwise indicated. Concealed blocking.
  2. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, and similar members in connection with roofing.
  3. Plywood backing panels.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
  2. Nailers.
  3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  4. Cants.
  5. Furring.
  6. Grounds.
  7. Utility shelving.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber and any of the following species:
1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  2. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
  3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  7. Northern species; NLGA.
  8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. For utility shelving, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or No. 2 Common (Sterling) grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  2. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 grade; SPIB.
  3. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  4. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  4. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 Common grade; NELMA.
  5. Northern species, No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
  6. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
- E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

- F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
  - G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.
- 2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS
- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, , fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.
- 2.5 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
    - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
  - B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
  - C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
  - D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  - E. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C 1002, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
  - F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
  - G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
    - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
    - 1. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 Sustainable Design Requirements."
  - B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
  - B. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
  - C. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
  - E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
  - F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
    - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
    - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
    - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
    - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
    - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
  - H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
  - I. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
    - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
    - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
  - J. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
    - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
    - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
    - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  - K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.2 WOOD GROUND, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION
- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
  - B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.
- 3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION
- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
  - B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal-size furring horizontally at 24 inches o.c.
  - C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
  - B. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 061053**



## SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Non-structural wall sheathing.
    - 2. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
  - A. Required Certification: Composite wood products shall contain No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF) in the product or laminating adhesives used to fabricate the product.
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- 2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Dimension Lumber: Comply with American Softwood Lumber Standard PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
    - 1. If no species is specified, provide any species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by any grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
    - 2. Grading Agency: Any grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee ([www.alsc.org](http://www.alsc.org)) and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS
  - A. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.
  - B. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.
  - C. Stud Framing ( 2 by 2 through 2 by 6 ): Interior Walls
    - 1. Species: Any allowed under referenced grading rules.
    - 2. Grade: No. 2.
  - D. Stud Framing ( 2 by 2 through 2 by 6 ): Exterior Walls
    - 1. Species: Any allowed under referenced grading rules.
    - 2. Grade: No. 1
  - E. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:

1. Lumber: S4S, No. 2 or Standard Grade.
2. Boards: Standard or No. 3.

## 2.5 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Required Certification: A minimum of 50 percent of permanently installed wood, calculated by cost, shall be obtained from forests certified by an FSC accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

## 2.6 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior sheathing.
  1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
  2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

## 2.7 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
  1. Span Rating: Not less than 48/24.
  2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch

## 2.8 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
  1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
  2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

## 2.9 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Elastomeric, medium-modulus, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant compatible with joint substrates formed by gypsum sheathing and other materials, recommended by sheathing manufacturer for application indicated and complying with requirements for elastomeric sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
  1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."

- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with screws.
  - 2. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  - 3. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - 4. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent boards without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
  - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
  - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

**END OF SECTION 061600**

## SECTION 061733 - WOOD I-JOISTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Related Sections:
  - 1. Permanent Bridging and Bracing, Headers and Supports to Frame Openings, and Sheathing: Division 06 carpentry sections.
  - 2. Framing Connectors and Hangers: Division 06 carpentry sections.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The Engineered Wood Association (APA):
  - 1. Product Report: PR-L259
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM D5055 Standard Specific for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-Joists.
    - 1. CCMC Report Number 13323-R.
- C. Forest Stewardship Council A.C. (FSC):
  - 1. STD-40-003 Standard for Multi-site Certification of Chain of Custody Operations.
  - 2. STD-40-004 V2.0 FSC Standard for Chain of Custody Certification
  - 3. STD-40-005 V2.1 Standard for Company Evaluation of FSC Controlled Wood.
- D. International Code Council Evaluation Service (ICC-ES):
  - 1. Report Number: ESR-1251.
- E. National Institute of Standards & Technology:
  - 1. Voluntary Product Standard PS 2 Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels.

#### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate work of this Section with work of other trades for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays. Comply with Section 013100 - Project Management and Coordination.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit for specific products as follows:
  - 1. Manufacturer's product data, including descriptions of component materials, dimensions of specific products, design properties, allowable spans and construction details.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 3. Catalog pages illustrating products to be incorporated into project.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings sealed by the designer indicating member types, sizes, locations and connection details.
- D. Design Data: Submit design calculations sealed by the designer for representative structural members.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. AISI, Fasteners.
- B. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):
  - 1. AITC, Glue Laminated Wood Beam Construction.
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards
  - 2. ANSI B 18.2.1, Lag Bolts.
  - 3. ANSI B 18.6.1, Wood Screws.
- D. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Plywood Grading.
  - 2. APA Form No. E-30D Design / Construction Guide.
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Strength: Steel Bolts}.
  - 2. ASTM A-563-97, Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts {Hex Nuts}.

3. ASTM D-1413-99, Standard Test Method for Wood Preservatives by Laboratory Soil-Block Cultures {Moisture-Resistance Testing; Lumber}.
  4. ASTM D-3201-94(2003), Standard Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-Retardant Wood and Wood-Base Products.
  5. ASTM D-3345-74(1999), Standard Test Method for Laboratory Evaluation of Wood and Other Cellulosic Materials for Resistance to Termites.
  6. ASTM D-5516-03, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures.
  7. ASTM D-5664-02, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
  8. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning; Lumber and Pegboard}.
  9. ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C {Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber}.
- F. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
1. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
  2. AWPA C9, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  3. AWPA C20, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber {F.R.T. Structural Lumber}
  4. AWPA C27, Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood.
  5. AWPA C31, Fire-Retardant Treated Appendix H-Above Ground {F.R.T. Lumber Not in Contact with Ground}.
  6. AWPA P5, Fire-Retardant Treated-SBX Boron Treated {Waterborne Preservatives}.
  7. AWPA P17, Fire-Retardant Treated-Formulation FR-1 {Fire-Retardant Formulations}.
  8. AWPA UC1 and UC2, Fire-Retardant Treated Using Category System.
  9. AWPB, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber
  10. AWPB, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  11. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
- G. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS FF-N-105, Federal Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- H. National Evaluation Service, Inc. (NES) - National Evaluation Report (NER):
1. NER-303, National Evaluation Report, Evaluation of Fire-Retardant Treated Wood.
- I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA 255, Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- J. National Forrest Products Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA, Structural Values for Wood Beams, Joists and Headers.
- K. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
- L. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB):
1. SPIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- M. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
1. U.L., Building Materials Directory.
  2. U.L., Recognized Wood Components.
  3. U.L. 723, Standard Test Method For Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- N. West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (WCLIB):
- 1.6 WCLIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- 1.7 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS
- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Contract Conditions and Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit manufacturer storage and installation instructions.
- C. Source Quality Control: Submit documentation verifying that components and materials specified in this Section are from a single manufacturer.
- 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Contract Conditions and Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures.
1. Warranty Documentation: Submit warranty documents specific
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Designer Qualification: A professional structural engineer registered in the state where the project is located.

- 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING
- A. Delivery and Acceptance Requirements: Deliver materials in manufacturers original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact. Unload material in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
  - B. Storage and Handling Requirements: Handle and store materials in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Protect from exposure to harmful environmental conditions.
  - C. Packaging Waste Management:
    - 1. Separate waste materials for reuse and recycling in accordance with Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
    - 2. Remove packaging materials from site and dispose of at appropriate recycling facilities.
    - 3. Collect and separate for disposal packaging material in appropriate onsite bins for recycling.
    - 4. Remove:
      - a. Pallets from site.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- A. WOOD I-JOISTS MANUFACTURER:
    - 1. RedBuilt, LLC
      - a. East Division: 614-270-6919
      - b. Central Division: 740-368-4228
      - c. West Division: 310-995-4050
  - B. Substitution Limitations:
    - 1. Substitutions: In accordance with Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures.
  - C. Description:
    - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
      - a. Comply with ICC-ES Report Number ESR-1251.
      - b. Comply with CCMC Report Number 13323-R.
      - c. Comply with APA Product Report PR-L259.
    - 2. Sustainability Characteristics:
      - a. Comply with the following FSC Standards: 1) STD-40-003.
        - 1) STD-40-004 V2.0.
        - 2) STD-40-005 V2.1.
    - 3. Compatibility:
      - a. Ensure components and materials are compatible with specific accessories and adjacent materials.
  - D. C. Design Criteria:
    - 1. 1. Design Live and Dead Load for Floors: of span or a maximum of psf (kg/m<sup>2</sup>) with live load deflection limited to 1/480 inches of live load deflection and total load deflection limited to 1/360 of span or a maximum of inches of total load deflection.
    - 2. 2. Design Live and Dead Load for Roofs: of span or a maximum of psf (kg/m<sup>2</sup>) with live load deflection limited to 1/480 inches of live load deflection and total load deflection limited to 1/360 of span or a maximum of inches of total load deflection.
    - 3. 3. Joist Depth: Not less than inches.
    - 4. 4. Assembly Fire Resistance Rating: 1 hour.
- 2.2 MATERIALS
- A. I-Joist: To ASTM D5055.
    - 1. Type: RFPI 400.
    - 2. Height: per Structural Drawings
    - 3. Flange Material: Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL).
    - 4. Web Material: Oriented Strand Board (OSB) in accordance with PS 2.
    - 5. Adhesive: Meets requirements of ASTM D5055.
- 2.3 ACCESSORIES
- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, sized to suit application.
    - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
      - a. Simpson Strong-Tie.
      - b. USP Structural Connectors.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions: Verify that conditions of substrates previously installed under other sections or contracts are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturers instructions prior to engineered wood I-joist installation.
  - 1. Inform Architect of unacceptable conditions immediately upon discovery.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unacceptable conditions have been remedied and after receipt of written approval from Owner Architect.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate I-joist installation with work of other trades for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays.
- B. Comply with manufacturers product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product carton instructions, for installation.
- C. Install I-joists plumb, level and as indicated.
- D. Fasten joists to supporting framing as recommended by the I-joist manufacturer and hanger manufacturer.
- E. Provide temporary bracing as recommended by the manufacturer to hold joists in position until permanently secured.
- F. Cut openings in joist webs only as allowed by the manufacturer.

### **3.3 SITE TOLERANCES**

- A. Joists: Not more than 1/2 inch from indicated position.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Perform cleanup in accordance with Section 017400 - Cleaning and Waste Management
- B. Upon completion and verification of performance of installation, remove surplus materials, rubbish, tools and equipment in accordance with Section 017423 - Final Cleaning.
- C. Waste Management:
  - 1. Coordinate recycling of waste materials with in accordance with Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
  - 2. Remove recycling containers and bins from site.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 061753 - SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood roof trusses.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum specific gravity. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and specific gravity.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. AISI, Fasteners.
- B. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):
  - 1. AITC, Glue Laminated Wood Beam Construction.
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards
  - 2. ANSI B 18.2.1, Lag Bolts.
  - 3. ANSI B 18.6.1, Wood Screws.
- D. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Plywood Grading.
  - 2. APA Form No. E-30D Design / Construction Guide.
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Strength: Steel Bolts}.
  - 2. ASTM A-563-97, Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts {Hex Nuts}.
  - 3. ASTM D-1413-99, Standard Test Method for Wood Preservatives by Laboratory Soil-Block Cultures {Moisture-Resistance Testing; Lumber}.
  - 4. ASTM D-3201-94(2003), Standard Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-Retardant Wood and Wood-Base Products.
  - 5. ASTM D-3345-74(1999), Standard Test Method for Laboratory Evaluation of Wood and Other Cellulosic Materials for Resistance to Termites.
  - 6. ASTM D-5516-03, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures.
  - 7. ASTM D-5664-02, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
  - 8. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning; Lumber and Pegboard}.
  - 9. ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C {Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber}.
- F. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
  - 1. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
  - 2. AWPA C9, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  - 3. AWPA C20, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber {F.R.T. Structural Lumber}
  - 4. AWPA C27, Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood.
  - 5. AWPA C31, Fire-Retardant Treated Appendix H-Above Ground {F.R.T. Lumber Not in Contact with Ground}.
  - 6. AWPA P5, Fire-Retardant Treated-SBX Boron Treated {Waterborne Preservatives}.
  - 7. AWPA P17, Fire-Retardant Treated-Formulation FR-1 {Fire-Retardant Formulations}.
  - 8. AWPA UC1 and UC2, Fire-Retardant Treated Using Category System.
  - 9. AWPB, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber
  - 10. AWPB, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  - 11. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
- G. Federal Specifications (FS):



1. FS FF-N-105, Federal Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- H. National Evaluation Service, Inc. (NES) - National Evaluation Report (NER):
  1. NER-303, National Evaluation Report, Evaluation of Fire-Retardant Treated Wood.
- I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  1. NFPA 255, Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- J. National Forrest Products Association (NFPA):
  1. NFPA, Structural Values for Wood Beams, Joists and Headers.
- K. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
- L. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB):
  1. SPIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- M. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  1. U.L., Building Materials Directory.
  2. U.L., Recognized Wood Components.
  3. U.L. 723, Standard Test Method For Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- N. West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (WCLIB):
- O. WCLIB, Construction Grade Lumber.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MANUFACTURER:
  - A. Basis of Design: RedBuilt, LLC
    1. East Division: 614-270-6919
    2. Central Division: 740-368-4228
    3. West Division: 310-995-4050
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
  - B. Structural Performance: Metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall be capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
    1. Maximum Deflection under Design Loads:
      - a. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of span.
  - C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of TPI 1, TPI DSB, and SBCA BCSI.
- 2.3 DIMENSION LUMBER
  - A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee (ALSC) Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
    1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
    2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
    3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S.
    4. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
  - B. Minimum Chord Size for Roof Trusses: 2 by 6 inches nominal for both top and bottom chords.
- 2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD
  - A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
    1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
    2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use for interior locations where exterior type is not indicated.
  - B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
  - C. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. For exposed trusses and bracing indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- D. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- 2.5 **FASTENERS**
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
  2. Where trusses are exposed to weather, in ground contact, made from pressure-preservative treated wood, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- 2.6 **METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES**
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  3. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  4. USP Structural Connectors.
- C. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall comply with or exceed those of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- D. Truss Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. Tie fastens to one side of truss, top plates, and side of stud below.
- E. Roof Truss Clips: Angle clips for bracing bottom chord of roof trusses at non-load-bearing walls, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. Clip is fastened to truss through slotted holes to allow for truss deflection.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 **INSTALLATION**
- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
  - B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
  - C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
  - D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
  - E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
  - F. Space trusses as indicated; adjust and align trusses in location before permanently fastening.
  - G. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
  - H. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
  - I. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
  - J. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not comply with requirements.
1. Damaged trusses may be repaired according to truss repair details signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for truss design, when approved by Architect.
- 3.2 **REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**
- A. Protect wood trusses from weather. If, despite protection, wood trusses become wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 061753**

## SECTION 061800 - GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes framing using structural glued-laminated timber.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
  - 2. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
  - 3. For connectors. Include installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
  - 2. Indicate species and laminating combination.
  - 3. Include large-scale details of connections.
- C. Samples: Full width and depth, 24 inches long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of structural glued-laminated timber.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. AISI, Fasteners.
- B. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC):
  - 1. AITC, Glue Laminated Wood Beam Construction.
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards
  - 2. ANSI B 18.2.1, Lag Bolts.
  - 3. ANSI B 18.6.1, Wood Screws.
- D. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Plywood Grading.
  - 2. APA Form No. E-30D Design / Construction Guide.
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-307-97, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength {Strength: Steel Bolts}.
  - 2. ASTM A-563-97, Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts {Hex Nuts}.
  - 3. ASTM D-1413-99, Standard Test Method for Wood Preservatives by Laboratory Soil-Block Cultures {Moisture-Resistance Testing; Lumber}.
  - 4. ASTM D-3201-94(2003), Standard Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-Retardant Wood and Wood-Base Products.
  - 5. ASTM D-3345-74(1999), Standard Test Method for Laboratory Evaluation of Wood and Other Cellulosic Materials for Resistance to Termites.
  - 6. ASTM D-5516-03, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures.
  - 7. ASTM D-5664-02, Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
  - 8. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning; Lumber and Pegboard}.
  - 9. ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C {Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber}.

- F. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
    - 1. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
    - 2. AWPA C9, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
    - 3. AWPA C20, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber {F.R.T. Structural Lumber}
    - 4. AWPA C27, Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood.
    - 5. AWPA C31, Fire-Retardant Treated Appendix H-Above Ground {F.R.T. Lumber Not in Contact with Ground}.
    - 6. AWPA P5, Fire-Retardant Treated-SBX Boron Treated {Waterborne Preservatives}.
    - 7. AWPA P17, Fire-Retardant Treated-Formulation FR-1 {Fire-Retardant Formulations}.
    - 8. AWPA UC1 and UC2, Fire-Retardant Treated Using Category System.
    - 9. AWPB, Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber
    - 10. AWPB, Pressure-Treated Plywood.
    - 11. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
  - G. Federal Specifications (FS):
    - 1. FS FF-N-105, Federal Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
  - H. National Evaluation Service, Inc. (NES) - National Evaluation Report (NER):
    - 1. NER-303, National Evaluation Report, Evaluation of Fire-Retardant Treated Wood.
  - I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
    - 1. NFPA 255, Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - J. National Forrest Products Association (NFPA):
    - 1. NFPA, Structural Values for Wood Beams, Joists and Headers.
  - K. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
  - L. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB):
    - 1. SPIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
  - M. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
    - 1. U.L., Building Materials Directory.
    - 2. U.L., Recognized Wood Components.
    - 3. U.L. 723, Standard Test Method For Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - N. West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (WCLIB):
  - O. WCLIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Research/Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber, from ICC-ES.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An AITC- or APA-EWS-licensed firm.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.
  - B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113.
  - B. Required Certification: Composite wood products shall contain No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF) in the product or laminating adhesives used to fabricate the product.
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors.
  - B. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in AITC 117 or determined according to ASTM D 3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.3 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with AITC A190.1 and AITC 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
  - 2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
  - 3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with AITC A190.1.
- B. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber: Douglas fir-larch or Southern pine in grades needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Species and Grades for Beams:
  - 1. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Douglas fir-larch or southern pine, 24F-1.8E.
  - 2. Lay-up: Balanced.
- D. Appearance Grade: Architectural, complying with AITC 110.
  - 1. For Premium and Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110. For Premium appearance grade, use clear wood inserts, of matching grain and color, for filling voids and knot holes more than 1/4 inch wide.

### 2.4 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, comply with AWPA U1, Use Category 1.
  - 1. Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
  - 2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.
- B. Preservative: One of the following:
  - 1. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
  - 2. Pentachlorophenol in light petroleum solvent.
  - 3. Copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.
  - 4. Ammoniacal zinc copper arsenate (ACZA) in a water solution.
  - 5. Chromated copper arsenate (CCA) in a water solution.
  - 6. Ammoniacal copper quat Type A (ACQ-C) in a water solution.
  - 7. Propiconazole tebuconazole imidacloprid (PTI) in a water emulsion.
- C. After dressing members, apply a copper naphthenate field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch.

### 2.5 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  - 2. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 3. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Fabricate beam seats from steel with 3/8-inch bearing plates, 3/4-inch-diameter-by-12-inch-long deformed bar anchors, and 0.239-inch side plates.
- C. Fabricate beam hangers from steel with 0.179-inch stirrups and 0.239-inch top plates.
- D. Fabricate hinge connectors from steel with 0.179-inch side plates and 3/4-inch top and bottom plates.
- E. Fabricate strap ties from steel, 2-1/2 inches wide by 0.179 inch thick.
- F. Fabricate tie rods from round steel bars with upset threads connected with forged-steel turnbuckles complying with ASTM A 668/A 668M.
- G. Provide bolts, 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; nuts complying with ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- H. Provide shear plates, 2-5/8 inches in diameter, complying with ASTM D 5933.
- I. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A 575, Grade M 1020.
  - 3. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.
- J. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.
- K. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
  - 1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planning and surfacing marks.
- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
- E. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for preservative-treated wood where treatment included a water repellent.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - 1. Lift with padded slings and protect corners with wood blocking
  - 2. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide 1/2-inch clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends 3 inches; and do not embed more than 4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- D. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.
  - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
  - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planning or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
  - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
    - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Install timber connectors as indicated.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
  - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
  1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
  2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

**END OF SECTION 061800**

## SECTION 062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior trim, including non-fire-rated interior door frames.
  - 2. Interior plywood

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
  - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical-treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
    - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - 2. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used on the interior of the building.
    - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
  - 3. No Added Urea-Formaldehyde data. Provide for any permanently installed composite wood used on the interior of the building:
    - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating that the product has No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF).
    - b. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating that composite wood or agrifiber products or adhesives used to fabricate the product have No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF)
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards.
  - 2. ANSI B 18.2.1, Standards for Lag Bolts.
  - 3. ANSI B 18.6.1, Standards for Wood Screws.
- B. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Plywood Grading.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C-501-84(1996), Standard Test Method for Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Ceramic Tile by the Taber Abraser.
  - 2. ASTM D-256-97, Standard Test Method for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics.
  - 3. ASTM D-570-98, Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics.
  - 4. ASTM D-638-99, Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.
  - 5. ASTM D-2583-95, Standard Test Method for Indention Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor.



- 6. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- D. Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI):
  - 1. AWI, Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Guide Specifications and Quality Certifications Standards.
- E. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. FS FF-N-105, Federal Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- F. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
  - 1. NEMA, Standards for Laminated Plastic.
  - 2. NEMA LD3-3.3
  - 3. NEMA LD3-3.5
  - 4. NEMA LD3-3.6
  - 5. NEMA LD3-3.9
- G. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF):
  - 1. NSF Standard #51, Testing of Plastic materials and Components Used Food Equipment.
- H. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (SPIB):
  - 1. SPIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- I. West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (WCLIB):
  - 1.6 WCLIB, Construction Grade Lumber.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
  - B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.
- 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS
  - A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
  - B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
    - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
    - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL
  - A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and the following grading rules:
    - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association, "Standard Grading Rules for Northeastern Lumber."
    - 2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association, "Rules for the Measurement and Inspection of Hardwood & Cypress."
    - 3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority, "Standard Grading Rules for Canadian Lumber."
    - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, "Standard Grading Rules for Southern Pine Lumber."
    - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau, Standard No. 17, "Grading Rules for West Coast Lumber."
    - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association, "Western Lumber Grading Rules."
  - B. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
    - 1. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.
  - C. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113.

- D. Required Certification: A minimum of 50% of wood, calculated by cost, shall be obtained from forests certified by an FSC accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- E. Required Certification: Composite wood products shall contain No Added Urea-Formaldehyde (NAUF) in the product or laminating adhesives used to fabricate the product.

## 2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: For applications indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and comply with testing requirements; testing by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Kiln dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent respectively.
- C. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use organic resin chemical formulations that do not contain colorants, and provide materials that do not have marks from spacer sticks on exposed face.
- D. Do not use material that does not comply with requirements for untreated material or is warped or discolored.
- E. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
  - 2. For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
- F. Application: Where indicated.

## 2.3 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
  - 1. Species and Grade: As scheduled.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 10 percent.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Gluing for Width: Not allowed.
  - 5. Face Surface: .
  - 6. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
- B. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish):
  - 1. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 2. Finger Jointing: Allowed.
  - 3. Face Surface: .
- C. Hardwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA HWM 2, N-grade wood moldings made to patterns included in WMMPA HWM 1.
  - 1. Species: As scheduled.
  - 2. Kiln-dried softwood or MDF, with exposed surfaces veneered with species indicated, may be used in lieu of solid wood.
  - 3. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 4. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 5. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
- D. Hardwood Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish): Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
  - 1. Hardwood Moldings: WMMPA HWM 2, P-grade.
    - a. Species: Aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, tupelo, or yellow poplar.
    - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 2. Finger Jointing: Allowed.
- E. Softwood Moldings and Trim within Living Units: Finger jointed pine for window sills, door and base casings; MDF for all other trim.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
- B. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members except those with ends exposed in finished work:
  - 1. Interior standing and running trim except shoe and crown molds.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements, or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - 1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - 4. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

### 3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Miter at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
  - 1. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
  - 2. Install trim after gypsum-board joint finishing operations are completed.
  - 3. Install without splitting; drill pilot holes before fastening where necessary to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes, if any.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION 062023**

## SECTION 066400 - PLASTIC PANELING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Plastic sheet paneling for use in janitor closets and elsewhere as indicated.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - B. Samples: For plastic paneling, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- 1.4 REFERENCES
  - A. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Panels are to comply with ASTM E-84/NFPA 225/UL723, Standard Method of Testing for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Testing Agency: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
  - A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
  - A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- 2.2 MANUFACTURERS
  - A. Source Limitations: Obtain plastic paneling and trim accessories from single manufacturer.
- 2.3 PLASTIC SHEET PANELING
  - A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Paneling: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D 5319. Panels shall be USDA accepted for incidental food contact.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Composites, Inc.
      - b. Marlite.
      - c. Nudo Products, Inc.
    - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows when tested by a qualified testing agency according to ASTM E 84. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
    - 3. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.12 inch.
    - 4. Surface Finish: Molded pebble texture.
    - 5. Color: As scheduled.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard two-piece, snap-on vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.
  - 1. Color: Match panels.
- B. Exposed Fasteners: Nylon drive rivets recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Mounting Splines: Continuous, H-shaped aluminum extrusions designed to fit into grooves routed in edges of factory-laminated panels and to be fastened to substrate.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- E. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, neutral-curing silicone sealant recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove wallpaper, vinyl wall covering, loose or soluble paint, and other materials that might interfere with adhesive bond.
- B. Prepare substrate by sanding high spots and filling low spots as needed to provide flat, even surface for panel installation.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair adhesive bond, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.
- D. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- E. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel joints to provide equal panels at ends of walls not less than half the width of full panels.
  - 1. Mark plumb lines on substrate at trim accessory and panel joint locations for accurate installation.
  - 2. Locate trim accessories and panel joints to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.
- C. Install panels with fasteners. Layout fastener locations and mark on face of panels so that fasteners are accurately aligned.
  - 1. Drill oversized fastener holes in panels and center fasteners in holes.
  - 2. Apply sealant to fastener holes before installing fasteners.
- D. Install factory-laminated panels using concealed mounting splines in panel joints.
- E. Install trim accessories with adhesive. Do not fasten through panels.
- F. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels, and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.
- G. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- H. Maintain uniform space between adjacent panels and between panels and floors, ceilings, and fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- I. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

**END OF SECTION 066400**

## SECTION 071113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Hot-applied asphalt dampproofing.
  2. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
  3. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
  1. AASHTO M 148, Type 1 Class A & B VOC Compliant Acrylic Concrete Sealer {Pit Waterproofing Sealer on Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  1. ACI 302.1 R-96, Recommended Thickness of Plastic Vapor Retarder.
  2. ACI 308, Recommended Practice for Placing Hydraulic Cement {Concrete Pit Waterproofing Filler}.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM B-117-84: Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (fog) Apparatus {Resistance to Salt Spray}.
  2. ASTM C-191-99, Standard Test Method for Time of Setting of Hydraulic Cement by Vicat Needle {Setting Time; Pit Waterproofing}.
  3. ASTM C-309-98a, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete {VOC Compliant Compound; Pit Waterproofing Sealer}.
  4. ASTM C-348-97, Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars {Flexural Strength; Hydraulic-Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  5. ASTM C-469-94, Standard Test Method for Static Modulus of Elasticity and Poisson's Ratio of Concrete in Compression {Modulus of Elasticity; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  6. ASTM C-666-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing {Weather Resistance; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  7. ASTM C-836-95, Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for use with Separate Wearing Course {Waterproofing Membrane; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  8. ASTM C-882-99, Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems Used With Concrete By Slant Shear {Bond Strength; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  9. ASTM C-928-99a, Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Materials for Concrete Repairs {Cementitious Concrete Repairs; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  10. ASTM C-1127-95, Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral Wearing Surface {Dampproofing}.
  11. ASTM C-1315-95, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete {Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds; Concrete Sealer and Hardener, and Pit Waterproofing Sealing}.
  12. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension {Tensile Strength and Elongation-Ultimate Failure; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane, and Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  13. ASTM D-781-1983 (Former, Discontinued 1983), Method of Test for Puncture and Stiffness of Paperboard, Corrugated and Solid Fiberboard {Subgrade Waterproofing Protection Board}.
  14. ASTM D-903-98, Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds {Adhesion to Substrate; Water Repellent Coating and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.

15. ASTM D-1187-97, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal. {Dampproofing}.
  16. ASTM D-1353-96, Standard Test Method for Nonvolatile Matter in Volatile Solvents for Use in Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products.
  17. ASTM D-1709-98, Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method {Impact Resistance; Vapor Barrier}.
  18. ASTM D-1970-00, Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection {Adhesion to Substrate; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  19. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Durometer Hardness; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  20. ASTM D-4414-95, Standard Practice for Measurement of Wet Film Thickness by Notch Gages {Wet Mils. Thickness}.
  21. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission Materials {Permeance; Subgrade Waterproofing, Vapor Barrier, and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  22. ASTM E-154-99, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover {Tensile Strength; Vapor Barriers}.
  23. ASTM E-1643-98, Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs {Installation; Vapor Barriers}.
  24. ASTM E-1745-97, Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs {Formerly ASTM D4397-96} {Under-Slab Vapor Barrier Plastic Polyolefin Sheeting}.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, Specifications for Resistance to Wind Driven Rain.
- E. FS, SS-W-110C, Resistance to Severe Accelerated Climatic Conditions {Water Repellent Coating}.
- 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
  - B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course molded-sheet drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.
  - B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.
- 2.2 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    1. APOC, Inc.; a division of Gardner-Gibson.
    2. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Sonneborn Brand Products.
    3. Brewer Company (The).
    4. ChemMasters, Inc.
    5. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    6. Gardner-Gibson, Inc.
    7. Henry Company.
    8. Karnak Corporation.
    9. Koppers Inc.
    10. Malarkey Roofing Products.
    11. Meadows, W. R., Inc.
  - B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
  - C. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
  - D. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.
  - E. VOC Content: Comply with maximum limits indicated in Section 018113.
  - F. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."



- 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS
- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
  - B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
  - C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
    - 1. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668, Type I.
  - E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
  - F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, 1/8-inch- thick, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.
- 2.4 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS
- A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Section 334600 "Subdrainage."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous dampproofing work.
    - 1. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
  - B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
  - B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.
  - C. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.
- 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL
- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
    - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
    - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
  - B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches over outside face of footing.
    - 1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
    - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
  - C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
    - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
    - 2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch onto shelf angles supporting veneer.

- 3.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING
- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. for second coat.
  - B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. for second coat.
  - C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft..
  - D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft..
  - E. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft..
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE
- A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
    - 1. Install protection course on same day of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.
- 3.6 CLEANING
- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 071113**

## SECTION 071416 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Polyurethane waterproofing.
  - 2. Latex-rubber waterproofing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used on the interior of the building.
    - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show locations and extent of waterproofing.
  - 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
  - 3. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
  - 1. Membrane-reinforcing fabric, 8 by 8 inches.
  - 2. Drainage panel, 4 by 4 inches.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
  - 1. AASHTO M 148, Type 1 Class A & B VOC Compliant Acrylic Concrete Sealer {Pit Waterproofing Sealer on Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. ACI 302.1 R-96, Recommended Thickness of Plastic Vapor Retarder.
  - 2. ACI 308, Recommended Practice for Placing Hydraulic Cement {Concrete Pit Waterproofing Filler}.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM B-117-84: Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (fog) Apparatus {Resistance to Salt Spray}.
  - 2. ASTM C-191-99, Standard Test Method for Time of Setting of Hydraulic Cement by Vicat Needle {Setting Time; Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 3. ASTM C-309-98a, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete {VOC Compliant Compound; Pit Waterproofing Sealer}.
  - 4. ASTM C-348-97, Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars {Flexural Strength; Hydraulic-Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 5. ASTM C-469-94, Standard Test Method for Static Modulus of Elasticity and Poisson's Ratio of Concrete in Compression {Modulus of Elasticity; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 6. ASTM C-666-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing {Weather Resistance; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 7. ASTM C-836-95, Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for use with Separate Wearing Course {Waterproofing Membrane; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  - 8. ASTM C-882-99, Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems Used With Concrete By Slant Shear {Bond Strength; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.

9. ASTM C-928-99a, Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Materials for Concrete Repairs {Cementitious Concrete Repairs; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  10. ASTM C-1127-95, Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral Wearing Surface {Dampproofing}.
  11. ASTM C-1315-95, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete {Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds; Concrete Sealer and Hardener, and Pit Waterproofing Sealing}.
  12. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension {Tensile Strength and Elongation-Ultimate Failure; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane, and Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  13. ASTM D-781-1983 (Former, Discontinued 1983), Method of Test for Puncture and Stiffness of Paperboard, Corrugated and Solid Fiberboard {Subgrade Waterproofing Protection Board}.
  14. ASTM D-903-98, Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds {Adhesion to Substrate; Water Repellent Coating and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  15. ASTM D-1187-97, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal. {Dampproofing}.
  16. ASTM D-1353-96, Standard Test Method for Nonvolatile Matter in Volatile Solvents for Use in Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products.
  17. ASTM D-1709-98, Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method {Impact Resistance; Vapor Barrier}.
  18. ASTM D-1970-00, Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection {Adhesion to Substrate; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  19. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Durometer Hardness; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  20. ASTM D-4414-95, Standard Practice for Measurement of Wet Film Thickness by Notch Gages {Wet Mills. Thickness}.
  21. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission Materials {Permeance; Subgrade Waterproofing, Vapor Barrier, and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  22. ASTM E-154-99, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover {Tensile Strength; Vapor Barriers}.
  23. ASTM E-1643-98, Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs {Installation; Vapor Barriers}.
  24. ASTM E-1745-97, Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs {Formerly ASTM D4397-96} {Under-Slab Vapor Barrier Plastic Polyolefin Sheetting}.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, Specifications for Resistance to Wind Driven Rain.
- E. FS, SS-W-110C, Resistance to Severe Accelerated Climatic Conditions {Water Repellent Coating}.
- 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
1. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F above dew point.
  2. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during application and curing period.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace waterproofing that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Installer's Special Warranty: Specified form, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of two years.
1. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, insulation, pedestals, and pavers on plaza decks.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations for Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials, protection course, and molded-sheet drainage panels from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."

### 2.2 SINGLE-COMPONENT POLYURETHANE WATERPROOFING

- A. Single-Component, Reinforced, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: ASTM C 836/C 836M.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems; Sonoshield HLM 5000.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc; CCW-525-H.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with one another and with waterproofing.
  - 1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Manufacturer's standard primer, sealer, or surface conditioner; factory-formulated acrylic latex, polyurethane, or epoxy.
- C. Membrane-Reinforcing Fabric: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric, manufacturer's standard weight.
- D. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
- E. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent polyurethane sealant, compatible with waterproofing; ASTM C 920, Type M, Class 25 or greater; Grade NS for sloping and vertical applications and Grade P for deck applications; Use NT exposure; and as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions.
  - 1. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene foam.

### 2.4 PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Henry Company; Asphalt Protection Board.
    - b. Soprema, Inc; Sopraboard.
    - c. W. R. Meadows, Inc; Protection Course.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/8 inch, nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch, nominal, elsewhere.
  - 3. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 2.5 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 sieve laminated to one side of the core and a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 18 gpm per ft..
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. American Hydrotech, Inc; Hydrodrain 400.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW MiraDRAIN 6200.
    - c. Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn; Hydroduct 220.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
- D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- E. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections, and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.

### 3.3 PREPARATION AT TERMINATIONS, PENETRATIONS, AND CORNERS

- A. Prepare surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, sleeves, and corners according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M and ASTM C 1471.
- B. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 3.4 JOINT AND CRACK TREATMENT

- A. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M and ASTM C 1471. Before coating surfaces, remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.
  - 2. Apply bond breaker on sealant surface, beneath preparation strip.
  - 3. Prime substrate along each side of joint and apply a single thickness of preparation strip at least 6 inches wide along each side of joint. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat.

### 3.5 WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

- A. Apply waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M and ASTM C 1471.
- B. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
- C. Apply primer over prepared substrate unless otherwise instructed in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
- D. Unreinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.
  - 1. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases and pinholes, with a dry film thickness of 60 mils.
  - 2. Apply waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
  - 3. Verify manufacturer's recommended wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft..
- E. Install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing before starting subsequent construction operations.
  - 1. For horizontal applications, install protection course loose laid over fully cured membrane.
  - 2. For vertical applications, set protection course in nominally cured membrane, which will act as an adhesive. If membrane cures before application of protection course, use adhesive.
  - 3. Molded-sheet drainage panels may be used in place of a separate protection course for vertical applications when approved in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 3.6 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive or another method that does not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
  - 1. For vertical applications, install before installing drainage panels.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections:
  - 1. Testing agency shall verify thickness of waterproofing during application for each 600 sq. ft. of installed waterproofing or part thereof.
  - 2. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
    - a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches with a minimum depth of 1 inch and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches. Maintain 2 inches of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
    - b. Flood each area for 48 hours.
    - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a full-time site representative qualified by waterproofing membrane manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components and to furnish daily reports to Architect.
- C. If test results or inspections show waterproofing does not comply with requirements, remove and replace or repair the waterproofing as recommended in writing by manufacturer, and make further repairs after retesting and inspecting until waterproofing installation passes.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- D. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 071416**

## SECTION 071900 - WATER REPELLENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
- Concrete unit masonry.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Performance: Water repellents shall meet performance requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation.
- Water Repellents: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 80 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
- Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 140.
- C. Water-Vapor Transmission: Comply with one or both of the following:
- Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 96/E 96M.
  - Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM D 1653.
- D. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Minimum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 514.
- E. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water-repellent properties after 2500 hours of weathering according to ASTM G 154 in comparison to water-repellent-treated specimens before weathering.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
  - Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
- VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used on the interior of the building.
    - Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
- C. Samples: For each type of water repellent and substrate indicated, 12 by 12 inches in size, with specified water-repellent treatment applied to half of each Sample.
- 1.5 REFERENCES
- A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
- AASHTO M 148, Type 1 Class A & B VOC Compliant Acrylic Concrete Sealer {Pit Waterproofing Sealer on Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
- ACI 302.1 R-96, Recommended Thickness of Plastic Vapor Retarder.
  - ACI 308, Recommended Practice for Placing Hydraulic Cement {Concrete Pit Waterproofing Filler}.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- ASTM B-117-84: Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (fog) Apparatus {Resistance to Salt Spray}.
  - ASTN C-191-99, Standard Test Method for Time of Setting of Hydraulic Cement by Vicat Needle {Setting Time; Pit Waterproofing}.
  - ASTM C-309-98a, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete {VOC Compliant Compound; Pit Waterproofing Sealer}.



4. ASTM C-348-97, Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars {Flexural Strength; Hydraulic-Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  5. ASTM C-469-94, Standard Test Method for Static Modulus of Elasticity and Poisson's Ratio of Concrete in Compression {Modulus of Elasticity; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  6. ASTM C-666-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing {Weather Resistance; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  7. ASTM C-836-95, Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for use with Separate Wearing Course {Waterproofing Membrane; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  8. ASTM C-882-99, Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems Used With Concrete By Slant Shear {Bond Strength; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  9. ASTM C-928-99a, Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Materials for Concrete Repairs {Cementitious Concrete Repairs; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  10. ASTM C-1127-95, Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral Wearing Surface {Dampproofing}.
  11. ASTM C-1315-95, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete {Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds; Concrete Sealer and Hardener, and Pit Waterproofing Sealing}.
  12. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension {Tensile Strength and Elongation-Ultimate Failure; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane, and Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  13. ASTM D-781-1983 (Former, Discontinued 1983), Method of Test for Puncture and Stiffness of Paperboard, Corrugated and Solid Fiberboard {Subgrade Waterproofing Protection Board}.
  14. ASTM D-903-98, Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds {Adhesion to Substrate; Water Repellent Coating and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  15. ASTM D-1187-97, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal. {Dampproofing}.
  16. ASTM D-1353-96, Standard Test Method for Nonvolatile Matter in Volatile Solvents for Use in Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products.
  17. ASTM D-1709-98, Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method {Impact Resistance; Vapor Barrier}.
  18. ASTM D-1970-00, Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection {Adhesion to Substrate; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  19. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Durometer Hardness; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  20. ASTM D-4414-95, Standard Practice for Measurement of Wet Film Thickness by Notch Gages {Wet Mills. Thickness}.
  21. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission Materials {Permeance; Subgrade Waterproofing, Vapor Barrier, and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  22. ASTM E-154-99, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover {Tensile Strength; Vapor Barriers}.
  23. ASTM E-1643-98, Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs {Installation; Vapor Barriers}.
  24. ASTM E-1745-97, Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs {Formerly ASTM D4397-96} {Under-Slab Vapor Barrier Plastic Polyolefin Sheeting}.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, Specifications for Resistance to Wind Driven Rain.
- E. FS, SS-W-110C, Resistance to Severe Accelerated Climatic Conditions {Water Repellent Coating}.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent, from manufacturer.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Mockups: Apply water repellent to each type of substrate required.
    1. Locate each test application as directed by Architect.
    2. Size: 10 sq. ft..
    3. Final approval by Architect of water-repellent application will be from test applications.
  - B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
  2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
  3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F and will remain so for 24 hours.
  4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F.
  5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
  6. Not less than 24 hours have passed since surfaces were last wet.
  7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."

### 2.2 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

- A. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, containing 10 percent or more solids of oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 600 g/L or less of VOCs.
- B. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blend with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Enviroseal 7 .
    - b. Degussa Corporation; Protectosil Aqua-Trete EM.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; KlereSeal 910-W.
    - d. PROSOCO, Inc.; Saltguard WB.
    - e. Rainguard Products Company; Blok-Lok.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Inspect for previously applied treatments that may inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents.
  3. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
  4. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - 1. Cast-in-Place Concrete Precast Concrete and Concrete Unit Masonry: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.
- B. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.
- C. Coordination with Mortar Joints: Do not apply water repellent until pointing mortar for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment has been installed and cured.
- D. Coordination with Sealant Joints: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
  - 1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those required.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
- B. Apply a heavy-saturation coating of water repellent, on surfaces indicated for treatment, using 15 psi-pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes. Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Apply a second saturation coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Water-Repellent Material: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when water repellent is being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample water-repellent material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of water-repellent material with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying water repellents if test results show material being used does not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying material from Project site, pay for testing, and correct deficiency of surfaces treated with rejected materials, as approved by Architect.
- B. Coverage Test: In the presence of Architect, hose down a dry, repellent-treated surface to verify complete and uniform product application. A change in surface color will indicate incomplete application.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when surfaces will be tested.
  - 2. Reapply water repellent until coverage test indicates complete coverage.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

**END OF SECTION 071900**

## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Perimeter insulation under slabs-on-grade.
  2. Cooler/ freeze insulation under slabs-on-grade.
  3. Perimeter wall insulation (supporting backfill).
  4. Concealed building insulation.
  5. Vapor retarders.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency for insulation products.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM C-177-85(1993)e1, Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus {Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties; Fiberglass/Mineral-Fiber Batt/Blanket Insulation}.
  2. ASTM C-203-99, Standard Test Methods for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-Type Thermal Insulation {Flexural Strength; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  3. ASTM C-272-91, Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Structural Sandwich Constructions {Water Absorption; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  4. ASTM C-518-98, Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus {Thermal Resistance/Aged R-Values; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, Underslab and Wall Insulation Board, and Fiberglass/Mineral-Fiber Batt/Blanket Insulation}.
  5. ASTM C-553-92, Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications {Replaces FS HH-I-558B}.
  6. ASTM C-578-95, Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation {Standards Aged R-Value; E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Inserts for C.M.U. Walls, X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  7. ASTM C-612-93, Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation {Replaces FS HH-I-558B}.
  8. ASTM C-665-98, Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing.
  9. ASTM D-1621-94, Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties Of Rigid Cellular Plastics {Compressive Strength; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  10. ASTM D-1622-98, Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics {Average Density; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  11. ASTM D-2126-99, Standard Specification for Response of Rigid Cellular Plastics to Thermal and Humid Aging {Dimensional Stability; C.M.U. Wall E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Inserts, X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.

12. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Flame Spread/Smoke Developed; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, Underslab and Wall Insulation Board, and Fiberglass/Mineral-Fiber Batt/Blanket Insulation}.
  13. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials {Formerly ASTM C-335-83} {Moisture Permeability Water Vapor Permeance/Transmission Rate Materials in Sheet Form, Dessicant Method; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Foundation, and Underslab and Wall Insulation Board}.
  14. ASTM E-119-98, Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  15. ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750° C. {Testing for Noncombustibility of Elementary Materials, Fire Retardant Treated Lumber, and Fiberglass/Mineral-Fiber Batt/Blanket Insulation}.
  16. ASTM E-814-97, Standard Test Method Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
- B. Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM):
  - C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
    1. NFPA, NFIPA Standard 200.
  - D. International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO):
  - E. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors Association (SMACNA):
    1. SMACNA AFTS-100-73: Pressure Sensitive Foil Tape.
  - F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - G. U.L., Flame Resistance of Blanket Insulation.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
    1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
    2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
    3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  - B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
    1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
    2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
    3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION
- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. DiversiFoam Products.
      - b. Dow Chemical Company.
      - c. Owens Corning.
      - d. Pactiv Building Products Division.
    2. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft., unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below and fabricated with one side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company.
    - c. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft.
- C. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: Cooler/ freezer floor insulation, ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company.
    - c. Owens Corning.
    - d. Pactiv Building Products Division.
  - 2. Type VII, 2.20 lb/cu. ft.

### 2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 2. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc.
  - 3. Johns Manville.
  - 4. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics, and formaldehyde free.
- C. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face, and formaldehyde free.

### 2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2-outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 6WW.
    - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-65.
- B. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2-outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 2FR.
    - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-55 FR.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.
- E. Single-Component Non-Sag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.

### 2.5 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

### 2.6 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Products:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
    - b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type N Fasteners.

- c. Gemco; Spindle Type.
  - 2. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; TACTOO Adhesive.
    - b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type S Adhesive.
    - c. Gemco; Tuff Bond Hanger Adhesive.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and provide snug fit around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
- E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

#### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF PERIMETER AND UNDER-SLAB INSULATION**

- A. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive recommended by insulation manufacturer.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation from underside of slab on grade to top of concrete footing.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
- C. Insulation to be placed in accordance per the required min. R-values as determined in the current International Energy Conservation Code.

#### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF COOLER AND FREEZER SLAB INSULATION**

- A. Install insulation below slabs where shown. Apply in multiple layers to minimize thermal bridging. Install joints of each layer staggered a minimum of 12-inches from the layer below. Install boards next to each other with tight joints not exceeding 1/8-inch.

#### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION**

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm-in-winter side of construction, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

2. Unfaced units to be used as per ASHRAE recommendations for the corresponding hygro-thermal region.
- D. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  4. For wood-framed construction, install mineral-fiber blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
    - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
- E. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
  2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
  3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
- F. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.
- 3.7 **INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS**
- A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
  - B. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
  - C. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
  - D. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
  - E. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.
  - F. Vapor retarder (type) to be placed in wall assembly in accordance with ASHRAE requirements for the appropriate hygro-thermal region.
- 3.8 **PROTECTION**
- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

**END OF SECTION 072100**



## SECTION 072419 - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies that are field applied over substrate.
  - 2. Water-resistive coatings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASTM E 2110 apply to Work of this Section.
- B. EIFS: Exterior insulation and finish system(s).
- C. IBC: International Building Code.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each EIFS component, trim, and accessory, including water-resistive coatings.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
    - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of exposed accessories involving color selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: 24-inch- square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work including an aesthetic reveal.
  - 1. Include exposed trim and accessory Samples to verify color selected.
  - 2. Include a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

#### 1.6 REFERENCES

- A. American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (AATCC):
  - 1. 1. AATCC-127, Head Pressure Water Penetration Resistance Test.
- B. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Plywood Sheathing.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM B-117-97, Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus. {Resistance to Salt Spray; E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
  - 2. ASTM C-79-97, Standard Specification for Treated Core and Non-treated Core Gypsum Sheathing Board {Gypsum Sheathing Board Water Resistant Core}.
  - 3. ASTM C-177-85(1993)e1, Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus {Thermal Conductivity/Heat Resistance; E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board/E.I.F.S. Wall Systems and Cement Tile Backer Board}.
  - 4. ASTM C-203-99, Standard Test Methods for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-Type Thermal Insulation {Flexural Strength; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Insulation Board}.
  - 5. ASTM C-272-91, Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core materials for Structural Sandwich Constructions {Water Absorption; E.P.S. Expanded/ X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Wall Insulation Board}.
  - 6. ASTM C-473-00, Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products {Physical Testing; Gypsum Sheathing}.

7. ASTM C-518-98, Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus {Thermal Resistance/Aged R-Values; E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Board}.
  8. ASTM C-578-95, Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation {Aged R-Value; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  9. ASTM C-666-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing {Weather Resistance; Cement Tile Backer Board}.
  10. ASTM C-719-93, Standard Test Method for Adhesion and Cohesion of Elastomeric Joint Sealants Under Cyclic Movement (Hockman Cycle) {Dynamic Movement Capability; Elastomeric Joint Sealants}.
  11. ASTM C-947-99, Standard Test Method for Flexural Properties of Thin-Section Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Concrete (Using Simple Beam With Third-Point Loading) {Flexural Strength; Cement Tile Backer Board}.
  12. ASTM C-1002-98, Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases.
  13. ASTM C-1016-94a, Standard Test Method for Determining of Water Absorption of Sealant Backing (Joint Filler) Material.
  14. ASTM C-1177-99, Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing.
  15. ASTM C-1311-95, Standard Specification for Solvent Release Sealants.
  16. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension {Tensile Strength and Elongation-Ultimate Failure; Sealants}.
  17. ASTM D-522-93a, Standard Test Methods for Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings {Elongation of Attached Organic Coatings with Conical Mandrel Apparatus}.
  18. ASTM D-696-03, Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30°C and 30°C With a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer.
  19. ASTM D-968-93, Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive. {Abrasion Resistance; E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
  20. ASTM D-1621-94, Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties Of Rigid Cellular Plastics {Compressive Strength; X.P.S. Extruded/E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  21. ASTM D-1622-98, Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics {Average Density; E.P.S. Expanded and X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  22. ASTM D-2126-99, Standard Specification for Response of Rigid Cellular Plastics to Thermal and Humid Aging {Dimensional Stability; X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  23. ASTM D-2394-83, Standard Test Method for Simulated Service Testing of Wood and Wood-Base Finish Flooring {Indentation Strength; Cement Tile Backer Board}.
  24. ASTM D-2794-93(1999)e1, Standard Test Method of Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact) {Deformation Resistance; Textured Exterior Coatings}.
  25. ASTM D-2863-00, Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index). {Oxygen Index; E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  26. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning Characteristics; E.P.S. Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Board}.
  27. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials {Formerly ASTM C-355-83} {Moisture Permeability, Water Vapor Permeance/Transmission Rate; E.P.S. Expanded/ X.P.S. Extruded Polystyrene Rigid Insulation Board}.
  28. ASTM E-330-97e1, Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference {Wind Pressure and Structural Loading; Exterior E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
  29. ASTM E-695-79(1997)e1, Standard Test Method for measuring Relative Resistance of Wall, Floor, and Roof Construction to Impact Loading {Impact Resistance; E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
  30. ASTM E-1677-95, Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls.
  31. ASTM G-154-98, Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials {Formerly ASTM G-53} {UV Accelerated Weathering; E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
  32. ASTM G-155-98, Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials {Formerly ASTM G-26-99, Standard Practice for Operating Light-Exposure Apparatus (Xenon-Arc Type) With and Without Water for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials}, {Xenon Arc Light Apparatus Xenon Arc Light Exposure; Textured Exterior Coatings}.
- D. Exterior Insulation Manufacturer's Association (EIMA):
1. Impact Zone Classification, Texas Standard 101.86 {Impact Resistance; E.I.F.S. Wall Systems}.
- E. Factory Mutual (FM):
1. FM 4880, Testing and Approved Standards for Foam Plastic Insulation.

- F. Federal Specifications (FS):
    1. FS HH-1-524C, Type 1 Class A Rigid EPS Expanded Polystyrene Insulation Board.
    2. FS TT-C-555 B, Resistance to Wind Driven Rain.
  - G. International Building Code (2003 IBC):
    1. IBC Sections 2603.4 through 2603, Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Indexes for Foam Plastic Insulation.
    2. IBC 2603.5.4, Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Indexes for Foam Plastic Insulation.
    3. IBC 2603.8, Special Approval of E.P.S. Foam Plastic Insulation.
  - H. Military Specifications (MS):
    1. MS 801B, Mildew Resistance.
  - I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
    1. NFPA 286, Fire Test and Approval of Foam Plastic Building Insulation.
  - J. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
    1. U.L. 1040, Tests for Material for Foam Plastic Building Materials.
  - K. U.L. 1715, Tests for Foam Plastic Building Insulation.
- 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
  - B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by EIFS manufacturer certifying the following:
    1. EIFS complies with requirements.
    2. Substrates to which EIFS is indicated to be attached are acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.
    3. Accessory products installed with EIFS, including flashing, water-resistive coatings, trim, whether or not furnished by EIFS manufacturer and whether or not specified in this Section, are acceptable to EIFS manufacturer.
  - C. Product Certificates: For insulation and joint sealant, from manufacturer.
  - D. Product Test Reports: For each EIFS assembly and component, and for water-resistive coatings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - E. Evaluation Reports: For EIFS, including insulation water-resistive coatings, flexible membrane flashing, from ICC-ES.
  - F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.
- 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: .
  - B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, to set quality standards for materials and execution, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
    1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
  - B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
    1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
    2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
    3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.
- 1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

- 1.12 WARRANTY
- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Bond integrity and weathertightness.
    - b. Deterioration of EIFS finishes and other EIFS materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty coverage includes the following components of EIFS-clad drainage-wall assemblies:
    - a. EIFS finish, including base coats, finish coats, and reinforcing mesh.
    - b. Insulation installed as part of EIFS including foam build-outs.
    - c. Insulation adhesive.
    - d. EIFS accessories, including trim components and flashing.
    - e. Water-resistive coatings.
    - f. EIFS drainage components.
  3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following:
- 1.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with EIFS components.
- C. EXTERNAL INSULATION FINISH SYSTEM (similar for stucco finish system. Was in previous proto)
1. MFR: 'Outsulation Plus MD' by Dryvit Systems, Inc or equal.
    - a. High impact zones (below 8'-0"): 'Panzer 20' ultra-high impact mesh
    - b. FINISH: Hydrophobic TEXTURE: Finesse
    - c. LINK: <http://www.dryvit.com/>
    - d. COLOR: BM Midnight Oil 1631 (Stratotone high performance colorant - match to Benjamin Moore color specs)
- 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with ASTM E 2568 and ICC-ES AC219 and with the following:
1. Weathertightness: Resistant to uncontrolled water penetration from exterior, with a means to drain water entering EIFS to the exterior.
  2. System Fire Performance: Fire-resistance rating of wall assembly.
  3. Structural Performance: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC219 when tested according to ASTM E 2568.
    - a. Wind Loads: Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  4. Impact Performance: ASTM E 2568, Standard impact resistance unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between EIFS and substrates, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
  6. Abrasion Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch-thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days and shows no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested according to ASTM D 968, Method A.
  7. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch clean glass substrate; cured for 28 days and shows no growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
- 2.3 EIFS MATERIALS
- A. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner designed to protect substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate and insulation adhesive; with VOC content of 250 g/L or less; that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, California Department of Health Services) "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water-resistive barriers; compatible with substrate and complying with physical and performance criteria of ASTM E 2570.
  - C. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
  - D. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; and EIFS manufacturer's requirements for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
    - 1. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks.
    - 2. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, according to ASTM E 84.
    - 3. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards of not more than 24 by 48 inches thick or in other thickness indicated, but not more than 4 inches thick or less than the thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
    - 4. Foam Build-Outs: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
  - E. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. according to ASTM E 2098 and the following:
    - 1. Reinforcing Mesh for EIFS, General: Not less than weight required to meet impact-performance level specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - 2. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 3.75 oz./sq. yd..
    - 3. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd..
    - 4. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.2 oz./sq. yd..
    - 5. Below 8 feet Above Finished Grade: Not less than 16.0 oz./sq. yd.
  - F. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
  - G. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating complying with the following:
    - 1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
    - 2. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
      - a. Aggregate: Marble chips of size and color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 3. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 4. Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - H. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
  - I. Water: Potable.
  - J. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard cell class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.
    - 1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
    - 2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
    - 3. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
    - 4. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
    - 5. Windowsill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
    - 6. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.
- 2.4 MIXING
- A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
  - 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.
  - 1. Concrete Substrates: Provide clean, dry, neutral-pH substrate for insulation installation. Verify suitability of substrate by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

### 3.3 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1397, ASTM E 2511, and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

### 3.4 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Primer/Sealer: Apply over substrates and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
- B. Water-Resistive Coating: Apply over sheathing to provide a water-resistive barrier.
  - 1. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where required by EIFS manufacturer. Prime substrates if required and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

### 3.5 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at windowsills, and elsewhere as indicated. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
  - 1. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Windowsill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
  - 5. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397 and the following:
  - 1. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method, with notches oriented vertically to produce drainage channels that remain functional after the insulation is adhered to substrate.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of drainage mat with adhesive once insulation is adhered to drainage mat.
  - 3. Apply adhesive to ridges on back of channeled insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in full adhesive contact over the entire surface of ridges, leaving channels free of adhesive once insulation is adhered to substrate.
  - 4. Apply insulation over substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
  - 5. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
  - 6. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.

7. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches from aesthetic reveals.
    - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches from horizontal and 4 inches from vertical joints in sheathing.
    - b. Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
  8. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
  9. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
  10. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
  11. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch. Prevent airborne dispersal and immediately collect insulation raspings or sandings.
  12. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch.
  13. Install foam build-outs and attach to sheathing.
  14. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
  15. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
  16. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.
  17. After installing insulation and before applying field-applied reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  18. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
    - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
    - b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
    - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
  19. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-resistive barrier.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
1. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
  2. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
  3. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
  4. Where wall height or building shape changes.
  5. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.
- 3.7 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION
- A. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: To exposed surfaces of insulation, apply in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
  - B. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam build-outs in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
  - C. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed reinforcing mesh in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are invisible.
  - D. Double-Layer Reinforcing-Mesh Application: Where indicated or required, apply second base coat and second layer of reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

- E. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings, extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch- wide, strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.
    - 1. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches wide.
    - 2. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
  - F. Foam Build-Outs: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
  - G. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application, except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
- 3.8 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION
- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
    - 1. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
  - C. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.
- 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - 1. As stipulated in Ch. 17 of the IBC.
    - 2. According to ICC-ES AC24.
  - B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - C. EIFS Tests and Inspections: According to ASTM E 2359.
  - D. EIFS will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

**END OF SECTION 072419**



## SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wrap.
  - 2. Flexible flashing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
  - 1. AASHTO M 148, Type 1 Class A & B VOC Compliant Acrylic Concrete Sealer {Pit Waterproofing Sealer on Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. ACI 302.1 R-96, Recommended Thickness of Plastic Vapor Retarder.
  - 2. ACI 308, Recommended Practice for Placing Hydraulic Cement {Concrete Pit Waterproofing Filler}.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM B-117-84: Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (fog) Apparatus {Resistance to Salt Spray}.
  - 2. ASTM C-191-99, Standard Test Method for Time of Setting of Hydraulic Cement by Vicat Needle {Setting Time; Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 3. ASTM C-309-98a, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete {VOC Compliant Compound; Pit Waterproofing Sealer}.
  - 4. ASTM C-348-97, Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars {Flexural Strength; Hydraulic-Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 5. ASTM C-469-94, Standard Test Method for Static Modulus of Elasticity and Poisson's Ratio of Concrete in Compression {Modulus of Elasticity; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 6. ASTM C-666-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing {Weather Resistance; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 7. ASTM C-836-95, Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for use with Separate Wearing Course {Waterproofing Membrane; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  - 8. ASTM C-882-99, Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems Used With Concrete By Slant Shear {Bond Strength; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 9. ASTM C-928-99a, Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Materials for Concrete Repairs {Cementitious Concrete Repairs; Hydraulic Cement Pit Waterproofing}.
  - 10. ASTM C-1127-95, Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral Wearing Surface {Dampproofing}.
  - 11. ASTM C-1315-95, Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete {Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds; Concrete Sealer and Hardener, and Pit Waterproofing Sealing}.
  - 12. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension {Tensile Strength and Elongation-Ultimate Failure; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane, and Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  - 13. ASTM D-781-1983 (Former, Discontinued 1983), Method of Test for Puncture and Stiffness of Paperboard, Corrugated and Solid Fiberboard {Subgrade Waterproofing Protection Board}.

14. ASTM D-903-98, Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds {Adhesion to Substrate; Water Repellent Coating and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  15. ASTM D-1187-97, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal. {Dampproofing}.
  16. ASTM D-1353-96, Standard Test Method for Nonvolatile Matter in Volatile Solvents for Use in Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products.
  17. ASTM D-1709-98, Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method {Impact Resistance; Vapor Barrier}.
  18. ASTM D-1970-00, Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection {Adhesion to Substrate; Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  19. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Durometer Hardness; Subgrade Waterproofing}.
  20. ASTM D-4414-95, Standard Practice for Measurement of Wet Film Thickness by Notch Gages {Wet Mills. Thickness}.
  21. ASTM E-96-95, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission Materials {Permeance; Subgrade Waterproofing, Vapor Barrier, and Water and Ice Shield Self-Adhering Membrane}.
  22. ASTM E-154-99, Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover {Tensile Strength; Vapor Barriers}.
  23. ASTM E-1643-98, Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs {Installation; Vapor Barriers}.
  24. ASTM E-1745-97, Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs {Formerly ASTM D4397-96} {Under-Slab Vapor Barrier Plastic Polyolefin Sheeting}.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, Specifications for Resistance to Wind Driven Rain.
- E. FS, SS-W-110C, Resistance to Severe Accelerated Climatic Conditions {Water Repellent Coating}.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam Weathermate Plus Brand Housewrap.
    - b. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek CommercialWrap.
    - c. Comparable products by Dow Chemical Company.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 20 perms per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  3. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg when tested according to ASTM E 2178.
  4. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); DuPont Flashing Tape.
    - b. Protecto Wrap Company; BT-25 XL.
    - c. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - d. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.
- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
  - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
  - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
  - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
  - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

**END OF SECTION 072500**

## SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.
- 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
    - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
    - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
    - 5. Review structural loading limitations of deck during and after roofing.
    - 6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
    - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
    - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
    - 9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
    - 10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product.
    - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
  - B. Shop Drawings:
    - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
    - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
  - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
    - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- 1.5 REFERENCES
  - A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
    - 1. AISI, Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members August 19, 1986 Edition, December 11, 1989 Addendum.
  - B. Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association (ARMA):
    - 1. ARMA, Specifications for Installation of Roofing Felt Underlayment.
  - C. American Plywood Association (APA):
    - 1. APA, Grading for Plywood Roof Deck Sheathing.
    - 2. APA, Form No. E 30D Design/Construction Guide.
  - D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
    - 1. ASTM A-123-97, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes} {Formerly ASTM A-386}.
    - 2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

3. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Formerly ASTM A-446-86, ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526 and ASTM A-527}.
  4. ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Sheet Metal}.
  5. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Formerly ASTM A-446-71, ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526, and ASTM A-527} {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating}.
  6. ASTM D-226-97a, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used In Roofing and Waterproofing {Type II 30 lb. Non-Perforated, Asphalt Saturated, Organic, Rag Felt Underlayment}.
  7. ASTM D-4586-93, Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free {Plastic Flashing Cement}.
- E. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
1. AWPB and AWPA C9, Standard for Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  2. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
  3. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
- F. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-C-49z, Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
  2. FS FF-N-105, Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- G. National Roofing Contractor Association (NRCA):
1. NRCA, Metal Roofing Application Manual.
- H. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA):
1. SMACNA, Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, Latest Edition.
- I. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
1. SSPC-Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
- J. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
- K. U.L., Roof Classification.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical roof area and eave, including fascia, as shown on Drawings; approximately 48 inches square by full thickness, including attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
  2. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including accessories.
    - a. Size: 12 feet long by 6 feet.
    - b. Each type of exposed seam and seam termination.
  3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
  - B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
  - C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  - D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
  - E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

- 1.10 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
  - B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- 1.11 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
      - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - 2. Manufacturer's warranty exclusions shall not limit wind speed to less than design wind speed indicated on structural drawings or as required by code.
    - 3. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
      - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
      - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
      - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
    - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 30 percent.
  - B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 1680 or ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
    - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
  - C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 or ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
    - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
  - D. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist uplift pressures and wind speed.
    - 1. Basic Wind Speed: In accordance with local building code and design requirements.
  - E. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
    - 1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
  - F. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.
    - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
    - 2. Hail Resistance: MH.
  - G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- 2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS
- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.

1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.
  2. Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1637.
- B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AEP Span; a BlueScope Steel company.
    - b. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - c. McElroy Metal, Inc.
    - d. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
    - a. Nominal Thickness: .
    - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As scheduled.
  3. Clips: to accommodate thermal movement.
    - a. Material: nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
  4. Panel Coverage: .
- 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS
- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
  2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
  3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
    - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
    - d. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
  2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
  1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621 KYNAR 500. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.



- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
  - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION
- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
    - 1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
    - 2. Apply over the roof area indicated below:
      - a. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 24 inches beyond interior wall line.
      - b. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches. Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches.
      - c. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches.
      - d. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches.
      - e. Roof-to-wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches.
      - f. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches.
  - B. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- 3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
    - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
    - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
    - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
    - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
    - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
    - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
    - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
    - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
  - B. Fasteners:
    - 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
    - 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
    - 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
    - 4. Stainless-Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
  - C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
  - D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
  - E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.
    - 1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
    - 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
    - 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.

4. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
  5. Watertight Installation:
    - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
    - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
    - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
  - F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
    1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  - G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
    1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
    2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
  - H. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
  - B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
  - B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 074113.16**

## SECTION 074213.13 - FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
  - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
  - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
  - 8. Review of procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
  - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. AISI, Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members August 19, 1986 Edition, December 11, 1989 Addendum.
- B. Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association (ARMA):
  - 1. ARMA, Specifications for Installation of Roofing Felt Underlayment.
- C. American Plywood Association (APA):
  - 1. APA, Grading for Plywood Roof Deck Sheathing.
  - 2. APA, Form No. E 30D Design/Construction Guide.
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Galvanized Rolled Steel Shapes} {Formerly ASTM A-386}.
  - 2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

3. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Formerly ASTM A-446-86, ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526 and ASTM A-527}.
  4. ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Sheet Metal}.
  5. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Formerly ASTM A-446-71, ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526, and ASTM A-527} {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating}.
  6. ASTM D-226-97a, Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used In Roofing and Waterproofing {Type II 30 lb. Non-Perforated, Asphalt Saturated, Organic, Rag Felt Underlayment}.
  7. ASTM D-4586-93, Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Free {Plastic Flashing Cement}.
- E. American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):
1. AWPB and AWPA C9, Standard for Pressure-Treated Plywood.
  2. AWPB LP-2, Water Borne Preservatives.
  3. AWPA C2, Pressure-Treated Lumber.
- F. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-C-49z, Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
  2. FS FF-N-105, Specifications for Nails, Wire Brads and Staples.
- G. National Roofing Contractor Association (NRCA):
1. NRCA, Metal Roofing Application Manual.
- H. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA):
1. SMACNA, Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, Latest Edition.
- I. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
1. SSPC-Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
- J. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
1. U.L., Roof Classification.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly as shown on Drawings Size to be determined by Design Team, including corner, supports, attachments, and accessories.
  2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of metal panel assembly mockup, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
  3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- 1.10 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- 1.11 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
    - a. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L.P.
- 2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS
- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Reveal-Joint, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between panel edges; with narrow reveal joint between panels.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  2. Basis of Design: Metal Era/Pac Clad:
    - a. ATAS International, Inc
    - b. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - c. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
    - d. Morin; a Kingspan Group company.

- e. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
- 3. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
  - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch.
  - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - c. Color: Weathered Zinc .
- 4. Panel Coverage: 7 inch revealed .
- 5. Panel Height: 1.0 inch.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
  - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.

5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
  - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
  1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
  2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
  3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
  6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
  1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
  - 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
  - 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
  - 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
  - 5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.
- E. Watertight Installation:
  - 1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
  - 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
  - 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 074213.13**



## SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes fiber-cement exterior cladding
- 1.3 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.
- 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
  - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - B. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding soffit including related accessories.
  - C. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, texture, and pattern required.
    - 1. 12-inch- long-by-actual-width Sample of siding.
    - 2. 24-inch- wide-by-36-inch- high Sample panel of siding assembled on plywood backing.
    - 3. 12-inch- long-by-actual-width Sample of soffit.
    - 4. 12-inch- long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Submit Manufacturers Installation Instructions
  - B. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding soffit.
  - C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
  - D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
    - 1. Furnish full lengths of fiber-cement siding soffit including related accessories, in a quantity equal to 2 percent of amount installed.
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
    - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
    - 2. Build mockups for fiber-cement siding soffit including accessories.
      - a. Size: 48 inches long by 60 inches high.
      - b. Include outside corner on one end of mockup and inside corner on other end.
    - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
    - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
  - B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

- 1.11 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
      - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.
    - 2. Warranty Period: 50 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- 2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING
- A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - C. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.
- 2.3 ACCESSORIES
- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
    - 1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:
    - 1. Corner posts.
    - 2. Door and window casings.
    - 3. Fasciae.
    - 4. Moldings and trim.
  - C. Fasteners:
    - 1. For fastening to wood, use of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch into substrate.
    - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
    - 3. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized fasteners.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding soffit and related accessories.
  - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION
- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
    - 1. Do not install damaged components.
    - 2. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches o.c.
  - B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
  - B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

**END OF SECTION 074646**

## SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
  - 2. Roof insulation.
- B. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section
  - 1. ASTM D 1079 "Standard Terminology Relating to Roofing and Waterproofing"
  - 2. Roof Consultants Institute "Glossary of Building Envelope Terms".
- B. PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
- C. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
- D. Prior to beginning the work of this section, roofing sub-contractor shall provide a copy of the final System Assembly Letter issued by Johns Manville Roofing Systems indicating that the products and system to be installed shall be eligible to receive the specified manufacturer's guarantee when installed by a certified JM contractor in accordance with our application requirements, inspected and approved by a JM Technical Representative.
- E. Prior to roofing system installation, roofing sub-contractor shall provide a copy of the Guarantee Application Confirmation document issued by Johns Manville Roofing Systems indicating that the project has been reviewed for eligibility to receive the specified guarantee and registered.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. State percentages specific to product, not average recycled content amounts from manufacturing facility.
    - b. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
- C. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including:
  - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.

3. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
1. Sheet roofing, of color required.
  2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

## 1.5 REFERENCES

American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. ANSI, Width of Perimeter T.P.O. Termination Strips.
2. ANSI A 199.1, Plywood Standards
3. ANSI B 18.2.1, Lag Bolts.
4. ANSI B 18.6.1, Wood Screws.

American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):

AISI, Specifications for Fasteners.

American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):

ASCE 7-02-2003, Wind Uplift (PSF) on Low-Slope Roofs.

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

ASTM C-1289-98, Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board (Polyisocyanurate Core Insulation with Reinforced Perforated Glass Fiber Facer Sheets).

ASTM E-136-99, Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C. (Fire Retardant Treated Lumber).

American Wood Products Board (AWPB) and American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA):

AWPB and AWPA C9, Standards for Pressure-Treated Plywood.

AWPB and AWPA C27, Standards for Fire Retardant Treated Lumber.

AWPA C2, Standards for Pressure-Treated Lumber.

AWPB LP-2, Standards for Water Borne Preservatives.

Federal Specifications (FS):

FS HH-I-1972/Gen, Specifications for Polyisocyanurate Insulation With Perforated Glass Fiber Facer Sheets.

FS HH-I-1972/2, Specifications for Polyisocyanurate Insulation With Perforated Glass Fiber Facer Sheets.

Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM):

FM, Windstorm Classifications for Class FM I-90.

FM 1-28 Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet, Design Guide Wind Loads to Roof Systems and Roof Deck.

FM Global, Data Sheet 1-29, Revised January 2006, Roof Deck Securement and Above Roof Components.

FM 4450, Approval Standard for Class I Insulated Deck Roofs {Polyisocyanurate Core Reinforced Perforated Glass Mat Sheet Faced Insulation}.

FM 4470, Testing Standards {Fire Test Above Roof Deck (ASTM E-1081), Fire Test Below Roof Deck, Wind Uplift Test, Hail Damage Test, Water Leakage Test, Foot Traffic Test and Fastener Corrosion Test} {Polyisocyanurate Core Reinforced Perforated Glass Mat Sheet Faced Insulation}.

FM 4480, Testing and Approved Standards for Foam Plastic Insulation Roofing Assembly, Insulation and Membrane Acting as a Thermal Barrier.

International Building Code (I.B.C.):

I.B.C., Building Code Standards for Roof Insulation.

National Roofing Contractor Association (NRCA):

NRCA, Roofing and Waterproofing Manual-Fifth Edition.

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association, Inc. (SMACNA)

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

UL 1256, Testing for Thermal Barrier.

UL Classification for T.P.O. Roof Membrane.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - 1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
  - C. Product Test Reports: For components of roofing system, tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
  - D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329.
  - E. Field quality-control reports.
  - F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
  - B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
  - B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
    - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
  - C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  - D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.
- 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- 1.11 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Special warranty includes roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, and other components of roofing system.
    - 2. Manufacturer's roofing system warranty exclusions shall not limit wind speed to less than design wind speed indicated on structural drawings or as required by code.
    - 3. Depending on project locations, design wind speeds could exceed the maximum offered wind rider. Standard NDL guarantees cover wind speeds up to 55 mph.
    - 4. Wind rider coverage up to 100 mph for fully adhered TPO system must be applied with a cover board
    - 5. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, roof pavers, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
    - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.12 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
  - 2. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the uplift pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Energy Star Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- F. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than and an emissivity of not less than when tested according to CRR-1.
- G. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- H. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Johns Manville.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation for roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturer approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

### 2.2 TPO ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Reinforced TPO Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, uniform, flexible fabric-backed TPO sheet.
  - 1. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
  - 2. Exposed Face Color: White.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.
- D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- F. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.
- G. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- H. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## 2.4 ROOF INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
  - 1. Thickness or R Value: Insulation system shall have a minimum R-20 (continuous insulation) Long Term Thermal Resistance (LTTR) value as determined in accordance with CAN/ULC-S770 and the corresponding thickness required to meet this minimum requirement.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville.
- B. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 3/8 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

## 2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
  - 1. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
  - 2. Full-spread spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
- D. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 inch thick, factory primed.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville ( Densdeck Prime)

## 2.6 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
  - 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - 5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
  - 6. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Install insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

### 3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- G. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
  1. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft., and allow primer to dry.
  2. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
  3. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  4. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- H. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck.
  1. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Global's "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  2. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
- I. Install slip sheet over cover board and immediately beneath roofing.

### 3.5 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing and allow to relax before retaining.
- B. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align roofing, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roofing. Do not apply to splice area of roofing.
- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet.
  2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing in place with clamping ring.

### 3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.



- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings.
- 3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION
- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
  - B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - C. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.
- 3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING
- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
  - B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
  - C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 075423**

## SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
  - 2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
  - 3. Formed equipment support flashing.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:
  - 1. Wind Zone 1: For velocity pressures of 21 to 30 lbf/sq. ft.: 60-lbf/sq. ft. perimeter uplift force, 90-lbf/sq. ft. corner uplift force, and 30-lbf/sq. ft. outward force.
  - 2. Wind Zone 2: For velocity pressures of 31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft.: 90-lbf/sq. ft. perimeter uplift force, 120-lbf/sq. ft. corner uplift force, and 45-lbf/sq. ft. outward force.
  - 3. Wind Zone 3: For velocity pressures of 46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft.: 208-lbf/sq. ft. perimeter uplift force, 312-lbf/sq. ft. corner uplift force, and 104-lbf/sq. ft. outward force.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - 2. ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Sheet Metal} {formerly ASTM A-525}.
  - 3. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {formerly ASTM A-525 and ASTM A-527}.
  - 4. ASTM B-32-96, Standard Specification for Solder Metal.
  - 5. ASTM D-1005-95, Standard Test Method for Measurement of Dry-Film Thickness of Organic Coatings Using Micrometers {Kynar 500 Topcoat Thickness}.
  - 6. ASTM D-1400-94, Standard Test Method for Nondestructive measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Nonconductive Coatings Applied to a Nonferrous Metal Base {Kynar Primer Thickness}.
- B. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. FS TT-C-49z: Bituminous Coating.
- C. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
  - 1. SSPC – Paint 12: Bituminous Coating.
- D. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association, Inc. (SMACNA):

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

- B. Certification Letter: ANSI SPRI ES1 for all roof termination metal.
  - C. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.
    - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
    - 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
    - 3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
    - 4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
    - 5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
    - 6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
    - 7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
    - 8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
    - 9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counter flashings as applicable.
    - 10. Include details of special conditions.
    - 11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
    - 12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
  - D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.
  - E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.
    - 1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
 Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.  
 Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
- 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
  - B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is SPRI ES-1 tested.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  - B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
      - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
      - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
      - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
    - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 SHEET METALS
- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
  - B. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, dead-soft, fully annealed, stainless-steel sheet of minimum uncoated thickness indicated; coated on both sides with zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin), with factory-applied gray preweathering.
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      - a. Follansbee Steel; TCS II.

## 2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.-Conn.; Ultra.
    - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
    - e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Specialty Tile & Metal Underlayment.
    - f. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Deck Guard HT.
    - g. Protecto Wrap Company; Protecto Jiffy Seal Ice & Water Guard HT.
  2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F or higher.
  3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

## 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
- D. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- E. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

- H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - I. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
  - J. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
  - K. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- 2.5 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Built-in Gutters: Fabricate to cross section required, with riveted and soldered joints, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections. Fabricate expansion joints and accessories from same metal as gutters unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1. Fabricate gutters with built-in expansion joints and gutter-end expansion joints at walls.
    - 2. Accessories: Wire-ball downspout strainer.
  - B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors. Shop fabricate elbows.
    - 1. Fabricated Hanger Style: Fig 1-35A according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
    - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:  
Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.  
Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long, but not exceeding 12-foot- long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
    - 1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch- wide, concealed backup plate.
  - B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:  
Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
  - C. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:  
Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.
  - D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:  
Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
  - E. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Lead: 4.0 lb/sq. ft., hard tempered.
- 2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft..  
Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
  - A. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft..  
Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch thick.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
    - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
    - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
    - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
  - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- B. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  - 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  - 6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
  - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Built-in Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints. Provide for thermal expansion. Slope to downspouts. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
  - 1. Install underlayment layer in built-in gutter trough and extend to drip edge at eaves and under underlayment on roof sheathing. Lap sides minimum of 2 inches over underlying course. Lap ends minimum of 4 inches. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches. Fasten with roofing nails. Install slip sheet over underlayment.  
Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat.  
Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 18 inches apart.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.

1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
  2. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
  3. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.
- D. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement compatible with the substrate.
- 3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  - B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
  - C. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
  - D. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
    1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch centers.
 Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at 24-inch centers.
  - E. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
  - F. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
  - G. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.
- 3.6 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
  - B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
  - C. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.
- 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION
- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- 3.8 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  - B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 076200**



## SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copings.
  - 2. Roof-edge specialties.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, roofing-system testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing-system manufacturer's representative, Installer, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties, including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
  - 2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  - 3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.
  - 4. Review requirements for sheet metal Work, including:
    - a. Construction schedule and availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Site use, access, staging, and set-up location limitations.
    - c. Approved mockup procedures.
    - d. Forecast weather conditions.
    - e. Surface preparation and substrate condition and pretreatment.
    - f. Installation procedures.
    - g. Special details.
    - h. Testing and inspection requirements.
    - i. Site protection measures.
    - j. Governing regulations if applicable.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Certification Letter: ANSI SPRI ES1 for all roof termination metal.
- C. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
  - 2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
  - 4. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
  - 5. Include details of special conditions.
- D. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Include Samples of each type of roof specialty to verify finish and color selection, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
  - 2. Include copings roof-edge specialties made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components in specified material, and including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Sheet Steel, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.

- 2. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - C. Federal Specifications (FS):
    - 1. FS, Solvent type bituminous mastic.
  - D. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
  - E. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
  - F. SSPC, Solvent type bituminous mastic.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
  - B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
    - 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge as shown on Drawings.
    - 2. Build mockup of typical roof edge as part of Integrated Exterior Mockup specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements"
    - 3. Build mockup of typical roof edge, including fascia, approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction, seams, attachments, and accessories.
    - 4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
    - 5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  - B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  - B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- 1.10 WARRANTY
- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Roofing Section.
  - B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
      - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
      - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
      - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
    - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 35 percent.

- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  2. Basis of Design: Metal Era:
    - a. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - b. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
    - c. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - d. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  3. Formed Aluminum Sheet Coping Caps: Aluminum sheet, 0.040 inch thick .
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: Weathered Zinc at Reveal Wall Panel System
    - d. Profile: Pre-Fab Anchor- Tite Fascia.
  4. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  5. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on, fabricated from coping-cap material.
    - a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.

## 2.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Canted Roof-Edge Fascia and Gravel Stop: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Products Company.
    - b. ATAS International, Inc.
    - c. Castle Metal Products.
    - d. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - e. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - f. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
    - g. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - h. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - i. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Fascia Covers: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal 0.034-inch thickness.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Corners: Factory mitered and .
  4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
- B. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous metal receiver with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover and secure single-ply roof membrane. Provide matching corner units.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - b. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - c. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - d. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
  2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Fascia Covers: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal .
    - a. Surface: finish.
    - b. Finish: .
    - c. Color: .
  3. Corners: Factory mitered and .

4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
  5. Receiver: .
  - C. One-Piece Gravel Stops: Manufactured, one-piece, metal gravel stop in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with a horizontal flange and vertical leg, drain-through fascia terminating in a drip edge, and concealed splice plates of same material, finish, and shape as gravel stop. Provide matching corner units.
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Architectural Products Company.
      - b. Castle Metal Products.
      - c. Cheney Flashing Company.
      - d. Hickman Company, W. P.
      - e. Metal-Era, Inc.
      - f. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
      - g. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
      - h. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
    2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Gravel Stops: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal .
      - a. Surface: finish.
      - b. Finish: .
      - c. Color: .
    3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
- 2.4 MATERIALS
- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
- 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
    1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
    2. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
    3. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
    4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
    5. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
  - B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
  - C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
  - D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
  - E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- 2.6 FINISHES
- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  - C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
  - D. Coil-Coated Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes:
    1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M and coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.

- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
  - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
  - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
  - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
  - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
  - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

### 3.3 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
  - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at 30-inch centers.

### 3.4 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 077100**

## SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Roof curbs.
  2. Equipment supports.
  3. Roof hatches.
  4. Roof supports.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roof accessories. Show layouts of roof accessories including plans and elevations. Indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, and components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed factory-applied finish required and for each type of roof accessory indicated, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Sheet Steel, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  2. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
- C. Federal Specifications (FS):
  1. FS, Solvent type bituminous mastic.
- D. Occupational, Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
- E. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
- F. SSPC, Solvent type bituminous mastic.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Pack, handle, and ship roof accessories properly labeled in heavy-duty packaging to prevent damage.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify required openings for each type of roof accessory by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leak-proof, weather-tight, secure, and non-corrosive installation.
  1. With Architect's approval, adjust location of roof accessories that would interrupt roof drainage routes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers listed in other Part 2 articles.

### 2.2 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90 coated and mill phosphatized for field painting.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use, mill finished.
- C. Galvanized Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123.
- D. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, 1 inch thick.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, 1 inch thick.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type non-corrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- E. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other non-corrosive metal as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide non-removable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners.
- F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, polyurethane sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, and heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- I. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, non-asbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

### 2.4 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Provide metal roof curbs, internally reinforced and capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported on roof curbs. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel sheet, 0.052 inch thick.
  - 2. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
  - 3. Factory install wood nailers at tops of curbs.
  - 4. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 5. Factory insulate curbs with 1-1/2-inch thick, glass-fiber board insulation.
  - 6. Curb height may be determined by adding thickness of roof insulation and minimum base flashing height recommended by roofing membrane manufacturer. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.
- B. Prefabricated Roof Curbs:
  - 1. CRC-3; Custom Curb, Inc.
  - 2. PC-2; Pate Company.
  - 3. RC-2A; Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
  - 4. TC-3; ThyCurb; Div. of Thybar Corporation.
- C. Pipe and Conduit Penetration Cover Assemblies: Size and quantities of pipes or conduits as shown on Drawings:
  - 1. CRC-3 and PCC; Custom Curb, Inc.
  - 2. PC-2 and PCC; Pate Company.
  - 3. EC-2A and N; Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
  - 4. TC-3 and TP-1; ThyCurb; Div. of Thybar Corporation.
- D. Custom Mechanical Equipment Curbs: For mechanical equipment mounted on structural steel frame:

1. CRC-3 and Isolation Rail; Custom Curb, Inc.
  2. PC-2 and Iso-Base; Pate Company.
  3. RC-2A and VR; Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
  4. TC-3 and Vibra-Curb II; ThyCurb; Div. of Thybar Corporation.
- E. Vibration Isolation Curbs:
1. Custom Isolation Curb; Custom Curb, Inc.
  2. PC-2 and Iso-Base; Pate Company.
  3. RC-2A and VR; Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
  4. TC-3 and Vibra-Curb II; ThyCurb; Div. of Thybar Corporation.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Equipment Supports: Provide metal equipment supports, internally reinforced and capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. CES-2; Custom Curb, Inc.
    - b. ES-2; Pate Company.
    - c. ER-2A; Roof Products & Systems Corporation.
    - d. TEMS-3; ThyCurb; Div. of Thybar Corporation.
  2. Material: Galvanized steel sheet, 0.052 inch thick.
  3. Factory-install continuous wood nailers 5-1/2 inches wide at tops of equipment supports.
  4. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard removable counterflashing, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
  5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  6. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

## 2.6 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Fabricate roof hatches with insulated double-wall lids and insulated single-wall curb frame with integral deck mounting flange and lid frame counterflashing. Fabricate with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints. Provide continuous weather-tight perimeter gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bilco Company.
  2. Loads: Fabricate roof hatches to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal loads.
  3. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches.
  4. Curb and Lid Material: Galvanized steel sheet, 0.079 inch thick.
    - a. Finish: Factory Prime painted, with finish paint color to be Benjamin Moore Shadow Gray 2125-40 or equal.
  5. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber board.
  6. Interior Lid Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  7. Exterior Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as metal curb.
  8. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  9. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
  10. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate hatch curbs with height constant.
  11. Hardware: Galvanized steel spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
    - a. Provide 2-point latch on covers larger than 84 inches.
  12. Safety Railing System: Manufacturer's standard complete system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and all accessories required for a complete installation.
  13. Ladder-Mounted Safety Post: Ladder-mounted safety post, fabricated from high strength tubing, with a pull-up loop at the upper end of the post to facilitate raising the post and a spring balanced, controlled upward and downward movement. The safety post shall automatically lock when fully extended, with a release lever to disengage the post, allowing it to be returned to its lowered position.
    - a. Product: Ladder Safety Post ; The Bilco Company.
  14. Test Load:
    - a. Top Rails of Guards:



- 1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied horizontally and concurrently with 100 lbf/ ft. applied vertically downward.
  - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
  - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- b. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
  - c. Pipe or Tube: 1-1/4-inch ID galvanized pipe or 1-5/8-inch OD galvanized tube.
  - d. Chain Passway Enclosure: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
  - e. Pipe Ends and Tops: Covered or plugged with weather-resistant material.
  - f. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members that are exposed to exterior.
  - g. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a watertight manner.
  - h. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.7 ROOF SUPPORTS

- A. Pipe Roof Supports: Adjustable height, extruded-aluminum tube, urethane insulation filled, 2 inches in diameter, with aluminum base plates and manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure, and extruded-aluminum carrier assemblies, suitable for quantity of pipe runs and sizes, with EPDM end caps. Include manufacturer's standard hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.
  1. Pipe Support Height: As indicated.
  2. Pipe Roller Assembly: Stainless-steel roller assembly sized for supported pipes with extruded aluminum.
  3. Pipe Support Flashing: Insulated sleeve flashings with integral base flange, and EPDM grommeted top seal and base seals.
    - a. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.064 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored and is ready to receive roof accessories.
  2. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof accessories securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for completing roof accessory installation. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- B. Install roof accessories to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
  2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by roof accessory manufacturers for waterproof performance.
- D. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
- E. Roof Curb Installation: Set roof curb so top surface of roof curb is level.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Set equipment support so top surface of equipment support is level.
- G. Roof Hatch Installation:
  1. Check roof hatch for proper operation. Adjust operating mechanism as required. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware.
  2. Attach safety railing system to roof hatch curb.
  3. Attach ladder safety post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Seal joints with butyl sealant as required by manufacturer of roof accessories.

- I. Test units with operable components through full range of movement. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.
- 3.3 TOUCH UP
- A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting in accordance with Division 09 painting Sections.
  - B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 077200**

## SECTION 078100 - APPLIED FIREPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following: Exposed SFRM.
  - 1. Provide SFRM materials only in areas as required by the local codes and the authorities having jurisdiction to achieve required fire rating.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SFRM: Sprayed fire-resistive material.
- B. Exposed: Fire-resistive materials applied to surfaces that are exposed to view when the Work is completed, that are in elevator shafts and machine rooms, that are in mechanical rooms, and that are identified as exposed on Drawings.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM E-84-99: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. ASTM E-814-97: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
- B. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - 1. UL 723, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. UL 1479, Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
  - 3. UL Fire Resistance Directory: Through-Penetration Fire Stop Systems (XHEZ), and Fill, Void or Cavity Materials (XHHW), Through- Penetration Fire Stop Devices (XHCR).
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 1. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code
  - 2. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code
- D. NFPA 255, Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Structural framing plans indicating the following:
  - 1. Locations and types of surface preparations required before applying SFRM.
  - 2. Extent of SFRM for each construction and fire-resistance rating, including the following:
    - a. Applicable fire-resistance design designations of a qualified testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Minimum thicknesses needed to achieve required fire-resistance ratings of structural components and assemblies.
  - 3. Treatment of SFRM after application.
- C. Samples: For each type of colored, exposed SFRM, two Samples, each 4 inches square, of each color, texture, and material formulation to be applied. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of SFRM, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- F. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From SFRM manufacturer indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials have been tested for bond with substrates.
  - 2. Materials have been verified by SFRM manufacturer to be compatible with substrate primers and coatings.
  - 3. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for proposed SFRM.
- H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For SFRM.
- I. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by SFRM manufacturer as experienced and with sufficient trained staff to install manufacturer's products according to specified requirements. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its SFRM to Contractor or to an installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on the buyer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain SFRM through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. SFRM Testing: By a qualified testing and inspecting agency engaged by Contractor or manufacturer to test for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods.
  - 1. SFRMs are randomly selected for testing from bags bearing the applicable classification marking of UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Testing is performed on specimens of SFRMs that comply with laboratory testing requirements specified in Part 2 and are otherwise identical to installed fire-resistive materials, including application of accelerant, sealers, topcoats, tamping, troweling, rolling, and water overspray, if any of these are used in final application.
  - 3. Testing is performed on specimens whose application the independent testing and inspecting agency witnessed during preparation and conditioning. Include in test reports a full description of preparation and conditioning of laboratory test specimens.
- D. Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to test for compliance with requirements for specified performance and test methods.
  - 1. Test for bond per ASTM E 736 and requirements in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" for coating materials. Provide bond strength indicated in referenced fire-resistance design, but not less than minimum specified in Part 2.
  - 2. Verify that manufacturer, through its own laboratory testing or field experience, has not found primers or coatings to be incompatible with SFRM.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide SFRM with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify bags containing SFRM with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for SFRM serving as direct-applied protection tested per ASTM E 119.
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
- F. Provide products containing no detectable asbestos as determined according to the method specified in 40 CFR 763, Subpart E, Appendix E, Section 1, "Polarized Light Microscopy."
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to SFRM including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review products, exposure conditions, design ratings, restrained and unrestrained conditions, calculations, densities, thicknesses, bond strengths, and other performance requirements.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify sequencing and coordination requirements.
  - 3. Review weather predictions, ambient conditions, and proposed temporary protections for SFRM during and after installation.
  - 4. Review surface conditions and preparations.
  - 5. Review field quality-control testing procedures.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to Project site in original, unopened packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, shelf life if applicable, and fire-resistance ratings applicable to Project.
- B. Use materials with limited shelf life within period indicated. Remove from Project site and discard materials whose shelf life has expired.
- C. Store materials inside, under cover, and aboveground; keep dry until ready for use. Remove from Project site and discard wet or deteriorated materials.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply SFRM when ambient or substrate temperature is 40 deg F or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.
- B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of SFRM. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fire-resistive material dries thoroughly.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Sequence and coordinate application of SFRM with other related work specified in other Sections to comply with the following requirements:
1. Provide temporary enclosure as required to confine spraying operations and protect the environment.
  2. Provide temporary enclosures for applications to prevent deterioration of fire-resistive material due to exposure to weather and to unfavorable ambient conditions for humidity, temperature, and ventilation.
  3. Avoid unnecessary exposure of fire-resistive material to abrasion and other damage likely to occur during construction operations subsequent to its application.
  4. Do not apply fire-resistive material to metal roof deck substrates until roofing has been completed; prohibit roof traffic during application and drying of fire-resistive material.
  5. Defer installing ducts, piping, and other items that would interfere with applying fire-resistive material until application of fire protection is completed.
  6. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after fire-resistive material has been applied, inspected, and tested and corrections have been made to defective applications.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Contractor and by Installer, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SFRMs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cracking, flaking, spalling, or eroding in excess of specified requirements; peeling; or delaminating of SFRM from substrates.
    - b. Not covered under the warranty are failures due to damage by occupants and Owner's maintenance personnel, exposure to environmental conditions other than those investigated and approved during fire-response testing, and other causes not reasonably foreseeable under conditions of normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXPOSED SFRM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide W.R. Grace & Co.; Monokote - Type Z106G, or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Carboline Co., Fireproofing Products Division.
  2. Isolatek International Corporation.
- B. Material Composition: Manufacturer's standard product, exposed cementitious SFRM, factory-mixed, dry, cement aggregate formulation; or chloride-free formulation of gypsum binders, additives, and inorganic aggregates mixed with water at Project site to form a slurry or mortar for conveyance and application.
- C. Physical Properties: Minimum values, unless otherwise indicated, or higher values required to attain required fire-resistance ratings, measured per standard test methods referenced with each property as follows:
1. Dry Density: Values for average and individual densities as required for fire-resistance ratings indicated, per ASTM E 605 or AWCI Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method," but with an average density of not less than 22 lb/cu. ft.
  2. Bond Strength: 434 lbf/sq. ft. minimum per ASTM E 736.
  3. Compressive Strength: 51 lbf/sq. in. minimum per ASTM E 761.
  4. Corrosion Resistance: No evidence of corrosion per ASTM E 937.
  5. Deflection: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 759.
  6. Effect of Impact on Bonding: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 760.
  7. Air Erosion: Maximum weight loss of 0.025 g/sq. ft. per ASTM E 859.
  8. Combustion Characteristics: Passes ASTM E 136.
  9. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide SFRM with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 10 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 0.
  10. Fungal Resistance: No observed growth on specimens per ASTM G 21.

## 2.2 AUXILIARY FIRE-RESISTIVE MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary fire-resistive materials that are compatible with SFRM and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.
- B. Substrate Primers: For use on each substrate and with each sprayed fire-resistive product, provide primer that complies with one or more of the following requirements:
  - 1. Primer's bond strength complies with requirements specified in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" for coating materials based on a series of bond tests per ASTM E 736.
  - 2. Primer is identical to those used in assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics of SFRM per ASTM E 119 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Fire-Resistive Material: Product approved by manufacturer of SFRM.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrates and other conditions affecting performance of work. A substrate is in satisfactory condition if it complies with the following:
  - 1. Substrates comply with requirements in the Section where the substrate and related materials and construction are specified.
  - 2. Substrates are free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, incompatible primers, incompatible paints, incompatible encapsulants, or other foreign substances capable of impairing bond of fire-resistive materials with substrates under conditions of normal use or fire exposure.
  - 3. Objects penetrating fire-resistive material, including clips, hangers, support sleeves, and similar items, are securely attached to substrates.
  - 4. Substrates are not obstructed by ducts, piping, equipment, and other suspended construction that will interfere with applying fire-resistive material.
- B. Verify that roof construction, installation of roof-top HVAC equipment, and other related work are completed.
- C. Conduct tests according to fire-resistive material manufacturer's written recommendations to verify that substrates are free of substances capable of interfering with bond.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fire-resistive materials during application.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fire-resistive material, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.
- C. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive SFRM.
- D. For exposed applications, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of SFRM. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with fire-resistive material manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and spray on fire-resistive material, as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
- B. Apply SFRM that is identical to products tested as specified in Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article and substantiated by test reports, with respect to rate of application, accelerator use, sealers, topcoats, tamping, troweling, water overspray, or other materials and procedures affecting test results.
- C. Coat substrates with bonding adhesive before applying fire-resistive material where required to achieve fire-resistance rating or as recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer for material and application indicated.
- D. Extend fire-resistive material in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected. Unless otherwise recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer, install body of fire-resistive covering in a single course.

- E. Spray apply fire-resistive materials to maximum extent possible. Following the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer.

### 3.4 APPLICATION, EXPOSED SFRM

- A. Apply exposed SFRM in thicknesses and densities not less than those required to achieve fire-resistance ratings designated for each condition, but apply in greater thicknesses and densities if indicated.
  - 1. For steel beams and bracing, provide a thickness of not less than 1 inch.
  - 2. For metal roof decks, provide a thickness of not less than 1/2 inch.
- B. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of material and matching Architect's sample or, if none, finish approved for field-erected mockup.
- C. Apply exposed SFRM to produce spray-textured finish requiring no further treatment.
- D. Cure exposed SFRM according to product manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of SFRM shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows. Do not proceed with application of SFRM for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of SFRM show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.
  - 1. Thickness for Roof Assemblies: For each 1000-sq. ft. area, or partial area, on each floor, from the average of 4 measurements from a 144-sq. in. sample area, with sample width of not less than 6 inches per ASTM E 605.
  - 2. Thickness for Structural Frame Members: From a sample of 25 percent of structural members per floor, taking 9 measurements at a single cross section for structural frame beams or girders, 7 measurements of a single cross section for joists and trusses, and 12 measurements of a single cross section for columns per ASTM E 605.
  - 3. Density for Roofs and Structural Frame Members: At frequency and from sample size indicated for determining thickness of each type of construction and structural framing member, per ASTM E 605 or AWC Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method."
  - 4. Bond Strength for Roofs and Structural Framing Members: For each 10,000-sq. ft. area, or partial area, on each floor, cohesion and adhesion from one sample of size indicated for determining thickness of each type of construction and structural framing member, per ASTM E 736.
    - a. Field test SFRM that is applied to flanges of wide-flange, structural-steel members on surfaces matching those that will exist for remainder of steel receiving fire-resistive material.
    - b. If surfaces of structural steel receiving SFRM are primed or otherwise painted for coating materials, perform series of bond tests specified in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory." Provide bond strength indicated in referenced UL fire-resistance criteria, but not less than 150 lbf/sq. ft. minimum per ASTM E 736.
  - 5. If testing finds applications of SFRM are not in compliance with requirements, testing and inspecting agency will perform additional random testing to determine extent of noncompliance.
- C. Remove and replace applications of SFRM that do not pass tests and inspections for cohesion and adhesion, for density, or for both and retest as specified above.
- D. Apply additional SFRM, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate that thickness does not comply with specified requirements, and retest as specified above.

### 3.6 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND REPAIR

- A. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.
- B. Protect SFRM, according to advice of product manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so fire protection will be without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Coordinate application of SFRM with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fire protection. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect SFRM and patch any damaged or removed areas.
- D. Repair or replace work that has not successfully protected steel.

**END OF SECTION 078100**

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. General: For penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.
  - B. Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with the following ratings determined per ASTM E 814 and the following:
    - 1. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
    - 2. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:
      - a. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
      - b. Penetrations located outside fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosures.
  - C. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
    - 1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
    - 2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
    - 3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
  - D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
    - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
  - C. Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule: Indicate locations of each through-penetration firestop system, along with the following information:
    - 1. Types of penetrating items.
    - 2. Types of constructions penetrated, including fire-resistance ratings and, where applicable, thicknesses of construction penetrated.
    - 3. Through-penetration firestop systems for each location identified by firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
  - E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating through-penetration firestop system complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.



## 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM E-84-99: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. ASTM E-814-97: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
- B. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - 1. UL 723, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. UL 1479, Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
  - 3. UL Fire Resistance Directory: Through-Penetration Fire Stop Systems (XHEZ), and Fill, Void or Cavity Materials (XHHW), Through- Penetration Fire Stop Devices (XHCR).
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 1. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code
  - 2. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code
- D. NFPA 255, Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors."
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
  - 1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of through-penetration firestop system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.
- D. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined by building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, through-penetration firestop systems that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those systems indicated [in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 3, that are produced by one of the following manufacturers:
1. Grace, W. R. & Co. - Conn.
  2. Hilti, Inc.
  3. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.
  4. Tremco; Sealant/Weatherproofing Division.
  5. USG Corporation.

### **2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated.

### **2.3 MIXING**

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing through-penetration firestop systems to comply with firestop system manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of through-penetration firestop systems.
  2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

### 3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and with firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify through-penetration firestop systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of edge of the firestop systems so that labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Use mechanical fasteners for metal labels. For plastic labels, use self-adhering type with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed and, in combination with label material, will result in partial destruction of label if removal is attempted. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Through-Penetration Firestop System - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Through-penetration firestop system designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified, independent inspecting agency to inspect through-penetration firestops. Independent inspecting agency shall comply with ASTM E 2174 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports.
- B. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

- 3.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM SCHEDULE
- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to alpha-alpha-numeric designations listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
  - B. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items, FS-1; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-0001-0999.
  - C. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing, FS-2; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-1001-1999.
  - D. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing, FS-3; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: W-L-1001-1999.
  - E. Firestop Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing, FS-4; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-2001-2999.
  - F. Firestop Systems for Electrical Cables, FS-5; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-3001-3999.
  - G. Firestop Systems for Cable Trays, FS-6; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-4001-4999.
  - H. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes, FS-7; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-5001-5999.
  - I. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes, FS-8; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: W-L-5001-5999.
  - J. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants FS-9; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-6001-6999.
  - K. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants FS-10; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: W-L-6001-6999.
  - L. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants FS-11; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-7001-7999.
  - M. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants FS-12; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: W-L-7001-7999.
  - N. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrants FS-13; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ-8001-8999.
  - O. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrants FS-14; comply with the following:
    - 1. Available UL-Classified Systems: W-L-8001-8999.

**END OF SECTION 078413**

## SECTION 078446 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
  2. Joints at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections.
  3. Joints in smoke barriers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating fire-resistive joint systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fire-resistive joint systems.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM E-84-99: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  2. ASTM E-814-97: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
- B. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  1. UL 723, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  2. UL 1479, Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
  3. UL Fire Resistance Directory: Through-Penetration Fire Stop Systems (XHEZ), and Fill, Void or Cavity Materials (XHHW), Through- Penetration Fire Stop Devices (XHCR).
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  1. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code
  2. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code
- D. NFPA 255, Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing fire-resistive joint systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its fire-resistive joint system products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Fire-resistive joint systems shall comply with the following requirements:
  1. Fire-resistive joint system tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing agency.
    - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by reference to designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of fire-resistive joint system installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Where required, provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079:
  - 1. Joints include those installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of construction they will join.
  - 3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Grace Construction Products.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. RectorSeal Corporation.
    - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
    - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - f. USG Corporation.
- C. Joints at Exterior Curtain-Wall/Floor Intersections: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with rating determined by ASTM E 119 based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg or ASTM E 2307.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Grace Construction Products.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. RectorSeal Corporation.
    - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
    - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - f. USG Corporation.
- D. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per UL 2079.
  - 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft of joint at 0.30 inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Grace Construction Products.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. RectorSeal Corporation.
    - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
    - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - f. USG Corporation.
- E. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- F. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for systems indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
  - 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify fire-resistive joint systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove or penetrate joint system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Fire-Resistive Joint System - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or fire-resistive joint systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace fire-resistive joint systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN or Category XHDG.
- B. Refer to Drawings for specific scheduled applications.

**END OF SECTION 078446**



## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Silicone joint sealants.
  2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  3. Urethane joint sealants.
  4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  5. Butyl joint sealants.
  6. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  1. ACI Report #302 IR-80, Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM C-321-94, Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars {Sealant Adhesion To Concrete}.
  2. ASTM C-510-90(1997)e1, Standard Test Method for Staining and Color Change of Single-or Multicomponent Joint Sealants.
  3. ASTM C-603-90(1997)e1, Standard Test Method for Extrusion Rate and Application Life of Elastomeric Sealants {Elastomeric Traffic Sealant Life: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints}.
  4. ASTM C-639-95 Standard Test Method for Rheological (Flow) Properties of Elastomeric Sealants.
  5. ASTM C-661-98, Standard Test Method for Indention Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer {Elastomeric Traffic Sealant Hardness: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints}.
  6. ASTM C-679-87(1997)e1, Standard Test Method for Tack-Free Time of Elastomeric Sealants {Elastomeric Traffic Sealant Tack-Free Time: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints}.
  7. ASTM C-719-93, Standard Test Method for Adhesion and Cohesion of Elastomeric Joint Sealants Under Cyclic Movement (Hockman Cycle) {Sealant Dynamic Adhesion and Cohesion Movement Capability}.
  8. ASTM C-792-93(1998), Standard Test Method for Effects of Heat Aging on Weight Loss, Cracking, and Caulking of Elastomeric Sealants.
  9. ASTM C-793-91(1997)e1, Standard Test Method for Effects of Accelerated Weathering on Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  10. ASTM C-794-93, Standard Test Method for Adhesion-in-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants {Sealant Adhesion-In-Peel: Glazing Joints and Curtain Wall Joints and Glass Block Unit Masonry Joints}.
  11. ASTM C-834-95, Standard Specification for Latex Sealants {Interior Caulking}.
  12. ASTM C-919-98, Standard Specification for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications.

13. ASTM C-920-98, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants {Sealant Shore Hardness}.
  14. ASTM C-1016-94a, Standard Test Method for Determining of Water Absorption of Sealant Backing (Joint Filler) Material.
  15. ASTM C-1247-98, Standard Test Method for Durability of Sealants Exposed to Continuous Immersion in Liquids {Elastomeric Traffic Sealant Continuous Immersion: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints}.
  16. ASTM C-1311-95, Standard Specification for Solvent Release Sealants.
  17. ASTM D-217-97, Standard Test Methods for Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease {Sealant Resistance to Penetration: Interior Acoustical Caulking}.
  18. ASTM D-412-98a, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanizing Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomeric-Tension {Sealant Elongation, Ultimate Tensile Strength: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints, Interior Caulking, Glazing Joints and Curtain Wall Joints and Glass Block Unit masonry Joints}.
  19. ASTM D-624-98, Standard Test Methods for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers {Tear Strength: Glazing Joints and Curtain Wall Joints and Glass Block Unit Masonry Joints}.
  20. ASTM D-638-99, Standard Test Methods for Tensile Properties of Plastics { Tensile Sealant Elongation: Sealant}.
  21. ASTM D-695-96, Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics {Sealant: Compressive Yield}.
  22. ASTM D-1002-99, Standard Test Method for Apparent Shear Strength of Single-Lap-Joint Adhesively Bonded Metal Specimens by Tension Loading {Sealant Adhesion Metal-to-Metal}.
  23. ASTM D-2202-93a, Standard Test Method for Slump of Sealants {Slump: Interior Acoustical Caulking}.
  24. ASTM D-2240-97e1, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness {Sealant Hardness: Glazing Joints and Curtain Wall Joints and Glass Block Unit masonry Joints}.
  25. ASTM D-3960-98, Standard Practice for Determining Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content of Paints and Related Coatings {VOC Content of Sealants: Interior Ceramic Tile Expansion and Isolation Joints}.
  26. ASTM D-4541-95e1, Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers {Sealant Adhesion to Concrete}.
  27. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  28. ASTM E-119-98, Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  29. ASTM E-814-97 Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-S-159B, Horizontal Traffic Grade Chemically Curing Polyurethane Sealants.
  2. FS TT-S-195B, Horizontal Traffic Grade Chemically Curing Polyurethane Sealants.
  3. FS TT-S-00227E, Elastomeric Sealant Standards.
  4. FS TT-S-00230C, Neutral Curing Class A Sealant Standards.
  5. FS TT-S-001543A, Dynamic Movement Capability Sealant Standards.
  6. FS TT-S-001657, Butyl Rubber Sealant Standards.
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA 251, Fire Resistance of Sealants.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer.
  - B. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
    1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
  - C. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
  - D. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
    1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

#### 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
  - 3. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 4. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
  - 6. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
  - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
    - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
      - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
  - 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Limits of Interior Sealants: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: Match adjacent substrates unless indicated otherwise.

### 2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 795.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; SilPruf NB.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 864NST.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2.
    - e. Sika Corporation; Silasil WS295.

### 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems; Sonalastic TX1.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Stampede-1.
    - d. Sika Corporation U.S.; Sikaflex Textured Sealant.
    - e. Sika Corporation; Sikaflex 2c NS.
    - f. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic.
- B. Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems; Sonolastic SL 1.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; NR-201.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Stampede 1SL.
    - d. Sika Corporation; Sikaflex 2c SL.
- C. Urethane, M, NS, 50, T, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Tremco Incorporated; Dymeric 240.
- D. Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, :
    - a. LymTal International, Inc.; Iso-Flex 888QC.
- E. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 555-SL.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II SG Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Stampede-2SL.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; THC 900/901.
    - d. Sika Corporation; Sika Sikaflex 2C SL.

## 2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 786-M White.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; SCS1700 Sanitary.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200.
    - d. Sika Corporation; Sikasil GP.

## 2.5 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 300.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.

## 2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems; Sonolac.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); 850A.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

## 2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems.
    - b. Construction Foam Products, a division of Nomaco, Inc.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
  5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
  2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
  5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
    - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
    - e. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
    - f. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - g. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of windows .
    - h. Precast Concrete to Precast Concrete Joints: Provide dual joint line with weep capabilities as indicated and as specified herein.
    - i. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 25, NT.

3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
  1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in stone flooring.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
    - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of walls and partitions.
    - d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
  1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors .
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
  1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Aluminum thresholds.
    - b. Sill plates.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

**END OF SECTION 079200**



## SECTION 081113.13 – STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Building Envelope Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard hollow metal doors frames.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.
- B. Standard Hollow Metal Work to comply with the following Steel Door Institute Performance Standards:
  - 1. Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8 (R2008).
  - 2. ANSI/SDI A250.4 (2001) - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames, Frames Anchors and Hardware Reinforcing.
  - 3. ANSI/SDI A250.6 (R2009) - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
  - 4. ANSI/SDI A250.10 (R2004) - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames.
  - 5. ANSI/SDI A250.11 (2001) - Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames.
  - 6. ANSI/SDI A250.13 (2008) – Testing and Rating of Severe windstorm Resistant Components for Swinging Door Assemblies.
  - 7. SDI 111 (2008 – Recommendations for Selection and Usage Guide for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
  - 8. SDI 117 (2009) – Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
  - 9. SDI 122 (2007) - Installation and Troubleshooting Guide for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
  - 10. SDI 124 (1998) - Maintenance of Standard Steel Doors and Frames.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Provide product cost and pre-and post-consumer recycled content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door design.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 7. Details of accessories.
  - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- D. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.
  - 2. Supplier to submit shop drawing schedules with in two weeks of written notification from Contractor in the event to expedite the process of frames to jobsite.
  - 3. Certificate: current certificate stating the manufacture is a member of SDI.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. 1. ANSI A115.1 to ANSI A115.11, July 1971, Specifications for Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware.

2. 2. ANSI A156, A156 Series for Hardware Standards.
  3. 3. ANSI A224.1, Test Procedures and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware {Hot Dipped Galvanized Fasteners}.
  2. ASTM A-366-97e1, Standard Specification for Commercial Steel (CS) Sheet, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent) Cold-Rolled.
  3. ASTM A-568-98e1, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled.
  4. ASTM A-569-98, Standard Specification for Steel, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent), Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip Commercial Quality.
  5. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) {G-90 Galvanized Coating} or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) {A-60 Galvannealed Coating} by the Hot-Dip Process. {Corrosion Resistance, Formerly ASTM A-525, ASTM A-526, ASTM A-527 and ASTM A-446-71-Galvanized Carbon Steel Sheets}.
  6. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process. {G-90 Galvanized Coating} {Formerly ASTM A-525 and ASTM A-527}.
  7. ASTM A-1011-00, Standard Specification for Steel, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent), Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip Commercial Quality {Formerly ASTM A-245-72, ASTM A-569-98 and ASTM A-750-00}.
  8. ASTM B-117-97, Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus.
  9. ASTM C-236-89e1, Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Guarded Hot Box.
  10. ASTM D-714-87e1, Standard Test Method for Evaluating Degree of Blistering of Paints.
  11. ASTM E-2074-01, Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies {Formerly ASTM E-152-95}.
  12. ASTM F-476-84(1996), Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies.
- C. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-C-49z, Bituminous Coating.
- D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
1. NAAMM, Standard HMMA 861-86, Specifications for Commercial Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA-80, Fire Doors and Fire Windows, Fire Tests for Door and Window Assemblies.
- F. Steel Door Institute (SDI):
1. SDI – 100, Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
  2. SDI – 105, Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames.
- G. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
1. UL, Classification Ratings for Fire Rated Door and Frame Assemblies.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames from single source manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 and UL10C, embossed labels are acceptable on standard 3 sided door frames.
1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  2. Temperature-Rise Limit **At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways**, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

2. Any scratches or disfigurements caused in shipping or handling are promptly cleaned and touched up with a rust-inhibitive primer to new conditions

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z 12G coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008 or ASTM A 1011, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153.
- F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

#### 2.2 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  1. Design: Flush panel.
  2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
    - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
    - b. Steel-stiffened door at interior and exterior shipping and receiving locations.
    - c. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 11 when tested to ASTM C518 calculated and 3.0 when tested to ASTM C1363 operable.
      - 1) Locations: All exterior doors, and as indicated on Door Schedule..
  3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors:
    - a. Beveled Edges: 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
      - 1) At meeting edges of pairs of doors bevel edge at active leaf, square edge at inactive leaf.
      - 2) Universal hinge preps for reverse swinging of doors are not acceptable.
  4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch radius.
  5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch-thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
  6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
  7. Provide hollow metal doors with at least 30 percent total recycled; 10 percent post-consumer content.
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
  1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush)).
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:

1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Full Flush).
  - D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
  - E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- 2.3 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES
- A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
  - B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
    1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
    2. Fabricate frames as face welded joints and back weld joints continuously, unless otherwise indicated.
    3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: (14 gage) thick steel sheet.
  - C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
    1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
    2. Fabricate frames as full profile and face welded unless otherwise indicated.
    3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: (16 gage) - thick steel sheet.
    4. Frames 48-inches and wider in opening width are required to be min. 14 gage thick steel sheet.
    5. Frames for Wood Doors: (16 gage) thick steel sheet.
    6. Frames for Borrowed Lights: (16 gage) thick steel sheet.
  - D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.
  - E. Knock down frames are not acceptable.
- 2.4 FRAME ANCHORS
- A. Jamb Anchors:
    1. Stud Anchors: Welded frames for installation in stud partitions shall be provided with welded in steel anchors of suitable design, not less than 18 gage thickness, secured inside each jamb as follows:
      - a. Frames up to 60" height: 2 anchors.
      - b. Frames greater than 60" up to 90" 4 anchors.
      - c. Frames greater than 90" up to 96" 5 anchors.
      - d. Frames greater than 96": 5 anchors plus one for each 24" or fraction thereof over 96" spaced at 24" maximum between anchors.
    2. Post-installed Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location. 3" minimum, embedment.
    3. Hot-dip galvanize all anchors in exterior walls.
  - B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.067 inch thick, and as follows:
    1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Floor anchors shall be provided with two holes for fasteners and shall be fastened inside jambs with at least four (4) spot welds per anchor
- 2.5 STOPS AND MOLDINGS
- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
  - B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.6 ACCESSORIES
- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
  - B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.
- 2.7 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
  - B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.
  - C. Hollow Metal Doors:
    1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
    2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.

3. Seamless Edge (Model 2): Provide seamless edge on hollow metal doors by intermittently tack welding seam, grinding smooth and finishing edge free from defects and blemishes.
  - D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
    1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
    2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
    3. Provide A60 Galvannealed coating at frames in restrooms with showers/Jacuzzi, clean areas such as surgery rooms and surgical suites, clean rooms, and soil rooms.
    4. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Division 08 "Door Hardware."
      - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
      - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
  - E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
  - F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
    1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
    2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
    3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
  - G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
    1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
    2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
    3. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
    4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.
    5. Gap for butted or mitered joints in glass stop should not exceed .0625-inch.
- 2.8 STEEL FINISHES
- A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
    1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory after installation of frame in wall. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
  1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.

3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
    - a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
    - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
    - c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
    - d. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
    - e. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
  2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
  4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
  5. Field Supplied Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  6. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
    - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch ( ) plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (plus or minus 1/16 inch).
    - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
    - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
  2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
  2. Secure exterior removable stops with security head stainless steel screws.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Adjust frames and doors per SDI 122 Installation for trouble shooting openings.
- C. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- D. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- E. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 081113.13**

## SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer and plastic-laminate faces.
  - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
  - 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
  - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
  - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  - 4. Undercuts.
  - 5. Requirements for veneer matching.
  - 6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
  - 7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
  - 2. Plastic laminate, 6 inches (150 mm) square, for each color, texture, and pattern selected.
  - 3. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
    - a. Provide Samples for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
    - b. Provide Samples for each color, texture, and pattern of plastic laminate required.
    - c. Finish veneer-faced door Samples with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A208.1 – Particleboard.
- B. ASTM E 90 – Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
- C. ASTM E 413 – Classification for Rating Sound Insulation.
- D. AWI Section 1300 – Architectural Flush Doors.
- E. UBC 7-2-1997/UL 10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- F. WDMA Finish System TR-6, transparent – Catalyzed Polyurethane.
- G. WDMA I.S.1-A – Architectural Wood Flush Doors.
- H. Quality Certification:
  - 1. Qualified to affix each door with National Woodwork Manufacturer's Association (NWMA) or National Wood Window and Door Association (NWWDA) Quality Certification Stamp.
  - 2. AWI Quality Standards, AWI Section 1300.
- I. Comply with the provisions of the following codes and standards:
  - 1. American Woodworking Institute (AWI).
  - 2. International Building Code (IBC) 2000.
  - 3. National Woodwork Manufacturer's Association (NWMA).
  - 4. National Wood Window and Door Association (NWWDA).
  - 5. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.)
  - 6. Uniform Building Code (UBC) 7-2-1997.
  - 7. Warnock Hersey (WH).
- J. Identify as to construction and manufacturer with a stamp, dowel, label or other readily recognized, permanent mark on door.



- K. Testing Requirements:
    - 1. Bonding NWMA I.S. 1:
      - a. Exterior doors: Waterproof bond for Type I doors.
      - b. Interior Doors: Water-resistant bond for Type II doors.
    - 2. Warp: NWMA I.S. 1:
  - L. Allowable Tolerances:
    - 1. Size - 1/16"
    - 2. Maximum warp or twist: 1/4"
    - 3. Squareness:
      - a. Square corners.
- 1.5 Maximum difference in diagonals measured on the face of door from upper right corner to lower left corner and upper left corner to lower right corner: 1/8" maximum.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
  - B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
  - C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.
- 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.
- 1.10 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
      - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
    - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
    - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- 2.2 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
    - 2. Ampco.
    - 3. Eggers Industries.
    - 4. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group company.
    - 5. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
    - 6. Mohawk Doors; a Masonite company.
    - 7. VT Industries, Inc.
  - B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors and wood paneling from single manufacturer.

## 2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
  - 1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
  - 2. Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of quality standard. Comply with those selections and requirements in addition to quality standard.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
  - 3. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 4. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 5. Pairs: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
    - a. Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel same color as doors.
    - b. Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
- D. Particleboard-Core Doors:
  - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1.
  - 2. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2 or M-2, except for density.
  - 3. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
  - 4. Provide doors with cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
- E. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
  - 1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
    - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
    - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf.
- F. Mineral-Core Doors:
  - 1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
  - 2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
    - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking.
    - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
    - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
    - d. 4-1/2-by-10-inch lock blocks, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
  - 3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.

## 2.4 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
  - 1. Grade: Custom (Grade A faces).
  - 2. Species: Select white birch.
  - 3. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced) As scheduled.
  - 4. Match between Veneer Leaves: match.
  - 5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: match.
  - 6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
  - 7. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
  - 8. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
  - 9. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - edge Type A.
  - 10. Core: Particleboard.

11. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
12. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.

## 2.5 DOORS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

### A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Premium.
2. Faces: MDO.
  - a. Apply MDO to standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers.
  - b. Hardboard Faces: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
  - c. MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or Grade 160.
3. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
4. Core: Particleboard.
5. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.

## 2.6 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED DOORS

### A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Custom.
2. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS.
3. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As scheduled.
4. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Hardwood edges for staining to match faces.
5. Core: Either glued wood stave or structural composite lumber.
6. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before faces and crossbands are applied. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
7. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.

## 2.7 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

### A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

### B. Metal Louvers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Air Louvers, Inc.
  - b. Anemostat; a Mestek company.
  - c. Hiawatha Incorporated.
  - d. McGill Architectural Products.
2. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V.
3. Metal and Finish: Extruded aluminum with light bronze, Class II, color anodic finish, AA-M12C22A32/A34.

### C. Louvers for Fire-Rated Doors: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of 1-1/2 hours and less.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Air Louvers Inc.
  - b. Anemostat; a Mestek company.
  - c. McGill Architectural Products.
2. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, finish.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

### A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.

### B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

- 2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
  - C. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
    - 1. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber, rabbeted, meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.
  - D. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
    - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
    - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
    - 3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.
- 2.9 FACTORY FINISHING
- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
    - 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  - B. Factory finish doors.
  - C. Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish.
  - D. Factory finish doors where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.
  - E. Transparent Finish:
    - 1. Grade: Custom.
    - 2. Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 5, conversion varnish or System 11, catalyzed polyurethane.
    - 3. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
    - 4. Staining: As scheduled.
    - 5. Effect: Open-grain finish.
    - 6. Sheen: Satin.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
    - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
    - 2. Reject doors with defects.
  - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
    - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
    - 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
  - B. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
  - C. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.
- 3.3 ADJUSTING
- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
  - B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

**END OF SECTION 081416**

## SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
    - 1. Recycled Content:
      - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
  - C. Shop Drawings:
    - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
    - 2. Detail fabrication and installation of access doors and frames for each type of substrate.
  - D. Product Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.
- 1.4 REFERENCES
  - A. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
    - 1. UL, Frame and Fire Door Assembly Rating and Fire Rated Ceiling Access Door Ratings.
  - B. Occupational , Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
  - C. OSHA, Required Minimum Access Door Sizes.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
  - A. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content so that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 35 percent.
  - B. Regional Content: Products shall be extracted or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of project site.
- 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS
  - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Acudor Products, Inc.
    - 2. Babcock-Davis.
    - 3. Jensen Industries; Div. of Broan-Nutone, LLC.
    - 4. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Div. of Activar Construction Products Group.
    - 5. Karp Associates, Inc.
    - 6. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - 7. Milcor Inc.
    - 8. Nystrom, Inc.
  - B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.
  - C. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:
    - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
    - 2. Locations: .
    - 3. Door Size: As indicated.
    - 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
      - a. Finish: Factory prime.
    - 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
    - 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.

7. Hardware: Latch.
  - D. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
    1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide frame with beads for concealed flange installation.
    2. Locations: .
    3. Door Size: As indicated.
    4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
      - a. Finish: Factory prime.
    5. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
    6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
    7. Hardware: Latch.
  - E. Recessed Access Doors:
    1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door in the form of a pan recessed for infill. Provide frame with gypsum board bead for concealed flange installation.
    2. Locations: Ceiling.
    3. Door Size: As indicated.
    4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
      - a. Finish: Factory prime.
    5. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
    6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
    7. Hardware: Latch.
  - F. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:
    1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide self-latching door with automatic closer and interior latch release. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
    2. Locations: Wall.
    3. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
    4. Temperature-Rise Rating: .
    5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch, 20 gage.
      - a. Finish: Factory prime.
    6. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
    7. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
    8. Hardware: Latch.
  - G. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
    1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide self-latching door with automatic closer and interior latch release. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
    2. Locations: .
    3. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than 1 hour.
    4. Temperature-Rise Rating: 250 deg F at the end of 30 minutes.
    5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch, 20 gage.
      - a. Finish: Factory prime.
    6. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
    7. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
    8. Hardware: Latch.
  - H. Hardware:
    1. Latch: Cam latch operated by flush key with interior release.
- 2.3 MATERIALS
- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
  - C. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
  - D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
  - 3. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Steel and Metallic-Coated-Steel Finishes:
  - 1. Factory Prime: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

**END OF SECTION 083113**

## SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
  2. Storefront framing for window walls.
  3. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    - b. Anchorage.
    - c. Expansion provisions.
    - d. Glazing.
    - e. Flashing and drainage.
  3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  2. Anchorage.
  3. Expansion provisions.
  4. Glazing.
  5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Association (AA):
  1. AA-6063-T5, Aluminum Alloy and Temper.
- B. Architectural Aluminum Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  1. AAMA 602.2-1992, Clear Protective Coating for Construction Protection.
  2. AAMA 605.2-1992, Color and Clear Top Coatings.
  3. AAMA, Width of Aluminum Door Rails and Stiles.
- C. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
- D. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  1. CABO/ANSI A117.1-1992, Bottom Door Rail Height.
  2. ANSI 1992, Sect. 4.13.14.
  3. ANSI 1998, Sect. 404.2.10.
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-123-97ae1, Standard Specification for Zinc Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products {Formerly ASTM A-386}.



2. ASTM A-153-98, Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  3. ASTM B-209-96, Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
  4. ASTM B-221-96, Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Aluminum Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
  5. ASTM C-509-94, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material.
  6. ASTM C-864-99, Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers {Glazing Gaskets}.
  7. ASTM C-1115-94, Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Silicone Rubber Gaskets and Accessories. {Formerly ASTM D-200}.
  8. ASTM E-283-91, Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Pressure Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen {Air Leakage}.
  9. ASTM E-330-97e1, Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference {Wind Pressure and Structural Loading}.
  10. ASTM E-331-96, Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference {Water Leakage}.
- F. American Welding Society (AWS):
1. AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code – Steel.
  2. AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code – Aluminum.
- G. Council of American Building Officials (CABO):
1. CABO, Bottom Manual Door Rail Height.
- H. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
- I. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS TT-C-49z, Bituminous Coating.
- J. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
1. SSPC-PS 12, Bituminous Coating.
- K. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
1. U.L., Accident Equipment List.
- L. United States Standard (US):
1. US, Hardware Finishes.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Mockup Testing Submittals:
1. Testing Program: Developed specifically for Project.
  2. Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each mockup test.
  3. Record Drawings: As-built drawings of preconstruction laboratory mockups showing changes made during preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.
- D. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
  - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
  - 3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
    - a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds

- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure test when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 and AAMA 506.
  - 1. Large missile impact: For aluminum-framed systems located within 30 feet of grade.
  - 2. Small missile impact: For aluminum-framed systems located more than 30 feet above grade
  - 3. As required by local building codes
- G. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
  - 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
    - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
  - 2. Entrance Doors:
    - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
    - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- H. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
  - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- I. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test according to AAMA 501.1 as follows:
  - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
  - 2. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.
- J. For Seaward, Inland I projects meet the following requirements: Wind Loads: Provide assemblies approved by the Insurance or certificate of compliance from independent registered engineer in the state of in which the project is to be built and to include anchorage, capable of withstanding windload, per authorities having jurisdiction and the International Building Code Design Loads per section 1609.
  - 1. As required by local building codes
- K. Interstory Drift: Accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.
  - 1. Design Displacement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Test Performance: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.
- L. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
  - 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
  - 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.40 as determined according to NFRC 200.
  - 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than as determined according to NFRC 500.
- M. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  - 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
    - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
    - c. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Tubelite.

### 2.4 FRAMING

- A. MFR: Tubelite (see McDonald's project manual for additional approved vendors)
  - 1. PRODUCT: 14000 SERIES Flush Glaze
  - 2. FINISH: Extra Dark Bronze
  - 3. LINK: [https://www.tubeliteinc.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/140001\\_ODetails.pdf](https://www.tubeliteinc.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/140001_ODetails.pdf)

- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
  - 4. Finish: High-performance organic finish.
  - 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
    - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
    - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
    - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
    - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
    - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
    - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
    - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
  - 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
  - 2. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
    - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

## 2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products complying with BHMA standard referenced.
  - 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  - 3. Opening-Force Requirements:
    - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
    - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
  - 1. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- C. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch.

## 2.7 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.
  - 1. Color: Match structural sealant.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, fabricated from 300 series stainless steel.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- thick stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M of type recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from .
  - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- C. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- D. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  - 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Do not install damaged components.
  - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
  - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
  - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
  - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
  - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
  - 3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
  - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
  - 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
    - a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

3.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE SETS

- A. Refer to Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

**END OF SECTION 084113**

## SECTION 085659 - SERVICE WINDOW UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Related Sections: Provisions established in General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, Division 01 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
  - B. Section Includes:
    - 1. Horizontal sliding pass-thru window.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: Including all pertinent performance characteristics and criteria.
  - B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, construction, sizes, quantities, finishes, and installation details.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Manufacturer's Instructions: For installation, maintenance, and repair.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
  - A. Field Measurements: Check actual window openings by accurate field measurement before fabrication. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of the work.
    - 1. Where necessary, proceed with fabrication without field measurements, and coordinate fabrication tolerances to ensure proper fit of window units
- 1.6 WARRANTY
  - A. Provide warranties in accordance with Section 017700.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURER
  - A. Ready Access, Inc., 1815 Arthur Drive, West Chicago, Illinois 60185. Toll Free (800) 621-5045. Phone (630) 876-7766. Fax (630) 876-7767. Web Site [www.ready-access.com](http://www.ready-access.com). E-Mail [ready@ready-access.com](mailto:ready@ready-access.com).
- 2.2 FLUSH-MOUNT DRIVE-THRU WINDOWS
  - A. Flush-Mount Pass-Thru Windows: 275 Single Panel Manual Open/Self-Closing Slider Window.
    - 1. Service Opening: 47 1/2 inches wide by 59 1/2 inches high.
    - 2. Door Operation:
      - a. Open: Manual.
      - b. Close: Manual or self-closing.
    - 3. Door Type: Sliding, 1 door panel.
    - 4. Opening Direction: Left to right. Customer View Ó Outside
    - 5. Frame: Extruded aluminum, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6 and 6063-T52.
    - 6. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 5005-AQ-H34.
    - 7. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90.
    - 8. Bottom Sill: Angled downward, track-free.
    - 9. Security: Automatically locks each time door closes.
    - 10. Security Lock: Aluminum bar extrusion with sliding spring-loaded locking clip.
    - 11. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets and hex-head zinc-plated self-threading machine screws.
    - 12. Handle: Black Delrin handle with pressed-in stainless steel spring pins. Stainless steel handle mounting bracket. Stainless steel spring-loaded mounting base.
    - 13. Glazing: 1/4-inch tempered glass, ASTM C 1048, clear .
    - 14. Silicone Glazing Sealant: Dow Corning 999A, aluminum.



- B. Flush-Mount Pass-Thru Windows: 275 M.O.E.R. Single Panel Manual Open/Electronic Release Slider Window.
1. Service Opening: 47 1/2 inches wide by 59 1/2 inches high.
  2. Door Operation:
    - a. Open: Manual.
    - b. Close: Magnetic release with electronic presence sensor.
  3. Door Type: Sliding, 1 door panel.
  4. Opening Direction: Right to left . Customer View Ó Outside
  5. Frame: Extruded aluminum, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6 and 6063-T52.
  6. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 5005-AQ-H34.
  7. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90.
  8. Bottom Sill: Angled downward, track-free.
  9. Security: Automatically locks each time door closes. Security bar set.
  10. Security Lock: Aluminum bar extrusion with sliding spring-loaded locking clip.
  11. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets and hex-head zinc-plated self-threading machine screws.
  12. Handle: Black Delrin handle with pressed-in stainless steel spring pins. Stainless steel handle mounting bracket. Stainless steel spring-loaded mounting base.
  13. Glazing: 1/4-inch tempered glass, ASTM C 1048, clear .
  14. Silicone Glazing Sealant: Dow Corning 999A, aluminum.
  15. Electrical: 104/120 V, 3 A, 60 Hz.
- C. Flush-Mount Pass-Thru Windows: 275 Single Panel Electric Slider Window.
1. Service Opening: 47 1/2 inches wide by 59 1/2 inches high.
  2. Door Operation: Fully automatic with electronic presence sensor.
  3. Door Type: Sliding, 1 door panel.
  4. Opening Direction: Left to right. Customer View Ó Outside
  5. Frame: Extruded aluminum, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6 and 6063-T52.
  6. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 5005-AQ-H34.
  7. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90.
  8. Bottom Sill: Angled downward, track-free.
  9. Security: Automatically locks each time door closes. Security bar set.
  10. Security Lock: Aluminum bar extrusion with sliding spring-loaded locking clip.
  11. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets and hex-head zinc-plated self-threading machine screws.
  12. Handle: Black Delrin handle with pressed-in stainless steel spring pins. Stainless steel handle mounting bracket. Stainless steel spring-loaded mounting base.
  13. Glazing: 1/4-inch tempered glass, ASTM C 1048, clear .
  14. Silicone Glazing Sealant: Dow Corning 999A, aluminum.
  15. Electrical: 115 V, 60 Hz, with 15 A branch circuit .
- D. DRIVE THRU WINDOW FRAME (In existing proto. Color change)
1. MFR: Ready-Access
  2. PRODUCT: 600 SERIES (most of us, municipal exceptions: west coast and hurricane zones)
  3. FINISH: Deep Bronze
  4. QUANTITY: 3 per store
    - a. LINK: <http://www.ready-access.com/Security Windows/600Series.html>
- E PRODUCTS
- Sliding Pass-Thru Window: Anodized aluminum extrusion and 1/2 inch insulating glass without screen.
  2. Custom Size: Refer to Drawings.
  3. Operation: Manual.
  4. Finish: Satin anodized aluminum.
- 2.3 FABRICATION
- A. General: Fabrication aluminum window units to comply with indicated standards. Include a complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window units.
  - B. Pre-glazed Fabrication: Pre-glaze window units at the factory where possible and practical for applications indicated. Comply with glass and glazing requirements of the "Glass and Glazing" section of these Specifications.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to receive work of this Section.
- B. Notify Architect of any existing conditions which will adversely affect execution.
- C. Beginning of execution will constitute acceptance of existing conditions.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrate surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's specifications and recommendations for installation of window units, hardware, operators, and other components of the work.
- B. Set window units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or ventilators. Provide proper support and anchor securely to surrounding construction with approved fasteners.
  - 1. Separate zinc-coated steel and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion of electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials, by inserting a bituminous coating or plastic sheet materials.
- C. Adjust operating ventilators and hardware to provide a tight fit at contact points and weatherstripping, for smooth operation and a weathertight closure

#### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust and fit items to be flush with adjacent construction.
- B. Fasten or adhere for tight connections and joints.
- C. Adjust for smooth operation.

#### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean surfaces promptly after installation of windows. Exercise care to avoid damage to the finish. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.
- B. Clean glass of pre-glazed units promptly after installation of windows. Comply with requirements of the "Glass and Glazing" Section for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Initiate and maintain protection and other precautions required through the remainder of the construction period, to ensure that, except for normal weathering, window units will be free of damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Test operation of movable light and adjust as required. Upon acceptance of the Project, provide full instructions and demonstrate to the Owner's designated representative the proper methods of care, operation and maintenance of the units.

**END OF SECTION 085659**

## SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Commercial door hardware for the following:
    - a. Swinging doors.
    - b. Other doors to the extent indicated.
  - 2. Cylinders for doors specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Electrified door hardware.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for door silencers provided as part of hollow-metal frames.
  - 2. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for integral intumescent seals provided as part of fire-rated labeled assemblies.
  - 3. Division 26 Sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring work.
- C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following. Coordinating, purchasing, delivering, and scheduling remain requirements of this Section.
  - 1. Cylinders for locks specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Permanent cores to be installed by Owner.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Product Certificates: For electrified door hardware, signed by product manufacturer.
  - 1. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire doors complies with listed fire door assemblies.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for locks, latches, and closers.
- E. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware schedule.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- G. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Door Hardware Sets: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final door hardware sets with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
    - a. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Double space entries, and number and date each page.
    - b. Content: Include the following information:
      - 1) Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, and material of each door and frame.
      - 2) Type, style, function, size, quantity, and finish of each door hardware item. Include description and function of each lockset and exit device.
      - 3) Complete designations of every item required for each door or opening including name and manufacturer.
      - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
      - 5) Location of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
      - 6) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
      - 7) Mounting locations for door hardware.
      - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.

- 9) Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.
  - a) Sequence of Operation: Include description of component functions that occur in the following situations: authorized person wants to enter; authorized person wants to exit; unauthorized person wants to enter; unauthorized person wants to exit.
  - 10) List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.
- c. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final door hardware sets at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the door hardware sets must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the door hardware sets.
2. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by lock manufacturer.
  1. Installer's responsibilities include supplying and installing door hardware and providing a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
  2. Installer shall have warehousing facilities in Project's vicinity.
  3. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.
- C. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  1. Test Pressure: After 5 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40 inches or less above the sill.
- D. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
  1. ADA 4.13.8, Standards for Thresholds at Doorways.
  2. ADA 4.13.9, Standards for Door Hardware.
  3. ADA 4.13.10, Standards for Door Closers
  4. ADA 4.13.11, Standards for Door Opening Force.
  5. ADA 4.13.12, Standards for Automatic Doors and Power-Assisted Doors.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  1. ANSI A 115.1, Standards for Mortise Lock Front Plates, Strikes.
  2. ANSI A115.2(modified), Standards for Door Preparation.
  3. ANSI A115.3, Standards for Strikes.
  4. ANSI A115.4, Standards for Panic Hardware and Automatic Flushbolts.
  5. ANSI A117.1, Hardware Standards.
  6. ANSI A156.2, Standards for Bored Lever Locks.
  7. ANSI A156.3, Standards for Door Controllers and Panic Devices.
  8. ANSI A156.4, Standards for Door Closers.
  9. ANSI A156.5, Standards for Auxiliary Locks (Deadlock).
  10. ANSI A156.6, Standards for .050" Thick Kick Plates and Push Plates.
  11. ANSI A156.7, Standards for Template Hinges.
  12. ANSI A156.13, Standards for Latchbolts, Bored and Mortise Locks, and 7-Pin Concealed Mortise Cylinders Grade 1 Operational, Grade 2 Security.
  13. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Kick Down Door Holders.
  14. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Crash Stops.
  15. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Door Stops.

16. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Door Silencers.
  17. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Manual Flush Bolts.
  18. ANSI A156.16, Standards for Door One-Way Door Viewers.
  19. ANSI A156.31, Standards for Grade 1 Electric Door Controls.
  20. ANSI A2111, Standards for Heavy Weight Brass/Bronze Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  21. ANSI A2112, Standards for Heavy Weight Brass/Bronze Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  22. ANSI A2133, Standards for Standard Weight Brass/Bronze Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  23. ANSI A5111, Standards for Heavy Weight Stainless Steel Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  24. ANSI A5112, Standards for Heavy Weight Stainless Steel Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  25. ANSI A5133, Standard for Standard Weight Stainless Steel Butt Hinges.
  26. ANSI A8111, Standards for Heavy Weight Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  27. ANSI A8112, Standards for Standard Weight Steel Ball Bearing Butt Hinges.
  28. ANSI A8133, Standards for Standard Weight Steel Butt Hinges.
  29. ANSI F01, Standards for Mortised Exit (Keyless Passage) Deadlocked Latchbolt with Deadlatch.
  30. ANSI F09, Standards for Mortise Apartment, Exit or Public Restroom Lock, Latchbolt w/ Auxiliary Deadlatch, Key and Lever Access Both Sides, Lever Inside Always Unlocked.
  31. ANSI F13, Standards for Mortised Dormitory (Exit/Service Door) Deadbolt, Thumb Turn Interior, Key Access Exterior.
  32. ANSI F31, Standards for Exit Latch, Latchbolt w/ Auxiliary Deadlatch, Inside Lever, No Exterior Access.
  33. ANSI F75, Standard for Bored Passage Latchbolt, Keyless.
  34. ANSI F76, Standards for Bored Privacy, Bathroom or Bedroom Push Button (Both Sides) Latchbolts.
  35. ANSI F81, Standards for Bored Entrance or Office Guardbolt Deadlocked Latchbolts, Push Button One Side, Key Opposite.
  36. ANSI F84, Standards for Bored Classroom Guardbolt Deadlocked Latchbolts, Key One Side.
  37. ANSI F86, Standards for Bored Storeroom or Service Guardbolt Deadlocked Latchbolts, Key One Side with Fixed Lever.
  38. ANSI F88, Standards for Bored Public Entrance Guardbolt Deadlocked Latchbolts, Keys Both Sides.
  39. ANSI F90, Standards for Bored Dormitory Guardbolt Deadlocked Latchbolts, Key One Side, Push Button Opposite.
  40. ANSI XR, Standards for Bored Special Function Locksets.
  41. ANSI F\_\_\_\_, Standards for Mortise-Utility Function w/ Auxiliary Deadlock, Interior Lever and Key Access, Lever Always Rigid, No Exterior Access.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. ASTM F-476-84(1996), Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies {Concealed Mortise Cylinders}.
  2. ASTM F-1577-05, Standard Test Methods for Detention Locks for Swinging Doors {Detention Standards; Mortised Locks}
- D. Builder's Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA):
1. BHMA, Directory Certification and Hardware Finishes.
  2. BHMA 4.1.1 Type 21, Standards for Door Controllers.
  3. BHMA L02101, Standards for Door Stops.
  4. BHMA L03011, Standards for Door Silencers.
  5. BHMA L11391, Standards for Kick Down Door Holders.
  6. BHMA L12141, Standards for Door Stops.
  7. BHMA L12231, Standards for Crash Stops.
  8. BHMA L14011, Standards for Threshold Dust Proof Strikes.
  9. BHMA L14012, Standards for Floor and/or Threshold Dust Proof Strikes.
  10. BHMA L14081, Standards for Flush Bolts in U.L. Rated Hollow Metal and Solid Core Wood Doors.
  11. BHMA L23171, Standards for Door One-Way Viewers.
- E. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):
1. DHI, Standards for Panic Hardware and Automatic Flushbolts.
- F. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, Specification Standards #1049 for U.L. Rated Flush Bolts.
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA Standard No. 80, Standards for Hardware Preparation and Installation for Fire Rated Doors.
- H. Uniform Building Code (UBC):
1. UBC 7-2-1997, Positive Pressure Test Requirements, including Hose Stream Test.
- I. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
1. U.L., Fire Rating Classifications.

2. U.L., Accident Equipment List.
  3. U.L., Standards for Grade 1 High Security Cylinders.
  4. U.L.-10C, Positive Pressure Fire Test Requirements for Mortise Locks and Electric Door Controls.
  5. U.L.-1034, Standards for Electric Door Control Burglary-Resistant Rated.
- J. United States Standard (US):
1. US, Standards for Hardware Finishes
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
  - B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final door hardware sets, and include basic installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
  - C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Area Construction Manager.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Templates: Distribute door hardware templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
  - B. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
      - b. Faulty operation of operators and door hardware.
      - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finish, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
    2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, except as follows:
      - a. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
      - b. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE
- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers Supplier: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide door hardware as scheduled on Drawings.:
- 2.2 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE
- A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in this Section and door hardware sets indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article.
    1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products or products complying with BHMA standard referenced.
    2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  - B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
    1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article.
- 2.3 ENTRY DOOR HARDWARE (New to proto)
- A. MFR: Rockwood Manufacturing
    1. PRODUCT: RM3301
    2. SIZE: DIAMETER: 1-1/4" - CTC: 6'-4"

3. FINISH: Clear Anodized Aluminum
4. MOUNTING: Type 1HD-THRU BOLT HEAVY DUTY
5. QUANTITY: (3) 1 set per entry door
  - a. LINK: <http://www.rockwoodmfg.com/en/site/rockwoodmfg.com/products/architectural-line/door-pulls/megatek/rm3300-rm3302/>

#### 2.4 HINGES, GENERAL

- A. Quantity: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
  2. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.
- B. Hinge Weight: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  1. Entrance Doors: Heavy-weight hinges.
  2. Doors with Closers: Antifriction-bearing hinges.
  3. Interior Doors: Standard-weight hinges.
- C. Hinge Base Metal: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  1. Exterior Hinges: Steel, with steel pin..
  2. Interior Hinges: Steel, with steel pin..
  3. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel, with steel pin.
- D. Hinge Options: Where indicated in door hardware sets or on Drawings:
  1. Non-removable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for out-swinging exterior doors.
  2. Corners: Square.
- E. Fasteners: Comply with the following:
  1. Machine Screws: For metal doors and frames. Install into drilled and tapped holes.
  2. Wood Screws: For wood doors.
  3. Threaded-to-the-Head Wood Screws: For fire-rated wood doors.
  4. Screws: Phillips flat-head; machine screws (drilled and tapped holes) for metal doors and wood screws for wood doors. Finish screw heads to match surface of hinges.

#### 2.5 HINGES

- A. Butts and Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Listed under Category A in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. Bommer Industries, Inc
    - c. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.

#### 2.6 PIVOTS AND PIVOT HINGES

- A. Pivots: BHMA A156.4. Listed under Category C in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory" and ANSI A 156.4
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. Bommer Industries, Inc. (BI).
    - c. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - d. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company
    - e. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works

#### 2.7 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.26.
  1. Listed under Category N in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
- B. General: Minimum 0.120-inch thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches; fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.
- C. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: Extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves; joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. Bommer Industries, Inc
    - c. Pemko Manufacturing Co
    - d. Zero International

## 2.8 LOCKS AND LATCHES, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with [the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" and ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
- B. Latches and Locks for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Latches shall not require more than 15 lbs to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- C. Electrified Locking Devices: BHMA A156.25.
- D. Lock Trim:
  - 1. Levers: Cast.
  - 2. Escutcheons (Roses): Cast.
  - 3. Lockset Designs: Provide design indicated on Drawings or, if sets are provided by another manufacturer, provide designs that match those designated.
- E. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
  - 1. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch latchbolt throw.
- F. Rabbeted Meeting Doors: Provide special rabbeted front and strike on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
- G. Backset: 2-3/4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Strikes: Manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latchbolt or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match door hardware set, and as follows:
  - 1. Strikes for Mortise Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.13.

## 2.9 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: Function numbers and descriptions indicated in door hardware sets comply with the following:
  - 1. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13.
- B. Mortise Locks: Stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; BHMA A156.13.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - b. Adams Rite Manufacturing Co
    - c. Best Access Systems; Div. of The Stanley Works
    - d. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company

## 2.10 EXIT LOCKS AND EXIT ALARMS

- A. Exit Locks: BHMA A156.29, Grade 1, surface mounted, battery powered, housed in metal case; with red-and-white lettering reading "EMERGENCY EXIT PUSH TO OPEN--ALARM WILL SOUND." Include the following features:
  - 1. Low-battery alert.
  - 2. Outside key control.
  - 3. Audible alarm that sounds when unauthorized use of door occurs.
  - 4. Silent alarm with remote signal capability for connection to remote indicating panel.
- B. Manufacturer: Detex Corporation

## 2.11 DOOR BOLTS

- A. Bolt Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Surface Bolts: Minimum 1-inch throw; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Mortise Flush Bolts: Minimum 3/4-inch throw.
- B. Dustproof Strikes: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- C. Surface Bolts: BHMA A156.16.
  - 1. Flush Bolt Heads: Minimum of 1/2-inch diameter rods of brass, bronze, or stainless steel with minimum 12-inch long rod for doors up to 84 inches in height. Provide longer rods as necessary for doors exceeding 84 inches.
  - 2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - c. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works
    - d. Trimco



- D. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated; designed for mortising into door edge.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - c. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works
    - d. Trimco

## 2.12 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category G in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" and ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
- C. Exit Devices for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Exit devices shall not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- D. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- E. Fire Exit Devices: Devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252.
- F. Outside Trim: Lever with cylinder; material and finish to match locksets, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Match design for locksets and latchsets, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Through Bolts: For exit devices and trim on metal doors and fire-rated wood doors.
- H. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Von Duprin; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
  - 2. Adams Rite Manufacturing Co
  - 3. Detex Corporation
  - 4. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Member of The DORMA Group North America

## 2.13 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.
- B. Cylinders: Manufacturer's standard tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Number of Pins: Six.
  - 2. Mortise Type: Threaded cylinders with rings and straight- or clover-type cam.
  - 3. Rim Type: Cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.
    - a. High-Security Grade: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1A, listed and labeled as complying with pick- and drill-resistant testing requirements in UL 437 (Suffix A).
- C. Permanent Cores: Manufacturer's standard; finish face to match lockset; complying with the following:
  - 1. Interchangeable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; usable with other manufacturers' cylinders.
- D. Construction Keying: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
    - a. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
    - b. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- E. Manufacturer: Same manufacturer as for locks and latches.

## 2.14 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference, and as follows:
  - 1. Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by a change key and a master key.
  - 2. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
- B. Keys: Nickel silver.
  - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
    - a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE."
  - 2. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:

- a. Cylinder Change Keys: Three.
- b. Master Keys: Five.
- c. Furnish one extra blank for each lock.

#### 2.15 OPERATING TRIM

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.6 and as illustrated on Drawings.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hager Companies
  - 2. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
  - 3. Rockwood Manufacturing Company
  - 4. Trimco

#### 2.16 CLOSERS

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" and ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
    - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
    - b. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Door Closers for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Door closers shall not require more than 30 lbs to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbs to open door to minimum required width.
- C. Size of Units: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- D. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated. Listed under Category C in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory." Provide type of arm required for closer to be located on non-public side of door, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - b. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Member of The DORMA Group North America (DAH).
    - c. Norton Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company

#### 2.17 PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Size: 1-1/2 inches less than door width on push side and 1/2 inch less than door width on pull side, by height specified in door hardware sets.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screws.
- C. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; beveled top and 2 sides; fabricated from material indicated in door hardware sets.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hager Companies
    - b. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
    - c. Rockwood Manufacturing Company
    - d. Trimco
- D. Safety Guards: Finger Safe USA Finger Guard- Model MKIB Push Side/Pull Side

#### 2.18 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Stops and Bumpers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.
  - 1. Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are scheduled or indicated. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall stops are not appropriate, provide overhead holders.
- B. Combination Floor and Wall Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1 unless Grade 2 is indicated.
- C. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; neoprene or rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.
- D. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hager Companies
  - 2. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company
  - 3. Rockwood Manufacturing Company
  - 4. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works
  - 5. Trimco

## 2.19 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.22, Listed under Category J in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
- B. General: Provide continuous weather-strip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide non-corrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
  - 2. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.
- C. Air Leakage: Not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283.
- D. Fire-Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Test Pressure: After 5 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40 inches or less above the sill.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Gasketing Materials: ASTM D 2000 and AAMA 701/702.
- G. Manufacturers:
  - 1. National Guard Products
  - 2. Hager Companies
  - 3. Pemko Manufacturing Co
  - 4. Reese Enterprises
  - 5. Zero International

## 2.20 THRESHOLDS

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.21. Listed under Category J in BHMA's "Certified Product Directory."
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Where thresholds are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" and ANSI A117.1.
  - 1. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
- C. Thresholds for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Maximum 1/2 inch high.
- D. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hager Companies (HAG).National Guard Products
  - 2. Pemko Manufacturing Co
  - 3. Reese Enterprises
  - 4. Zero International

## 2.21 FABRICATION

- A. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18. Do not furnish manufacturer's standard materials or forming methods if different from specified standard.
- B. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
  - 2. Steel Machine or Wood Screws: For the following fire-rated applications:
    - a. Mortise hinges to doors.
    - b. Strike plates to frames.
    - c. Closers to doors and frames.
  - 3. Steel Through Bolts: For the following fire-rated applications unless door blocking is provided:
    - a. Surface hinges to doors.
    - b. Closers to doors and frames.
    - c. Surface-mounted exit devices.
  - 4. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.

5. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."

## 2.22 FINISHES

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.18, as indicated in door hardware sets.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: Comply with DHI A115 Series.
  1. Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI A250.6.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI A115-W Series.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated on Drawings, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
  2. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 09 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  1. Door Closers: Unless otherwise required by authorities having jurisdiction, adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.6 DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Door No. 1, and 1A (Exterior Entrance Door):
1. Closer: LCN 4021 x 18
  2. Hinges: Offset pivot; ANSI-A-156.4; Grade 1; exposed parts of cast aluminum alloy, as supplied by door manufacturer
  3. Push/Pull Handle: Kawneer No. CO-9 or Hager Push/Pull Set 164D/V/B
  4. Panic Hardware: Adams Rite Manufacturing; finish to match storefront
  5. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325; 36-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  6. Weather-Stripping: Compression weather-stripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weather-stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge; EDPM or vinyl gasket weather-stripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold
  7. Sign: Mounted onto door with the following type, **ÓTHIS DOOR MUST REMAIN UNLOCKED WHENEVER THE BUILDING IS OCCUPIED/DURING BUSINESS HOURS**
- B. Door No. 2 (Interior Vestibule Doors):
1. Closer: LCN 4041 x 18
  2. Hinges: Offset pivot; ANSI-A-156.4; Grade 1; as supplied by door manufacturer
  3. Push/Pull Handle: Hager Push/Pull Set 164D/V/B
- C. Door No. 3 (Support Doors):
1. Closer: LCN 4111H-CUSH
  2. Hinges: Hager Roton 780-112HD; clear anodized finish
  3. Panic Hardware: exit only panic, no cylinder; Von Duprin 9975 EOLD 48 SP28.
  4. Door Alarm: Detex, Model No. EAX2500-FLUSH
  5. Weather-Stripping: National Guard 160V; compression weather-stripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weather-stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge; EDPM or vinyl gasket weather-stripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold
  6. Door Silencers: Hager; 3 per door
  7. Security Window: National Guard Products; L-VGLF-MD, 9-inch x 9-inch security frame view window with Flop
  8. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325-HD; 48-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  9. Door Sweep: National Guard Products 101-AV, 48-inches
  10. Latch Protector: 10-inch latch guard, Hager-CLP-110
  11. Door Trim: Von Duprin, 990 DT.
  12. Kick Plate: 24 X 46 Diamond Treadplate (McTread Plate) - .063 thick (Interior Face Only)
- D. Door No. 3A (Exterior Freezer Door):
1. Hinges: Hager Roton 780-112HD; clear anodized finish (Optional hinge selection, Hager Roton BB1279, 4-1/2 x 4-1/2 NRP)
  2. Lock Set: Schlage dead bolt lock, B-661
  3. Pull Handle: Hager H-3-E
  4. Weather-Stripping: National Guard 160V; compression weather-stripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weather-stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge; EDPM or vinyl gasket weather-stripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold
  5. Door Silencers: Hager; 3 per door
  6. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325-DKB; 48-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  7. Door Sweep: National Guard Products 101-AV, 48-inches
  8. Kick Plate: 24 X 46 Diamond Treadplate (McTread Plate) - .063 thick (Interior Face Only)
- E. Door No. 4 (Rear Exit Door):
1. Continuous Hinge: Hager Roton 780-112HD; clear anodized finish
  2. Closer: LCN-4111H-CUSH
  3. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325-DKB; 36-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  4. (All other door hardware is the same as Door Hardware Set No.3)
- F. Door No.5 (Restroom Entrance Door- (Tight Fitting):
1. Closer: LCN-4031-LCN pull side mounted
  2. Hinges: Hager BB1279; US 26D; 4-1/2-inch x 4-12-inch; 1-1/2 pair; or equal
  3. Push/ Pull Plate:
    - a. Push; Hager 30S, 4-inch x 16-inch; US 28
    - b. Pull: Hager H-33E, 4-inch x 16-inch plate; US 28
  4. Wall Stop: Hager 236W
  5. Kick Plates: 8-inch x 34-inch x 18 gauge; satin; US 26D; 2 per door

6. Door Silencers: Hager; 3 per door
  7. Safety Guards: Finger safe MKIB open hinge side and MKIB closed hinge of door
  8. Undercut door by ¾ inch
- G. Door Nos. 6 and 6A (Restroom Stall Doors):
1. Hinges: Hager B1250; US 26D; 4-1/2-inch x 4-12-inch; 1-pair
  2. Lockset: Hager 3215 (modified 626); US 26D; dead bolt with pulls
  3. Wall Stop: Hager 236W US32D
  4. Coat Hook: Bradley 932robe hook; installed inside face of door at 48-inches AFF
- H. Door Nos. 7, 8, 8A, and 8B (Closet Doors):
1. Hinges: Hager BB1279; US 26D; 4-1/2-inch x 4-12-inch; 1-1/2 pair; or equal
  2. Lockset: Schlage D-80-PD; Rhodes; US 26D finish
  3. Door 8A only: Provide flush bolt on inactive leaf
- I. Door No.9 (Interior Freezer/Cooler):
1. All door hardware for refrigerator cooler/freezer provided by manufacturer.
  2. Manufacturer: Kolpak; Highway 641 North McCorkle Park Road; Parsons, TN 38363
  3. Phone: 800-334-4675
  4. Hardware provided:
  5. Magnetic perimeter door gasket
  6. Threshold reinforced plastic (FRP)
  7. POSI-Seal door closer
  8. Stationary door pull handle, chrome
  9. Interior safety release handle
  10. Hinges, brushed chrome cast alloy
- J. Door No. 10 (Third Window Runway - Crew Door):
1. Closer: LCN 4111H-CUSH
  2. Hinges: Hager Roton 780-112HD; clear anodized finish
  3. Panic Hardware: exit device, no cylinder; Von Duprin 9975 Mortise E.
  4. Electric Strike: Von Duprin 6211 24V FSE DC
  5. Horn: Schlage, L1910-1
  6. Push Button Access Device: (2 ea.) Schlage 621-RD-DA HDP 626
  7. Power Supply: Schlage P902.
  8. Weather-Stripping: National Guard 160V; compression weather-stripping against fixed stops.
  9. Door Silencers: Hager; 3 per door
  10. View window: National Guard Products; L-VGLF-MD, 4-inch x 25-inch clear view frame/ view window
  11. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325-HD; 36-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  12. Door Sweep: National Guard Products 101-AV, 36-inches
  13. Latch Protector: 10-inch latch guard, Hager-CLP-110
  14. Door Trim: Von Duprin, 990 DT.
  15. Kick Plate: 24 X 34 Diamond Treadplate (McTread Plate) - .063 thick (Interior Face Only)
- K. Door No. 11 (Unisex Restroom Door):
1. Closer: LDPA4031 SNB ALUM, pull side mounted
  2. Hinges: Hager BB1279; US 26D; 4-1/2-inch x 4-12-inch; 1-1/2 pair; or equal
  3. Lockset: Schlage ND-40S-RHO; US 26D finish
  4. Kick Plates: 8-inch x 34-inch x 18 gauge; US 26D; satin; 2 per door
  5. Door Silencers: Hager; 3 per door
  6. Safety Guards: Finger safe MKIB open hinge side and MKIB closed hinge of door
  7. Toe Guard 202 NA-ALUM (202NA)
- L. Door No. 12 (Exterior Playplace Exit Door):
1. Closer: LCN 4041 x 18
  2. Hinges: Offset pivot set; ANSI-A-156.4; Grade 1; cast aluminum alloy, as supplied by door manufacturer
  3. Panic Hardware: Adams Rite Manufacturing; 8800 Series, finish to match storefront
  4. Threshold: National Guard Products; saddle type threshold 325-DKB; 36-inches wide x 1/2-inch rise (ADA accessible)
  5. Weather-Stripping: National Guard 1-60A; compression weather-stripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weather-stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge; EDPM or vinyl gasket weather-stripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold
  6. Door Alarm: Detex, Model No. EAX 2500-ACS
- M. Door No. 13 (Service Counter Door):
1. Hinges: Hager BB1279 US26D 4 ½ X 4 ½ , 1 ½ pair, or equal

2. Lockset: Schlage ND-80-PD Rhodes US26D Finish.
- N. Door No. 14 (Managers Office):
1. Hinges: Hager BB1279; US 26D; 4-1/2-inch x 4-12-inch; 1-1/2 pair; or equal
  2. Lockset: Schlage D-50-PD; Rhodes; US 26D finish

**END OF SECTION 087100**

## SECTION 087113 - AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Power door operators for swinging doors.
  2. Low-energy door operators for swinging doors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.
- B. Activation Device: A control that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to open the door.
- C. Double-Egress (Doors): A pair of doors that simultaneously swing with the two doors moving in opposite directions with no mullion between them.
- D. Double-Swing (Doors): A pair of doors that swing with the two doors moving in opposite directions with a mullion between them; each door functioning as a single-swing door.
- E. Safety Device: A control that, to avoid injury, prevents a door from opening or closing.
- F. For automatic door terminology, see BHMA A156 10 for definitions of terms.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of recesses in concrete floors for recessed control mats that control automatic door operators. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified elsewhere.
- B. Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared and reinforced for installing automatic door operators.
- C. Coordinate hardware for doors with operators to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic door operators with connections to power supplies and access-control system.
- E. Pneumatic System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic door operators and power units with compressed-air piping.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic door operators.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For automatic door operators.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware mounting heights, and attachment details.
  2. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Indicate locations of activation and safety devices.
  4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  5. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details for guide rails.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.



- 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Maintenance Data: For automatic door operators, safety devices, and control systems, to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project and who employs a Certified Inspector.
    - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
  - B. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.
- 1.10 WARRANTY
  - A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic door operators that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Faulty or sporadic operation of automatic door operator, including controls.
      - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering or use.
    - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
  - A. VOC Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints, or Coatings: Meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
  - B. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content so that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- 2.2 MANUFACTURERS
  - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Besam Entrance Solutions; Subsidiary of ASSA ABLOY Entrance Systems.
    - 2. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Div. of DORMA Group North America.
    - 3. Horton Automatics; a division of Overhead Door Corporation.
    - 4. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
    - 5. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
    - 6. Stanley Access Technologies, LLC; Div. of Stanley Security Solutions.
- 2.3 Source Limitations: Obtain automatic door operators, including activation and safety devices, from single source from single manufacturer. AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS, GENERAL
  - A. General: Provide operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated; and according to UL 325. Coordinate operator mechanisms with door operation, hinges, and activation and safety devices.
    - 1. Emergency Breakaway: Where indicated for center-pivoted doors, provide emergency breakaway feature for reverse swing of doors. Equip system to discontinue power to automatic door operator when door is in emergency breakaway position, to return door to closed position after breakaway, and to automatically reset.
    - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Provide door operators for fire-rated door assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated door components and are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency.
    - 3. Wind Load: Provide door operators on exterior doors that will open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to wind load of 90 mph.
  - B. Electromechanical Operating System: Self-contained unit powered by permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor, connections for power and activation- and safety-device wiring, and manual operation including spring closing when power is off.
  - C. Hinges: See Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for hinge type for each door that door operator shall accommodate.
  - D. Cover for Surface-Mounted Operators: Fabricated from 0.125-inch- thick, extruded or formed aluminum; manufacturer's standard width; with enclosed end caps, provision for maintenance access, and fasteners concealed when door is in closed position.

- E. Brackets and Reinforcements: Fabricated from aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- F. Fire-Door Package: Consisting of UL-listed latch mechanism, power-reset box, and caution signage for fire-rated doors. Latch mechanism shall allow door to swing free during automatic operation; when fire is detected, latch actuator shall cause exit hardware to latch when door closes. Provide latch actuators with fail-secure design.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.4 POWER DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Standard: BHMA A156 10.
- B. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Opening Force:
    - a. Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf required to manually set door in motion if power fails; not more than 15 lbf required to open door to minimum required width.
    - b. Power-Operated Swinging Doors: Not more than 30 lbf required to manually open door if power fails.
    - c. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf required for breakaway door or panel to open.
  - 2. Entrapment-Prevention Force: Not more than 40 lbf required to prevent stopped door in the last 10 degrees of opening from moving in the direction of opening; not more than 30 lbf required to prevent stopped door from moving in direction of closing.
- C. Configuration: Operator to control single swinging door or pair of swinging doors.
  - 1. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
  - 2. Operator Mounting: Surface.
- D. Operation: Power opening and spring closing. Provide time delay for door to remain open before initiating closing cycle as required by BHMA A156 10.
- E. Operating System: Electromechanical.
- F. Microprocessor Control Unit: Solid-state controller.
- G. Features:
  - 1. Adjustable opening and closing speed.
  - 2. Adjustable opening force.
  - 3. Adjustable backcheck.
  - 4. Adjustable hold-open time from zero to 30 seconds.
  - 5. Adjustable time delay.
- H. Controls: Activation and safety devices as indicated on Drawings and according to BHMA standards.
  - 1. Activation Device: Push-plate switch to activate door operator.
  - 2. Safety Device: Presence sensor mounted on to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
  - 3. Safety Device: One photoelectric beam mounted in guide rails to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
- I. Exposed Finish: Class I, clear anodic finish.

#### 2.5 LOW-ENERGY DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Standard: BHMA A156 19.
- B. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Opening Force if Power Fails: Not more than 15 lbf required to release latch if provided, not more than 30 lbf required to manually set door in motion, and not more than 15 lbf required to fully open door.
  - 2. Entrapment-Prevention Force: Not more than 15 lbf required to prevent stopped door from closing or opening.
- C. Configuration: Operator to control single swinging door.
  - 1. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
  - 2. Operator Mounting: Surface.
- D. Configuration: Operator to control pair of swinging doors.
  - 1. Traffic Pattern: Double egress.
  - 2. Mounting: Surface.
- E. Operating System: Electromechanical.
- F. Microprocessor Control Unit: Solid-state controller.
- G. Features:
  - 1. Adjustable opening and closing speed.
  - 2. Adjustable opening and closing force.

- 3. Adjustable backcheck.
  - 4. Adjustable hold-open time from zero to 30 seconds.
  - 5. Adjustable time delay.
  - 6. Adjustable acceleration.
  - 7. Obstruction recycle.
  - 8. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator; key operated.
- H. Exposed Finish: Class I, clear anodic finish.
- 2.6 MATERIALS
- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
    - 1. Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
    - 2. Sheet: ASTM B 209.
  - B. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
- 2.7 CONTROLS
- A. General: Provide controls, including activation and safety devices, according to BHMA standards; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated. Coordinate activation and safety devices with door operation and door operator mechanisms.
  - B. Presence Sensors: Self-contained, active-infrared scanner units; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156 10. Sensors shall remain active at all times.
  - C. Photoelectric Beams: Pulsed infrared, sender-receiver assembly for recessed mounting. Beams shall not be active when doors are fully closed.
  - D. Push-Plate Switch: Momentary-contact door control switch with flat push-plate actuator.
    - 1. Configuration: Round push plate with 4-by-4-inch junction box.
      - a. Mounting: Recess mounted, semiflush in wall.
    - 2. Configuration: Rectangular push plate with 2-by-4-inch junction box.
      - a. Mounting: Recess mounted, semiflush in wall.
    - 3. Push-Plate Material: Plastic as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 4. Message: International symbol of accessibility and "Push to Open."
  - E. Electrical Interlocks: Unless units are equipped with self-protecting devices or circuits, provide electrical interlocks to prevent activation of operator when door is locked, latched, or bolted.
- 2.8 FABRICATION
- A. Factory fabricate automatic door operators to comply with indicated standards.
  - B. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
  - C. Fabricate exterior components to drain condensation and water passing joints within operator enclosure to the exterior.
  - D. Use concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws, finished to match operator.
- 2.9 ACCESSORIES
- A. Signage: As required by cited BHMA standard for type of door and its operation.
    - 1. Application Process: Operator manufacturer's standard process.
    - 2. Provide sign materials with instructions for field application when operators are installed.
- 2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS
- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  - B. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- 2.11 ALUMINUM FINISHES
- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, door and frame preparation and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of automatic door operators.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems to verify actual locations of power connections before automatic door operator installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for compressed-air piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before automatic door operator installation.
- D. Verify that full-height finger guards are installed at each door with pivot hinges where door has a clearance at hinge side greater than 1/4 inch and less than 3/4 inch with door in any position.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic door operators according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for type of door operation and direction of pedestrian travel, including signage, controls, wiring, remote power units if any, and connection to building's power supply.
  - 1. Do not install damaged components. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 2. Install operators true in alignment with established lines and door geometry without warp or rack. Anchor securely in place.
- B. Controls: Install activation and safety devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for operator type and direction of pedestrian travel. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Access-Control System: Connect operators to access-control system as specified in Section 281300 "Access Control."
- D. Signage: Apply on both sides of each door as required by cited BHMA standard for type of door operator and direction of pedestrian travel.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certified Inspector: Engage a Certified Inspector to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Test and inspect each automatic door operator installation, using AAADM inspection forms, to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
- C. Automatic door operators will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust automatic door operators to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer; comply with requirements of applicable BHMA standards.
  - 1. Adjust operators on exterior doors for weathertight closure.
- B. After completing installation of automatic door operators, inspect exposed finishes on doors and operators. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- C. Readjust automatic door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to three days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles).
- D. Occupancy Adjustment: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of automatic door operator Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Engage a Certified Inspector to perform safety inspection after each adjustment or repair and at end of maintenance period. Furnish completed inspection reports to Owner.
  - 2. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.
  - 3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week, emergency callback service.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic door operators.

**END OF SECTION 087113**

## SECTION 088000 – GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
  - 1. Windows.
  - 2. Doors.
  - 3. Storefront framing.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- D. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
- E. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Exterior Wind and Impact Loading: Provide exterior glass to withstand wind loading pressures in accordance with the following
- C. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - 1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
    - a. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade, according to ASCE 7-10, 2012 IBC, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
- D. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
  - 1. Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
    - a. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all 4 edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
      - 1) For insulating glass.
    - b. In areas required to meet hurricane exterior wind and impact loading requirements, provide exterior glass to withstand wind loading pressures in accordance with the following:
      - 1) Provide products meeting the design pressure requirements indicated in the wind tunnel study, RWDI 06-1081.
        - a) Provide products having a current Dade County (Florida) Notice of Acceptance (NOA).

- E. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
- F. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- G. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
- H. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
- I. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
- J. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:
  - 1. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
- K. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
- L. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

## 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA):
  - 1. ADA standard and guidelines for safety glazing.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI Z 97.1, Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Testing for Safety Glazing Materials used in Buildings {Fully Tempered Glass} {Security Films}.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C-162-99, Standard Terminology of Glass and Glazing Products.
  - 2. ASTM C-770-98, Standard Test Method for Measurement of Glass Stress-Optical Coefficient.
  - 3. ASTM C-978-87, Standard Specifications for Photo-elastic Determination of Residual Stress in a Transparent Glass Matrix Using a Polarizing Microscope and Optical Retardation.
  - 4. ASTM C-1036-01, Standard Specifications for Flat Glass {Clear & Tinted Float Glass, Laminated Wire Glass and Glass for Mirror Glazing}.
  - 5. ASTM C-1048-97b, Standard Specifications for Heat-treated Flat Glass—Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass {Clear Fully Tempered Flat Glass, Clear Heat-Strengthened Flat Glass, Tinted Fully Tempered Flat Glass, Tinted Heat-Strengthened Flat Glass, Opaque (Spandrel Glass) Tempered Flat Glass}.
  - 6. ASTM C-1172-96e1, Standard Specifications for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass {Laminated Architectural Safety Glass}.
  - 7. ASTM C-1203-91, Standard Test Method for Quantitative Determination of Alkali Resistance of a Ceramic-Glass Enamel.
  - 8. ASTM C-1279-00, Standard Test Method for Non-Destructive Photo-elastic Measurement of Edge and Surface Stresses in Annealed, Heat-Strengthened, and Fully Tempered Flat Glass.
  - 9. ASTM D-1044-99, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Transparent Plastics to Surface Abrasion {Surface Abrasion of Security Films}.
  - 10. ASTM E-84-99, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials {Surface Burning of Security Films}.
  - 11. ASTM E-283-91, Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen {Air Leakage}.
  - 12. ASTM E-308-99, Standard Practice for Computing the Colors of Objects by Using the CIE System {Colors of Security Films}.
  - 13. ASTM E-331-96, Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference {Water Leakage}.
  - 14. ASTM E-773-97, Standard Test Method for Accelerated Weathering of Sealed Insulating Glass Units {Weathering; 1" Thermal Insulating Glass}.
  - 15. ASTM E-774-97, Standard Specification for the Classification of the Durability of Sealed Insulating Glass Units {1" Thermal Insulating Glass}.
  - 16. ASTM E-903-96, Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrated Spheres {Security Films}.
  - 17. ASTM F-218-95, Standard Test Method for Analyzing Stress in Glass.

- 18. ASTM F-1233-98, Standard Test Method for Security Glazing Materials And Systems {Laminated Architectural Safety Glass}.
- 19. ASTM G-90-98, Standard Practice for Performing Accelerated Outdoor Weathering of Nonmetallic Materials Using Concentrated Natural Sunlight {Weathering of Security Films}.
- D. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
  - 1. CPSC Standard No. 16 CFR Part 1201, Glazing Safety Material Standards.
- E. Department of Defense (DD):
  - 1. DD-G-1403, Specifications for Tempered Glass.
  - 2. DD-M-0011 C, Specifications for Mirrors.
- F. Federal Supply Services (FSS):
  - 1. FSS, Specifications for Mirrors.
- G. Flat Glass Marketing Association (FGMA):
  - 1. FGMA, Flat Glass Jobber's Glazing Manual.
- H. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - 1. U.L., Fire Rating Classifications for Window and Door View Lite Glazing.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
  - 1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.
- D. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain the following through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type: Clear float glass, laminated glass, and insulating glass.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass Sputter-Coated with Solar-Control Low-E Coatings: Where solar-control low-e coatings of a primary glass manufacturer that has established a certified fabricator program is specified, obtain sputter-coated solar-control low-e-coated glass in fabricated units from a manufacturer that is certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
  - 1. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired glass, ANSI Z97.1.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Where glazing units are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- F. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:
  - 1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
  - 2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.



## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
- B. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10-years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each glazing product is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent flat glass); Quality-Q3; of class, kind, and condition indicated.
  - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed float glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass in place of annealed or Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where safety glass is indicated.
- D. Roller wave distortion limits shall conform to ASTM C1651 - 11 Standard Test Method for Measurement of Roll Wave Optical Distortion in Heat-Treated Flat Glass
- E. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition B (spandrel glass, one surface ceramic coated), Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3, and complying with other requirements specified.
  - 1. Fallout Resistance: Provide spandrel units identical to those passing the fallout-resistance test for spandrel glass specified in ASTM C 1048.
- F. Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II (patterned and wired flat glass), Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q-6; and of form and mesh pattern specified.
- G. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with other requirements specified and with the following:
  - 1. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral of thickness indicated with a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after laminating glass lites and installation.
    - a. For polyvinyl butyral interlayers, laminate lites in autoclave with heat plus pressure.
  - 2. Laminating Process: Fabricate laminated glass to produce glass free of foreign substances and air or glass pockets.

- H. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.
  - 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- I. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is indicated.
- J. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
- K. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants using Manufacturer's standard sealants.
- L. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Spacer Material: Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish to match framing.
- M. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
- N. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

### 2.3 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
  - 1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
  - 2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
  - 3. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
  - 4. Any material indicated above.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned gaskets of material indicated below; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
  - 1. Neoprene.
  - 2. EPDM.
  - 3. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.
  - 4. Any material indicated above.

### 2.4 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
- C. VOC Content: For sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Elastomeric Glazing Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- F. Single-Component Neutral and Basic Curing Silicone Glazing Sealants:
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
      - 1) GE Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
      - 2) Tremco; Spectrem 1 (Basic).
      - 3) Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.; Omniseal.
    - b. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (non-sag).
- G. Class: 50.
- H. Use Related to Exposure: NT (non-traffic).
- I. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.
  - 1. Use O Glazing Substrates: Anodic aluminum.

## 2.5 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; non-staining and non-migrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
- B. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
- C. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- D. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

## 2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

## 2.8 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS UNITS

- A. Uncoated Clear Float-Glass Units: Class 1 (clear) annealed or Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where heat strengthening is required to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 1. Thickness: 6.0 mm.

## 2.9 MONOLITHIC WIRED-GLASS UNITS

- A. Polished Wired-Glass Units: Form 1 (wired glass, polished both sides), Quality-Q6, Mesh 1 (M1) (Diamond), 6.0 mm thick.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Asahi/AMA Glass Corp.; affiliated with AFG Industries, Inc.
    - b. Central Glass Co., Ltd.; distributed by Northwestern Industries Inc.
    - c. Pilkington Sales (North America) Ltd.

## 2.10 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS

- A. Solar-Control Low-E Insulating-Glass Units (GL-1):
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: PPG Industries, Inc.; Solorban 60, Clear, or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Pilkington Sales (North America) Ltd
    - b. Viracon.
  - B. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: 1-inch and 1/4-inch.
  - C. Interspace Content: Argon.
  - D. Outdoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass, 1/4-inch thick
  - E. Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass, 1/4-inch thick
  - F. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
  - G. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
  - H. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC.
  - I. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.28 maximum, but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC..

- J. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.44 maximum but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC..
- K. Visible Light Reflectance: 11 percent maximum.
- L. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Insulating-Glass Units (GL-2):
  - 1. Construction: Provide units that comply with requirements specified for insulating-glass units designated for GL-1, except for indoor lite.
- M. Indoor Lite: Ceramic-coated spandrel glass.
  - 1. Ceramic Coating Location: Fourth surface, color to match aluminum storefront finish.
- N. Solar-Control Low-E Laminated Insulating-Glass Units (GL-3): Where exterior glazing required to meet hurricane wind and impact load requirements:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: PPG Industries, Inc.; Solorban 60, Clear, or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Pilkington Sales (North America) Ltd
    - b. Viracon.
- O. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-1/4-inch.
- P. Interspace Content: Argon.
- Q. Outdoor Lite: 1/4-inch thick heat strengthened clear glass.
- R. Indoor Lite: Two layers 1/4-inch heat strengthened clear laminated glass laminated with clear PVB interlayer as required to wind borne debris protection requirements.
- S. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
- T. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
- U. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC.
- V. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.28 maximum but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC..
- W. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.44 maximum but not less than indicated on drawings and table C402.3 of IECC.
- X. Visible Light Reflectance: 11 percent maximum.
- Y. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Laminated Insulating-Glass Units (GL-4): Where exterior glazing required to meet hurricane wind and impact load requirements:
  - 1. Construction: Provide units that comply with requirements specified for insulating-glass units designated for GL-3, except for indoor lite.
- Z. Indoor Lite: Ceramic-coated spandrel glass.
  - 1. Ceramic Coating Location: Fourth surface, color to match aluminum storefront finish.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
- B. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- C. Presence and functioning of weep system.
- D. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
- E. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

#### **3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
  - F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
  - G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
    - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - H. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
  - I. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
  - J. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
  - K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
  - L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- 3.4 TAPE GLAZING
- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
  - B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
  - C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
  - D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
  - E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
  - F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
  - G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
  - H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.
- 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)
- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
  - B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
  - C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
  - D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.
- 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)
- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
  - B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
  - C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 LOCK-STRIP GASKET GLAZING

- A. Comply with ASTM C 716 and gasket manufacturer's written instructions. Provide supplementary wet seal and weep system, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove non-permanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
  2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. UL Listings: Provide UL listing data for Head of Wall conditions.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For firestop tracks, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  1. AISI, Specifications for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- B. United States Gypsum Company (USG):
  1. U.S.G., Gypsum Construction Handbook.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM A-568-98e1, Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled {Steel sheet uncoated thickness}.
  2. ASTM A-591-98, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Electrolytic Zinc-Coated, for Light Coating Weight Mass Applications {Electro-Galvanized Coating}.
  3. ASTM A-653-99a, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process {Corrosion Resistance}.
  4. ASTM A-792-99, Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Galvalume Coating}.
  5. ASTM A-924-99, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process {Hot-Dipped Galvanized Coating}.
  6. ASTM C-645-00, Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members {Drywall Steel Studs and Runners}.
  7. ASTM C-955-98, Standard Specification for Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing for Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases.
  8. ASTM E-72-98, Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Test of Panels for Building Construction {Transverse Load Tests}.
  9. ASTM E-119-98, Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials {Area Separation Walls}.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 25 gage unless indicated otherwise on Drawings or below.
      - 1) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies, Typical Locations: Withstand lateral loading (air pressure) of 5 psf with deflection limit not more than L/240 of partition height.
      - 2) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies at Atriums, Lobbies, Service Corridors, Exit Corridors, Elevator Lobbies, Vertical Shafts, and walls receiving plaster veneer: Withstand lateral loading (air pressure) of 7.5 psf with deflection limit not more than L/360 of partition height
      - 3) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies at Locations with Ceramic Tile or Other Hard Surface Finishes: Withstand typical lateral loading (air pressure) with deflection limit not more than L/360 of partition height, minimum 22 gage studs at 16 inches on center.
      - 4) Where wall mounted equipment, woodwork, and casework items are indicated or elsewhere as shown on Drawings, provide minimum 16 gage studs
      - 5) At jambs of openings provide two minimum 20 gage studs.
      - 6) Ceilings: At ceilings using mold-mildew resistant gypsum framing to be 16 inches o.c. for 5/8 inches gypsum
      - 7) Refer to Division 5 for stud framing which is exposed to wind loads and for studs carrying heavy vertical loads (cement plaster, manufactured stone masonry, stone tile thicker than 3/4 inch, etc.)
    - b. Where partition heights exceed stud manufacturer's recommended spans, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Heavier stud gage.
      - 2) Closer stud spacing.
      - 3) Deeper stud size (space permitting); As approved by Architect.
      - 4) Above ceiling bracing, anchored to structure above.
    - c. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) Dietrich Metal Framing; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track.
      - 2) MBA Building Supplies; FlatSteel Deflection Track Slotted Deflecto Track.
      - 3) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiClip SLD Series.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
    - b. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
  - 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
  - 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical.
- I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: 3/4 inch.



2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch.
3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.

### 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
  1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
    - a. Type: Postinstalled, expansion anchor.
  2. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
    - b. Depth: 1-5/8 inches.
  3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
  4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical.
- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

### 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
- B. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- C. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
  1. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Partitions with Security Mesh: 8 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with span and deflection design criteria.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
  1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
  1. Screw to wood framing.
  2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

**END OF SECTION 092216**

## SECTION 092400 - PORTLAND CEMENT PLASTERING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Exterior portland cement plasterwork (stucco) on metal lath and solid plaster bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for structural, load-bearing (transverse and axial) steel studs and joists that support lath and portland cement plaster.
  - 2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood framing included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
  - 3. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing and water-resistant barriers included in portland cement plaster assemblies
  - 4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with exterior portland cement plaster (stucco).

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A653 / A653M - 11 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process
- B. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2012.
- C. ASTM C206 - Standard Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime; 2003 (Reapproved 2009).
- D. ASTM C207 - 06(2011) Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
- E. ASTM C847 - 12 Standard Specification for Metal Lath.
- F. ASTM C897 - 05(2009) Standard Specification for Aggregate for Job Mixed Portland Cement Based Plasters
- G. ASTM C926 - Standard Specification for Application of Portland Cement-Based Plaster; 2012a.
- H. ASTM C932 - Standard Specification for Surface-Applied Bonding Compounds for Exterior Plastering; 2006.
- I. ASTM C954 - 11 Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness.
- J. ASTM C1002 - 07 Standard Specification for Steel Self Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs.
- K. ASTM C1063 - 12c Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and
- L. Exterior Portland Cement Based Plaster
- M. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; 2012.
- N. PCA EB049 - Portland Cement Plaster/Stucco Manual; Portland Cement Association; 2003.
- O. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of colored and textured finish coat indicated; 12 by 12 inches, and prepared on rigid backing.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Before plastering, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Install mockups for each type of finish indicated.
  - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Comply with ASTM C 926 requirements.
- B. Exterior Plasterwork:
1. Apply and cure plaster to prevent plaster drying out during curing period. Use procedures required by climatic conditions, including moist curing, providing coverings, and providing barriers to deflect sunlight and wind.
  2. Apply plaster when ambient temperature is greater than 40 deg F.
  3. Protect plaster coats from freezing for not less than 48 hours after set of plaster coat has occurred.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 METAL LATH
- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847 with ASTM A 653, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
1. Regional Requirements: Use zinc alloy or stainless steel material in costal areas.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Dale/Incor.
    - b. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
    - c. Marino/Ware; Division of Ware Industries, Inc.
    - d. Unimast, Inc.
    - e. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.
  3. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Flat.
    - a. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq. yd.
  4. Flat Rib Lath: Rib depth of not more than 1/8 inch.
    - a. Weight: 2.75 lb/sq. yd.
- B. Paper Backing: FS UU-B-790, Type I Grade D, Style 2 vapor-permeable paper.
1. Provide paper-backed lath, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.3 ACCESSORIES
- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1063 and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.
- B. Zinc and Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Accessories:
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Dale/Incor.
    - b. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
    - c. Marino/Ware; Division of Ware Industries, Inc.
    - d. Unimast, Inc.
    - e. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.
  2. Foundation Weep Screed: Fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G60 zinc coating.
  3. Cornerite: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
  4. External-Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
  5. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel.
    - a. Small nose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Casing Beads: Fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.

7. Control Joints: Fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, 1/2 inch long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in portland cement plaster.
- C. Bonding Compound: ASTM C 932.
- D. Steel Drill Screws: For metal-to-metal fastening, ASTM C 1002 or ASTM C 954, as required by thickness of metal being fastened; with pan head that is suitable for application; in lengths required to achieve penetration through joined materials of not fewer than three exposed threads for all screw types: Hot dipped galvanized, stainless steel, zinc alloy as indicated on drawings.
- E. Fasteners (stainless steel, hot dip galvanized, etc.) for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: Complying with ASTM C 1063 -12c.
- F. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing), produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

#### 2.5 PLASTER MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  1. Color for Finish Coats: Gray.
- B. Colorants for Job-Mixed Finish-Coats: Colorfast mineral pigments that produce finish plaster color to match Architect's sample.
- C. Lime: ASTM C 206, Type S; or ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Sand Aggregate: ASTM C 897.
  1. Color for Job-Mixed Finish Coats: In color matching Architect's sample.
- E. Ready-Mixed Finish-Coat Plaster: Mill-mixed portland cement, aggregates, coloring agents, and proprietary ingredients.
  1. Products:
    - a. California Stucco Products Corp.; Conventional Portland Cement Stucco.
    - b. ChemRex; Thoro Stucco.
    - c. Highland Stucco & Lime Products, Inc.
    - d. United States Gypsum Co.; Oriental Exterior Finish Stucco.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

#### 2.6 PLASTER MIXES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926 for applications indicated.
  1. Fiber Content: Add fiber to base-coat mixes after ingredients have mixed at least two minutes. Comply with fiber manufacturer's written instructions for fiber quantities in mixes, but do not exceed 1 lb of fiber/cu. yd. of cementitious materials. Reduce aggregate quantities accordingly to maintain workability.
- B. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: Scratch and brown coats for three-coat plasterwork as follows:
  1. Portland Cement Mixes:
    - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
    - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
- C. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Concrete Unit Masonry: Single base coats for two-coat plasterwork as follows:
  1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
  2. Masonry Cement Mix: Use 1 part masonry cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
    - a. Plastic Cement Mix: Use 1 part plastic cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate
- D. Job-Mixed Finish-Coat Mixes:
  1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious materials, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).

- E. Factory-Prepared Finish-Coat Mixes: For ready-mixed finish-coat plasters, comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.

#### **3.3 INSTALLING METAL LATH**

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C 1063.
  - 1. Partition Framing and Vertical Furring: Install flat diamond-mesh lath.
  - 2. On Solid Surfaces, Not Otherwise Furred: Install self-furring diamond-mesh lath.

#### **3.4 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES**

- A. Install according to ASTM C 1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Reinforcement for External Corners:
  - 1. Install lath-type external-corner reinforcement at exterior locations.
  - 2. Install cornerbead at exterior locations.
- C. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings, if not indicated on Drawings, in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect as follows:
  - 1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
    - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft.
    - b. Horizontal and other Non-vertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft.
  - 2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
  - 3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
  - 4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.
  - 5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

#### **3.5 PLASTER APPLICATION**

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926.
  - 1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces, as measured by a 10-foot straightedge placed on surface.
  - 2. Grout hollow-metal frames, bases, and similar work occurring in plastered areas, with base-coat plaster material, before lathing where necessary. Except where full grouting is indicated or required for fire-resistance rating, grout at least 6 inches at each jamb anchor.
  - 3. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground, unless otherwise indicated. Casing beads shall be used to terminate plaster at metal frames and other termination points.
  - 4. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.
- B. Plaster Finish Coats: Apply to provide float finish to match Architect's sample.

#### **3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Cut, patch, replace, and repair plaster as necessary to accommodate other work and to restore cracks, dents, and imperfections. Repair or replace work to eliminate blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

#### **3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work. Promptly remove plaster from doorframes, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

**END OF SECTION 092400**

## SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
  - 2. Tile backing panels.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load-bearing steel framing that supports gypsum board.
  - 2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood framing and furring that supports gypsum board.
  - 3. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for insulation and vapor retarders installed in assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
  - 4. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for head-of-wall assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
  - 5. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed in assemblies requiring acoustical joint sealants.
  - 6. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board.
  - 7. Division 09 painting Sections for primers applied to gypsum board surfaces.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C11 - 10a Standard Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems
- B. ASTM C 475 - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board.
- C. ASTM C 840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board.
- D. ASTM C 1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs.
- E. ASTM C 1047 - Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base.
- F. ASTM C1288 - 99(2010) Standard Specification for Discrete Non Asbestos Fiber Cement Interior Substrate Sheets
- G. ASTM C 1396 - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board.
- H. ASTM C 1513 - Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections.
- I. ASTM E 90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
- J. ASTM E 119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- K. Gypsum Association (GA):
  - 1. GA-214 - Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish.
  - 2. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products.
  - 3. GA-238 - Guidelines for the Prevention of Mold Growth on Gypsum Board; Gypsum Association

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. State percentages specific to product, not average recycled content amounts from manufacturing facility.
  - 2. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site.
    - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
- C. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- long length for each trim accessory indicated.



## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Before beginning gypsum board installation, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Install mockups for the following:
    - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
  - 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
  - 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.
- D. Do not install cavity wall insulation and interior gypsum board until the building is enclosed with exterior wall assembly.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content so that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 35 percent.
- B. VOC Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints, and Coatings: Meet VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- D. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: Any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used inside the weatherproofing system and applied on site shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Gypsum.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. Continental Building Products.
  - 4. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - 5. National Gypsum Company.
  - 6. PABCO Gypsum.
  - 7. USG Corporation.
- B. Regular Type: Vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2-inch with long edges tapered.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
  1. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- F. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M, .
  1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

#### 2.4 SPECIALTY GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type C: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to have increased fire-resistive capability.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum; Firebloc Type C.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; CertainTeed Type C Gypsum Board.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Fireguard C.
    - d. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Fire-Shield C.
    - e. USG Corporation; Firecode C Core.
  2. Thickness: As required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Glass-Mat Interior Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1658/C 1658M. With fiberglass mat laminated to both sides. Specifically designed for interior use.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensArmour Plus.
    - b. National Gypsum Company; eXP Interior Extreme.
  2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
  4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- C. Acoustically Enhanced Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Multilayer products constructed of two layers of gypsum boards sandwiching a viscoelastic sound-absorbing polymer core.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed; SilentFX.
    - b. National Gypsum Company; Sound Break XP.
    - c. Quiet Solution, Quiet Rock.
  2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.

#### 2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; DiamondBack GlasRoc Tile Backer.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
    - c. National Gypsum; e2XP Tile Backer.
  2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

#### 2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corp.

- b. Gordon, Inc.
- c. Pittcon Industries.
- 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5.
- 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

## 2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR or AIS-919.
    - b. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
    - c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
  - 2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.

1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
1. Type X: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Flexible Type: Apply in double layer at curved assemblies.
  3. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  4. Abuse-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  5. Glass-Mat Interior Type: Behind wall tile except where tile backer board is scheduled.
  6. Acoustically Enhanced Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
  3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

### 3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at showers, tubs, and where indicated. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect, and as follows:
  - 1. Wall: Control joints shall be installed where a wall or partition runs in an uninterrupted straight plane exceeding 30 linear feet, or 900 sq ft.
- C. Ceiling with Perimeter Relief: Control joints in interior ceilings with perimeter relief shall be installed so that linear dimensions between control joints do not exceed 50 ft or 2500 sq. ft
- D. Ceiling, without Perimeter Relief: Control joints in interior ceilings without perimeter relief shall be installed so that linear dimensions between control joints do not exceed 30 ft
- E. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Bullnose Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 5. U-Bead: Use where indicated.
- F. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Level 4: .Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099100 "Painting."
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION 092900**

## SECTION 093000 - TILING INTERIOR

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Construction Documents and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. McDonalds USA, LLC: Standards for Interior Floor Tile (Located on USRD " Construction Supply Chain Web page)
- C. McDonalds USA, LLC: Approved Tile List (the AFT List) (Located on USRD " Construction Supply Chain Web page)

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Unglazed quarry tile.
  - 2. Porcelain floor tile.
  - 3. Ceramic or Porcelain wall tile.
  - 4. Glazed ceramic wall tile.
  - 5. Metal edge strips installed as part of tile installations.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.
- B. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM F1677-96.
  - 1. McDonalds Minimum Static Coefficient of Friction shall exceed ASTM F1667-96: 0.5 Dry and Wet as measured by the Portable Inclined Articulated Strut Slip Tester -Brungraber Mark II or Mark III.
- B. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ANSI A137.1 2012 Coefficient of Friction.
  - 1. McDonalds Minimum Dynamic Coefficient of Friction shall exceed ANSI A137.1 2012: 0.5 Dry and Wet as measured by the Binary Output Tribometer " BOT 3000 instrument
- C. Standards for Interior Floor Tile: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the above values. After collecting the foregoing information from the manufacturer and third party testing facility, USRD must verify that it meets McDonalds standards. If any information is not available or does not meet McDonalds minimum requirements, the tile may not be authorized for use in McDonalds Restaurants or placed on the AFT list.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
  - 1. ADA, Slip-Resistance of Floor Coverings on Accessible Routes.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI 108.1A, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar.
  - 2. ANSI 108.1B, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
  - 3. ANSI A108.4, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
  - 4. ANSI A108.5, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
  - 5. ANSI A108.6, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and Tile-Grouting Epoxy.
  - 6. ANSI A108.10, Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tile Work.
  - 7. ANSI A118.1, Specifications for Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar.
  - 8. ANSI A118.3, Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and Tile-Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
  - 9. ANSI A118.4, Specifications for Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.

10. ANSI A118.6, Specifications for Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation.
  11. ANSI A118.7, Specifications for Polymer Modified Tile Grouts for Tile Installation.
  12. ANSI A118.10, Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation.
  13. ANSI A136.1, Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
  14. ANSI A137.1, Specifications Ceramic Tile.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. ASTM C-11-98, Standard Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems.
  2. ASTM C-144-99, Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
  3. ASTM C-150-99a, Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
  4. ASTM C-207-91, Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
  5. ASTM C-373-88(1999), Standard Test Method for Water Absorption, Bulk Density, Apparent Porosity, and Apparent Specific Gravity of Fired Whiteware Products.
  6. ASTM C-482-81(1996), Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
  7. ASTM C-485-83(1999), Standard Test Method for Measuring Warpage of Ceramic Tile.
  8. ASTM C-499-78(1999), Standard Test Method for Facial Dimensions and Thickness of Flat, Rectangular Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile.
  9. ASTM C-501-84(1996), Standard Test Method for Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Ceramic Tile by the Taber Abraser.
  10. ASTM C-502-93a(1999), Standard Test Method for Wedging of Flat, Rectangular Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile.
  11. ASTM C-627-93(1999), Standard Test Method for Evaluating Ceramic Floor Tile Installation Systems Using the Robison-Type Floor Tester.
  12. ASTM C-648-98, Standard Test Method for Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile.
  13. ASTM C-650-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Chemical Substances.
  14. ASTM C-920-98, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  15. ASTM C-1026-87(1996), Standard Test Method for Measuring the Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Freeze-Thaw Cycling.
  16. ASTM C-1028-96, Standard Test Method for Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
1. FS, TT-C-00555, Specifications for Coating for Masonry Surfaces.
- E. Tile Council of America (TCA):
1. TCA, "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation".
  2. TCA, Setting bed and grouting shall be manufactured under TCA license.
- 1.6 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
  - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile and grout indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
  - D. Samples for Verification:
    1. Assembled samples with grouted joints for each color grout and for each type, composition, color, and finish of tile.
    2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory.
  - E. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years documented experience.
    1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
    2. Installer's supervisor for the Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
    3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.
    4. Equivalent Experience to the requirements in 1.6 E, 1,2 or 3.
  - F. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and -grouting product.
  - G. Maintenance Data: Submit tile and grout manufacturers written instructions for proper maintenance materials and procedures, including a listing of materials and procedures that could be detrimental to the tile or grout finish or material integrity if used.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer: Engage an installer with a minimum of 5 years experience in commercial tile installations similar in material, design, and scope to that indicated and whose work has resulted in a record of successful in-service performance. Acceptable certification is by TCAA or NTCA certified installation programs. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain all tile of same type from one source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each component from one manufacturer..
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section through one source from a single manufacturer for each product:
  - 1. Metal edge strips.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement in ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store materials in locations where ambient temperature is maintained within range recommended by material manufacturer.
- D. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions and material surface temperatures are within, and will be maintained within, the ranges indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each tile type is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Whenever possible, ceramic tile products and tile installation products shall meet the provisions of ANSI A138.1 Green Squared for sustainability.
- B. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting and Grouting Materials" Article.
- D. ISO Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ISO 13007 standards referenced in Setting and Grouting materials Article. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials that have been selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.



- F. Light Reflectance: Where required, provide materials meeting minimum reflectance values as governed by CURFFL (California Uniform Retail Food Facilities Law, 2005).

### 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Quarry Tile: Support, Kitchen, Presentation-1, Presentation-2, Order, Manager's Office, Crew Room, Cooler, Freezer, Computer Closet and Closet.
- B. Square-edged flat tile as follows:
  - 1. Wearing Surface: Abrasive aggregate embedded in surface.
  - 2. Facial Dimensions: 6 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 4. Face: Plain.
  - 5. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated in Finish Schedule of the Construction Documents, or a comparable product from one of the following:
    - a. Daltile International Inc.
    - b. Crossville.
- C. Porcelain Floor Tile: Customer Service, Dining Room, Women's, Men's, Janitor's Closet, Vestibule, Playplace Vestibule, Playplace Dining and Unisex.
  - 1. Flat tile as follows:
- D. Composition: Vitreous or impervious natural clay or porcelain.
- E. Facial Dimensions: Either 6 by 36 or 12 by 24 nominal inches, as indicated per Interior Décor drawings.
- F. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
- G. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
- H. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated in Finish Schedule in the Interior Décor drawings, or a comparable product from one of the following:
  - 1. Dal-Tile International Inc.
  - 2. Crossville, Inc.
  - 3. EuroWest.
- I. Ceramic or Porcelain Wall Tile: Customer Service, Dining Room, Womens, Mens, Janitors Closet, Vestibule, Playplace Vestibule, Playplace Dining and Unisex.
  - 1. Flat tile as follows:
- J. Composition: Vitreous or impervious natural clay or porcelain.
- K. Facial Dimensions: Either 6 by 36 or 12 by 24 nominal inches, as indicated per Interior Décor drawings.
- L. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
- M. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
- N. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated in Finish Schedule in the Interior Décor drawings, or a comparable product from one of the following:
  - 1. Dal-Tile International Inc.
  - 2. Crossville, Inc.
  - 3. EuroWest.
- O. Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile: Kitchen 105 (When indicated in Construction Documents or as an Owner/Operator Extra)
  - 1. Flat tile as follows:
  - 2. Module Size: 6 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
  - 4. Face: Plain with modified square edges or cushion edges.
  - 5. Finish: Mat, opaque glaze.
  - 6. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated in Finish Schedule of the Construction Documents, or a comparable product from one of the following:
    - a. Dal-Tile International Inc.
    - b. Crossville, Inc.
- P. Glazed Ceramic Wall Tile Trim Units: Kitchen and Presentation-2 (When indicated in Construction Documents or as an Owner/Operator Extra)
- Q. Matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile and coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
  - 1. Base for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Straight, module size 4 by 12 inches.
  - 2. Wainscot Cap for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose, module size 4 by 12 inches.
  - 3. External Corners for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose.
  - 4. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners.
- R. Unglazed Quarry Tile Trim Units: Support, Kitchen, Presentation-1, Presentation-2, Order, Managers Office, Crew Room, Cooler, Freezer, Computer Closet and Closet.
- S. Matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile and coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

1. Base: Coved with surface bullnose top edge, facial dimensions 6 by 6 inches.
2. Wainscot Cap: Surface bullnose, facial dimensions 6 by 6 inches.

## 2.4 SETTING AND GROUTING MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Custom Building Products.
  2. LATICRETE International, Inc.
  3. MAPEI Corporation.
- B. Modified-Portland Cement Thin Set Mortar (Medium Bed Interior Floors: Dining Room, Customer Service, Vestibule, Janitors Closet, Restrooms " Womens, Mens): ISO 13007: C2EP1 and ANSI A118.15 and capable of being installed up to 1/4-inch thick, consisting of the following:
  1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix to which only water must be added at Project site.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) ProLite Medium Bed Tile and Stone Mortar; Custom Building Products.
      - 2) 255 Multimax; LATICRETE International Inc.
      - 3) Mapei: Ultra Flex LFT.
- C. Modified Portland Cement Thin Set Mortar (Medium Bed " Interior Walls: Dining Room, Customer Service , Vestibule, Janitor's Closet, Restrooms " Womens, Mens, and Kitchen): ISO 13007; C2TES1PA and ANSI A118.15 consisting of the following:
  1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix to which only water must be added at Project site.
    - a. For wall applications, provide non-sagging mortar.
    - b. Products:
      - 1) ProLite Medium Bed Tile and Stone Mortar; Custom Building Products.
      - 2) 255 Multimax; LATICRETE International Inc.
      - 3) Mapei: Ultra Flex LFT
- D. Modified-Portland Cement Thin Set Mortar (Interior Floors: Kitchen Areas - Order, Presentation-1, Presentation-2, Managers Office, Crew Room, Closet, Computer Closet, Support, Cooler and Freezer): ISO 13007: C2EP1 and ANSI A118.15 and capable of being installed up to 1/4-inch thick, consisting of the following:
  1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix to which only water must be added at Project site.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) ProLite Medium Bed Tile and Stone Mortar; Custom Building Products.
      - 2) 255 Multimax; LATICRETE International Inc.
      - 3) Mapei: Ultra Flex LFT.
- E. Chemical Resistant, Water-Cleanable, Industrial Grade, Tile-Grouting Epoxy
- F. Interior Floors: (Kitchen Areas - Order, Presentation-1, Presentation-2, Managers Office, Crew Room, Closet, Computer Closet, Support, Cooler and Freezer): ISO 13007: R2 and ANSI A118.3
  1. Temperature Resistance: Product shall be capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 deg F and 212 deg, respectively, and certified in writing by manufacturer for intended use, including resistance to enzymatic cleaners.
  2. Products:
    - a. CEG-IG, Custom Building Products
    - b. Spectra LOCK PRO Grout; LATICRETE International Inc.
    - c. Kerapoxy IEG; MAPEI Corporation.
- G. Polymer-Modified High Performance Cement Tile Grout (Typical Interior Walls and Floors " Customer Service, Dining, Vestibule, Playplace Vestibule, Playplace Dining): ISO 13007; CG2WAF and ANSI A118.7.
  1. Polymer Type: Dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) For Joints 1/8-inch or Wider (Sanded Grout):
        - a) Prism Sure Color High Performance Grout; Custom Building Products
        - b) PermaColor Grout; LATICRETE International Inc.
        - c) Ultracolor Plus; MAPEI Corporation.
    - b. Colors: To match tile being grouted. Colors and manufacturer as indicated per Interior Décor drawings.
- H. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Grouting Epoxy: (Women's, Men's, Janitor's Closet, Unisex)
  1. Products:
    - a. Interior Floors " Public/Customer Areas: ISO 13007; RG and ANSI A118.3.
      - 1) CEG Lite 100% Solids Epoxy Grout; Custom Building Products
      - 2) Spectra LOCK PRO Grout; LATICRETE International Inc.
      - 3) Kerapoxy; MAPEI Corporation.
    - b. Interior Walls " Public Toilet Rooms: ISO 13007; RG and ANSI A118.3.

- 1) Kerapoxy; MAPEI Corporation.
  2. Colors: To match tile being grouted. Colors as indicated per Interior Décor drawings.
  - I. Cementitious Backer Units: Reference Section 092900 Gypsum Board " 2.2 Tile Backing Panels
  - J. Waterproofing Membrane complying with ANSI A118.10: Adjoining floor and wall areas at mop sink locations or where indicated on the Construction Documents, and elsewhere as required for waterproofing tile assembly as specified in ANSI A108.13.
    1. RedGard, Custom Building Products
    2. Hydroban, Laticrete International
    3. Aqua Defense, MAPEI Corporation
- 2.5 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS
- A. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Silicone Sealant for Contact with Food: As specified in Division 07 Section, Joint Sealants, under Article Elastomeric Joint Sealants. ASTM C920
    1. 100% Silicone Caulk:
    2. Custom Building Products,
    3. LATICRETE International Inc.,
    4. MAPEI Corporation. Mapesil
  - C. Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: As specified in Division 07 Section, Joint Sealants, under Article Elastomeric Joint Sealants. ASTM C920
    1. 100% Silicone Caulk:
    2. Custom Building Products,
    3. LATICRETE International, Inc.,
    4. MAPEI Corporation
  - D. Pourable Urethane Sealant: As specified in Division 07 Section, Joint Sealants, under Article Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  - E. Non-Sag Urethane Sealant: As specified in Division 07 Section, Joint Sealants, under Article Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Trowelable and/or Self Leveling Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated. Source primers from same manufacturer
    1. Self Leveling Products:
      - a. Level-Quik; RS & Primer Custom Building Products
      - b. 86; LATICRETE International Inc
      - c. ULTRA PLAN 1 PLUS; MAPEI Corporation
    2. Trowelable Patching Compounds:
      - a. Level Quick Skim Coat & Patching Compound, Custom Building Products
      - b. Lati-Patch 816, Laticrete International
      - c. Plani-Patch, MAPEI Corporation
  - B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shape, designed specifically for flooring applications with bottom (anchoring) leg perforated and deformed for keying into setting mortar, and of height to match tile and setting-bed thickness; fabricated from stainless steel (ASTM A 666, 300 Series), with a brushed/satin finish; provide in maximum length possible to minimize joints.
    1. Profiles; Custom Building Products
    2. Schluter Profile Products
  - C. Tile Cleaner: (Typical Interior Walls and Floors " Customer Service 100, Dining 101, Womens 102, Mens 103, Vestibule 115, Playplace Vestibule 116, Playplace Dining 117) A acid descaling floor cleaner mixed with water and applied in accordance with grout and tile manufacturers written instructions for the removal of soil, construction dirt, grout residue, grout haze, saline efflorescence, lime deposits and other substances without harming tile and grout surfaces.
  - D. Deterdek, Fila Surface Care Products
  - E. Epoxy Haze Remover - Interior Floors: (Kitchen Areas - Order 107, Presentation 106, Managers Office 108, Crew Room 109, Closet 113, Computer Closet 112, Support 104, Cooler 110 and Freezer 111, Public Areas - Womens 102, Mens 103, Janitors Closet 114, Unisex 119) Professional strength formula for the removal of epoxy haze from tile, concrete and stone surfaces.
    1. Custom Building Products, Aqua Mix Sealing and Coating Remover
    2. LATICRETE International Inc., See manufacture recommendations (TDS 198)
    3. MAPEI Ultra Care, Epoxy Haze Remover

## 2.7 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
  - 3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.
- B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors installed with a thin-set mortar per floor tile installation schedule that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.
  - 1. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions with trowelable leveling and patching compound according to tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions. Use product specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules, and complying with the following.
  - 1. Installation Tolerances:
    - a. Levelness (Floor Tiles): Floor tiles are to be installed flat and level, with a maximum permissible variation in the plane of the tile of 1/8-inch in 10 feet, with a maximum local variation of 1/16-inch in any 24 inch area, when measured with a straight edge.
    - b. Lippage: Tiles shall be installed with a maximum permissible lippage between edges of adjoining tiles of 1/32-inch, for both floor and wall installations.
- B. TCNA Installation Guidelines: TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCNA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.
- C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates or covers overlap tile.
- E. Tile Jointing: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Lay out tile wainscots to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.

- G. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
    - 1. Locate joints in tile surfaces directly above joints in concrete substrates.
  - H. Grout tile to comply with requirements of the following tile installation standards:
    - 1. For ceramic tile grouts (latex-portland cement grouts), comply with ANSI A108.10.
    - 2. For chemical-resistant epoxy grouts, comply with ANSI A108.6.
- 3.4 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install tile to comply with requirements in the Floor Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCNA installation methods and ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.
    - 1. For installations indicated below, follow procedures in ANSI A108 Series tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage.
  - B. Joint Widths: Install tile on floors with the following joint widths:
    - 1. Quarry Tile: 1/4 inch.
    - 2. Floor/Wall Tile: 6 x 36: 1/8 inch, 12 x 24: 1/8 inch.
  - C. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated or where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.
- 3.5 WALL TILE INSTALLATION
- A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Wall Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCNA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.
  - B. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with 1/8-inch joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING
- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter, dirt, grout release and grout residue.
    - 1. Remove excess polymer-modified high performance cement and 100% Solids Epoxy Grout grout residue from tile as soon as possible per manufacturers written instructions.
    - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.
  - C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least:
    - 1. Grout: High Performance Cement Grout "3 hours after grouting is completed.
    - 2. Grout: 100% Solids Epoxy Grout " 12 hours after grouting is completed.
  - D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and preform final cleaning.
    - 1. Post construction cleaning required on all tile installations prior to restaurant turn over.
    - 2. Use only cleaners as identified in section 2.6.C., applying per manufacturers written instructions.
    - 3. Determine that cleaner is safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning.
    - 4. Rinse with plenty of clean water.
- 3.7 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE
- A. Tile Installation (Typical Interior Floors " Customer Service 100, Dining 101, Janitors Closet, 114, Vestibule 115, Playplace Vestibule 116, Playplace Dining 117): Interior floor installation on concrete; thin-set mortar; TCNA F113 and meeting ANSI A108.5.
    - 1. Tile Type: Porcelain Floor tile.
    - 2. Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar, applied in medium bed thickness as required to achieve installation within specified tolerances. Meeting ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007 C2TES1P1
    - 3. Grout: High Performance Cement Grout meeting ANSI A118.7 and ISO 13007 CG2WAF as indicated on drawings
  - B. Tile Installation (Typical Rest Room & Utility Floors- Women's 102, Men's 103, Unisex 119, and recessed Mop Sink " when indicated Floor tile Installation): Interior floor installation on concrete; medium bed thin-set mortar; TCNA F115 and meeting ANSI A108.5.
    - 1. Tile Type: Porcelain Floor tile.
    - 2. Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar, applied in medium bed thickness as required to achieve installation within specified tolerances.
    - 3. Grout: 100% Solids Epoxy Grout meeting ANSI A118.3 and ISO 13007 RG
  - C. Second Floor Rest Rooms and adjoining floor areas at Mop sink and Scullery; Interior floor installation on bonded waterproof membrane over concrete; thin-set mortar; TCA F122A.

1. Tile Type: Porcelain Floor or Unglazed Quarry Tile
  2. Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar, applied in medium bed thickness as required to achieve installation within specified tolerances. Meeting ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007 C2TES1P1
  3. 100% Solids Epoxy Grout meeting ANSI A118.3 and ISO 13007 RG as indicated on drawings.
- D. Tile Installation (Kitchen Areas - Support 104, Kitchen 105, Presentation 106, Order 107, Managers Office 108, Crew Room 109, , Cooler 110, Freezer 111, Computer Closet 112 and Closet 113,: Interior floor installation on concrete; epoxy mortar; TCNA F131 and ANSI A108.6.
1. Tile Type: Unglazed quarry tile.
  2. Mortar: Latex Portland Cement Mortar ANSI A118.15
  3. Industrial Grade Epoxy Grout: 100% solids epoxy grout meeting ANSI A118.3. and ISO13007 RG
- 3.8 WALL TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE
- A. Tile Installation: Interior wall installation (Customer Service 100, Dining 101, Presenter 106, Crew Room 109 Vestibule 115, Playplace Vestibule 116, Playplace Dining 117) over cement backer board; thin-set mortar; TCNA W244C and ANSI A108.5.
1. Tile Type: Glazed, Porcelain or Ceramic wall tile.
  2. Medium Bed Mortar: Modified portland cement mortar per ANSI 118.4 ISO 13007: C2T
  3. Grout: High Performance Grout meeting ANSI A118.7 and ISO CG2WAF
- B. Tile Installation: Interior wall installation (Women's 102, Men's 103, Unisex 119) over cement backer board; thin-set mortar; TCNA W244 C-13 and ANSI A108.5.
1. Tile Type: Porcelain or Ceramic wall tile.
  2. Mortar: modified portland cement mortar .meeting ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007 C2T
  3. Grout: 100% solids epoxy grout meeting ANSI A118.3.and ISO 13007 RG

**PART 4 - Protect installed products until completion of project.**

1. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 093000**

## SECTION 093001 - TILING – EXTERIOR

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Related Documents: General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, General Requirements, and Drawings are applicable to this Section.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Ceramic tile installed using the Thin-Set Method
  - 2. Cementitious Grout
  - 3. Waterproofing Membrane
  - 4. Cement Backer Units
  - 5. Metal Trim Accessories

#### 1.2 REFERENCES STANDARDS

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. A108.01 General Requirements: Sub surfaces and Preparations by other trades
  - 2. A108.10 Installation of Grout in tile work
  - 3. A108.02 General Requirements: Materials, Environment, and Workmanship.
  - 4. A108.11 Cement Backer Units
  - 5. A118.4 Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
  - 6. A118.7 Latex Modified Grout
  - 7. A118.9 Cementitious Backer Units
  - 8. A118.10 Waterproofing Membrane
  - 9. EJ171 Guidelines for movement joints-vertical and Horizontal
- B. INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ORGANIZATION (ISO)
  - 1. ISO 13007- Part 1:2004: Ceramic tiles -- Grouts and adhesives specifies the values of performance requirements for all Tile adhesives,
  - 2. ISO 13007- Part 2:2005: Ceramic tiles -- Grouts and adhesives Test methods for adhesives.
  - 3. ISO 13007- Part 3:2005: Ceramic tiles -- Grouts and adhesives, Terms, definitions and specifications for grouts.
  - 4. ISO 13007-Part 4: 2005: Ceramic tiles -- Test methods for grouts.
- C. TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA
  - 1. Guideline W244 E-11

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All Mortars, Grouts, Adhesives and Membranes shall be from a single source to insure compatibility and manufacturers written limited warranties.
- B. Engage Tile contractor with a minimum of 3 years experience installing large format tile for exterior veneer applications. Installation experience shall be similar in material, design and scope of proposed work. Acceptable certification is by TCAA or NTCA certified installation programs.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings, product data, and samples under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Shop Drawings:
- C. Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, and junctions with dissimilar materials, thresholds, and setting details.
  - 1. Locate and detail expansion and control joints following EJ 171.
  - 2. Submit product data, specifications, and instructions for using mortars, adhesives, and grouts.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Submit color samples illustrating full color range of each type tile.
  - 2. Submit representative color samples of each type grout.

#### 1.4 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Convene one week prior to commencing work of this section.
- B. Require attendance of installation material manufacturer, tile supplier, tile installer and installers of related work. Review installation procedures and coordination required with related work.
- C. Meeting agenda includes but is not limited to:

1. Surface preparation.
2. Tile and installation material compatibility.
  - a. Mortar application
  - b. Grouting procedures
  - c. Maintenance and cleaning products

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 010000
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's unopened containers, fully identified with name, brand, type, and grade.
- C. Protect materials from contamination, dampness, freezing, or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Protect mortar and grout materials against; freezing, moisture, soiling, or staining.

#### 1.6 REFERENCES

- A. Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA):
  1. ADA, Slip-Resistance of Floor Coverings on Accessible Routes.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  1. ANSI 108.1A, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar.
  2. ANSI 108.1B, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
  3. ANSI A108.4, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
  4. ANSI A108.5, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
  5. ANSI A108.6, Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and Tile-Grouting Epoxy.
  6. ANSI A108.10, Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tile Work.
  7. ANSI A118.1, Specifications for Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar.
  8. ANSI A118.3, Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and Tile-Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
  9. ANSI A118.4, Specifications for Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
  10. ANSI A118.6, Specifications for Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation.
  11. ANSI A118.7, Specifications for Polymer Modified Tile Grouts for Tile Installation.
  12. ANSI A118.10, Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation.
  13. ANSI A136.1, Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
  14. ANSI A137.1, Specifications Ceramic Tile.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  1. ASTM C-11-98, Standard Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems.
  2. ASTM C-144-99, Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
  3. ASTM C-150-99a, Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
  4. ASTM C-207-91, Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
  5. ASTM C-373-88(1999), Standard Test Method for Water Absorption, Bulk Density, Apparent Porosity, and Apparent Specific Gravity of Fired Whiteware Products.
  6. ASTM C-482-81(1996), Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
  7. ASTM C-485-83(1999), Standard Test Method for Measuring Warpage of Ceramic Tile.
  8. ASTM C-499-78(1999), Standard Test Method for Facial Dimensions and Thickness of Flat, Rectangular Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile.
  9. ASTM C-501-84(1996), Standard Test Method for Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Ceramic Tile by the Taber Abraser.
  10. ASTM C-502-93a(1999), Standard Test Method for Wedging of Flat, Rectangular Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile.
  11. ASTM C-627-93(1999), Standard Test Method for Evaluating Ceramic Floor Tile Installation Systems Using the Robison-Type Floor Tester.
  12. ASTM C-648-98, Standard Test Method for Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile.
  13. ASTM C-650-97, Standard Test Method for Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Chemical Substances.
  14. ASTM C-920-98, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.



- 15. ASTM C-1026-87(1996), Standard Test Method for Measuring the Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Freeze-Thaw Cycling.
- 16. ASTM C-1028-96, Standard Test Method for Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. FS, TT-C-00555, Specifications for Coating for Masonry Surfaces.
- E. Tile Council of America (TCA):
  - 1. TCA, "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation".
  - 2. TCA, Setting bed and grouting shall be manufactured under TCA license.

#### 1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standards and recommendations of material manufacturers for environmental conditions before, during, and after installation.
- B. Do not begin installation until building is completely enclosed and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity conditions consistent with "after occupancy" conditions for a minimum of 2 weeks.
- C. Maintain continuous and uniform building temperatures of not less than 50 degrees F during installation.
- D. Ventilate spaces receiving tile in accordance with material manufacturers' instructions.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Include cleaning methods, cleaning solutions recommended; stain removal methods, and polishes and waxes approved for use by tile, stone and installation manufacturers.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Standard for Tile; Comply with ANSI A137.1
- B. ANSI Standard for Tile Installation Materials: Comply with ANSI standard referenced with products and materials indicated for setting and grouting.
- C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provides specific products or materials complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Match Architect's sample

#### 2.2 TILE

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Euro west
- B. Color
  - 1. Refer to drawings for tile color.
- C. Size
  - 1. Rectified 12 x 24

#### 2.3 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Metal profiles installed as part of tile installations:
  - 1. Schluter Systems Metal Profile
    - a. C (Corner Strip) = RONDEC R0100SP on outer corners to protect edge,
    - b. E (Edge Strip) =A100SP,for movement joints and edge conditions.

#### 2.4 MORTAR, GROUT, AND ADHESIVE MANUFACTURERS

- A. A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements herein, provide products from one of the following manufacturers.
- B. MAPEI Corporation, Deerfield Beach, FL. (954) 246-8888, [www.mapei.com](http://www.mapei.com)

#### 2.5 WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE

- A. Flexible, Cement-Based Waterproofing Membrane
- B. Acceptable Products, basis of design:
  - 1. MAPEI, Mapelastic 315
  - 2. MAPEI, Mapelastic Fiberglass Mesh

- 2.6 QUICK-SETTING THIN-SET MORTAR:
- A. For Installation in regions subject to Freeze Thaw Conditions
  - B. Fast setting, second generation, two-component mortar consisting of latex additive and mortar; comply with ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007 Classification: C2FS2P2
  - C. Acceptable Products, basis of design:
    - 1. MAPEI, Grani-Rapid, Polymer Modified Thin Set Mortar for installation of Large Format Tile and Stone for freeze thaw climate.
    - 2. MAPEI, ULTRA FLEX 3 for moderate climates.
  - D. For Installation in regions NOT subject to Freeze Thaw Conditions
  - E. Fast setting single component polymer modified thin set mortar, comply with ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007 Classification: C2TFS1P1.
- 2.7 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS
- A. Cementitious Fiber-Mat Reinforced Sheathing: ASTM C 1325, ANSI A118.9, cementitious backer.
  - B. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DUROCK Brand Cement Board by United States Gypsum Company.
  - C. Type and Thickness: 1/2 inch thick.
  - D. Size: 48 by 96 inches,
- 2.8 FAST SETTING, POLYMER-MODIFIED GROUT
- A. Polymer-modified grout complying with ANSI A118.7 and ISO 13007 Classification: CG-2WAF requirements.
  - B. Acceptable Products, basis of design:
    - 1. MAPEI, Ultracolor, fast-setting, polymer-modified, color-consistent, non-shrinking, efflorescence-free grout.
    - 2. Color Refer to elevation drawings for grout color.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of the work.
  - B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
  - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Installation of flooring materials indicates acceptance of substrate.
  - D. ANSI A108.01; General requirements for sub surfaces and preparations by other trades
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Refer to drawings for tile layout, pattern, and location of movement joints and profile strips.
  - B. Follow all manufacturers most current written recommended procedures and industry standards be followed to ensure a successful installation.
  - C. Install tile in accordance to TCNA Method W244 E-11
  - D. Tile or Stone set with dry-set Portland cement mortar or latex-Portland cement mortar with metal lath.
    - 1. ANSI A108.5
  - E. Load Bearing Bonded, Waterproofing Membrane for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile.
    - 1. ANSI A108.13
  - F. Installation of Grout in Tile work
    - 1. ANSI A108.10
- 3.3 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed tile and stone work during the construction period to prevent damage.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:
  1. Acoustical panels.
  2. Exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
  3. Roll formed metal edge and trim pieces.
  4. Extruded perimeter trim accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C635 - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2007.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels; 2008.
- C. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions; 2011.
- D. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2008e1.
- E. NFPA 286 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth; 2011

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
- B. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.
- C. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  1. Acoustical Panel: Set of full-size Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
  2. Exposed Suspension System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 12-inch long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each acoustical panel ceiling.
- D. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Provide materials as listed from USG Interiors, Inc., 550 West Adams Street, Chicago, IL 60661.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:
  1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:
    - a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Seismic Standard: Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions where project required to meet seismic zone requirements and according to the following:
  1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E 580.
  2. CISCA's Recommendations for Acoustical Ceilings: Comply with CISCA's "Recommendations for Direct-Hung Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings--Seismic Zones 0-2."
  3. CISCA's Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCA's "Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies--Seismic Zones 3 & 4."
  4. UBC Standard 25-2, "Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and for Lay-in Panel Ceilings."

5. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 9, "Earthquake Loads."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 3.0 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 3.0 percent of quantity installed.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectance, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface per ASTM E 795.
- B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
  - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.
- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR MAIN DINING ROOM, (FIELD) - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING , WATER FELTED MINERAL FIBER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide USG Interiors, Inc.; Olympia Micro Clima Plus, Tegular Edge SLT.
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
  - 2. Pattern: CD (perforated, small holes and fissured).
- C. Color: White, unless otherwise noted.
- D. LR: Not less than 0.86.
- E. NRC: Not less than 0.50
- F. CAC: Not less than 35.
- G. Edge/Joint Detail: Beveled tegular.
- H. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

- I. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACCENT PANELS - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING , WATER FELTED MINERAL FIBER
- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide USG Interiors, Inc., Frost Clima Plus, Tegular Edge SLB.
  - B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
    1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
    2. Pattern: CD (perforated, small holes and fissured).
  - C. Colors, locations as indicated:
  - D. Flat Black, # 205.
  - E. Taupe # 107.
  - F. Charcoal # 534.
  - G. LR: Not less than 0.83.
  - H. NRC: Not less than 0.70
  - I. CAC: Not less than 38.
  - J. Edge/Joint Detail: Beveled tegular.
  - K. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - L. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- 2.4 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACCENT PANELS (SEEQ ALT.) - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING , WATER FELTED MINERAL FIBER
- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide USG Interiors, Inc., Premiere Hi-Lite Kapok Plus, Tegular Edge SLB.
  - B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
    1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
    2. Pattern: CD (perforated, small holes and fissured).
  - C. Color: Flat Black, # 205.
  - D. LR: Not less than 0.76.
  - E. NRC: Not less than 0.75.
  - F. CAC: Not less than 20.
  - G. Edge/Joint Detail: Beveled tegular.
  - H. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 2.5 Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- 2.6 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR BACK OF HOUSE - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING, UNPERFORATED VINYL LAMINATED FACE, WATER FELTED MINERAL FIBER WITH SEALED BACK AND EDGES.
- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide USG Interiors, Inc.; Clean Room Cima Plus, Smooth Texture Acoustical Ceiling Panels - No. 56099 Class 100, unperforated
  - B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
    1. Type and Form: Type IV, mineral base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, water felted; with soil resistant polyester film overlay.
    2. Pattern: GH (smooth and printed - non-perforated).
  - C. Color: White.
  - D. LR: Not less than 0.79.
  - E. NRC: NA.
  - F. CAC: Not less than 35.
  - G. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.
  - H. Thickness: 3/4 inch at field units and 5/8 inch at border units.
  - I. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  - J. Antimicrobial Treatment: Broad spectrum fungicide and bactericide based
- 2.7 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL
- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
  - B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.

- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
    - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
    - 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch diameter wire.
  - E. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces, where required to conform with seismic conditions.
  - F. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces, where required to conform with seismic conditions.
  - G. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed and spaced to secure acoustical panels in-place, where required to conform with seismic conditions.
- 2.8 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING
- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1. Acoustical Ceilings for Main Dining Room (Field) USG Interiors, Inc.; Centricitee DXT.
    - 2. Acoustical Ceilings for Accent Panels, provide USG Interiors, Inc.; Centricitee DXT.
    - 3. Acoustical Ceilings for Back of House, provide USG Interiors, Inc.; DX/DXL.
  - B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653, not less than G30 coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch wide metal caps on flanges.
    - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
    - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
    - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
    - 4. Cap Material: Steel or aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
    - 5. Cap Finish: Painted white.
- 2.9 Colors: As indicated on drawings to match ceiling tile.
- 2.10 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM
- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.
    - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
    - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- 2.11 Extruded Perimeter Trim: As manufactured by USG Manufactured by USG Interiors, Inc., 550 West Adams Street, Chicago, IL 60661.
- 2.12 For transitions between varying ceiling heights provide trim pieces of size and color as indicated on drawings.
- 2.13 Compasso Elite Extruded Perimeter Trim, available in 2", 4", 6", 8" and 12".
- 2.14 Provide manufacturer's inside and outside corner trim and splice pieces as required to achieve design and layout as indicated on the drawings.
- 2.15 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT
- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

- B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, non-hardening, non-skinning, non-staining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 6. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 8. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 9. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post-installed anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
  - 1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension system runners and moldings.

2. For reveal-edged panels on suspension system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 095113**



## SECTION 096522 - RUBBER RECREATIONAL FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes: Rubber recreational floor tile.
- 1.3 REFERENCES
  - A. ASTM C 1028; Standard Test Method for Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method.
  - B. ASTM F 1292-99; Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment.
  - C. ASTM E 648; Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
    - 1. Show details of special patterns.
  - C. Samples: For each type of rubber recreational floor tile, full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
  - D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
  - E. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation indicated.
  - B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
    - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Store rubber recreational floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
  - A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
    - 1. 48 hours before installation.
    - 2. During installation.
    - 3. 48 hours after installation.
  - B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
  - C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
  - D. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS
  - A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
    - 1. Rubber Recreational Floor Tile: Furnish 2 percent of each type, color, and pattern of rubber recreational floor tile installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Dinoflex Manufacturing, Ltd.
  2. Pawling Corporation

### 2.2 RUBBER RECREATIONAL FLOOR TILE

- A. Rubber Recreational Tiles: Material shall be non-laminated tile formulation composed of 100 percent of post-consumer recycled SBR (styrene butadiene rubber) and 100 percent virgin EPDM (ethylene propylene diene monomer) rubber granules, bound with a polyurethane binder, and precision cut using computerized numerically controlled water-based equipment
  1. Static Coefficient of Friction (when tested in accordance with ASTM D2407)
    - a. Greater than 0.80 dry
    - b. Greater than .90 wet
  2. Hardness: Not less than 64 as required by ASM F 1344, measured using Shore, Type A durometer per ASTM D 2240.
  3. Thickness: 3/8-inch
  4. Size: 37 by 37 inches.
  5. Tile to tile interlock, minimum 5 interlocks per side
  6. Colors: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Provide water-resistant type adhesives according to manufacturer™ recommendations and installation guidelines for specific substrate:
  1. Use one-component urethane adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Rubber Floor Tile Adhesives: Not more than 60 g/L.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install rubber recreational floor tiles until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed. Move rubber recreational floor tile products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- E. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by rubber recreational floor tile products immediately before installation.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into door reveals and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- G. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect rubber recreational floor tile products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 096522**

## SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

1. Vinyl wall covering.
2. Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for priming wall surfaces.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2012.
- B. ASTM D1308 - Standard Test Method for Effect of Household Chemicals on Clear and Pigmented Organic Finishes; 2002 (Reapproved 2007)
- C. ASTM F793 - Standard Classification of Wall covering by Use Characteristics; 2010a.
- D. FS L-P-1040 - Plastic Sheets and Strips (Polyvinyl Fluoride); Federal Specifications and Standards; Revision B, 1977.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement, seams and termination points.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36-inch- long in size.
  1. Wall-Covering Sample: From same production run to be used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat.
  2. Wood-Veneer Wall-Covering Sample: From same flitch to be used for the Work, with specified finish applied.
- D. Product Schedule: For wall coverings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each wall covering, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to 5 percent of amount installed.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for installation.
  1. Build mockups for each type of wall covering on each substrate required. Comply with requirements in ASTM F 1141 for appearance shading characteristics.
  2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

- 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
    - 1. Wood-Veneer Wall Coverings: Condition spaces for not less than 48 hours before installation.
  - B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
  - C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113.
  - B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
    - 2. Fire-Growth Contribution: No flashover and heat and smoke release according to NFPA 265.
- 2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING
- A. As scheduled.
- 2.3 ACCESSORIES
- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
    - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
    - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
    - 3. Adhesive shall not be impermeable to water vapor.
    - 4. VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099100 "Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for levelness, wall plumbness, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
  - B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
  - C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
    - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
    - 2. Plaster: Allow new plaster to cure. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Prime with primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.

3. Metals: If not factory primed, clean and apply primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
  4. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
  5. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.
- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
  - E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
  - F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.
- 3.3 WALL-COVERING INSTALLATION
- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
  - B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
  - C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
    1. For solid-color, even-texture, or random-match wall coverings, reverse every other strip.
  - D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
  - E. Match pattern 72 inches above the finish floor.
  - F. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches from outside corners and 3 inches from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
  - G. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
  - H. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
  - B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
  - C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
  - D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

**END OF SECTION 097200**

## SECTION 098433 - SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C423 - Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method; 2009a.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2012.
- C. ASTM E795 - Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests; 2005.

#### 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shop-fabricated, fabric-wrapped panel units tested for acoustical performance, including:
  - 1. Sound-absorbing wall panels.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of fabric facing, panel edge, core material, and mounting indicated.
- B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
  - 2. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used on the interior of the building.
    - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
- C. Shop Drawings: For sound-absorbing wall units. Include mounting devices and details; details at panel head, base, joints, and corners; and details at ceiling, floor base, and wall intersections. Indicate panel edge and core materials.
  - 1. Include elevations showing panel sizes and direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Fabric: Full-width by approximately 36-inch- long Sample, but not smaller than required to show complete pattern repeat, from dye lot to be used for the Work, and with specified treatments applied. Mark top and face of fabric.
  - 2. Panel Edge: 12-inch- long Sample(s) showing each edge profile, corner, and finish.
  - 3. Core Material: 12-inch- square Sample at corner.
  - 4. Mounting Devices: Full-size Samples.
  - 5. Assembled Panels: Approximately 36 by 36 inches, including joints and mounting methods.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Elevations and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Electrical outlets, switches, and thermostats.
  - 2. Items penetrating or covered by sound-absorbing wall units including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Alarms.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
  - 3. Show operation of hinged and sliding components covered by or adjacent to sound-absorbing wall units.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of sound-absorbing wall unit, from manufacturer.

- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For sound-absorbing wall units to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal recommendations.
- 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Furnish extra materials from same production run that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fabric: For each fabric, color, and pattern installed, provide length equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 10 yards.
  2. Mounting Devices: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than five devices, including unopened adhesives.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sound-absorbing wall units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide sound-absorbing wall units meeting the following as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing per ASTM E 84.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  2. Fire Growth Contribution: Meeting acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested according to NFPA 265.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical wall area as directed by Architect. Include intersection of wall and ceiling, corners, and perimeters.
  2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Comply with fabric and sound-absorbing wall unit manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and units in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.
- 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install sound-absorbing wall units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install sound-absorbing wall units until a lighting level of not less than 50 fc is provided on surfaces to receive the units.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect sound-absorbing wall units from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install units under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify locations of sound-absorbing wall units and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication.
- 1.11 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sound-absorbing wall units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Acoustical performance.
    - b. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
    - c. Warping of core.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS GENERAL

- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113.

### 2.2 SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries.
  - 2. Decoustics Limited; a CertainTeed Ceilings company.
  - 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
- B. Sound-Absorbing Wall Panel: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material laminated to front face, edges, and back edge border of core.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: As scheduled.
  - 2. Mounting: Edge mounted with splines secured to substrate.
    - a. Finish Color at Exposed Edges: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 3. Core: Provide wood or plywood nailing strips in core where indicated.
    - a. Core-Face Layer: Manufacturer's standard .
  - 4. Edge Construction: Manufacturer's standard chemically hardened core with no frame.
  - 5. Edge Profile: Mitered (beveled to a point).
  - 6. Corner Detail in Elevation: Square with continuous edge profile indicated.
  - 7. Reveals between Panels: Recessed reveals as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 8. Facing Material: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 9. Acoustical Performance: Sound absorption NRC of 0.50 to 0.90 according to ASTM C 423 for Type A mounting according to ASTM E 795.
  - 10. Nominal Core Overall Panel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 11. Panel Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 12. Panel Height: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- 1. Tackable, Impact-Resistant, High-Density Board for Face Layer: 1/8-inch- thick layer of compressed molded glass-fiber board with a nominal density of 16 to 18 lb/cu. ft. laminated to face of core.
- 2. Impact-Resistant, Acoustically Transparent, Copolymer Sheet for Face Layer: 1/16- to 1/8-inch-thick layer of perforated, noncombustible, copolymer sheet laminated to face of core.
- 3. Wood and Plywood: Manufacturer's standard plywood or clear, vertical grain, straight, kiln-dried hardwood.
  - a. Fire-retardant treated by pressure process with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
    - 1) Treated material shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity.
    - 2) Kiln-dry material after treatment to 7 to 13 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for plywood.
- B. Facing Material: Fabric from same dye lot; color and pattern as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Product Line/Pattern: As scheduled.
  - 2. Color: As scheduled.
  - 3. Source: As scheduled.
- C. Mounting Devices: Concealed on back of unit, recommended by manufacturer to support weight of unit, and as follows:
  - 1. Splines: Manufacturer's standard concealed metal or plastic splines that engage the kerfed edges of the unit, with other moldings and trim for interior corners, exterior corners, and exposed edges, with factory-applied finish on exposed items.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Use manufacturer's standard construction except as otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
  - 1. Cores: Chemically harden core edges and areas of core where mounting devices are attached.
- B. Core-Face Layer: Evenly stretched over core face and edges and securely attached to core; free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, or sags.
- C. Facing Material: Apply fabric facing fully covering visible surfaces of unit; with material stretched straight, on the grain, tight, square, and free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive, or other visible distortions or foreign matter.
  - 1. Square Corners: Tailor corners. Heat seal vinyl fabric seams at corners.
  - 2. Radius and Other Nonsquare Corners: Attach facing material so there are no seams or gathering of material.
  - 3. Fabrics with Directional or Repeating Patterns or Directional Weave: Mark fabric top and attach fabric in same direction so pattern or weave matches in adjacent units.
- D. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Units: Plus or minus 1/16 inch for the following:
  - 1. Thickness.
  - 2. Edge straightness.
  - 3. Overall length and width.
  - 4. Squareness from corner to corner.
  - 5. Chords, radii, and diameters.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fabric, fabricated units, substrates, areas, and conditions, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of sound-absorbing wall units.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sound-absorbing wall units in locations indicated with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with sound-absorbing wall unit manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align and level fabric pattern and grain among adjacent units.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb and Level: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.
- B. Variation of Panel Joints from Hairline: Not more than 1/16 inch wide.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 098433**

## SECTION 099100 - PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Related Documents: General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, Division 01 General Requirements, and Drawings are applicable to this Section.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Complete surface preparation and finishing for field application of coatings and requirements for field finishing mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Examine specifications for various other trades and their provisions regarding their painting. Surfaces that are left unfinished by other sections of the specifications shall be painted or finished as a part of this Section.
  - 3. Colors, including deep tones, will be selected by the Architect. Number of colors to be used on job will be determined by Architect.

#### 1.2 Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Division 09 Section "Exterior Metal Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
- 3. Division 09 Section "Masonry Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior and interior substrates.
- 4. Division 09 Section "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on interior wood substrates.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS:

- A. EPA METHOD 24 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.
- B. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications; 2012.
- C. GreenSeal GS-11 - Paints; Current Edition
- D. SSPC (PM1) - Good Painting Practice: SSPC Painting Manual, Vol. 1; Society for Protective Coatings; Fourth Edition.

#### 1.4 SURFACES NOT TO RECEIVE FIELD FINISHING

- A. Do not paint copper, bronze, chrome plated items, nickel, stainless steel, Monel metal, lead, face brick, prefinished wall, ceiling, and floor coverings, items with factory applied final finish (except where exposed on roofs and in finished spaces), elevator shafts, crawl spaces, chases, and plenums above suspended ceilings unless otherwise specified or scheduled.

#### 1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Conform to ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this Section.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing quality paint and finish products with 3 years' experience.
- B. Applicator: Company specializing in commercial painting and finishing with 2 years' experience.
- C. Product Labels: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, stock number, color and label analysis on label of containers.

#### 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable building code for flame spread/fuel contribution/smoke development rating requirements for finishes.
- B. Comply with applicable city, county, state, and federal requirements and ordinances regarding maximum VOC (Volatile Organic Compound) content of all coatings.

#### 1.8 TESTS

- A. Provide periodic testing with Wet Film Thickness gage to verify that proper thickness of finish coatings are being applied.

- 1.9 SUBMITTALS
- A. Provide product data describing physical performance criteria and composition on all finishing products.
  - B. Submit 2 samples, 12 by 12 inches in size illustrating range of colors and textures selected for each surface finishing product scheduled.
  - C. Submit certification from manufacturer of coatings listing all products proposed for each. Certify that each product meets current applicable regulations and ordinances regarding maximum VOC content.
- 1.10 FIELD SAMPLES
- A. Provide field sample panel, 96 inches long by 96 inches wide, illustrating each coating color, texture, and finish intended for use.
  - B. Locate where directed.
  - C. Accepted sample may remain as part of the Work.
- 1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store, and protect products under provisions of Division 01 section "Product Requirements"
  - B. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptance.
  - C. Container labeling to include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
  - D. Store paint materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in well-ventilated area, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
  - E. Take precautionary measures to prevent fire hazards and spontaneous combustion.
- 1.12 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the ranges required by paint manufacturer.
  - B. Provide continuous ventilation and heating facilities to maintain surface and ambient temperatures above 45 degrees F for 24 hours before, during, and 48 hours after application of finishes, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
  - C. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is above 75 percent, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
  - D. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
  - E. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish and Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior or exterior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
  - F. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid- height at substrate surface.
- 1.13 EXTRA STOCK
- A. Provide a 5 gallon container of each color to Owner.
  - B. Label each container with color, color number, texture, and room locations, in addition to the manufacturer's label.
  - C. Furnish under provisions of Section 017800.
- 1.14 SCAFFOLDS AND PROTECTION
- A. Provide adequate safe ladders, scaffolds, and stages necessary to complete work.
  - B. Protect completed finish and paint work, and protect adjacent finish surfaces from paint splatter, spills and stains. Use adequate drop cloths and masking procedures during progress of work.
- 1.15 PRECAUTIONS
- A. Do not store paints, oils, thinners and other flammable items inside the building and shall be stored in approved containers when not in actual use during the painting job. The fire hazard shall be kept at a minimum.
  - B. Precaution shall be taken to protect the public and construction workers during the progress of the work.
  - C. Furnish a temporary fire extinguisher of suitable chemicals and capacity, located near flammable materials.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements indicated, provide products of one of the following:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams.
  - 2. Benjamin Moore.
- B. Materials selected for coating systems for each type surface shall be product of a single manufacturer unless otherwise specified. Secondary products such as linseed oil, turpentine and shellacs shall be first quality products of a reputable manufacturer.
- C. "Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
- D. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions"

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Coatings: Ready mixed. Process pigments to a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating with good flow and brushing properties; capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
- C. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, paint thinners and other materials not specifically indicated but required to achieve the finishes specified, of commercial quality.
- D. Patching Materials: Latex filler.

### 2.3 FINISHES

- A. Color and Sheen: As scheduled.

### 2.4 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Drywall (Gypsum):
  - 1. Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat High Build Latex Primer B28W8601, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  - 2. Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat High Build Latex Primer B28W8601, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 400 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
- B. CMU, Concrete Block:
  - 1. Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat PrepRite Block Filler B25W25, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  - 2. Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat PrepRite Block Filler B25W25, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 400 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
- C. CMU, Concrete Block (Wet Areas):
  - 1. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Epoxy:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Cement-Plex B42W200/B42V201 primer, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy B70 Series. Sheen as indicated.
- D. Plaster:
  - 1. Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Primer B28W2600, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  - 2. Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Primer B28W2600, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 400 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  - 3. Latex High Build Texture Coating:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Primer B28W2600, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Ultracrete Texture Coating A44W800 Series. Texture approved by Architect.
- E. Smooth Concrete, Unglazed Brick

1. Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Concrete & Masonry Primer A24W8300, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  2. Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Masonry Primer A24W8300, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 400 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  3. Latex High Build Texture Coating:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Masonry Primer A24W8300, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Ultracrete Texture Coating A44W800 Series. Texture approved by Architect.
- F. Wood Paneling, Trim, Doors, Cabinets:
1. Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Premium Wall & Wood Primer B28W8111, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  2. Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Premium Wall & Wood Primer B28W8111, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 400 Zero VOC. Sheen as indicated.
  3. Alkyd:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Premium Wall & Wood Primer B28W8111, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Waterbased Acrylic-Alkyd Semi-Gloss, B34-8200 Series.
  4. Water-Based Varnish:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Wood Classics Oil Stain A49-200 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Wood Classics Waterborne Polyurethane Varnish A68 Series.
  5. Polyurethane Varnish:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Wood Classics Oil Stain A49-200 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Wood Classics Fast Dry Oil Varnish A66-300 Series.
- G. Galvanized Metal:
1. High Performance Coating, Water Based Acrylic
    - a. Sherwin-Williams:
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series,
      - 2) Eg-Shel 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Eg-Shel B66-660 Series.
      - 3) Semi-Gloss 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series.
  2. Acrylic Latex
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Sherwin-Williams Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC Flat B30-2600 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Eg-Shel: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC Eg-Shel B20-2600 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Semi-Gloss: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC Semi-Gloss B31-2600 Series topcoat.
      - 4) Gloss: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams SoloGloss A77W5 topcoat.
- H. Shop Primed Ferrous Metal:
1. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Eg-Shel B66-660 Series.
  2. Acrylic Latex
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Sherwin-William Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC Eg-Shel B20-2600 Series.
- I. Handrails, Stairs, and Guardrails:
1. High Performance Coating, Urethane:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel Semi-Gloss, B53-1150 Series.
  2. High Performance Coating, Epoxy:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Waterbased Tile Clad Epoxy Primer, B73A200, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Waterbased Tile Clad Finish B73-100 Series.
  3. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Sherwin-Williams DTM Primer/Finish B66W1, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series.
- J. Decking (Ferrous Unprimed), Bar Joists (Unprimed):
1. Water-Based Acrylic Dry Fall:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall B42W181.
  2. Productivity, Alkyd Dry Fall:

- a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Alkyd Dryfall Flat B48W60.
  - 3. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Sherwin-Williams Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series.
  - 4. High Performance Coating, Alkyd Industrial Enamel:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Industrial Enamel B54 Series.
- K. Decking (Pre-primed/Prefinished), Bar Joists (Shop Primed):
  - 1. Water-Based Acrylic Dry Fall:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall B42W181 over Prepared substrate.
  - 2. Productivity, Alkyd Dry Fall:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Alkyd Dryfall Flat B48W60 over prepared substrate.
  - 3. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Zero Pro Industrial Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series over prepared substrate.
  - 4. High Performance Coating, Alkyd Industrial Enamel:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Industrial Enamel B54 Series over prepared substrate.
- L. Decking (Galvanized):
  - 1. Water-Based Acrylic Dry Fall:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall B42W181 over prepared substrate.
  - 2. Alkyd Dry Fall:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat DTM Wash Primer B71Y1, Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Alkyd Dryfall B48W60.
  - 3. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series.

## 2.5 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Poured, Pre-Cast or Tilt-up Concrete, Stucco, Brick:
  - 1. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Concrete & Masonry Primer A24W8300
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams A-100 Flat A6-100 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams A-100 Satin A82-100 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
  - 2. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Concrete & Masonry Primer A24W8300
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams DuraCraft Flat C1 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams DuraCraft Satin C7Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
  - 3. Latex High Build Texture Coating:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Concrete & Masonry Primer A24W8300,
      - 1) Fine: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams UltraCrete A44W801 topcoat.
      - 2) Medium: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams UltraCrete A44W811 topcoat.
      - 3) Extra Coarse: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams UltraCrete A44W821 topcoat.
  - 4. Elastomeric:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Loxon Acrylic Concrete & Masonry Primer A24W8300
      - 1) Smooth: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ConFlex XL High Build Coating A5W451 topcoat.
      - 2) Fine: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams ConFlex XL Textured Medium A5W810 topcoat.
      - 3) Extra Coarse: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams ConFlex XL Textured Extra Coarse A5W820 topcoat.
- B. CMU, Cinder Block, Split Face Block:
  - 1. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat PrepRite Block Filler B25W25
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams A-100 Flat A6-100 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams A-100 Satin A82-100 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
  - 2. Latex High Build Texture Coating:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat PrepRite Block Filler B25W25

- 1) Fine: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams UltraCrete A44W801 topcoat.
    - 2) Medium: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams UltraCrete A44W811 topcoat. Extra
    - 3) Coarse: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams UltraCrete A44W821 topcoat.
  3. Elastomeric:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat PrepRite Block Filler B25W25
      - 1) Smooth: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams ConFlex XL High Build Coating A5W451 topcoat.
      - 2) Fine: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams ConFlex XL Textured Medium A5W810 topcoat.
      - 3) Extra Coarse: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams ConFlex XL Textured Extra Coarse A5W820 topcoat.
- C. Cementitious Siding, Flexboard, Transite and Shingles:
  1. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Multi-Purpose Latex Primer B51- 450 Series
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams A-100 Flat A6-100 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams A-100 Satin A82-100 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
- D. Wood Trim, Shutters, Sash, Doors, PVC Composition Trim Board:
  1. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Multi-Purpose Latex Primer B51- 450 Series.
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams A-100 Flat A6-100 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams A-100 Satin A82-100 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
  2. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Multi-Purpose Latex Primer B51- 450 Series.
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams DuraCraft Flat C1 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams DuraCraft Satin C7Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
- E. Structural Iron and Ferrous Steel (Including Tanks and Water Towers):
  1. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams DTM Primer/Finish B66W1.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Eg-Shel B66-660 Series.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series.
  2. 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams.
      - 1) Flat: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams A-100 Flat A6-100 Series topcoat.
      - 2) Satin: 2 coats of Sherwin- Williams A-100 Satin A82-100 Series topcoat.
      - 3) Gloss: 2 coats of Sherwin-Williams Solo Gloss A77W51 topcoat.
  3. High Performance Coating, Alkyd Industrial Enamel:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Kem Kromik Universal Metal Primer B50WZ1, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Industrial Enamel B54 Series topcoat.
  4. Urethane High Performance Coating, :
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy B58-600 Series, 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Acrolon 218 HS Acrylic Polyurethane B65-650 topcoat.
- F. Shop Primed Metal Doors, Trim, Panels and Miscellaneous Surfaces:
  1. High Performance Coating, Urethane: (rust inhibitive, UV stable)
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: 1 coat Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy B58-600 Series, 2 coats Acrolon 218 HS Acrylic Polyurethane B65-650 topcoat.
  2. High Performance Coating, Water-Based Acrylic: (less UV stable)
    - a. Sherwin-Williams: Eg-Shel: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Eg-Shel B66-660 Series over prepared substrate.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams: Semi-Gloss: 2 coats Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series over prepared substrate.
- G. Traffic and Handicap Marking (Miscellaneous Surfaces Including Concrete and Asphalt):
  1. Water-Based Acrylic:
    - a. Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Pro-Park Traffic Marking Paint B97WD2434.
  2. Fast Dry Acrylic:
    - a. Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Setfast Hotline TM215/2153.
  3. Alkyd:
    - a. Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Setfast ProMar Alkyd TM 5494/5493.
  4. Chlorinated Rubber:



- a. Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Setfast Chlorinated Rubber Zone Marking Paint TM5126/TM5127.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces and substrate conditions are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report to Architect any condition that may potentially affect proper application.
- C. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums
  1. Plaster and Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.
  2. Masonry, Concrete, and Concrete Unit Masonry: 12 percent.
  3. Interior Located Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D2016.
  4. Exterior Located Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D2016.
  5. Concrete Floors: 8 percent.
- D. Test shop applied primers for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- E. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing surfaces and substrate.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, and fittings prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- B. Correct minor defects and clean surfaces which affect work of this Section. Remove existing coatings which exhibit loose surface defects.
- C. Shellac and seal marks which may bleed through surface finishes.
- D. Impervious Surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of tri-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- E. Aluminum Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish: Remove surface contamination by steam or high pressure water. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing. Apply etching primer immediately following cleaning.
- F. Insulated Coverings: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.
- G. Concrete Floors: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- H. Gypsum Board Surfaces: Latex fill minor defects. Spot prime defects after repair.
- I. Galvanized Surfaces: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent. Apply coat of etching primer.
- J. Concrete and Unit Masonry Surfaces Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of tri-sodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.
- K. Plaster Surfaces: Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high alkali surfaces.
- L. Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces: Remove grease, scale, dirt, and rust. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by wire brushing or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Spot prime paint after repairs.
- M. Shop Primed Steel Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- N. Aluminum with Alodine Finish: Clean by lightly scuff with sandpaper. Remove all dust.
- O. Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats.
- P. Interior Wood Items Schedule to Receive Transparent Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to sealing, seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after sealer has dried; sand lightly between coats.
- Q. Exterior Wood Scheduled to receive Paint Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after prime coat has been applied.
- R. Exterior Wood Scheduled to Receive Transparent Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter; seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after sealer has been applied.
- S. Shop Finished Items: Finish in accordance with AWI standards and guide lines.

- T. Glue-Laminated Beams: Prior to finishing, wash surfaces with solvent, remove grease and dirt.
- U. Wood and Metal Doors Scheduled for Painting: Seal top and bottom edges with primer.

### 3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION OF PREVIOUSLY COATED SURFACES

- A. General:
  - 1. Remove cracked and deteriorated sealants and caulking.
  - 2. Remove chalk deposits and loose, blistered, peeling, scaling, or crazed finish to bare base material or sound substrate by scraping and sanding.
  - 3. Wash surfaces with solution of TSP to remove wax, oil, grease, and other foreign material; rinse, and allow to dry. Exercise caution that TSP solution does not soften existing coating.
  - 4. Abrade glossy surfaces by sanding or wiping with liquid de-glosser.
  - 5. Remove mildew as specified above.
  - 6. Test compatibility of existing coatings by applying new coating to small, inconspicuous area. If new coatings lift or blister existing coatings, request recommendation from Architect.
  - 7. Apply specified primer to surfaces scheduled to receive coatings.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard:
  - 1. Fill cracks and voids with spackling compound.
  - 2. Apply primer over bare surfaces and newly applied texture coatings.
- C. Metal:
  - 1. Remove rust from surfaces to bare metal in accordance with SP3 "Power Tool Cleaning".
  - 2. Exercise care not to remove galvanizing.
  - 3. Complete preparation as specified for new work.
- D. Wood:
  - 1. Fill cracks, crevices and nail holes with putty or wood filler.
  - 2. Apply primer over bare surfaces and filler material.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect elements surrounding the work of this Section from damage or disfiguration.
- B. Repair damage to other surfaces caused by work of this Section.
- C. Furnish drop cloths, shields, and protective methods to prevent spray or droppings from disfiguring other surfaces.
- D. Remove empty paint containers from site.

### 3.5 APPLICATION

- A. The intent of these Specifications is to produce the highest quality appearance of paint and finish surfaces. Employ skilled mechanics only. The proper preparation of all surfaces will be strictly enforced and wherever finished surfaces show any defects due to improper preparation, workmanship, etc., the defects shall be removed and the work refinished at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Final finish coats shall have visual evidence of solid hiding and uniform appearance, and shall be free and smooth of brush marks, streaks, sags, runs, laps, or skipped areas.
- C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry.
- D. Apply each coat to uniform finish and thickness.
- E. Apply each coat of paint slightly darker than preceding coat unless otherwise approved.
- F. Sand lightly between coats on wood and metal items to achieve required finish.
- G. Allow applied coat to dry before next coat is applied.
- H. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.
- I. Prime back surfaces of interior and exterior woodwork scheduled to be painted with primer paint.
- J. Prime back surfaces of interior woodwork scheduled to receive stain or varnish finish with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with mineral spirits.
- K. Edges of paint adjoining other materials or colors shall be sharp and clean with no overlapping.

3.6 FINISHING MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Paint all shop primed equipment. Paint shop prefinished items where exposed to view in finished spaces. In mechanical rooms, repair shop pre-finished coatings which have been scratched or otherwise damaged with identical touch-up paint. Sand prior to touching up as required.
- B. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.
- C. Paint all grilles, registers, diffusers, and speaker grilles to match adjacent wall and ceiling surfaces, except that factory pre-finished items need not be painted if installed in a suspended acoustical ceiling system where the acoustical panels match the mechanical or electrical item color.
- D. In all finished spaces, prime and paint exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports. Paint to match adjacent surfaces.
- E. Repair or replace identification markings on mechanical or electrical equipment when painted accidentally.
- F. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts and convectors that are visible through grilles and louvers with one coat of flat black paint, to limit of sight line. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector to match face panels.
- G. Paint all surfaces of plywood backboards for electrical and telephone equipment before installing equipment.
- H. Replace electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, and fittings removed prior to finishing.
- I. Paint exposed air handlers, roof ventilators, goose necks, exhaust fans and other items on the roof with 2 coats exterior enamel. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the base metal or primer as specified herein.
- J. Paint concrete support bases with gray floor deck enamel.
- K. Pipe hangers and other supports need not be painted except where installed in crawl spaces, where they shall be painted with a thick coat of asphaltic paint.

3.7 CLEANING/TOUCH-UP

- A. As Work proceeds, promptly remove paint where spilled, splashed, or spattered.
- B. During progress of Work maintain premises free of unnecessary accumulation of tools, equipment, surplus materials, and debris.
- C. Collect cotton waste, cloths, and material which may constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers and remove daily from site.
- D. Spot painting will be allowed to correct soiled or damaged paint surfaces only when touch-up spot will blend into surrounding finish and is invisible to normal viewing (as determined by the Architect). Otherwise, re-coat entire section to corners or to a visible stopping point.

3.8 V.O.C. (VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND) COMPLIANCE

- A. Products listed in following schedule and/or substitutes proposed for use by Contractor must be formulated to meet all applicable ordinances and regulations regarding maximum V.O.C. content. Utilize products which have been specially formulated to meet such requirements.

**END OF SECTION 099100**

## SECTION 099653 - ELASTOMERIC COATINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and application of elastomeric coatings to the following exterior substrates:
  1. Concrete.
  2. Concrete unit masonry.
  3. Cement Plaster.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B117 - Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus.
- B. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications.
- C. ASTM D822 - Standard Practice for Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings.
- D. ASTM D1653 - 03(2008) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films.
- E. ASTM D2370 - 98(2010) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Organic Coatings.
- F. ASTM G155 - 05a Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Non Metallic Materials.
- G. Fed. Spec. TT-C-555-B - Wind Driven Rain Performance Test.
- H. PDCA P4-04 - Responsibility for inspection and acceptance of surfaces prior to painting and decorating.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of elastomeric coating indicated and in each color and gloss.
  1. Submit Samples on same type of substrate as that to receive application, 8 inches square.
  2. Step coats on Samples to show each separate coat, including primers and block fillers as applicable.
  3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated, including the following:
  1. Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  2. Manufacturer's recommended spreading rate for each separate coat, including primers and block fillers for each type of substrate as applicable.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage in unopened, factory-sealed containers and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent but not less than 1 gal. of each material, color, and texture applied.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Prepare two mockups of each coating system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Architect will select two wall surfaces of at least 100 sq. ft. to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type and texture of elastomeric coating.
  2. Final approval of color and texture selections will be based on mockups.
    - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, prepare additional mockups of additional color and textures selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 90 deg F unless otherwise permitted by manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Allow wet surfaces to dry thoroughly and attain temperature and conditions specified before starting or continuing coating operation.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113.
  - 2. Provide elastomeric finish coatings and crack fillers, primers, and block fillers as applicable for use within elastomeric finish coatings that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 3. For each material or coat, provide products and spreading rates recommended in writing by elastomeric coating manufacturer for use on substrate indicated.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC FINISH COATINGS

- A. Exterior Flat Waterborne, Pigmented Elastomeric Coating.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonneborn Colorflex.
    - b. ICI Paints; Decra-Flex Elastomeric Coating.
    - c. Modco Technology Ltd.; Elastocoat Acrylic Elastomeric Paint.
    - d. PPG Industries; Pitt-Flex Elastomeric Coating.
    - e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Sherlastic Elastomeric Coating.
    - f. Sto Corp.; Stolastic.
    - g. Tnemec Company, Inc.; Enviro-Crete Series.
  - 2. Surface Profile: Smooth texture.

2.3 OTHER MATERIALS

- A. Crack Fillers: Elastomeric coating manufacturer's recommended, factory-formulated crack fillers or sealants, including crack filler primers, compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Elastomeric coating manufacturer's recommended, factory-formulated, alkali-resistant primer compatible with substrate and other materials indicated.
- C. Concrete Unit Masonry Block Filler: Elastomeric coating manufacturer's recommended, factory-formulated, high-performance latex block filler compatible with substrate and other materials indicated.
  - 1. VOC Content: 200 g/L or less.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Begin coating only when moisture content of substrate is 12 percent or less when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Begin coating no sooner than 28 days after substrate is constructed and is visually dry on both sides.
- D. Verify that substrate is within the range of alkalinity recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

- F. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, light fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
  - 1. After completing coating operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.
  - 2. Perform cleaning and coating application so dust and other contaminants from cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.
- C. Crack Repair: Fill cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions before coating surfaces.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply elastomeric coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use equipment and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
  - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable items the same as similar exposed surfaces.
  - 3. Apply each coat separately according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Primers: Apply at a rate to ensure complete coverage.
- C. Block Fillers: Apply at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
- D. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats similar to color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- E. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform finish, color, and appearance.
- F. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- G. Apply coatings to prepared surfaces as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface soiling or deterioration.
- H. Spray Application: Use spray equipment for application only when permitted by authorities having jurisdiction. Wherever spray application is used, do not double back with spray equipment to build up film thickness of two coats in one pass.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following testing procedures:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of materials with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop coating application if test results show materials being used do not comply with requirements. Remove noncomplying materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces that were coated with rejected materials. Remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.
- B. Field Testing and Inspection: Owner reserves the right to engage the services of a qualified testing agency to verify installed thickness of elastomeric coatings.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates:
  - 1. Primer: Concrete primer if required by manufacturer.
  - 2. Elastomeric Finish Coat(s): Minimum two coats with a total dry film thickness of 16 to 18 mils.
  - 3. Finish-Coat Color: As scheduled.
- B. Concrete Unit Masonry Substrates:
  - 1. Primer: Concrete unit masonry primer if required by manufacturer.
  - 2. Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler if required by manufacturer.
  - 3. Elastomeric Finish Coat(s): Minimum two coats with a total dry film thickness of 16 to 18 mils.
  - 4. Finish-Coat Color: As scheduled.
- C. Stucco Substrates:
  - 1. Primer: Stucco primer if required by manufacturer.
  - 2. Elastomeric Finish Coat(s): Minimum two coats with a total dry film thickness of 16 to 18 mils.
  - 3. Finish-Coat Color: As scheduled.

**END OF SECTION 099653**

## **SECTION 101400 - SIGNAGE**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior Panel signs
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for labels, tags, and nameplates for plumbing systems and equipment.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for labels, tags, and nameplates for HVAC systems and equipment.
  - 3. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for illuminated signs.
  - 4. Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" for labels, tags, and nameplates for electrical equipment.
  - 5. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for illuminated Exit signs.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
  - 1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), Type UVA (UV absorbing).

#### 2.2 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Manufacturers Supplier: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide hollow metal doors and frames as scheduled on Drawings by the following:
  - 1. Forrest Perma-Sign Company, Inc.; 9292 First Street, New Rochelle, New York 10802; Telephone, (800) 214-8765, [www.forrestpermasigns.com](http://www.forrestpermasigns.com)
- B. Interior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Acrylic Sheet: 0.080 inch thick.
  - 2. Laminated Sheet: High-pressure engraved stock with face laminated to acrylic core as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.



3. Laminated, Etched Photopolymer: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch above surface with contrasting colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and laminated to acrylic back.
  4. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  5. Corner Condition: Square.
  6. Mounting: Framed.
    - a. Wall mounted with concealed anchors.
    - b. Manufacturer's standard anchors for substrates encountered.
  7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  8. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch above surface with contrasting colors.
- C. Panel Sign Frames:
1. Acrylic Plastic:
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - b. Profile: Square.
    - c. Corner Condition: Square.
    - d. Mounting: Wall mounted with concealed anchors.
- D. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.
1. Panel Material: Opaque acrylic sheet.
  2. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch.
- E. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are UV and water resistant for three years for application intended.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Panel Sign Schedule:
1. Sign Type: Toilet Rooms
    - a. Sign Size: 8 inches x 8 inches
    - b. Background Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
    - c. Panel Sign/Frame: Cast acrylic sheet
      - 1) Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - d. Text/Message: Fixed.
      - 1) Character Size: According to ADA requirements or of authorities having jurisdiction, which ever requirements are more stringent.
      - 2) Character Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
      - 3) Copy: Raised
      - 4) Text: According to ADA requirements or of authorities having jurisdiction, which ever requirements are more stringent.
      - 5) Character Style: Helvetica
  2. Sign Type: Room Identification
    - a. Sign Size: 3 inches x 6 inches
    - b. Background Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
    - c. Panel Sign/Frame: Cast acrylic sheet
      - 1) Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - d. Text/Message: Fixed.
      - 1) Character Size: According to ADA requirements or of authorities having jurisdiction, which ever requirements are more stringent.
      - 2) Character Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
      - 3) Copy: Tactile and Braille
      - 4) Text: Room name.
      - 5) Character Style: Helvetica
  3. Sign Type: Occupancy
    - a. Sign Size: 3 inches x 12 inches
    - b. Background Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
    - c. Panel Sign/Frame: Cast acrylic sheet
      - 1) Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - d. Text/Message: Fixed.
      - 1) Character Size: According to ADA requirements or of authorities having jurisdiction, which ever requirements are more stringent.
      - 2) Character Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- 3) Copy: Tactile and Braille
- 4) Text: Maximum occupancy load
- 5) Character Style: Helvetica
- 4. Sign Type: Accessible Entrance
  - a. Sign Size: 4 ½ inches x 4 ½ inches
  - b. Background Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
  - c. Panel Sign/Frame: Cast acrylic sheet
    - 1) Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - d. Text/Message: Fixed.
    - 1) Character Size: According to ADA requirements or of authorities having jurisdiction, which ever requirements are more stringent.
    - 2) Character Finish/Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 3) Copy: Tactile and Braille
    - 4) Text: Maximum occupancy load
    - 5) Character Style: Helvetica

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.

### 2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturer's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 2.6 ACRYLIC SHEET FINISHES

- A. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy, background, and frame colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for three years for application intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
  - 1. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Attach signs to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces.
  - 2. Mechanical Fasteners: Use non-removable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 101400**

## SECTION 102113.15 - STAINLESS-STEEL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Phenolic-core toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
  - 2. Division 10 Section "Toilet Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, and similar accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities," ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. ASTM A666 - 10 Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar.
- C. ASTM A743 / A743M - 12 Standard Specification for Castings, Iron Chromium, Iron Chromium Nickel, Corrosion Resistant, for General Application.
- D. ASTM B221 - 12 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
- E. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building.
- F. GSA's CID A-A-60003, Partitions, Toilets, Complete.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
  - 3. Show locations of reinforcements for compartment-mounted grab bars and locations of blocking for surface-mounted toilet accessories.
  - 4. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 5. Show locations of floor drains.
  - 6. Show ceiling grid, ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.
  - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch- square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Door Hinges: One hinge(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: One latch(es) and keeper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 3. Door Bumper: One door bumper(s) with associated fasteners.

4. Door Pull: One door pull(s) with associated fasteners.
5. Fasteners: Ten fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

#### 2.2 STAINLESS-STEEL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
  2. Bradley Corporation; Mills Partitions.
  3. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
  4. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
  5. Metpar Corp.
  6. Sanymetal, a Crane Plumbing company.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Ceiling hung.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung flat panel.
- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Seamless, metal facing sheets pressure laminated to core material; with continuous, interlocking molding strip or lapped-and-formed edge closures; corners secured by welding or clips and exposed welds ground smooth. Provide with no-sightline system. Exposed surfaces shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, telegraphing of core material, or other imperfections.
  1. Core Material: Manufacturer's standard sound-deadening honeycomb of resin-impregnated kraft paper in thickness required to provide finished thickness of 1 inch for doors and panels and 1-1/4 inches for pilasters.
  2. Grab-Bar Reinforcement: Provide concealed internal reinforcement for grab bars mounted on units of size and material adequate for panel to withstand applied downward load on grab bar of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446, without deformation of panel.
  3. Tapping Reinforcement: Provide concealed reinforcement for tapping (threading) at locations where machine screws are used for attaching items to units.
- E. Urinal-Screen Construction:
  1. Flat-Panel Urinal Screen: Matching panel construction.
- F. Facing Sheets and Closures: Stainless-steel sheet of nominal thicknesses as follows:
  1. Pilasters, unbraced at one end: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.050 inch.
  2. Panels: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.031 inch.
  3. Doors: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.031 inch.
  4. Flat-Panel Urinal Screens: Thickness matching the panels.
- G. Brackets (Fittings):
  1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- H. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 4 bright, directional polish on exposed faces. Protect exposed surfaces from damage by application of strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.

#### 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
  1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch-thick stainless steel paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through-bolts.
  2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless-steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
  3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless-steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.

4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless-steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
  5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless-steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- B. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel anchors compatible with related materials.

#### 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- B. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

#### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories and solid blocking within panel where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Ceiling-Hung Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- C. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of posts. Provide shoes at posts to conceal anchorage.
- D. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Ceiling-Hung Units: Secure pilasters to supporting structure and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so bottoms of doors are level with bottoms of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

**END OF SECTION 102113.15**

## SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Wall guards.
    - 2. Impact-resistant handrails.
    - 3. Corner guards.
    - 4. Impact-resistant wall coverings.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ANSI/ICC A117.1 - American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; International Code Council; 2009.
  - B. ASTM A240 / A240M - 12a Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications.
  - C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2012.
  - D. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2012.
  - E. NAAMM - Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products.
- 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Structural Performance: Provide handrails capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
    - 1. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
    - 2. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each impact-resistant wall protection unit.
  - B. Sustainable Documentation Submittals:
    - 1. Recycled Content:
      - a. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
    - 2. VOC content data. Provide for any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings used on the interior of the building.
      - a. Product information or statement from manufacturer indicating the VOC content of the product in grams per liter (g/L).
  - C. Shop Drawings: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit showing locations and extent. Include sections, details, and attachments to other work.
    - 1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall protection unit indicated.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
  - A. Material Certificates: For each impact-resistant plastic material, from manufacturer.
  - B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
  - A. Maintenance Data: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit to include in maintenance manuals.
    - 1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining optimum condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to plastic finishes and performance.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Wall-Guard Handrail Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of units installed, but no fewer than two, 8-foot- long units.
  - 2. Bed-Locator Covers: Full-size plastic covers equal to percent of each type, color, and texture of units installed, but no fewer than units.
  - 3. Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of units installed, but no fewer than two, 4-foot- long units.
- B. Include mounting and accessory components. Replacement materials shall be from same production run as installed units.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain impact-resistant wall protection units from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of impact-resistant wall protection units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide impact-resistant, plastic wall protection units with surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, NFPA 255, or UL 723 by UL or another qualified testing agency.
- E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store impact-resistant wall protection units in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  - 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  - 2. Keep plastic sheet material out of direct sunlight.
  - 3. Store plastic wall protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.
    - b. Store wall-guard handrail covers in a horizontal position.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install impact-resistant wall protection units until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature at 70 deg F for not less than 72 hours before beginning installation and for the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of impact-resistant wall protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures.
    - b. Deterioration of plastic and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. VOC Limits: any adhesives, sealants, paints, or coatings shall meet the VOC limits indicated in Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by impact-resistant plastic wall protection manufacturer and with a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### 2.2 HANDRAILS

- A. Combination Wood-Plastic Bumper Handrail: Assembly consisting of solid-wood handrail mounted above plastic bumper rail, both mounted on continuous retainer; with reveal between handrail and bumper serving as thumb recess on front side; with 1-1/2-inch- diameter gripping surface and finger recess on back side.

### 2.3 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Resilient, Plastic Corner Guards: Assembly consisting of snap-on plastic cover installed over continuous retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Arden Architectural Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Balco, Inc.
    - c. Construction Specialties, Inc.
    - d. IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems; Division of InPro Corporation.
    - e. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
    - f. Pawling Corporation.
    - g. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.100-inch wall thickness; as follows: Profile: Nominal 3-inch- long leg and 1/4-inch corner radius.
    - h. Height: 8 feet.
    - i. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  - 3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
  - 4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
- B. Surface-Mounted, Opaque-Plastic Corner Guards: Fabricated from PVC plastic, acrylic-modified vinyl sheet or opaque polycarbonate sheet; with formed edges; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Arden Architectural Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Balco, Inc.
    - c. Construction Specialties, Inc.
    - d. IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems; Division of InPro Corporation.
    - e. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
    - f. Pawling Corporation.
  - 2. Wing Size: Nominal 1-1/8 by 1-1/8 inches.
  - 3. Mounting: Adhesive.
  - 4. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Surface-Mounted, Metal Corner Guards: Fabricated from one-piece, formed or extruded metal with formed edges; with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Arden Architectural Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Balco, Inc.
    - c. Construction Specialties, Inc.
    - d. IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems; Division of InPro Corporation.
    - e. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
    - f. Pawling Corporation.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel, Type 304.
    - a. Thickness: Minimum 0.0500 inch.
    - b. Finish: Directional satin, No. 4.
  - 3. Wing Size: Nominal 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches.

4. Corner Radius: 1/8 inch.

#### 2.4 END-WALL GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Resilient, Plastic End-Wall Guard: Assembly consisting of snap-on plastic cover installed over continuous retainer; including mounting hardware.
- B. Flush-Mounted, Resilient, Plastic End-Wall Guard: Assembly consisting of snap-on plastic cover that is flush with adjacent wall surface and that covers entire end of wall, installed over continuous retainer; including mounting hardware.

#### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate impact-resistant wall protection units to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Preform curved semirigid, impact-resistant sheet wall covering in factory for radius and sheet thickness as follows:
  - 1. Sheet Thickness of 0.040 Inch: 24-inch radius.
- C. Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- D. Fabricate components with tight seams and joints with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.
- E. Miter corners and ends of wood handrails for returns.

#### 2.6 METAL FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  - 2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - 3. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  - 4. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
- B. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls to which impact-resistant wall protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For impact-resistant wall protection units attached with adhesive or foam tape, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing impact-resistant wall protection system components.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install impact-resistant wall protection units level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
  - 1. Install impact-resistant wall protection units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
    - a. Provide anchoring devices to withstand imposed loads.
    - b. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet, splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches.
    - c. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.
- B. Impact-Resistant Wall Covering: Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard, ammonia-based, household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 102600**

## SECTION 102800 - TOILET ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
  - 2. Warm-air dryers.
  - 3. Childcare accessories.
  - 4. Under-lavatory guards.
  - 5. Custodial accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Final Rule; current edition; (ADA Standards for Accessible Design).
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2012.
- C. ASTM A167 - Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 1999 (Reapproved 2009).
- D. ASTM A269 - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2010.
- E. STM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2010.
- F. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror; 2008.
- G. ASTM F2285 - Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Diaper Changing Tables for Commercial Use; 2004 (Reapproved 2010).

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify products using designations indicated on Restroom Accessory Schedule on Drawings.
- C. Maintenance Data: For toilet accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same articles in Part 2, provide products of same manufacturer unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.0312-inch minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- C. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- D. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

### 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated as manufactured by Bradley Corporation. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
  - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
- B. Manufacturers Supplier: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide toilet accessories as listed in the Restroom Accessory Schedule on Drawings by the following:
  - 1. Hughes Supply
- C. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser; Restroom Accessory Item 2:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #5412.
  - 2. Description: Double-roll dispenser.
  - 3. Mounting: Recessed.
  - 4. Operation: Noncontrol delivery with theft-resistant spindle.
  - 5. Capacity: Designed for 5-inch diameter tissue rolls.
  - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- D. Paper Towel (Folded) Dispenser; Restroom Accessory Item 4B:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #2441.
  - 2. Mounting: Recessed.
  - 3. Minimum Capacity: 350 C-fold or 475 multifold towels.
  - 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - 5. Lockset: Tumbler type.
- E. Waste Receptacle; Restroom Accessory Item 4B:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #3251.
  - 2. Mounting: Self-closing disposal-opening cover, recessed.
  - 3. Minimum Capacity: 2.8 gallon capacity.
  - 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - 5. Liner: Reusable vinyl liner.
  - 6. Lockset: Tumbler type for waste-receptacle.
- F. Combination Towel (Folded) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle; Restroom Accessory Item 4C:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #2291.
  - 2. Description: Combination unit for dispensing C-fold or multifold towels, with removable waste receptacle.
  - 3. Mounting: Recessed.
    - a. Designed for nominal 4-inch wall depth.
  - 4. Minimum Towel-Dispenser Capacity: 250 C-fold or 450 multifold paper towels.
  - 5. Minimum Waste-Receptacle Capacity: 5.3 gallon capacity.
  - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - 7. Liner: Reusable, vinyl waste-receptacle liner.
  - 8. Lockset: Tumbler type for towel-dispenser compartment and waste receptacle.
- G. Liquid-Soap Dispenser; Restroom Accessory Item 6A:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley, #6326-68 (Universal Manufacturing Co.)
  - 2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
  - 3. Mounting: Deck mounted on countertop.
  - 4. Capacity: 32 ounces.
  - 5. Materials: Stainless Steel piston and spout
- H. Liquid-Soap Dispenser; Restroom Accessory Item 6B:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley, #6542 (Universal Manufacturing Co.)
  - 2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
  - 3. Mounting: Horizontally oriented, wall mounted.
  - 4. Capacity: 40 ounces.

5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- I. Grab Bar; Restroom Accessory Item 1A, 1B, and 1C:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley, #812-001-42, #812-001-36, or #812-001-24 (Universal Manufacturing Co.)
  2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
  3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
    - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4, satin finish on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
  4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches
  5. Configuration and Length: Refer to Drawings for locations.
- J. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit; Restroom Accessory Item 3:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #4731-15.
  2. Mounting: Recessed.
  3. Door or Cover: Self-closing disposal-opening cover and hinged face panel with tumbler lockset].
  4. Receptacle: Removable.
  5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- K. Mirror Unit; Restroom Accessory Item 5:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley, #781 (Universal Manufacturing Co.)
    - a. Frame: Stainless-steel channel.
  2. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
    - a. One-piece, galvanized steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
    - b. Wall bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
  3. Size: 24 inches by 36 inches, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

### 2.3 WARM-AIR DRYERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated as manufactured by World Dryer Corporation. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
  2. American Dryer, Inc.
  3. American Specialties, Inc.
  4. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  5. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Warm-Air Dryer; Restroom Accessory Item 4A
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: World Dryer Corporation; L-971 (Universal Manufacturing Co.)
  2. Mounting: Recessed.
  3. Operation: Touch-button activated with timed power cut-off switch.
    - a. Operation Time: 30 to 40 seconds.
  4. Cover Material and Finish: Steel, with white enamel finish.
  5. Electrical Requirements: 115 V, 20 A, 2300 W.

### 2.4 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated as manufactured by Koala Corporation. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. American Infant Care Products Inc.
  2. American Specialties, Inc.
  3. Brocar Products, Inc.
  4. Safe-Strap Company, Inc.
- B. Diaper-Changing Station; Restroom Accessory Item 7:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Koala Corporation; Baby Changing Table KB100-MDTA or KB110-MDTRA.
  2. Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
    - a. Engineered to support a minimum of 250-lb static load when opened.
  3. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than 4 inches from wall when closed.
  4. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
  5. Material and Finish: High-density polyethylene with plastic laminate insert in color selected by Architect.
  6. Liner Dispenser: Built in.

## 2.5 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
  - 2. TCI Products.
  - 3. Truebro, Inc.
- B. Under-Lavatory Guard:
  - 1. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevent direct contact with and burns from piping, and allow service access without removing coverings.
  - 2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded-plastic, white.

## 2.6 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated as manufactured by Bradley Corporation. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
  - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
  - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
- B. Mop and Broom Holder:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley; #9983.
  - 2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
  - 3. Length: 30 inches.
  - 4. Hooks: Two.
  - 5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
  - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
    - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch thick stainless steel.
    - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch diameter stainless steel.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and re-supplying. Provide minimum of six (6) keys to Area Construction Manager.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

**END OF SECTION 102800**

## SECTION 107114 - FIXED ALUMINUM SUN SCREENS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Sun screen.
  2. Aluminum Canopy and Aluminum Trellis
  3. Reinforcing, shims, anchors, and attachment devices.
  4. Accessories necessary to complete Work.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements:
  1. Manufacturer: Responsible for designing each system, including anchorage to structural system and necessary modifications to meet specified requirements and maintain visual design concepts.
  2. Provide aluminum decorative screen systems, including necessary modifications to meet specified requirements and maintaining visual design concepts.
  3. Perimeter Conditions: Allow for installation tolerances, expansion and contraction of adjacent materials, structural deflections, and sealant manufacturer's recommended joint design.
  4. Drawings: Diagrammatic and do not purport to identify nor solve problems of thermal or structural movement, or anchorage.
  5. Requirements Shown by Details: Establish basic dimension of unit, sight lines and profiles of members.
  6. Attachments: Account for site peculiarities and expansion and contraction movements so there is no possibility of loosening, weakening and fracturing connection between units and building structure or between units themselves.
  7. Anchors, Fasteners and Braces: Structurally stressed not more than 50 percent of allowable stress when maximum loads are applied.
  8. Allow for expansion and contraction due to structural movement without detriment to appearance or performance.
  9. Accommodate building structure deflections in connections to structure.
- B. Thermal Requirements: Accommodate expansion and contraction movement due to surface temperature differential of 180 degrees F without causing buckling, stress on structural elements, reduction of performance or other detrimental effects.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Submit drawings indicating elevations, detailed design, dimensions, member profiles, joint locations, arrangement of units, member connections, and thickness of various components.
  2. Indicate:
  3. Details of special shapes.
  4. Reinforcing.
  5. Anchorage system.
  6. Interfacing with building construction.
  7. Provisions for expansion and contraction.
  8. Clearly indicate locations of exposed fasteners and joints for Architect's acceptance.
- C. Samples: Submit samples indicating quality of finish in required colors on alloys used for work, 12 inches long for extrusions and 6 inches square for sheet materials.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals: Submit manufacturer's Instructions.



1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with following:
1. Protect finished surfaces to prevent damage.
  2. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings which become firmly bonded when exposed to sun.
  3. Do not leave coating residue on surfaces.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Submit warranty stating fluorocarbon (PVDF) coating finish will be free from fading more than 10 percent, chalking, yellowing, peeling, cracking, pitting, corroding or non-uniformity of color, or gloss deterioration beyond manufacturer's descriptive standards for 20 years and agreeing to promptly correct defects.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Awnex
  2. PCI / All-Lite
  3. Greenheck
- B. Basis of Design:
- C. Acceptable Profile: Refer to Drawings.

2.1 CANOPY SYSTEM (Existing material to remain in proto. Color change)

- A. White canopy at front facade with a gold underscore at entries. Charcoal canopy with gold underscore at drive thru windows.
1. MFR: Awnex | PCI | Greenheck
  2. SIZE: 36" depth at white canopy locations; 36" depth at OT windows (gold underscore to project 4" at OT windows and 1" at entries)
  3. COLOR: Primary facades - White w/ gold underscore at entries; OT windows - CNC Charcoal w/ Gold Underscore
  4. QUANTITY: White -Approx. 80 lf with 3' projection; Charcoal - (3) 1 at each OT window

2.2 FRAMING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Aluminum:
1. ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B209, alloy 5005-H16 for sheets; or other alloys and temper recommended by manufacturer appropriate for specified finish.
  2. Minimum thickness of 0.081 inch for framing members and 0.050 inch for applied stops and similar components.
- B. Inserts and Anchorage Devices:
1. Manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated assemblies, steel or aluminum, of shapes, plates, bars or tubes.
  2. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies after fabrication, comply with ASTM A123, 2.0 ounce minimum coating.
- C. Fasteners: Non-magnetic stainless steel or cadmium plated steel coated with yellow or silver iridescence plating, compatible with materials being fastened.
1. Exposed Locations: Series 300 stainless steel.
  2. Concealed Locations: Cadmium plated steel with 0.0005 inch plating thickness and color chromate coated.
  3. Provide nuts or washers of design having means to prevent disengagement; deforming of fastener threads is not acceptable.
  4. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible.
  5. Exposed Locations: Countersunk flathead fasteners with finish matching item fastened.
- D. Expansion Anchor Devices: Drilled-in, expansion bolt anchors.
- E. Shims: Non-staining, non-ferrous, type as recommended by system manufacturer.
- F. Protective Coatings: Cold applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 30 mil thickness for each coat; or alkyd type zinc chromate primer, FS TT-P-645.

### 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Take accurate field measurements to verify required dimensions prior to fabrication.
  - 1. Location of exposed joints is subject to Architect's acceptance.
  - 2. Fabricate components in accordance with approved shop drawings. Remove burrs and ease edges. Shop fabricate to greatest extent practicable to minimize field cutting, splicing, and assembly. Disassemble only to extent necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
- B. Welding: Comply with recommendations of American Welding Society (AWS).
  - 1. Performed by AWS qualified welders using recommended electrodes and methods to avoid distortion and discoloration.
  - 2. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces before finishing; restore mechanical finish.

### 2.4 FINISH

- A. General: Comply with Aluminum Association's (AA) "Designation System for Aluminum Finishes" for finish designations and application recommendations.
- B. Aluminum: Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions and proceed with Work when substrates are ready.
  - 1. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other Work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Align assemblies plumb and level, free of warp or twist, aligning with adjacent Work.
- B. Tolerances: Tolerances are not accumulative.
  - 1. Limit Variations from Plumb and Level:
    - a. 1/8 inch in 20 feet vertically and horizontally.
    - b. 1/4 inch in 40 feet either direction.
  - 2. Jog in Alignment: 1/16 inch maximum.
  - 3. Location: 1/4 inch maximum deviation of any member at any location.
- C. Provide attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
  - 1. Anchor securely in place, allowing for required movement, including expansion and contraction.
  - 2. Separate dissimilar materials at contact points, including metal in contact with masonry or concrete surfaces, with protective coating or preformed separators to prevent contact and electrolytic action.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. General: Clean surfaces in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations; remove excess mastic, mastic smears, and other foreign materials.

**END OF SECTION 107114**

## **SECTION 210548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Isolation pads.
  - 2. Isolation mounts.
  - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 4. Restraining braces.

#### **1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE (HVACA) - ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2015.
- C. FEMA 412 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment; 2002.
- D. FEMA 414 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Duct and Pipe; 2004.
- E. FEMA E-74 - Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide; 2012.
- F. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc.; 2017.
- G. SMACNA (SRM) - Seismic Duct Restraint Manual; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2008.

#### **1.4 DEFINITIONS**

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

#### **1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Seismic-Restraint shall be designed and installed in accordance with local codes and in acceptance with the authority having jurisdiction.

#### **1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 2. Seismic-Restraint Details:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.

- b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
      - c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
    - C. Welding certificates.
    - D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC and NFPA 13 unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
  - C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS
- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
    2. California Dynamics Corporation.
    3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    4. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a non-slip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
    1. Resilient Material: Oil and water-resistant neoprene.
  - C. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
    1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
    2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
  - D. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
    1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
    2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- 2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES
- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop or field fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- E. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- F. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- G. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- H. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- I. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

### 2.3 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Restraints:
  1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Piping Restraints:
  1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127 and NFPA 13.
  2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.

3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
  - C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
  - D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
  - E. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
  - F. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
  - G. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
  - H. Drilled-in Anchors:
    1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
    2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
    3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
    4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
    5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
    6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.
- 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION
- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 13 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for piping flexible connections.

**END OF SECTION 210548**

## SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection valves.
3. Fire-department connections.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Excess-pressure pumps.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Manual control stations.
8. Control panels.
9. Pressure gages.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for standpipe piping.
2. Division 21 Section "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
3. Division 21 Section "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" for fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and fire-pump controllers.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A135 / A135M – 09(2014) Standard Specification for Electric Resistance Welded Steel Pipe.
- B. ASTM A795 / A795M - 13 Standard Specification for Black and Hot Dipped Zinc Coated (Galvanized) Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe for Fire Protection Use.
- C. FM P7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.
- D. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc.; current edition.
- E. NFPA 13 - Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems; National Fire Protection Association; 2016.
- F. NFPA 13R, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height."
- G. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."
- H. UL (FPED) - Fire Protection Equipment Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; current edition.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 300 psig.
- B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig maximum.

#### 1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.
- B. Deluge Sprinkler System: Open sprinklers are attached to piping connected to water supply through deluge valve. Fire-detection system, in same area as sprinklers, opens valve. Water flows into piping system and discharges from attached sprinklers when valve opens.

#### 1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- B. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 300-psig working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- D. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.

2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
  - a. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - b. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
  - c. Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
  - a. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.
  - a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft.
  - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
  - c. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
  - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.
- E. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Domestic water piping.
  2. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  3. Décor Package Drawing.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- F. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- G. Welding certificates.
- H. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- I. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- J. Field quality-control reports.
- K. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
  2. NFPA 13R, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height."
  3. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."



1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's written permission.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard Weight, Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 / A 135M-09; ASTM A 795 / A 795M-08(2012), Type E; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, thinwall, with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.
- F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.
- G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, lightwall, with plain ends.
- H. Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- I. Galvanized and Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.
- J. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- N. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234 and ASME B16.9.
- O. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
  3. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- P. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.

### 2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and ASTM B 88, Type M water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Viega; Plumbing & Heating Systems.
  - 2. Standard: UL 213.
  - 3. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
- G. Grooved-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
  - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions, with design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. T-DRILL Industries Inc.
  - 2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

### 2.4 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 442/F 442M and UL 1821, SDR 13.5, for 175-psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, with plain ends. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER PIPE" markings.
- B. CPVC Fittings: UL listed or FM approved, for 175-psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, socket type. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER FITTING" markings.
  - 1. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/2: ASTM F 438 and UL 1821, Schedule 40, socket type.
  - 2. NPS 2 to NPS 3: ASTM F 439 and UL 1821, Schedule 80, socket type.
  - 3. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC, one piece, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
  - 4. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Unions: CPVC, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
  - 5. Flanges: CPVC, one or two pieces.

### 2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
  - 1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
  - 2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493, solvent cement recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer, and made for joining CPVC sprinkler pipe and fittings. Include cleaner or primer recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer.
- F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, and Bolts and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.6 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. DecoShield Systems, Inc.
- B. Description: System of support brackets and covers made to protect sprinkler piping.
- C. Brackets: Glass-reinforced nylon.

- D. Covers: Extruded PVC sections of length, shape, and size required for size and routing of CPVC piping.

## 2.7 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

### A. General Requirements:

- 1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
- 2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig.
- 3. Minimum Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Piping: 250 psig.

### B. Ball Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
- 3. Valves NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
- 4. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
- 5. Valves NPS 3: Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

### C. Bronze Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 1091.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Bronze.
- 5. End Connections: Threaded.

### D. Iron Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 1091.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 5. End Connections: Grooved.

### E. Check Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 312.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
- 4. Type: Swing check.
- 5. Body Material: Cast iron.
- 6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

### F. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 262.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Bronze.
- 5. End Connections: Threaded.

### G. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 262.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
- 4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

### H. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 1091.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- 4. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze.
  - c. End Connections: Threaded.
- 5. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  - c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.
- 6. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, two-circuit, supervisory switch indicating device.

### I. NRS Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 2. Standard: UL 262.

3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
4. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
5. Stem: Non-rising.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

J. Indicator Posts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Standard: UL 789.
3. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
4. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
5. Operation: Hand wheel.

2.8 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
  - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

D. Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.

E. Plug Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Southern Manufacturing Group.

2.9 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating:
  - a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.
  - b. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 300 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

B. Alarm Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Standard: UL 193.
3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.

C. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.10 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  2. Standard: UL 405.
  3. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
  4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
  6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
  7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
  8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
  9. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
  10. Number of Inlets: Two.
  11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
  12. Finish: Rough brass or bronze.
  13. Outlet Size: NPS 4.
- B. Flush-Type, Fire-Department Connection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  2. Standard: UL 405.
  3. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
  4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
  6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
  7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
  8. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.
  9. Outlet: With pipe threads.
  10. Body Style: Horizontal.
  11. Number of Inlets: Two.
  12. Outlet Location: Top.
  13. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
  14. Finish: Rough brass or bronze.
  15. Outlet Size: NPS 4.
- C. Yard-Type, Fire-Department Connection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  2. Standard: UL 405.
  3. Type: Exposed, freestanding.
  4. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
  6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
  7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
  8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.
  9. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
  10. Number of Inlets: Two.
  11. Sleeve: Brass.
  12. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.
  13. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
  14. Finish, Including Sleeve: Rough brass or bronze.
  15. Outlet Size: NPS 4.

## 2.11 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following]:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  2. Standard: UL 213.
  3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.

5. Type: Mechanical-T and -cross fittings.
  6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
  7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
  8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
    - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
    - c. Potter Roemer.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  4. Body Material: Brass.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet: Threaded.
  7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
  8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
    - c. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CECA, LLC.
    - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
    - c. Merit Manufacturing; a division of Anvil International, Inc.
  2. Standard: UL 1474.
  3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Length: Adjustable.
  7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- F. Flexible, Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fivalco Inc.
    - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
    - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
  2. Standard: UL 1474.
  3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
  4. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.12 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  3. Victaulic Company.
  4. Viking Corporation.
- B. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  2. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175 psig maximum.
  3. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
  4. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 300 psig.
- C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
  2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
- D. Sprinkler Finishes:
1. Chrome plated.
  2. Painted.
- E. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- F. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
    - d. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.
- 2.13 EXCESS-PRESSURE PUMPS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Albany Pump Company.
- B. Pump: Factory-fabricated, positive-displacement, gear type.
1. Pump and Motor: Directly connected.
  2. Motor: Comply with requirements in Division 21 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment."
- C. Miscellaneous Components: Wet-pipe kit of switches, fittings, valves, mounting brackets, and connections for power, hydraulic piping, and wiring from alarm devices.
- D. Motor Control: Differential-pressure switch.
- E. Lights: To indicate sprinkler system's operating condition.
1. White Light: Pressure is normal.
  2. Red Light: Pressure is low.
- 2.14 ALARM DEVICES
- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following]:
    - a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
    - c. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 753.
  3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
  4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
  5. Size: 10-inch diameter.
  6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
  7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
  8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.
- C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
    - b. Notifier; a Honeywell company.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.

2. Standard: UL 464.
  3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
  4. Size: 6-inch minimum diameter.
  5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
- D. Water-Flow Indicators:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
    - b. McDonnell & Miller; ITT Industries.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
    - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
    - e. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
  4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
  5. Type: Paddle operated.
  6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.
- E. Pressure Switches:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
    - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - c. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
  4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
    - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Type: Electrically supervised.
  4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
- G. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
    - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Type: Electrically supervised.
  4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  5. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.
- 2.15 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS
- A. Description: UL listed or FM approved, hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- 2.16 PRESSURE GAGES
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
  2. Ashcroft, Inc.
  3. Brecco Corporation.
  4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 300 psig.
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.



- 2.17 ESCUTCHEONS
- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
  - B. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: Polished chrome-plated finish with set-screws.
  - C. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - D. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: Chrome-plated finish with set-screw or spring clips.
  - E. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: Polished chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and set-screw.
  - F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, set-screw or spring clips.
  - G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
  - H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.
- 2.18 SLEEVES
- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  - C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  - D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  - E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
  - F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, standard weight, zinc coated, plain ends.
  - G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set-screws.
- 2.19 SLEEVE SEALS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2. Calpico, Inc.
    - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
    - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
    - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
    - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
    - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.
- 2.20 GROUT
- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, posthardening and volume adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  - B. Characteristics: Nonshrink, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 PREPARATION
- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - B. Report test results promptly and in writing.
- 3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING
- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
  - B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

### 3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

### 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation in NFPA 13.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.
- N. Pressurize and check preaction sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices.
- O. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- P. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Division 21 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
  - K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
  - L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
  - M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  - N. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
  - O. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
  - P. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  - Q. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
  - R. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
  - S. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
    2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846 Appendix.
- 3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING
- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and with NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.
- 3.7 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION
- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
  - C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
  - D. Specialty Valves:
    1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
    2. Alarm Valves: Include bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
    3. Deluge Valves: Install in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
- 3.8 EXCESS-PRESSURE PUMP INSTALLATION
- A. Assemble components and mount on wood backing. Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood backing material and installation.
  - B. Install excess-pressure pumps, controls, devices, and supports for sprinkler piping application.
    1. Mounting: Install attached to water-supply pipe.
- 3.9 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION
- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
  - B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
  - C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.10 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.
- B. Install yard-type, fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install two protective pipe bollards on sides of each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- C. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

### 3.11 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, stamped steel with set-screw.
  - 5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, stamped steel with set-screw.
  - 6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
- C. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
  - 1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips.
  - 3. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - 4. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - 5. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 6. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass.
  - 7. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

### 3.12 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for joint sealants in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for joint sealants in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
  - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PVC.
  - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Galvanized-steel pipe.
    - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements for flashing in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
    - a. PVC-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.

- c. Exception: Sleeves are not required for water-supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
    - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PVC.
    - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
      - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      - b. Cast-iron wall-pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
      - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
    - 6. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
      - a. PVC-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      - b. Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
  - L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestop materials and installations in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.13 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION
- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
  - B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- 3.14 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
  - B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - B. Tests and Inspections:
    - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
    - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
    - 5. Start and run excess-pressure pumps.
    - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
    - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
    - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.
  - C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.16 CLEANING
- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
  - B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.
- 3.17 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.
- 3.18 PIPING SCHEDULE
- A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.
  - B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
  - C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
  - D. CPVC pipe; Schedule 40 CPVC fittings; and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.
  - E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut or roll grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- F. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut or roll grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- G. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut or roll grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- H. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 4 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- I. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.19 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent sprinklers.
  3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated.
  5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  1. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
  2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
  3. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.

**END OF SECTION 211313**

## SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  2. Transition fittings.
  3. Dielectric fittings.
  4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  5. Sleeves.
  6. Escutcheons.
  7. Grout.
  8. Demolition.
  9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  10. Painting and finishing.
  11. Concrete bases.
  12. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B40.100 - Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2013.
- B. ASME MFC-3M - Measurement of Fluid Flow in Pipes Using Orifice, Nozzle and Venturi; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.
- C. ASTM E77 - Standard Test Method for Inspection and Verification of Thermometers; 2014.
- D. AWWA M6 - Water Meters -- Selection, Installation, Testing, and Maintenance; American Water Works Association; 2012.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 393 - Indicating Pressure Gauges for Fire-Protection Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 404 - Gages, Indicating Pressure, for Compressed Gas Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For the following:
    1. Transition fittings.
    2. Dielectric fittings.
    3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
    4. Escutcheons.
  - B. Welding certificates.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
  - B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
    1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
    2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
  - C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
  - B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
  - B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
  - C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
    1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
    2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS
- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
  - B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.
- 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS
- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
  - B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
    1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
    2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.



- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

#### 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated; Pipe Products Div.
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
    - f. Viking Johnson.
  - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
  - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
  - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.
- E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company.
    - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

#### 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150 or 300 psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Epco Sales, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and non-corrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and non-corrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink and non-metallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
    - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
    - g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
    - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
    - g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:

- a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
  - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
  - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
    - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
  - N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
    - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
    - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
  - O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
  - P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
  - Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
  - R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
  - B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  - D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
  - E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
  - F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  - G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
  - I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
    - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846 Appendix.
    - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - 5. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

- 6. PVC to ABS Non-pressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
  - J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
  - K. Plastic Non-pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
  - L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  - M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS
- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - 3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS
- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
  - B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
  - D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
  - E. Coordinate locations with all other trades before installing.
- 3.5 PAINTING
- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
  - B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES
- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
  - B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
  - C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
- 3.7 GROUTING
- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
  - B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
  - C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
  - D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
  - E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
  - F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
  - G. Place grout around anchors.
  - H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 220500**

## SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
  - B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- 1.4 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
    - 1. Motor controllers.
    - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
    - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
    - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.
  - B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS
  - A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
  - B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS
  - A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
  - B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - C. Service Factor: 1.15.
  - D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
    - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
    - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
  - E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
  - F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
  - G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
  - H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
  - I. Insulation: Class F.
  - J. Code Letter Designation:
    - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
    - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
  - K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

- 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS
- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
  - B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
    - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
    - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
    - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
    - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
  - C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.
- 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS
- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
    - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
    - 2. Split phase.
    - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
    - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
  - B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
  - C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
  - D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
  - E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**END OF SECTION 220513**

## **SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal-bellows expansion joints.
  - 2. Rubber expansion joints.
  - 3. Flexible-hose expansion joints.
  - 4. Pipe bends and loops.
  - 5. Alignment guides and anchors.

#### **1.3 REFERENCE SYANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A36 / A36M - 14 Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
- B. ASTM E32 - 15 Standard Practices for Sampling Ferroalloys and Steel Additives for Determination of Chemical Composition.
- C. ASTM A307 – 14e1 Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
- D. ASTM E46 - Methods of Chemical Analysis of Lead, Tin, and Base Solder Metal.
- E. ASTM C881 / C881M - 15 Standard Specification for Epoxy Resin Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.
- F. ASTM F1120 - 87(2015) Standard Specification for Circular Metallic Bellows Type Expansion Joints for Piping Applications.
- G. ASTM F1123 - 87(2015) Standard Specification for Non Metallic Expansion Joints.
- H. EJMA (STDS) - EJMA Standards; Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association; Tenth Edition.

#### **1.4 DEFINITIONS**

- A. BR: Butyl rubber.
- B. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- C. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- D. CSM: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.
- E. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- F. NR: Natural rubber.

#### **1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products shall absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

#### **1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe expansion joint, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Maintenance Data: For pipe expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1120, circular-corrugated-bellows type with external tie rods.
  - 1. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Single or multiple ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe end connections, and brass shrouds.



2. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Stainless-Steel Waterway: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, stainless-steel-pipe end connections, and steel shroud.
  3. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single or multiple ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe end connections, and carbon-steel shroud.
  4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Configuration: Single- or double-bellows type unless otherwise indicated.
  6. End Connections: Flanged or weld.
- B. Rubber Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1123, fabric-reinforced rubber with external control rods and complying with FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
1. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches.
  2. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres.
    - a. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
    - b. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
    - c. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
  3. Material: EPDM or NR.
  4. End Connections: Full-faced, integral, steel flanges with steel retaining rings.
- C. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints: Manufactured assembly with two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose; with inlet and outlet elbow fittings, corrugated-metal inner hoses, and braided outer sheaths.
1. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  2. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  3. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - c. NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  4. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - c. NPS 8 and Larger: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

## 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES

- A. Description: Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

## 2.3 MATERIALS FOR ANCHORS

- A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.
- C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

- E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - 1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, 2-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - 2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- F. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi minimum. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink, non-metallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and non-gaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install manufactured, nonmetallic expansion joints according to FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
- B. Install expansion joints of sizes matching size of piping in which they are installed.
- C. Install alignment guides to allow expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

#### **3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pipe bends and loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.
  - 1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

#### **3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

#### **3.4 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install guides on piping adjoining pipe expansion fittings and loops.
- B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

#### **3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION**

- A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.
- C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.
- D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion-joint manufacturer's written instructions if expansion joints are indicated.
- E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

**END OF SECTION 220516**

## SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermometers.
  - 2. Gages.
  - 3. Test plugs.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic and fire-protection water service meters outside the building.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for domestic and fire-protection water service meters inside the building.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. SME B40.100 - Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2013.
- B. ASME MFC-3M - Measurement of Fluid Flow in Pipes Using Orifice, Nozzle and Venturi; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.
- C. ASTM E77 - Standard Test Method for Inspection and Verification of Thermometers; 2014.
- D. AWWA M6 - Water Meters -- Selection, Installation, Testing, and Maintenance; American Water Works Association; 2012.
- E. UL 393 - Indicating Pressure Gauges for Fire-Protection Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. L 404 - Gages, Indicating Pressure, for Compressed Gas Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Schedule for thermometers and gages indicating manufacturer's number, scale range, and location for each.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer and gage, signed by product manufacturer.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 7 inches long.
- B. Tube: Red or blue reading, organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.
- C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- D. Window: Glass or plastic.
- E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- F. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

#### 2.2 PLASTIC-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Case: Plastic, 7 inches long.
- B. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.

- C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- D. Window: Glass or plastic.
- E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- F. Stem: Metal, for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

### 2.3 DIRECT-MOUNTING, VAPOR-ACTUATED DIAL THERMOMETERS

- A. Case: Dry type, metal or plastic, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- B. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
- C. Movement: Mechanical, connecting element and pointer.
- D. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
- F. Window: Glass or plastic.
- G. Ring: Metal or plastic.
- H. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- I. Thermal System: Liquid- or mercury-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- J. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

### 2.4 REMOTE-MOUNTING, VAPOR-ACTUATED DIAL THERMOMETERS

- A. Case: Dry type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter with holes for panel mounting.
- B. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
- C. Movement: Mechanical, connecting element and pointer.
- D. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
- F. Window: Glass or plastic.
- G. Ring: Brass.
- H. Connector: Bottom union type.
- I. Thermal System: Liquid or mercury-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- J. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

### 2.5 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED DIAL THERMOMETERS

- A. Description: Direct-mounting, bimetallic-actuated dial thermometers complying with ASME B40.3.
- B. Case: Dry type, stainless steel with 3-inch diameter.
- C. Element: Bimetal coil.
- D. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
- F. Window: Glass or plastic.
- G. Ring: Stainless steel.
- H. Connector: Adjustable angle type.
- I. Stem: Metal, for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- J. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

### 2.6 THERMOWELLS

- A. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

### 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.
  1. Case: Dry type, metal or plastic, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
  2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  5. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

6. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
  7. Window: Glass or plastic.
  8. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  9. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half scale.
  10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
  11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.
- B. Remote-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: ASME B40.100, indicating-dial type.
1. Case: Dry type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter with holes for panel mounting.
  2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  5. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
  6. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
  7. Window: Glass or plastic.
  8. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  9. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half scale.
  10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
  11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.
- C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:
1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
  2. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

## 2.8 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.
- B. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- C. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.
1. Insert material for water service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
  2. Insert material for water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.
- D. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, two thermometer(s), and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.
  2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.
  3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
  4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

- A. Install direct-mounting, vapor-actuated dial thermometers in the outlet of each domestic, hot-water storage tank.
- B. Install dry-case-type, vapor actuated dial thermometers at suction and discharge of each pump.
- C. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:
1. Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 180 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
  2. Domestic Cold Water: 0 to 100 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

### 3.2 GAGE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
- B. Install dry-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.3 INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- B. Install remote-mounting dial thermometers on panel, with tubing connecting panel and thermometer bulb supported to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- C. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.

- D. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.
- E. Install remote-mounting pressure gages on panel.
- F. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage.
- G. Install test plugs in tees in piping.
- H. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- I. Install connection fittings for attachment to portable indicators in accessible locations.
- J. Install thermometers and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for thermometers, gages, machines, and equipment.
- K. Adjust faces of thermometers and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

**END OF SECTION 220519**

## SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. Bronze lift check valves.
8. Bronze swing check valves.
9. Iron swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
11. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
12. Iron, center-guided check valves.
13. Iron, plate-type check valves.
14. Bronze gate valves.
15. Iron gate valves.
16. Bronze globe valves.
17. Iron globe valves.
18. Lubricated plug valves.
19. Chainwheels.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z21.22 - American National Standard for Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems; 2015.
- B. ASTM B62 - 17 Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
- C. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers;
- D. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2012 (ANSI B16.18).
- E. ASME B31.2 - Fuel Gas Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 1968.
- F. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- G. ASTM A47/A47M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings; 1999 (Reapproved 2014).
- H. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- I. ASTM A269 - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2015.
- J. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2008(2014).

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
  - B. ASME Compliance:
    - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
    - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
    - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
  - C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61G for valve materials for potable-water service.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
    - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
    - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
    - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
    - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
    - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
    - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
  - B. Use the following precautions during storage:
    - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
    - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
  - C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES
- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
  - B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
  - C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Valve Actuator Types:
    - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
    - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
    - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
    - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
    - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
  - E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
    - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
    - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
    - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
  - F. Valve-End Connections:
    - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
    - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
    - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
    - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES
- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Hammond Valve.
      - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      - d. Ends: Threaded.
      - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.



- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- C. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- D. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### 2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: One piece.
    - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Brass.
    - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.

- c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- d. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Brass.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - j. Port: Full.
- D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Brass.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Regular.

## 2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: One piece.
    - d. Body Material: Bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Bronze.
    - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - c. Body Design: One piece.
    - d. Body Material: Bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - i. Port: Reduced.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.
- D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Regular.
- 2.5 IRON BALL VALVES
- A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Split body.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Stainless steel.

- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: NBR.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- D. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: NBR.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- E. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- F. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: NBR.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- 2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES
- A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
    - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - f. Seal: EPDM.
- B. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. NPS 10 and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - g. Seal: EPDM.
- 2.8 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES
- A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.
- 2.9 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES
- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.

- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.10 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Composition.
  - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
  - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
  - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

- B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - b. NIBCO INC.
      - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - e. Ends: Flanged.
      - f. Trim: Bronze.
      - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.
- 2.12 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES
- A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Anvil International, Inc.
      - b. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
      - c. Victaulic Company.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - c. Seal: EPDM.
      - d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
- 2.13 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES
- A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Anvil International, Inc.
      - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - c. NIBCO INC.
      - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - d. Style: Compact wafer.
      - e. Seat: Bronze.
  - B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - b. NIBCO INC.
      - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - e. Ends: Flanged.
      - f. Seat: Bronze.
  - C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
      - b. Crispin Valve.
      - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - d. Style: Compact wafer.



- e. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- F. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- G. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- H. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- I. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- K. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- L. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- M. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- N. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

- O. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- P. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

#### 2.14 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Flomatic Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flo Fab Inc.
    - b. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- F. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- G. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- H. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- I. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:

- a. Standard: API 594.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
- c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.15 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.

- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.16 IRON GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.17 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- C. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.18 IRON GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.19 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

- A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- B. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- C. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.
    - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- D. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.
    - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- E. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- F. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- G. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.
    - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  - 2. Description:



- a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Venturi.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- H. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.
    - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Venturi.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

## 2.20 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
  - 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
  - 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  - 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  - 2. Attachment: For connection to ball butterfly and plug valve stems.
  - 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve.
  - 4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels in enclosed mechanical room on operators for ball butterfly gate globe and plug valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, gate, or plug valves.
  2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  3. Throttling Service: Globe or angle or ball valves.
  4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
  3. Ball Valves: One piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
  4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
  5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, RS.
  6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
  7. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  8. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
  9. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 300 CWP.
  10. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 250, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
  11. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
  12. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
  13. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 150, compact-wafer, resilient seat.
  14. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 150; dual plate; resilient seat.
  15. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250.
  16. Iron Globe Valves: Class 250.

### 3.6 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
  3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
  4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
  5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, RS.
  6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 250, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
  4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and weight.
  5. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
  6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250, OS&Y.
  7. Iron Globe Valves: Class 250.
  8. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 250, regular gland, flanged.

**END OF SECTION 220523**

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
  1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  4. Metal framing systems.
  5. Fiberglass strut systems.
  6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  7. Fastener systems.
  8. Pipe stands.
  9. Pipe positioning systems.
  10. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
  3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  4. Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A780 / A780M – 09(2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot Dip Galvanized Coatings.
- B. ASTM C552 - 17 Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
- C. ASTM C533 - 17 Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
- D. ASTM C1107 / C1107M - 11 Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
- E. AWS D1.1, - Structural Welding Code--Steel.
- F. AWS D1.2, - Structural Welding Code—Aluminum.
- G. AWS D1.4, - Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel.
- H. MSS SP-90, Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.

5. Pipe positioning systems.
  - B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
    1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
    2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
    3. Fiberglass strut systems. Include Product Data for components.
    4. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
    5. Equipment supports.
  - C. Welding certificates.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    1. AWS D1.1 / D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
    2. AWS D1.2 / D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
    3. AWS D1.4 / D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
    4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
    1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
    2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
  - B. Available Manufacturers:
    1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
    2. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    3. Grinnell Corp.
    4. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.
- 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS
- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.
- 2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS
- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers: Similar to MSS Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass and continuous-thread rod and nuts are made of polyurethane or stainless steel.
    1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - b. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers: Made of fiberglass loop with stainless-steel continuous-thread rod, nuts, and support hook.
    1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Plasti-Fab, Inc.
- 2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS
- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
  - B. Available Manufacturers:
    1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

- 2. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - 3. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
  - D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- 2.6 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS
- A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, similar to MFMA-3, made of fiberglass channels and other components.
  - B. Available Manufacturers:
    - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
- 2.7 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS
- A. Description: 100-psig minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
  - B. Available Manufacturers:
    - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
    - 2. Pipe Shields, Inc.
  - C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552 - 12b, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
  - D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552 - 12b, Type II cellular glass.
  - E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
  - F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
  - G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.
- 2.8 FASTENER SYSTEMS
- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Hilti, Inc.
      - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
  - B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Hilti, Inc.
      - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- 2.9 PIPE STAND FABRICATION
- A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
  - B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
      - b. MIRO Industries.
  - C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. MIRO Industries.
  - D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
      - b. MIRO Industries.
      - c. Portable Pipe Hangers.
    - 2. Base: Plastic.
    - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
    - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Portable Pipe Hangers.
    - 2. Bases: One or more plastic.
    - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
    - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
    - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
  - F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.
- 2.10 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS
- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces for plumbing fixtures for commercial applications.
  - B. Available Manufacturers:
    - 1. C & S Mfg. Corp.
    - 2. HOLDRITE Corp.; Hubbard Enterprises.
    - 3. Samco Stamping, Inc.
- 2.11 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS
- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.
- 2.12 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - B. Grout: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M-11, factory-mixed and packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and non-metallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
    - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and nongaseous.
    - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS
- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
  - B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
  - C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
  - D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
  - E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
  - F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
    - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
    - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
    - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
    - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
    - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
    - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
    - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
    - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.

10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.



- b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
  - J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    - 1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
    - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
  - K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
    - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
    - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
    - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
    - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
    - 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
    - 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
    - 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
      - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
      - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
      - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
  - L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
  - M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
  - N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
  - O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.
- 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION
- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
  - B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
    - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
    - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
  - C. Fiberglass Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
  - D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
  - E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
  - F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
  - G. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- Q. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
  6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
  7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
  - C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
    - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
    - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
    - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
    - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
  - B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.
- 3.6 PAINTING
- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
    - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
  - B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
  - C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A780M - 09.

**END OF SECTION 220529**

## SECTION 220548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Isolation pads.
  2. Isolation mounts.
  3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
  5. Housed spring mounts.
  6. Elastomeric hangers.
  7. Spring hangers.
  8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
  9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
  10. Resilient pipe guides.
  11. Seismic snubbers.
  12. Restraining braces and cables.
  13. Steel and inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE (HVACA) - ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2015.
- C. FEMA 414 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Duct and Pipe; 2004.
- D. FEMA E-74 - Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide; 2012.
- E. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc.; 2017.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  1. Seismic restraints shall be designed and installed in accordance with local codes and shall be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
  - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproved by ICC-ES, or preapproved by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
  1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- D. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a non-slip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene, rubber or hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass.
- E. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
  1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- F. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- G. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- H. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- I. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
  2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
  3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- J. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- K. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- L. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

- M. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.
- N. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
  - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - 4. Mason Industries.
- D. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- E. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
  - 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

## 2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
  - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  - 2. Hilti, Inc.
  - 3. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- E. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
  - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
  - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil and water resistant neoprene.
  - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch thick resilient cushion.

- F. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop or field fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- G. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- H. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- I. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- J. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- K. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- L. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- M. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

#### 2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

#### 3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Restraints:
  1. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inches.
  3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Piping Restraints:



1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 20 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c.
  3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- E. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- G. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- H. Drilled-in Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post-connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  9. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  10. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
  11. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
  12. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

**END OF SECTION 220548**

## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Equipment labels.
    - 2. Warning signs and labels.
    - 3. Pipe labels.
    - 4. Stencils.
    - 5. Valve tags.
    - 6. Warning tags.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2015.
  - B. ASTM D709 - Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials; 2017.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
  - C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
  - D. Valve numbering scheme.
  - E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
  - B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
  - C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS
  - A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
    - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
    - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
    - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
    - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
    - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
  - B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
    - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
    - 2. Letter Color: White.
    - 3. Background Color: Black.
    - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
    - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules).
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
- 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS
- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - B. Letter Color: Red.
  - C. Background Color: White.
  - D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
  - I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.
- 2.3 PIPE LABELS
- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
  - B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
  - C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
  - D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
    1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
    2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.
- 2.4 STENCILS
- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
    1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
    2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
    3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.5 VALVE TAGS
- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
    1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
    2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
  - B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
    1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  - 2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 10 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

### 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, square.
    - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, square.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Natural.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural.
    - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Green.
    - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Green.
  - 3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: White.
    - b. Hot Water: White.
    - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White.
    - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: White.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**END OF SECTION 220553**

## SECTION 220700 - PLUMBING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:
  - a. Calcium silicate.
  - b. Cellular glass.
  - c. Flexible elastomeric.
  - d. Mineral fiber.
2. Insulating cements.
3. Adhesives.
4. Mastics.
5. Lagging adhesives.
6. Sealants.
7. Factory-applied jackets.
8. Tapes.
9. Securements.
10. Corner angles.

##### B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A167 - 99(2009) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat Resisting Chromium Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip.
- B. ASTM A240 / A240M - 17 Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications.
- C. ASTM B209 - 14 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- D. ASTM C450 - 17 Standard Practice for Fabrication of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging.
- E. ASTM C533 - 17 Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.
- F. ASTM C534 / C534M - 16 Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form.
- G. ASTM C547 - 17 Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation.
- H. ASTM C552 - 17 Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation.
- I. ASTM C553 - 13 Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications.
- J. ASTM C1136 - 17a Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
- K. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017a.
- L. ASTM E96 / E96M - 16 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
- M. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- N. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.

4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  8. Detail field application for each equipment type.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Sample Sizes:
    - a. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
    - b. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
    - c. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
    - d. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
    - e. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- E. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- 1.5 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**
- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- 1.6 **DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**
- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.
- 1.7 **COORDINATION**
- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.
- 1.8 **SCHEDULING**
- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.



- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Industrial Insulation Group; Thermo-12 Gold.
  - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Cell-U-Foam Corporation; Ultra-CUF.
    - b. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas Super K.
  - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  - 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.
- J. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; HTB 23 Spin-Glas.
    - b. Owens Corning; High Temperature Flexible Batt Insulations.
- K. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- L. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Johns Manville; 1000 Series Spin-Glas.
  - b. Owens Corning; High Temperature Industrial Board Insulations.
- M. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000(Pipe Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
  2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- N. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; Triple I.
    - b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; Thermal-V-Kote.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; SmoothKote.
    - b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; PK No. 127, and Quik-Cote.
    - c. Rock Wool Manufacturing Company; Delta One Shot.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-97.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27/81-93.
    - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 290.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
- C. Cellular-Glass, Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - b. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 2.4 MASTICS
- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
    1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES
- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-52.
      - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-42.
      - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 130.
      - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 11-30.
      - e. Vimasco Corporation; 136.
    3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
    4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
    5. Color: White.
- 2.6 SEALANTS
- A. Joint Sealants:
    1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - a. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
      - b. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
    2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
    5. Color: White or gray.
- 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS
- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
    1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
    4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
        - 1) Dow Chemical Company; Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
    5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) Dow Chemical Company; Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
- 6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Dow Chemical Company; Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  - 2. Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  - 2. Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0555.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 130.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 370 White PVC tape.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  - 2. Width: 2 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 120.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  - 2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company; Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
  5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Products; Bands.
    - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.
  2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
  3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
  4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
      - 2) GEMCO; CD.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
  2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
      - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
  3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series T.
      - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
    - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series TSA.
    - 2) GEMCO; Press and Peel.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
  - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) GEMCO.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.
    - b. Childers Products.
    - c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
    - d. RPR Products, Inc.
- 2.10 CORNER ANGLES
- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
  - B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
  - C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240, Type 304 or 316.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.



5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.
- 3.6 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION
- A. Insulation Installation on Domestic Water Boiler Breechings:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
  2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
  3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
- E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.
- 3.7 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION
- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
  2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 3.8 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION
- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
  2. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.
- 3.10 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE
- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
- C. Domestic water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
- D. Domestic water, domestic hot-water hydropneumatic tank insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
  2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- 3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL
- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

**END OF SECTION 220700**

## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
    - 2. Encasement for piping.
    - 3. Specialty valves.
    - 4. Flexible connectors.
    - 5. Water meters furnished by utility company for installation by Contractor.
    - 6. Water meters.
    - 7. Escutcheons.
    - 8. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    - 9. Wall penetration systems.
  - B. Related Section:
    - 1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ANSI Z21.22 - American National Standard for Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems; 2015.
  - B. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
  - C. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2012 (ANSI B16.18).
  - D. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
  - E. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2008(2014).
  - F. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes; 2015.
  - G. ASTM B68/B68M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed; 2011.
  - H. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2016.
- 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For the following products:
    - 1. Specialty valves.
    - 2. Transition fittings.
    - 3. Dielectric fittings.
    - 4. Flexible connectors.
    - 5. Water meters.
    - 6. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
    - 7. Escutcheons.
    - 8. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    - 9. Water penetration systems.
  - B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.
  - C. Coordination Drawings: For piping in equipment rooms and other congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
    - 1. Fire-suppression-water piping.
    - 2. Domestic water piping.
  - D. Field quality-control reports.

- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
  - B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS
  - A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- 2.2 CPVC PIPING:
  - A. Only one manufacturer and type – Flowguard gold or bendable by Lubrizol.
- 2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS
  - A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and ASTM B 88, Type M water tube, drawn temper.
    - 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
    - 2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
    - 3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
    - 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
    - 5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
      - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
        - 2) NIBCO INC.
      - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
      - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
    - 6. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
      - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        - 1) NVent LLC.
      - b. Description: Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22; with stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.
    - 7. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
      - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        - 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.
      - b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
    - 8. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
      - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        - 1) Anvil International.
        - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
        - 3) Victaulic Company.
      - b. Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
      - c. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
  - B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
    - 1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
    - 2. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
      - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
        - 2) NIBCO INC.
      - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

- c. NPS 3 and NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

## 2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
    - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  - 2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.
  - 1. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Anvil International.
      - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
      - 3) Victaulic Company.
    - b. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
    - c. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.
  - 1. Use CPVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- G. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or Tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or Natural.

## 2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.

## 2.8 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
    - d. JCM Industries.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
    - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.
  - 2. Description: CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.
  - 2. Description: CPVC or PVC four-part union. Include brass threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

## 2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
    - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Non-conducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.



- c. End Connections: Female threaded.
      - d. Lining: Inert and non-corrosive, thermoplastic.
  - F. Dielectric Nipples:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
      - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
      - c. Victaulic Company.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      - c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      - d. Lining: Inert and non-corrosive, propylene.
- 2.10 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    - 2. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
    - 3. Mercer Rubber Co.
  - B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
    - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
    - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
  - C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
    - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
    - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
    - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.
- 2.11 WATER METERS
- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. ABB.
      - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
      - c. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
      - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
      - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility.
      - e. Case: Bronze.
      - f. End Connections: Threaded.
  - B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. ABB.
      - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
      - c. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: AWWA C701.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
      - c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
      - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company .
      - e. Case: Bronze.
      - f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
      - g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
  - C. Compound-Type Water Meters:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. ABB.
      - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: AWWA C702.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.

- c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
    - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
    - e. Case: Bronze.
    - f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.
  - D. Fire-Service-Type Water Meters:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Badger Meter, Inc.
      - b. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: AWWA C703 and UL listing.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 175-psig working pressure.
      - c. Body Design:
        - 1) Turbine-Type Water Meters: With strainer, and with meter on bypass.
          - a) Strainer: Full size, matching water meter.
          - b) Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; not less than NPS 2.
      - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
      - e. Case: Bronze.
      - f. Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
      - g. Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
  - E. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
  - F. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
- 2.12 ESCUTCHEONS
- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
  - B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with setscrews.
  - C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with spring clips.
  - E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
  - F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge spring clips.
  - G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
  - H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.
- 2.13 SLEEVES
- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  - C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  - D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  - E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
  - F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
  - G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.
- 2.14 SLEEVE SEALS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2. Calpico, Inc.
    - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
    - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
    - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
    - 2. Pressure Plates: Plastic.

3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

#### 2.15 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  1. SIGMA.
- B. Description: Wall-sleeve assembly, consisting of housing and gland, gaskets, and pipe sleeve.
  1. Carrier-Pipe Deflection: Up to 5 percent without leakage.
  2. Housing: Ductile-iron casting with hub, waterstop, anchor ring, and locking devices. Include gland, bolts, and nuts.
  3. Housing-to-Sleeve Gasket: EPDM rubber.
  4. Housing-to-Carrier-Pipe Gasket: AWWA C111, EPDM rubber.
  5. Pipe Sleeve: AWWA C151, ductile-iron pipe or ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, zinc-coated steel pipe.

#### 2.16 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- O. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- P. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- Q. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- R. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- S. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.

- T. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- U. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- V. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- W. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Copper-Tubing, Push-on Joints: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.
- J. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- K. Steel-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut or roll groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
  2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846 Appendix.
  3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- N. PEX Piping Joints: Join according to ASTM F 1807.
- O. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
  1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.

- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

### 3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

### 3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

### 3.8 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Install water meters according to AWWA M6, utility company's requirements, and the following:
- C. Install displacement-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install turbine-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install compound-type water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on valved bypass around meter. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- F. Install fire-service water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on full-size valved bypass around meter. Support meter, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- G. Install remote registration system according to standards of utility company and of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.9 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
  1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
  4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.11 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with rough-brass finish.
  5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.
  6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

### 3.12 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
  1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PVC.
  2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Stack sleeve fittings.
    - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.

- b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
        - a. PVC pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
        - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
        - c. Exception: Sleeves are not required for water supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
      - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
        - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
        - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
        - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
        - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
    - L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.
- 3.13 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION
- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
  - B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- 3.14 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION
- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
  - B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.
- 3.15 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
  - B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.
- 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - B. Piping Inspections:
    - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
      - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - C. Piping Tests:
    - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
    - 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
    - 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
    - 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
  - D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.17 ADJUSTING
- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
    1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
    2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
    3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
    4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
      - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
      - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
    5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
    6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
    7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
    8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.
- 3.18 CLEANING
- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
    1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
    2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
      - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
      - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
        - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
        - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
      - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
      - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
    1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
    2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
      - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
      - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
  - D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- 3.19 PIPING SCHEDULE
- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
  - D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
    2. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:



1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  4. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  5. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- F. Under-building slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be one of the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard or compact pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  2. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; cast or wrought copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  4. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast or wrought copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; cast or wrought copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- K. Above ground, combined domestic-water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- 3.20 VALVE SCHEDULE
- A. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
  4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

**END OF SECTION 221116**

## SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps."
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Chemical Waste-Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for chemical-waste and vent piping systems.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
- B. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- C. ASTM A47/A47M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings; 1999 (Reapproved 2014).
- D. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- E. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- F. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.
- G. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2012.
- H. ASTM D2609 - Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe; 2015.
- I. ASTM D2680 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping; 2001 (Reapproved 2014).
- J. ASTM D2751 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2005.
- K. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2012.
- L. ICC-ES AC193 - Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2012.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 150 psig.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer for selecting seismic restraints.
  2. Solvent Drainage System: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

#### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

#### 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

#### 2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Solvent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Available Manufacturers:
      - 1) Mission Rubber Co.
      - 2) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
  2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Available Manufacturers:
      - 1) ANACO.
      - 2) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
  3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Available Manufacturers:
      - 1) MG Piping Products Co.
- D. Rigid, Unshielded Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. ANACO.

#### 2.5 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. Grooved-Joint Systems:
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
  3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
- D. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- 2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS
- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.
1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
- 2.7 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- D. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
1. Use ABS solvent cement that has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2.8 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Cellular-Core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Series PS 100.
1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Series PS 100 sewer and drain pipe.
- D. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.9 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Non-pressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Co.
    - d. NDS, Inc.
  - 2. Sleeve Materials:
    - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Shielded Non-pressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Mission Rubber Co.
- C. Rigid, Unshielded, Non-pressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. ANACO.
- D. Pressure Pipe Couplings: AWWA C219 metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
    - b. JCM Industries, Inc.
    - c. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.
  - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- E. Flexible Ball Joints: Ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include gasketed ball-joint section and ductile-iron gland, rubber gasket, and steel bolts.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- F. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- G. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. SIGMA Corp.

## 2.10 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel; and rigid, unshielded couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 4. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and solvent stack fittings; standard, and heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard shielded, stainless-steel; and rigid, unshielded couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - 4. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - 5. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 6. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 7. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 8. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and rigid, unshielded couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Stainless-steel pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - 4. Solid wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 6. Cellular-core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 7. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Sheilded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel; and heavy-duty shielded, cast-iron couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  - 3. Solid-wall, Schedule 40, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 4. Cellular-core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
  3. Grooved-end steel pipe, grooved-joint system fittings and couplings, and grooved joints.
- J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Soft copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
    - a. Include grooved-joint system fittings and couplings and grooved joints where indicated.
  3. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, ductile-iron fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and mechanical joints.
    - a. Include grooved-joint system fittings and couplings and grooved joints where indicated.
  4. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - a. Include grooved-joint system fittings and couplings and grooved joints where indicated.
  5. Pressure pipe couplings, if dissimilar pipe materials or piping with small difference in OD must be joined.
- K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, ductile-iron fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and mechanical-joint joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  3. Pressure pipe couplings, if dissimilar pipe materials or piping with small difference in OD must be joined.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers."
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- E. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- F. Install underground, steel, force-main piping. [ Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.]
- G. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside the building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside the building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
  1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- I. Install underground, ductile-iron, special pipe fittings according to AWWA C600.
  1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- J. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- K. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- M. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- N. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- O. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- P. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- Q. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- R. Install ABS soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- S. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- T. Install underground ABS and PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Assemble joint with keyed coupling, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
  1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
  2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
  1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
  2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  4. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.



- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 2: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 96 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- N. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- O. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- P. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main or sanitary manhole.
  2. Sewage Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Exposed ABS and PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

**END OF SECTION 221316**

## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Backwater valves.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Floor drains.
  - 4. Trench drains.
  - 5. Air-admittance valves.
  - 6. Roof flashing assemblies.
  - 7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - 8. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 9. Flashing materials.
  - 10. Grease interceptors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for hair interceptors.
  - 3. Division 22 Section "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for plaster sink interceptors.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NSF 14, - Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials.
- B. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
- C. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- D. ASTM A48 / A48M - 03(2016) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.
- E. ASTM A47/A47M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings; 1999 (Reapproved 2014).
- F. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- G. ASTM A74 - 17 Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
- H. ASTM B152 / B152M - 13 Standard Specification for Copper Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Rolled Bar
- I. ASTM B564 - 17a Standard Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings.
- J. ASTM A653 / A653M - 17 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process.
- K. ASTM C564 - 14 Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
- L. ASTM D4068 - 17 Standard Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water Containment Membrane.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  - 1. Grease interceptors.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that grease interceptors, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Cast iron.
  - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
  - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
  - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
  - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
- B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
  - 3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
  - 4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
  - 5. Inlet: Threaded.
  - 6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.

- b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
- 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 3. Body: ABS or PVC.
- 4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
- 5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
- 6. End Connections: Socket type.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk brass plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

### B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
- 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
- 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 6. Clamping Device: Required.
- 7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
- 8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
- 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Plastic with threads.
- 10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
- 11. Frame and Cover Shape: Square.
- 12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
- 13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

### C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk, drilled-and-threaded plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

### D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
- 2. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 3. Body: PVC.
- 4. Closure Plug: PVC.
- 5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

## 2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

### A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Not Required.
6. Clamping Device: Not Required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Backwater Valve: Not required.
9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
13. Top Shape: Square.
14. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 6 inch Square.
15. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
16. Funnel: See Plans.
17. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
18. Trap Material: Not required.
19. Trap Pattern: Not required.
20. Trap Features: Not required.

### B. Plastic Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Material: Of same material or compatible with piping materials.
4. Seepage Flange: Not Required.
5. Clamping Device: Not Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
8. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze.
9. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
10. Top Shape: Square.
11. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 6 inch Square.
12. Trap Material: Not required.
13. Trap Pattern: Not required.

## 2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

### A. Trench Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. Flange: Seepage.
5. Clamping Device: Not required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Stainless steel.
8. Grate Finish: Not required.
9. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: See Drawings.
10. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty.
11. Trap Material: Not required.
12. Trap Pattern: Not required.

## 2.5 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

### A. Stack Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Studor, Inc.
3. Standard: ASSE 1050 for vent stacks.
4. Housing: Plastic.
5. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
6. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

### B. Wall Box:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Studor, Inc.
3. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation. Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
4. Size: About 9 inches wide by 8 inches high by 4 inches deep.

## 2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

### B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

### A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

### B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
  - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

### C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

### D. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
  2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings:
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps:
1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:
1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
  2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- I. Expansion Joints:
1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
  2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
  3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
  4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.9 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft.
  2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## 2.10 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

- A. Grease Interceptors:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Green Turtle Americas.
    - b. Any precast manufacturer acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.14.3 and PDI-G101, for intercepting and retaining fats, oils, and greases from food-preparation wastewater.
  3. Plumbing and Drainage Institute Seal: Required.
  4. Body Material: Plastic or Concrete.
  5. Interior Lining: Epoxy coating for Concrete.
  6. Exterior Coating: Not required.
  7. Inlet and Outlet Size: 4".
  8. End Connections: Hub.
  9. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet.



- 10. Flow-Control Fitting: Not required.
- 11. Operation: Manual cleaning.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.
- I. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- J. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- K. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- L. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- M. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- N. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- O. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- P. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- Q. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- R. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- S. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- T. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  - 1. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- U. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- V. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Grease interceptors.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221319**

## SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sump Pumps."

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7, - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- B. ASME B16.1 - Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2015.
- C. NSF 14, - Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials.
- D. ASME B16.4 - Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
- E. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- F. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- G. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.
- H. ASTM D2235 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings; 2004 (Reapproved 2016).
- I. ASTM D2239 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter; 2012.
- J. ASTM D2241 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series); 2015.
- K. ASTM D2447 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter; 2015.
- L. ASTM D2466 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2017.
- M. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2012.
- N. ASTM D2609 - Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe; 2015.
- O. ASTM D2661 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- P. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- Q. ASTM D2680 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping; 2001 (Reapproved 2014).
- R. ASTM D2683 - Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing; 2014.
- S. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2017.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

- 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
    1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
    2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 150 psig.
  - B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."
- 1.6 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
  - B. Shop Drawings:
    1. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer for selecting seismic restraints.
    2. Controlled-Flow Storm Drainage System: Include calculations, plans, and details.
  - C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
  - B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
    1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS
- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class(es).
  - B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  - C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.
- 2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
  - B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
    1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
      - a. Available Manufacturers:
        - 1) ANACO.
        - 2) Fernco, Inc.
        - 3) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
      - a. Available Manufacturers:
        - 1) ANACO.
        - 2) Clamp-All Corp.
        - 3) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
      - a. Available Manufacturers:
        - 1) MG Piping Products Co.

- C. Rigid, Unshielded Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. ANACO.
- 2.5 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
  - B. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
  - C. Pressure Fittings:
    - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53 or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
    - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
    - 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
    - 4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
    - 5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
  - D. Grooved-Joint Systems:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Anvil International.
      - b. Victaulic Co. of America.
    - 2. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
    - 3. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
- 2.6 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - 1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - 1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  - C. Grooved-Joint Systems:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Victaulic Co. of America.
    - 2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
    - 3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
  - D. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- 2.7 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS
- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
    - 1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
  - B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.
    - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
    - 2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
    - 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
  - C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
    - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

- 2.8 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
  - B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
  - C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- 2.9 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
  - B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
    - 1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
  - C. Cellular-Core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Series PS 100.
    - 1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Series PS 100 sewer and drain pipe.
- 2.10 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS
- A. Flexible, Non-pressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Fernco, Inc.
      - b. NDS, Inc.
    - 2. Sleeve Materials:
      - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
  - B. Shielded Non-pressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
      - b. Mission Rubber Co.
  - C. Rigid, Unshielded, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. ANACO.
  - D. Pressure Pipe Couplings: AWWA C219 metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
      - b. JCM Industries, Inc.
      - c. Romac Industries, Inc.
      - d. Viking Johnson.
    - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
    - 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
  - E. Flexible Ball Joints: Ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include gasketed ball-joint section and ductile-iron gland, rubber gasket, and steel bolts.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
  - F. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
      - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
      - c. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.

- G. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
    - 1. Available Manufacturers:
      - a. SIGMA Corp.
- 2.11 ENCASUREMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING
- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
  - B. Form: Sheet or tube.
  - C. Color: Black or natural.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXCAVATION
- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS
- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
    - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
    - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
    - 4. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - 5. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 6. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 7. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Rigid, unshielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
  - C. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be any of the following:
    - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
    - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
    - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
  - D. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
    - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
    - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
    - 4. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 5. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Rigid, unshielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
  - E. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be any of the following:
    - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, cast-iron couplings; and coupled joints.
    - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 4. Cellular-core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
    - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, Shielded, non-pressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION
- A. Storm sewer and drainage piping outside the building are specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
  - B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers. Cleanouts are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- E. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
- F. Install underground, ductile-iron, special pipe fittings according to AWWA C600.
  - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- H. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- I. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- L. Install engineered controlled-flow storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- M. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- N. Install ABS storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- O. Install PVC storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- P. Install underground ABS and PVC storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe and assemble grooved ends of pipes, grooved-end fittings, and grooved-end-piping couplings according to AWWA C606.
- G. PVC Non-pressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
  - 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
  - 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
  - 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  - 3. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."



### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer than 100 feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer than 100 feet, if indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  - 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- N. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221413**

## SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Backwater valves.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Trench drains.
  - 4. Channel drainage systems.
  - 5. Catch basins.
  - 6. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - 7. Roof drains.
  - 8. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - 9. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, floor drains, trench drains and channel drainage systems connected to sanitary sewer, air admittance valves, FOG disposal systems, grease interceptors and removal devices, oil interceptors, and solid interceptors.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7, - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- B. ASME B16.1 - Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2015.
- C. NSF 14, - Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials.
- D. ASME B16.4 - Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
- E. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2014 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- F. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- G. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.
- H. ASTM D2235 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings; 2004 (Reapproved 2016).
- I. ASTM D2239 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter; 2012.
- J. ASTM D2241 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series); 2015.
- K. ASTM D2447 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter; 2015.
- L. ASTM D2466 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2017.
- M. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2004 (Reapproved 2009).
- N. ASTM D2609 - Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe; 2012.
- O. ASTM D2661 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- P. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- Q. ASTM D2680 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping; 2001 (Reapproved 2014).
- R. ASTM D2683 - Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing; 2014.
- S. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2017.

- 1.4 DEFINITIONS
  - A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
  - C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
  - D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
  - E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
  - G. PUR: Polyurethane plastic.
  - H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 BACKWATER VALVES
  - A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
      - b. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
      - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
      - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
    - 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
    - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
    - 4. Body: Cast iron.
    - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
    - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
    - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
    - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
  - B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
      - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
      - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
    - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
    - 3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
    - 4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
    - 5. Inlet: Threaded.
    - 6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
  - C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. IPS Corporation.
      - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
      - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
    - 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
    - 3. Body: PVC.
    - 4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
    - 5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
    - 6. End Connections: Socket type.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Raised-head, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

### B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
8. Closure: Cast-iron plug.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Square.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

### C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
5. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
6. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
7. Closure: Countersunk, drilled-and-threaded plug.
8. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
9. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
10. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

### D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: PVC.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

### 2.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
3. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
4. Size: Same as connected pipe.
5. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
6. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
7. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

### 2.4 ROOF DRAINS

#### A. Metal Roof Drains

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - b. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
3. Pattern: Roof drain.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Dome Material: Cast iron.
9. Extension Collars: Required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
11. Sump Receiver: Not required.

#### B. Plastic Roof Drains

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
3. Pattern: Roof drain.
4. Body Material: ABS or PVC.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Dome Material: ABS or PVC.
8. Underdeck Clamp: Required.

### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

#### A. Expansion

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.

### 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152, 12 oz./sq. ft. thickness.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07.
  - 1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- F. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- G. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- H. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

#### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

#### **3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

#### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221423**

## SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following electric water heaters:
  1. Flow-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
  2. Thermostat-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
  3. Commercial, storage electric water heaters.
  4. Compression tanks.
  5. Water heater accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B1.20.1 -PIPE THREADS, GENERAL PURPOSE (INCH)
- B. ASME B16.5 : PIPE FLANGES AND FLANGED FITTINGS NPS 1/2 THROUGH NPS 24 METRIC/ INCH STANDARD.
- C. ASME PTC 25-2014 - SAFETY AND RELIEF VALVES.
- D. ASSE 1003 - PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR WATER PRESSURE REDUCING VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS
- E. UL 174 - Standard for Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 1453 - Standard for Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial and instantaneous electric water heater, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control test reports.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of electric water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of electric water heaters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.



- E. ASME Compliance: Where indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- F. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with Architectural and Structural Drawings.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Period(s): From date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Five years.
    - b. Commercial Electric Water Heaters:
      - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
      - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
    - a. Bradford-White
    - b. A.O. Smith

2.2 INSTANTANEOUS ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS

- A. Flow-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Hot Aqua, Inc.
    - b. IMI Waterheating, Ltd.
    - c. Stiebel Eltron, Inc.
  - 2. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    - d. Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
    - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
  - 3. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
  - 4. Capacity and Characteristics:
    - a. See Drawings.
- B. Thermostat-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. IMI Waterheating, Ltd.
    - b. Niagara Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    - d. Temperature Control: Thermostat.
    - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.

- f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
- 3. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
- 4. Capacity and Characteristics:
  - a. See Drawings.

## 2.3 COMMERCIAL ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Storage Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 1453 requirements for storage-tank-type water heaters.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Bradford White Corporation.
    - b. Rheem Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Ruud Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Smith, A. O. Water Products Company.
  - 2. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
    - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - 3. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
    - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
      - 1) Staging: Input not exceeding 18 kW per step.
    - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    - h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - 4. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
  - 5. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
  - 6. Capacity and Characteristics:
    - a. See Drawings.

## 2.4 EXPANSION TANKS

- A. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. AMTROL Inc.
    - b. Smith, A. O.; Aqua-Air Div.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
    - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
  - 3. Capacity and Characteristics:
    - a. Per water heater manufacturers recommendations.

## 2.5 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating.
- C. Water Heater Stand and Drain-Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- E. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
- F. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.
- G. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that are capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
- H. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
- I. Water Regulators: ASSE 1003, water-pressure reducing valve. Set at 25-psig maximum outlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
- C. Prepare test reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
  - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.
  - 2. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- C. Install seismic restraints for commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
- D. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
- G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
- H. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
- I. Install pressure gage(s) on outlet of commercial electric water- heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.

- J. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  - K. Install water regulator, with integral bypass relief valve, in booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping.
  - L. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
  - M. Fill water heaters with water.
  - N. Charge compression tanks with air.
- 3.2 CONNECTIONS
- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - B. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
  - C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - 1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
    - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - B. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- 3.4 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and instantaneous electric water heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 223300**

## SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following fuel-fired water heaters:
  - 1. Instantaneous, tankless, gas water heaters.
  - 2. Commercial, high-efficiency, gas water heaters.
  - 3. Compression tanks.
  - 4. Water heater accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z21.10.1 - Gas Water Heaters - Volume I - Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less; 2017.
- B. ANSI Z21.10.3 - Gas Water Heaters - Volume III - Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous Water Heaters; 2017.
- C. ASME (BPV IX, 1) - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX, Division 1 - Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2017.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. LP Gas: Liquefied-petroleum fuel gas.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial and instantaneous water heater, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control test reports.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water heaters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
- E. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

- F. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9" for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with Architectural and Structural Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
  - b. Faulty operation of controls.
  - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
- 2. Warranty Period(s): From date of Substantial Completion:
  - a. Instantaneous, Gas Water Heaters:
    - 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
    - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
  - b. Commercial, Gas Water Heaters:
    - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
    - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
  - c. Compression Tanks: One year(s).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to:
    - a. Bradford-White
    - b. A.O. Smith
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bradford-White
    - b. A.O. Smith

2.2 INSTANTANEOUS, GAS WATER HEATERS

- A. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3, except storage is not required.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Rinnai
    - b. NORITZ America Corporation.
  - 2. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Heat Exchanger: Copper tubing.
    - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
    - e. Burner: For use with tankless water heaters and for natural-gas fuel.
    - f. Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
    - g. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - h. Jacket: Metal with enameled finish or plastic.
  - 3. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
  - 4. Capacity and Characteristics: See Drawings.

2.3 COMMERCIAL, GAS WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, High-Efficiency, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Bradford White Corporation.
    - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
    - c. Rheem Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Ruud Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.

- e. Smith, A. O. Water Products Company.
- f. State Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 90 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions. Following features and attributes may be modified or omitted if water heater otherwise complies with requirements for performance.
- 3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
  - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
    - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
  - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
  - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
  - b. Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
  - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
  - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
  - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
  - f. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 5. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for high-efficiency water heaters and for natural-gas fuel.
- 6. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- 7. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
- 8. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
- 9. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- 10. Capacity and Characteristics: See Drawings.

#### 2.4 COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. AMTROL Inc.
    - b. Smith, A. O.; Aqua-Air Div.
    - c. State Industries, Inc.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
  - 3. Capacity and Characteristics: Per water heater manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 2.5 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CGA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- B. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18, appliance type. Include pressure rating, capacity, and pressure differential required between gas supply and water heater.
- C. Gas Automatic Valves: ANSI Z21.21, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- D. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select each relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
  - 2. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.

- E. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of water heater.
    - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
    - 2. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.
  - F. Water Heater Stand and Drain Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  - G. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
  - H. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
  - I. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Provide dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.
  - J. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that is capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
  - K. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
- 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
  - B. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
  - C. Prepare test reports.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION
- A. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
    - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.
    - 2. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - B. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
  - C. Install seismic restraints for commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
  - D. Install gas water heaters according to NFPA 54.
  - E. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters without shutoff valves.
  - F. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
  - G. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters, if required for operation of safety control.
  - H. Install oil-fired water heaters according to NFPA 31.
  - I. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater, relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
  - J. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
  - K. Install water heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
  - L. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  - M. Install pressure gage(s) on outlet piping of commercial, fuel-fired water heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.



- N. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  - O. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
  - P. Fill water heaters with water.
  - Q. Charge compression tanks with air.
- 3.2 CONNECTIONS
- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - B. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
  - C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - 1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
    - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - B. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- 3.4 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instantaneous and commercial water heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 223400**

## SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
  1. Faucets for lavatories and sinks.
  2. Laminar-flow faucet-spout outlets.
  3. Flushometers.
  4. Toilet seats.
  5. Protective shielding guards.
  6. Fixture supports.
  7. Water closets.
  8. Urinals.
  9. Lavatories.
  10. Commercial sinks.
  11. Wash fountains.
  12. Kitchen sinks.
  13. Service sinks.
  14. Service basins.
  15. Owner-furnished fixtures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  1. Division 10 Section "Toilet Accessories."
  2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
  3. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters.
  4. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures."
  5. Division 31 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for exterior plumbing fixtures and hydrants.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" ; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act."
- B. ASME A112.6.1M - Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 1997 (Reaffirmed 2017).
- C. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2012(R2017).
- D. ASME A112.19.1M - Enameled Cast Iron Plumbing Fixtures; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2008 (R2011).
- E. ASME A112.19.2 - Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2013.
- F. ASME A112.19.3 - Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use); The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2017.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2017a.
- H. ISSFA-2 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material; International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; 2001 (2007).
- I. NSF 372 and NSF/ANSI 61-G - Method of Test for Lead Content in Drinking Water System Components.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.

- E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
- F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
  - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
  - 2. Plastic Mop-Service Basins: ANSI Z124.6.
  - 3. Plastic Sinks: ANSI Z124.6.
  - 4. Plastic Urinal Fixtures: ANSI Z124.9.
  - 5. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
  - 6. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
  - 7. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
  - 8. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
  - 9. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
  - 10. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
  - 11. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
  - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
  - 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
  - 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
  - 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  - 5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
  - 6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  - 7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  - 8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
  - 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  - 10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
  - 11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
  - 12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
  - 1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  - 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.

3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  4. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
  5. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
  6. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
  7. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
  2. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  3. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
  4. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
  5. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
  8. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
  11. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: One year from date of Certificate of Occupancy.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory Faucets:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. TOTO USA, Inc.
  2. Description: Single-control mixing valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
    - a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
    - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
    - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.0 gpm.
    - d. Maximum Flow: .25 gallons/cylce.
    - e. Mounting: Deck, concealed.
    - f. Valve Handles: Not applicable.
    - g. Inlet(s): NPS 1/2.
    - h. Spout: Rigid type.
    - i. Spout Outlet: Laminar flow.
    - j. Operation: Sensor.
    - k. Drain: Grid.
    - l. Tempering Device: Thermostatic.

### 2.2 SINK FAUCETS

- A. Sink Faucets:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
  2. Description: Service sink faucet with stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
    - a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
    - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
    - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Mixing Valve: Two-lever handle.
    - e. Backflow Protection Device for Hose Outlet: Required.

- f. Backflow Protection Device for Side Spray: Not required.
- g. Centers: 8 inches.
- h. Mounting: Back/wall, concealed.
- i. Handles: Wrist blade, 4 inches.
- j. Inlets: NPS 1/2.
- k. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass.
- l. Spout Outlet: Hose thread.
- m. Vacuum Breaker: Required.
- n. Operation: Non-compression, manual.
- o. Drain: Grid.

## 2.3 FLUSHOMETERS

### A. Flushometers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
  - b. TOTO USA, Inc.
- 2. Description: Flushometer for urinal or water-closet-type fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components, non-hold-open feature, control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts.
  - a. Internal Design: Diaphragm or piston operation.
  - b. Style: Exposed.
  - c. Trip Mechanism: Battery-operated sensor actuator.

## 2.4 TOILET SEATS

### A. Toilet Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
- 2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
  - a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent.
  - b. Configuration: Open front without cover.
  - c. Size: Elongated.
  - d. Hinge Type: SC, self-sustaining, check.
  - e. Class: Heavy-duty commercial.
  - f. Color: White.

## 2.5 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

### A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. TCI Products.
  - c. TRUEBRO, Inc.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

### B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## 2.6 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Josam Company.
- 2. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
- 3. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
- 4. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

### B. Urinal Supports:

- 1. Description: Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
- 2. Wall mounted.

3. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
- C. Lavatory Supports:
  1. Description: Type I, lavatory carrier with exposed arms and tie rods for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
  2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
- D. Sink Supports:
  1. Description: Type I, sink carrier with exposed arms and tie rods for sink-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
  2. Floating sink.

## 2.7 WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
    - b. TOTO USA, Inc.
  2. Description: Floor-mounting, floor-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
    - a. Style: Flushometer valve.
      - 1) Auto flush:
      - 2) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
      - 3) Height: Standard.
      - 4) Design Consumption: 1.28 gal./flush.
      - 5) Color: White.

## 2.8 URINALS

- A. Urinals:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
    - b. TOTO USA, Inc.
  2. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
    - a. Type: Siphon jet.
    - b. Strainer or Trapway: Separate removable strainer with integral trap.
    - c. Design Consumption: 0.5 gal./flush.
    - d. Color: White.
    - e. Fixture Support: Urinal chair carrier.

## 2.9 LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatories:
  1. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting fixture.
    - a. Faucet Hole Location: Top.
    - b. Faucet: Lavatory.
    - c. Supplies: NPS 3/8 chrome-plated copper with stops.
    - d. Drain: Grid.
      - 1) Location: Near back of bowl.
    - e. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS or PVC, NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 P-trap; NPS 1-1/2, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
    - f. Protective Shielding Guards.
    - g. Fixture Support: Standard carrier/mounting support..
- B. Lavatories - wall-hung:
  1. 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kohler
  2. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting fixture.
    - a. Faucet Hole Punching: Single hole
    - b. Faucet Hole Location: Top.
    - c. Faucet: Lavatory.
    - d. Supplies: NPS 3/8 chrome-plated copper with stops.
    - e. Drain: Grid.
      - 1) Location: Near back of bowl.
    - f. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS or PVC, NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 P-trap; NPS 1-1/2, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
    - g.

3. Protective Shielding Guards.
4. Fixture Support: Lavatory.

## 2.10 COMMERCIAL SINKS

- A. Commercial Sinks:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Tabco.
    - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - c. Just Manufacturing Company.
  2. Description: One-compartment, wall-hung, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
    - a. Compartment:
      - 1) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 tailpiece and twist drain.
        - a) Location: Centered in compartment.
    - b. Faucet(s): Sink.
      - 1) Number Required: One.
      - 2) Mounting: Backsplash.
    - c. Supplies: NPS 3/4 chrome-plated copper with stops or PVC shutoff valves.
    - d. Drain Piping: NPS 2 and wall escutcheons.
- B. Commercial Sinks ADA Compliant:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Tabco.
  2. Description: One-compartment, wall-hung, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
    - a. Compartment:
      - 1) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 tailpiece and twist drain.
        - a) Location: Centered in compartment.
    - b. Faucets: Sink.
      - 1) Number Required: One.
      - 2) Mounting: Deck..
    - c. Supplies: NPS 3/4 chrome-plated copper with stops or PVC shutoff valves.
    - d. Drain Piping: NPS 2 and wall escutcheons.

## 2.11 SERVICE BASINS

- A. Service Basins:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
    - b. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
    - c. Swan Corporation.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  2. Description: Flush-to-wall, floor-mounting, cast-polymer fixture with rim guard.
    - a. Shape: Square.
    - b. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
    - c. Height: 10 inches.
    - d. Tiling Flange: On three sides.
    - e. Color: White.
    - f. Faucet: Sink.
    - g. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 outlet.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.

3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
  - C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
  - D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
  - E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
  - F. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
  - G. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
  - H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
  - I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
    1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
  - K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
  - L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
  - M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
  - N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
  - O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
  - P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
  - Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
  - R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
  - S. Install traps on fixture outlets.
    1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
    2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
  - T. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
  - U. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
  - V. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - W. Set service basins in leveling bed of cement grout. Grout is specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
  - X. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
  - C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
  - B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
  - C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
  - D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
  - E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
  - B. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.



- C. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- D. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms when used.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
  - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
  - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- C. Check ADA clearances.

**END OF SECTION 224000**

## SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  2. Transition fittings.
  3. Dielectric fittings.
  4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  5. Sleeves.
  6. Escutcheons.
  7. Grout.
  8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  9. Painting and finishing.
  10. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ABMA STD 9 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings; American Bearing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; 2015.
- B. AWS D1.1, - Structural Welding Code--Steel.
- C. ASME B1.20.1- Pipe Threads, General Purpose
- D. ASME B31 Series, - Code for Pressure Piping.
- E. ASTM B32 - 08 Standard Specification for Solder Metal
- F. ASTM A53 / A53M - 12 Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot Dipped, Zinc Coated, Welded and Seamless.
- G. IEEE 112 - IEEE Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators; Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers; 2004.
- H. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Transition fittings.

- 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
  - B. Welding certificates.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
  - B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
    - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
    - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
  - C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
  - B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
  - B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
  - C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
    - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
    - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS
- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
  - B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.
- 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS
- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
  - B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
    - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
    - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  - E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

#### 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

#### 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and non-corrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

- 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS
- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Metraflex Co.
    - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.
- 2.7 SLEEVES
- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS
- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- 2.9 GROUT
- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink and non-metallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION
- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

- 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.
- 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS
- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
  - B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
  - C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
  - D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  - E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
  - F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
  - G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
  - H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
  - I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
  - J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
  - K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
  - L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
    - 1. New Piping:
      - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      - b. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
      - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
      - g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
    - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
      - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
      - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
      - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
      - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
      - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
      - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
      - g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
  - M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  - N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
      - a. PVC Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.

- c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- O. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- P. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- S. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846 Appendix.
  - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 4. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Non-pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  - M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS
- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - 3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS
- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
  - B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
  - D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
- 3.6 PAINTING
- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES
- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
  - B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
  - C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
- 3.8 GROUTING
- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
  - B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
  - C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
  - D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
  - E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
  - F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
  - G. Place grout around anchors.
  - H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 230500**



## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ABMA STD 9 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings; American Bearing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; 2015.
  - B. IEEE 112 - IEEE Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators; Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers; 2004.
  - C. IEEE 841 - PETROLEUM AND CHEMICAL INDUSTRY - PREMIUM-EFFICIENCY, SEVERE-DUTY, TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED (TEFC) SQUIRREL CAGE INDUCTION MOTORS - UP TO AND INCLUDING 370 KW (500 HP).
  - D. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
  - E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- 1.4 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
    - 1. Motor controllers.
    - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
    - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
    - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
  - B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.
- 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS
  - A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
  - B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS
  - A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
  - B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - C. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
    - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
    - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
  - D. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
  - E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
  - F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
  - G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
  - H. Insulation: Class F.
  - I. Code Letter Designation:
    - 1. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multi-speed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**PART 4 - Not Applicable**

**END OF SECTION 230513**

## SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Metal-bellows expansion joints.
  2. Expansion compensators.
  3. Rubber expansion joints.
  4. Flexible-hose expansion joints.
  5. Packed slip expansion joints.
  6. Flexible ball joints.
  7. Pipe bends and loops.
  8. Alignment guides and anchors.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code - Steel.
- B. ASME B31.9 – Building Services Piping.
- C. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- D. ASTM A183 - 14 Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts.
- E. ASTM A269 - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2015.
- F. ASTM F1120 - 87(2015) Standard Specification for Circular Metallic Bellows Type Expansion Joints for Piping Applications.
- G. ASTM F1007 - 86(2014) Standard Specification for Pipeline Expansion Joints of the Packed Slip Type for Marine Application.
- H. EJMA (STDS) - EJMA Standards; Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association; Tenth Edition.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. BR: Butyl rubber.
- B. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- C. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- D. CSM: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.
- E. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- F. NR: Natural rubber.
- G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products shall absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and bends.
  2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
  3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
  4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe expansion joint, signed by product manufacturer.

- E. Maintenance Data: For pipe expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1120, circular-corrugated-bellows type with external tie rods.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
    - b. Flex-Weld, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex, Inc.
    - d. Unaflex Inc.
  - 2. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Single- or multiple-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe end connections, and brass shrouds.
  - 3. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Stainless-Steel Waterway: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, stainless-steel-pipe end connections, and steel shroud.
  - 4. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single- or multiple-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe end connections, and carbon-steel shroud.
  - 5. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Configuration: Single- or double-bellows type, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. End Connections: Flanged or weld.
- B. Expansion Compensators: Double-ply corrugated steel, stainless-steel, or copper-alloy bellows in a housing with internal guides, anti-torque device, and removable end clip for positioning.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Flex-Pression, Ltd.
    - b. Metraflex, Inc.
    - c. Unaflex Inc.
  - 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Configuration for Copper Piping: Two-ply phosphor-bronze or stainless-steel bellows and bronze or stainless-steel shroud.
  - 4. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply stainless-steel bellows and carbon-steel shroud.
  - 5. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
  - 6. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
  - 7. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
  - 8. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.
- C. Rubber Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1123, fabric-reinforced rubber with external control rods and complying with FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Flexicraft Industries.
    - b. Metraflex, Inc.
    - c. Unaflex Inc.
  - 2. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches.
  - 3. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres.
    - a. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
    - b. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
    - c. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
  - 4. Material: EPDM.
  - 5. End Connections: Full-faced, integral, steel flanges with steel retaining rings.
- D. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints: Manufactured assembly with two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose; with inlet and outlet elbow fittings, corrugated-metal inner hoses, and braided outer sheaths.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.

- b. Flexicraft Industries.
    - c. Flex-Pression, Ltd.
    - d. Metraflex, Inc.
  - 2. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder joint end connections.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - 3. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder joint end connections.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - 4. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - c. NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - 5. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
    - c. NPS 8 and Larger: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - E. Packed Slip Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1007, carbon-steel, packing type designed for repacking under pressure and pressure rated for 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum. Include asbestos-free PTFE packing, compound limit stops, and drip connection if used for steam piping.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Adscro Manufacturing, LLC.
      - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
      - c. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
    - 2. Configuration: Single- and double-joint class.
    - 3. End Connections: Flanged or weld ends to match piping system.
  - F. Flexible Ball Joints: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing, designed for 360-degree rotation and angular deflection, and 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum pressure rating; complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials," and with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.
    - 1. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 and Smaller: 30-degree minimum.
    - 2. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 and Larger: 15-degree minimum.
    - 3. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
    - 4. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
    - 5. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
      - b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
- 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES
- A. Description: Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
      - b. Flexicraft Industries.
      - c. Metraflex, Inc.

d. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.

2.3 MATERIALS FOR ANCHORS

- A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.
- C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - 1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - 2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - 1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, 2-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - 2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- F. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi minimum. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink, non-metallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install manufactured, nonmetallic expansion joints according to FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
- B. Install expansion joints of sizes matching size of piping in which they are installed.
- C. Install alignment guides to allow expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION

- A. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.
  - 1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.4 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE INSTALLATION

- A. Install guides on piping adjoining pipe expansion fittings and loops.
- B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.
- C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.
- D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion-joint manufacturer's written instructions if expansion joints or compensators are indicated.
- E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

**END OF SECTION 230516**

## SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. High-performance butterfly valves.
8. Bronze lift check valves.
9. Bronze swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves.
11. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
12. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
13. Iron, center-guided check valves.
14. Iron, plate-type check valves.
15. Bronze gate valves.
16. Iron gate valves.
17. Bronze globe valves.
18. Iron globe valves.
19. Lubricated plug valves.
20. Eccentric plug valves.
21. Chainwheels.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 HVAC piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
- B. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
- C. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- D. AWWA C606 – Grooved and Shouldered Joints.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.



## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
  - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.

- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- C. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- D. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

### 2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Brass.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.
- B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.

- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.
- C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Legend Valve.
    - b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Brass.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Regular.
- D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
    - b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - j. Port: Regular.
- E. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
    - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Three piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Brass.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.
- F. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
    - b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Three piece.
    - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.

- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

## 2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Legend Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.
- B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - j. Port: Full.
- C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Regular.
- D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - b. Hammond Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.

- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - j. Port: Regular.
- E. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Three piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.
- F. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Three piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - j. Port: Full.
- 2.5 IRON BALL VALVES
- A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
    - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Split body.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    - h. Ball: Stainless steel.
    - i. Port: Full.
- 2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES
- A. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- B. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Crane Co.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- C. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Crane Co.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- D. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Crane Co.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.

- g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- E. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- F. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: NBR.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- G. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- H. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- I. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- J. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: NBR.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- K. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- L. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Legend Valve.



- d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Stainless steel.
- 2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES
- A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
    - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - f. Seal: EPDM.
- B. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. NPS 10 and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - g. Seal: EPDM.
- 2.8 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES
- A. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
    - b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
    - e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
    - f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
    - g. Disc: Carbon steel.
    - h. Service: Bidirectional.
- B. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.

- d. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
  - b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
  - f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
  - g. Disc: Carbon steel.
  - h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.9 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kitz Corporation.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.10 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Kitz Corporation.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
      - b. Kitz Corporation.
      - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - d. NIBCO INC.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
      - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - e. Ends: Threaded.
      - f. Disc: Bronze.
  - D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
      - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - c. NIBCO INC.
      - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
      - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - e. Ends: Threaded.
      - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- 2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES
- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
      - b. Kitz Corporation.
      - c. Legend Valve.
      - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - e. NIBCO INC.
      - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
      - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - f. Ends: Flanged.
      - g. Trim: Bronze.
      - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
      - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - f. Ends: Flanged.
      - g. Trim: Composition.
      - h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
      - i. Disc Holder: Bronze.

- j. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
        - k. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
      - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - c. NIBCO INC.
      - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
      - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - f. Ends: Flanged.
      - g. Trim: Bronze.
      - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- 2.12 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL
- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Spring-Closure Control:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. NIBCO INC.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
      - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - f. Ends: Flanged.
      - g. Trim: Bronze.
      - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
  - B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Crane Co.
      - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
      - c. NIBCO INC.
      - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
      - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
      - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - f. Ends: Flanged.
      - g. Trim: Bronze.
      - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.
- 2.13 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES
- A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Anvil International, Inc.
      - b. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
      - c. Victaulic Company.
    - 2. Description:
      - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
      - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - c. Seal: EPDM.
      - d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

- 2.14 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES
- A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Style: Compact wafer.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - f. Ends: Flanged.
    - g. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - f. Ends: Flanged.
    - g. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - f. Ends: Flanged.
    - g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- E. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.

- f. Ends: Flanged.
- g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.15 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - e. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - e. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- E. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - e. Body Material: ASTM A 395 or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- F. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.

- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
- e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.16 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- C. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.
- D. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.

- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.17 IRON GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Disc: Solid wedge.



- h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.18 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

### B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

### C. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

## 2.19 IRON GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

### B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.20 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

- A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - e. Pattern: Venturi.
    - f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- B. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milliken Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - e. Pattern: Venturi.
    - f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- C. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - e. Pattern: Venturi.
    - f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- D. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milliken Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
    - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 48 or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - e. Pattern: Venturi.
    - f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

## 2.21 ECCENTRIC PLUG VALVES

- A. 175 CWP, Eccentric Plug Valves with Resilient Seating.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Milliken Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-108.
    - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig minimum.
    - c. Body and Plug: ASTM A 48, gray iron; ASTM A 126, gray iron; or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.

- d. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Stem-Seal Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Plug, Resilient-Seating Material: Suitable for potable-water service unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.22 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  - 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  - 2. Attachment: For connection to ball butterfly and plug valve stems.
  - 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
  - 4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball butterfly gate globe and plug valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
  - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - 3. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 4. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe or angle valves.
  - 5. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.
8. END OF SECTION 230523

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for HVAC system piping and equipment:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  - 4. Metal framing systems.
  - 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
  - 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 7. Fastener systems.
  - 8. Pipe stands.
  - 9. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  - 2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-protection piping.
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  - 4. Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
  - 5. Division 23 Sections "Metal Ducts" and "Nonmetal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE SANDARDS

- A. ASTM A 36, Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars; Black and Galvanized.
- B. ASTM C 552, Type II Cellular Glass with Vapor Barrier
- C. ASTM C 533, Type I Calcium Silicate
- D. AWS D1.1, - Structural Welding Code--Steel.
- E. AWS D1.2, - Structural Welding Code--Aluminum.
- F. AWS D1.3, - Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel.
- G. AWS D1.4, - Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel.
- H. MSS SP-90, - Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports.
- I. ASTM C 1107, Factory-mixed and Packaged, Dry, Hydraulic-cement, Non-shrink and Non-metallic Grout; Suitable for Interior and Exterior Applications.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
    1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
    2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
    3. Fiberglass strut systems. Include Product Data for components.
    4. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
    5. Equipment supports.
  - C. Welding certificates.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
    2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
    3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
    4. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
    5. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
    1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
  - B. Manufacturers:
    1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    2. Grinnell Corp.
  - C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.
- 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS
- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.
- 2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS
- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers: Similar to MSS Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass and continuous-thread rod and nuts are made of polyurethane or stainless steel.
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - b. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers: Made of fiberglass loop with stainless-steel continuous-thread rod, nuts, and support hook.
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Plasti-Fab, Inc.
- 2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS
- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
  - B. Manufacturers:
    1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    2. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    3. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
  - D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

## 2.6 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, similar to MFMA-3, made of fiberglass channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 2. Cope, T. J., Inc.; Tyco International Ltd.

## 2.7 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Pipe Shields, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.8 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.

## 2.9 PIPE STAND FABRICATION

- A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
    - b. MIRO Industries.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. MIRO Industries.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
    - b. MIRO Industries.
  - 2. Base: Plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Portable Pipe Hangers.
  - 2. Bases: One or more plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.10 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and non-metallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and non-gaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
  - 10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.



18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
  1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
  1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.1 (for power piping) and ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- P. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.1 for power piping and ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
  - 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Refer to Division 09 Painting Sections.

**END OF SECTION 230529**

## SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Isolation pads.
  2. Isolation mounts.
  3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
  5. Housed spring mounts.
  6. Elastomeric hangers.
  7. Spring hangers.
  8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
  9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
  10. Resilient pipe guides.
  11. Freestanding and restrained air-mounting system.
  12. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails.
  13. Seismic snubbers.
  14. Restraining braces and cables.
  15. Steel and inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE (HVACA) - ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2015.
- C. FEMA 412 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment; 2002.
- D. FEMA 413 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment; 2004.
- E. FEMA 414 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Duct and Pipe; 2004.
- F. FEMA E-74 - Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide; 2012.
- G. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc.; 2017.
- H. SMACNA (SRM) - Seismic Duct Restraint Manual; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2008.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
  1. In accordance with code and acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  1. In accordance with code and acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
  - B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic and wind forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic and wind restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
      - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
    3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
    4. Seismic and Wind-Restraint Details:
      - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
      - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
      - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
      - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
  - C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
  - D. Welding certificates.
  - E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
  - F. Air-Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data performed by an independent agency.
  - G. Field quality-control test reports.
  - H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
  - C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a product by one of the following:
  1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Mason Industries.
  3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
- D. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a non-slip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- E. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
  1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- F. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
  1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- G. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
  1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- H. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
  1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- I. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
  1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
  2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
  3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- J. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- K. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
  1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.

4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- L. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
  1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- M. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig and for equal resistance in all directions.
- N. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.2 AIR-MOUNTING SYSTEMS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
- D. Air Mounts: Freestanding, single or multiple, compressed-air bellows.
  1. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows.
  2. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
  3. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig.
  4. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
  5. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- E. Restrained Air Mounts: Housed compressed-air bellows.
  1. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows and spring, with angle-iron frame having vertical-limit stops and channel-section top with leveling adjustment and attachment screws.
  2. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
  3. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig.
  4. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
  5. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch.

## 2.3 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Thybar Corporation.
  3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.



- D. General Requirements for Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- E. Lower Support Assembly: Formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
- F. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
  - 1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or wind restraint.
    - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
    - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
    - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
    - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
    - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 2. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a non-slip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
    - a. Resilient Material: Oil and water resistant standard neoprene.
- G. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- H. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

#### 2.4 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 2. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
- D. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- E. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
  - 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

#### 2.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
    - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - 2. Hilti, Inc.
    - 3. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - D. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
  - E. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
    - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
    - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
    - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch thick resilient cushion.
  - F. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
  - G. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
  - H. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
  - I. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
  - J. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
  - K. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
  - L. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
  - M. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.
- 2.6 FACTORY FINISHES
- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
    - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
    - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
    - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
    - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic and wind control devices to indicate capacity range.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic and wind control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- B. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- I. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post-connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  9. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  10. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
  11. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
  12. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.6 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
  - B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
  - C. Adjust air-spring leveling mechanism.
  - D. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
  - E. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.
- 3.7 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-mounting systems. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration And Training."

**END OF SECTION 230548**

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Equipment labels.
    - 2. Warning signs and labels.
    - 3. Pipe labels.
    - 4. Duct labels.
    - 5. Stencils.
    - 6. Valve tags.
    - 7. Warning tags.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2015.
  - B. ASTM D709 - Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials; 2017.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
  - C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
  - D. Valve numbering scheme.
  - E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
  - B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
  - C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS
  - A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
    - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch, Stainless steel, 0.025-inch, Aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
    - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
    - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
    - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
    - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
  - B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
    - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
    - 2. Letter Color: White.
    - 3. Background Color: Black.
    - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
    - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
  - D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
- 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS
- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - B. Letter Color: Yellow.
  - C. Background Color: Red.
  - D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
  - I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.
- 2.3 PIPE LABELS
- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
  - B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
  - C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
  - D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
    1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
    2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.
- 2.4 DUCT LABELS
- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - B. Letter Color: White.
  - C. Background Color: Blue.
  - D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  - E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
  - I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
    1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
    2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.
- 2.5 STENCILS
- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.6 VALVE TAGS
- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
    1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch, Stainless steel, 0.025-inch, Aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
    2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
  - B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
    1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
- 2.7 WARNING TAGS
- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
    1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
    2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
    3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
    4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 PREPARATION
- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.
- 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION
- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
  - B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION
- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles] [, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
    1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
    2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
  - B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
    1. Near each valve and control device.
    2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
    3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
    4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
    5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
    6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
    7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
  - C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
    1. Refrigerant Piping:
      - a. Background Color: Black.
      - b. Letter Color: Red.

### 3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
  - 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  - 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  - 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  - 4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels, showing service and flow direction, may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Refrigerant: 2 inches, square.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - c. Gas: 2 inches, square.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Refrigerant: Natural.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural.
    - c. Gas: Natural.
  - 3. Letter Color:
    - a. Refrigerant: Black.
    - b. Hot Water: Black.
    - c. Gas: Black.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**END OF SECTION 230553**



## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Dual-duct systems.
    - c. Variable-air-volume systems.
    - d. Multizone systems.
    - e. Induction-unit systems.
  - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
    - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AABC MN-1 - AABC National Standards for Total System Balance; Associated Air Balance Council; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE Std 111 - Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2008 (RA 2017).
- C. NEBB (TAB) - Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems; National Environmental Balancing Bureau; 2005, Seventh Edition.
- D. SMACNA (TAB) - HVAC Systems Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2002.
- E. AMCA 201, - Fans and Systems,
- F. SMACNA's - HVAC Systems - Duct Design, Current Edition.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.

- 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
  - B. TAB Conference: Meet with Area Construction Manager on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
    - 1. Agenda Items:
      - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
      - b. The TAB plan.
      - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
      - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
  - C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
    - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
    - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
  - D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by the Engineer of Record.
  - E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
  - B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
  - B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
  - B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
  - C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
  - D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
  - E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts and Nonmetal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
  - F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
    - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
    - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
  - G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
  - H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
  - I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 and SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
  1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  1. Measure total airflow.

- a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
    - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
      - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
      - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
      - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
      - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
    - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
      - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
    - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
    - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
    - 6. Obtain approval from Engineer of Record for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
    - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
  - B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
    - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
      - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
    - 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
    - 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
    - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
  - D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
    - 1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
    - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
- 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS
  - A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
    - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
    - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
    - 3. Motor rpm.
    - 4. Efficiency rating.
    - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
    - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
    - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS
  - A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
  - B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
  - C. Record compressor data.
- 3.8 TOLERANCES
  - A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply and Return Fans: Zero to plus 10 percent.
2. Exhaust and Equipment with Fans: Zero to plus 10 percent..
3. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.

### 3.9 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.10 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  1. Pump curves.
  2. Fan curves.
  3. Manufacturers' test data.
  4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
  1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  4. Balancing stations.

5. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - i. Return airflow in cfm.
    - j. Outdoor-air damper position.
    - k. Return-air damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft.
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Gas Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.

- d. Model number and unit size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Fuel type in input data.
  - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
  - h. Ignition type.
  - i. Burner-control types.
  - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
  - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
  - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
  - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
  - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
  - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
  - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
  - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
  - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
  - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
  - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
  - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
  - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
  - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Coil identification.
  - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
  - e. Number of stages.
  - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
  - g. Rated amperage.
  - h. Air flow rate in cfm.
  - i. Face area in sq. ft.
  - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Heat output in Btu/h.
  - b. Air flow rate in cfm.
  - c. Air velocity in fpm.
  - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - f. Voltage at each connection.
  - g. Amperage for each phase.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
  - J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
    - 1. Report Data:
      - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
      - b. Location and zone.
      - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
      - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
      - e. Duct size in inches.
      - f. Duct area in sq. ft.
      - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
      - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
      - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
      - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
      - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
  - K. Instrument Calibration Reports:
    - 1. Report Data:
      - a. Instrument type and make.
      - b. Serial number.
      - c. Application.
      - d. Dates of use.
      - e. Dates of calibration.
- 3.11 INSPECTIONS
- A. Initial Inspection:
    - 1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
    - 2. Check the following for each system:
      - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
      - b. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
      - c. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
      - d. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.
  - B. Final Inspection:
    - 1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Area Construction Manager.
    - 2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Area Construction Manager.
    - 3. Area Construction Manager shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
    - 4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
    - 5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
  - C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
    - 1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.



2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports. Submit to General Contractor and McDonald's.
- 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS
- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
  - B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

**END OF SECTION 230593**

## SECTION 230700 - HVAC INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulation Materials:
    - a. Calcium silicate.
    - b. Cellular glass.
    - c. Flexible elastomeric.
    - d. Mineral fiber.
    - e. Fire-rated insulation systems.
  - 2. Insulating cements.
  - 3. Adhesives.
  - 4. Mastics.
  - 5. Lagging adhesives.
  - 6. Sealants.
  - 7. Factory-applied jackets.
  - 8. Tapes.
  - 9. Securements.
  - 10. Corner angles.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Insulation."
  - 3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.
  - 4. Division 33 Section "Underground Hydronic Energy Distribution" for loose-fill pipe insulation in underground piping outside the building.
  - 5. Division 33 Section "Underground Steam and Condensate Distribution Piping" for loose-fill pipe insulation in underground piping outside the building.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2010.
- B. ASTM C553 - Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2011.
- C. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation; 2010.
- D. ASTM C916 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation; 1985 (Reapproved 2007).
- E. ASTM C1071 - Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material); 2012.
- F. ASTM C1290 - Standard Specification for Flexible Fibrous Glass Blanket Insulation Used to Externally Insulate HVAC Ducts; 2011.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2012.
- H. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2010.
- I. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- J. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  8. Detail field application for each equipment type.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
  - B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
    1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
    2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
  - C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.
- 1.8 SCHEDULING
- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
  - B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS
- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
  - B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
  - C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
  - D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
  - E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
  - F. Calcium Silicate:
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Industrial Insulation Group; Thermo-12 Gold.
    2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cell-U-Foam Corporation; Ultra-CUF.
    - b. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas Super K.
  2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket or III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.
- J. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- K. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
- L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Knauf Insulation; Permawick Pipe Insulation.
    - b. Owens Corning; VaporWick Pipe Insulation.
- M. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
    - b. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-97.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27/81-93.
    - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 290.
    - d. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
- C. Cellular-Glass, Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
    - b. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-52.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-42.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 130.
  - d. Vimasco Corporation; 136.
- 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct, equipment, and pipe insulation.
- 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
- 4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-70.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45/30-46.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
6. Color: White or gray.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9

### SECUREMENTS

#### A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Products; Bands.
  - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
  - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

#### B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; CD.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series T.
    - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series TSA.

- 2) GEMCO; Press and Peel.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
  - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
- 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) GEMCO.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.
    - b. Childers Products.

#### 2.10 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or 316.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

#### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.



- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistant joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment.

Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Boiler Breechings and Ducts:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
  2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
  3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
  3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
- E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

### 3.7 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
  - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
  - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions; where access to top of ductwork is limited, adhesive application to top of ductwork may be omitted.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- F. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions; where access to top of ductwork is limited, adhesive application to top of ductwork may be omitted..
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.9 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.10 FINISHES

- A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  3. Indoor, concealed return located in nonconditioned space.
  4. Indoor, exposed return located in nonconditioned space.
  5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
  8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
  9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
  12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  5. Flexible connectors.
  6. Vibration-control devices.
  7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

**END OF SECTION 230700**

## SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. General
    - a. Related Documents
    - b. Summary
    - c. Reference Standards
    - d. Submittals
    - e. Quality Assurance
    - f. Delivery/Storage
    - g. Coordination
  - 2. Products
    - a. Building Automation System Specification
  - 3. Execution
    - a. Manufacturers
    - b. Communication, Interface, Software, and Controllers
    - c. Demonstration
    - d. Field Quality Control

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI CEA 709.1.C -Control Network Protocol Specification; 2010.
- B. ASHRAE Std 135 - BACnet - A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks; 2012.
- C. NFPA 70 -National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. NEMA 250 -Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2008.

#### 1.4 SUBMITALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installations and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer and model number.
  - 2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
  - 3. Wiring diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
  - 5. Written description of sequence of operation.
  - 6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
  - 7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.



- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For Building Automation System to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device.
  - 2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
  - 3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
  - 4. Inspection period, cleaning methods cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
  - 5. Calibration records and list of set points.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA70, Article100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY/STORAGE

- A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.
- B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location of sensors, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- B. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM SPECIFICATION

- A. Control system description
  - 1. The Building Automation System shall be as indicated on the drawings and described in these specifications. System must be fully integrated and coordinated with mechanical equipment DDC controllers furnished and installed in the equipment manufacturer's factory as specified in those sections. The intent of the BAS is to integrate most mechanical and lighting equipment into one system for global monitoring, control, and alarming associated with the building. It is the BAS manufacturer's responsibility to provide all the design, engineering, and field coordination required to ensure all equipment sequence of operations are met as specified and the designated BAS operators have the capability of managing the building mechanical system to ensure occupant comfort while maintaining energy efficiency.
  - 2. The BAS shall meet BACnet communication standards to ensure the system maintains "interoperability" to avoid proprietary arrangements that will make it difficult for the Owner to consider other BAS manufacturers in future projects. These open protocol communication standards are discussed in more detail later in this specification.
  - 3. Direct Digital Control (DDC) technology shall be used to provide the functions necessary for control of mechanical systems and terminal devices on this project
  - 4. The BAS shall accommodate simultaneous multiple user operation. Access to the control system data should be limited only by the security permissions of the operator role via different customizable profiles. Profiles shall have the option to be made read only profiles or read and write profiles. All users shall have access to all valid system data. An operator shall be able to log onto an operator profile from any computer with internet access and have access to all appropriate data.
  - 5. The BAS manufacturer shall provide all hardware and software necessary to implement the functions and sequence of operations specified.
- B. System Performance
  - 1. Performance Standards. The BAS system shall conform to the following:

- a. Graphic Display. The system shall display a graphic with a minimum of 20 dynamic points. All current data shall be displayed within 10 seconds of the operator's request.
- b. Graphic Refresh. The system shall update all dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
- c. Object Command. The maximum time between the command of a binary object by the operator and the reaction by the device shall be 5 seconds. Analog objects shall start to adjust within 5 seconds.
- d. Object Scan. All changes of state and change of analog values shall be transmitted over the high-speed network such that any data used or displayed at a controller or workstation will be current within the prior 10 seconds.
- e. Alarm Response Time. The maximum time from when an object goes into alarm to when it is annunciated at the workstation shall not exceed 60 seconds.
- f. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 seconds. The Contractor shall be responsible for selecting execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
- g. Programmable Controllers shall be able to execute DDC PID control loops at a selectable frequency from at least once every 5 seconds. The controller shall scan and update the process value and output generated by this calculation at this same frequency.
- h. Multiple Alarm Annunciations. All workstations on the network shall receive alarms within 5 seconds of each other.
- i. Reporting Accuracy. Table 1 lists minimum acceptable reporting accuracies for all values reported by the specified system
  - a. Table 1: Reporting Accuracy

Measured Variable	Reported Accuracy
Space Temperature	±0.5°C [±1°F]
Ducted Air	±1.0°C [±2°F]
Outside Air	±1.0°C [±2°F]
Delta –T	±0.15°C[±0.25°F]
Relative Humidity	±5% RH
Air Flow (terminal)	±10% of reading *Note 1
Air Flow (measuring stations)	±5% of reading
Air Pressure (ducts)	±25 Pa [±0.1 "W.G.]
Air Pressure (space)	±3 Pa [±0.01 "W.G.]
Electrical Power	5% of reading *Note 3
Carbon Dioxide (CO2)	± 50 PPM

Note 1: (10%-100% of scale) (cannot read accurately below 10%)  
 Note 2: for both absolute and differential pressure  
 Note 3: \* not including utility supplied meters

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, use only approved manufacturers.
  - 1. TRANE
  - 2. LENNOX/ C+C

#### 3.2 COMMUNICATION, INTERFACE, SOFTWARE, AND CONTROLLERS

- A. Communication
  - 1. This project shall be comprised of a system controller that allows for remote access via broadband and to a touchscreen for local control. Communications between System Controller and Application Specific Controllers shall be as defined below.

- a. System Controller shall perform communications to a network of Custom Application and Application Specific Controllers using BACnet.
    - 1) Each System Controller shall function as a BACnet Router to each unit controller providing a unique BACnet Device ID for all controllers within the system.
    - 2) Wireless equipment controllers and auxiliary control devices shall conform to:
      - a) IEE 802.15.4 radios to minimize risk of interference and maximize battery life, reliability, and range.
      - b) Operating range shall be a minimum of 200 feet (60 m); open range shall be 2,500 ft. (762 m) with less than 2% packet error rate.
      - c) To maintain robust communication, mesh networking and two-way communications shall be used to optimize the wireless network health.
      - d) Wireless communication shall be capable of many-to-one sensors per controller to support averaging, monitoring, and multiple zone applications.
      - e) Certifications shall include FCC CFR47 - RADIO FREQUENCY DEVICES - Section 15.247 & Subpart E
  - 2. Each System Controller shall perform communications to a network of Custom Application and Application Specific Controllers using BACnet/MSTP (RS485) as defined by the BACnet
  - 3. Direct Digital Control (DDC) technology shall be used to provide the functions necessary for control of mechanical systems and terminal devices on this project standard.
- B. Operator interface
- 1. Local Occupant Interface – Touch sensitive display
    - a. A wall mounted touch screen display shall be provided for local access to the system.
    - b. The local occupant interface shall provide a single point from which to perform limited set point adjustment for multiple pieces of equipment.
    - c. The local occupant interface shall optionally provide scheduling with the ability to schedule events at least 1 year in advance.
    - d. The local occupant interface shall optionally include pin control and limited temperature adjustments.
    - e. The local occupant interface shall display contact information of a service provider.
    - f. The local occupant interface shall optionally display alerts that require service of the connected equipment.
    - g. The local occupant interface shall be in English, and include an option for Spanish.
    - h. Local Occupant Interface Touch Sensitive Display Hardware Requirements:
      - 1) Input power: 5-12 VDC
      - 2) Temperature 0°C to 40°C
      - 3) Humidity: 85%
    - i. Local Occupant Interface Touch Screen Display must meet the following Agency Compliance:
      - 1) ROHS
      - 2) FCC CFR title 47, Part 15
      - 3) CE Compliant
      - 4) Provide a minimum of two override pushbuttons. One is for the HVAC system and the other for the lighting. When an override button is pressed, the HVAC or lighting is enable for a time period of up to two additional hour. Repeated pressing of the override button shall not automatically extend the override time. When the override button times out, control returns to normal operation. The system shall keep track of overtime hours for reporting purposes. The override capability shall not circumvent the predictive demand control or specified set points.
    - j. Programming Requirements:
      - 1) Provide a means to program and make programing changes both in the store and remotely.
  - 2. Wireless Zone Sensors
    - a. Battery life shall be 10 years or greater to minimize the need for battery replacement in typical operating conditions.
    - b. Check for proper operation, prior to turning on the system.
- C. Controller software
- 1. Furnish the following applications software for building and energy management. All software applications shall reside and run in the system controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at the building operator interface.

- a. Scheduling. Provide the capability to schedule each object or group of objects in the system. Each of these schedules shall include the capability for start, stop, and night economizer actions. Each schedule may consist of up to [10] events. When a group of objects are scheduled together, provide the capability to define advances and delays for each member. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
    - 1) Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week.
    - 2) Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. This exception schedule shall override the standard schedule for that day. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed it will be discarded and replaced by the standard schedule for that day of the week.
- D. Building controllers
- 1. There shall be one or more independent, standalone microprocessor-based system controllers to manage the global strategies described in application and control software section.
    - a. The System Controller shall have sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
    - b. The controller shall provide a USB communications port for connection to a PC.
    - c. The operating system of the Controller shall manage the input and output communications signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual point information and allow central monitoring and alarms.
    - d. All System Controllers shall have a real time clock
    - e. Data shall be shared between networked System Controllers.
    - f. The System Controller shall continually check the status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, the controller shall:
      - 1) Assume a predetermined failure mode.
      - 2) Generate an alarm notification.
      - 3) Create a retrievable file of the state of all applicable memory locations at the time of the failure.
      - 4) Automatically reset the System Controller to return to a normal operating mode.
    - g. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions. Controller used in conditioned ambient shall be mounted in an enclosure and shall be rated for operation at -40° C to 50° C [-40° F to 122° F].
    - h. Clock Synchronization.
      - 1) All System Controllers shall be able to synchronize with an NTP server for automatic time synchronization.
      - 2) All System Controllers shall be able to accept a BACnet time synchronization command for automatic time synchronization.
      - 3) All System Controllers shall automatically adjust for daylight savings time if applicable.
    - i. Serviceability
      - 1) Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communications, and processor.
      - 2) The System Controller shall have a display on the main board that indicates the current operating mode of the controller.
      - 3) all wiring connections shall be made to field removable, modular terminal connectors.
      - 4) The System controller shall utilize standard DIN mounting methods for installation and replacement.
    - j. Memory. The System Controller shall maintain all BIOS and programming information indefinitely without power to the System controller
    - k. Immunity to power and noise. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shut-down below 80% nominal voltage.
  - 2. Installation Utility
    - a. The system shall be capable of being installed from the local interface. Installation consists of the following tasks:
      - 1) The unit controllers shall be addressed by methods other than software settings such as rotary switches for ease in troubleshooting communication issues.
      - 2) Communicating Unit controller devices shall be automatically discovered by the coordinating system panel.
      - 3) Equipment shall be combined to form systems from the local display
      - 4) Schedules shall be created from the local display.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the Building Automation System.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Ensure the suppliers perform remote commissioning on the system.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform remote commissioning with Contractor to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

**END OF SECTION 230900**

## SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  2. Piping specialties.
  3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  4. Valves.
  5. Pressure regulators.
  6. Service meters.
  7. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  8. Grout.
  9. Concrete bases.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2016.
- B. ASME B16.5 - Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings; 2017 (ANSI/ASME B16.5)
- C. ASME B16.12 - Cast Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings; 2009 (R2014).
- D. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- E. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2017.
- F. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.; 2009.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig or less.
- C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  1. Piping specialties.
  2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  5. Service meters. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities. Include bypass fittings and meter bars.
  6. Dielectric fittings.
  7. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  8. Escutcheons.

- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
    - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
    - 2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for service meter assembly and pressure regulator assembly.
  - C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
    - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - D. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
  - E. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
  - F. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
  - G. Welding certificates.
  - H. Field quality-control reports.
  - I. Operation and Maintenance Data: For motorized gas valves, pressure regulators and service meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
  - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
  - C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
  - D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.
- 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- 1.10 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
  - B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS
- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
    - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
    - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234 / A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
    - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
    - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
      - a. Material Group: 1.1.
      - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
      - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.

- d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
- e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
- 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
  - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
- 6. Mechanical Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
    - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
  - b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
  - e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. OmegaFlex, Inc.
    - b. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Parflex Division.
    - c. Titeflex.
    - d. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.
  - 2. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  - 4. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 5. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
  - 6. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
  - 7. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. Aluminum Tubing: Comply with ASTM B 210 and ASTM B 241.
  - 1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy 5456 is prohibited.
  - 2. Protective Coating: Factory-applied coating capable of resisting corrosion on tubing in contact with masonry, plaster, insulation, water, detergents, and sewerage.
  - 3. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
    - a. Copper-alloy fittings.
    - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    - c. Dryseal threads shall comply with ASME B1.20.3.
- D. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
  - 1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
  - 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 3. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
    - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
    - b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
    - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
    - d. Factory-connected anode.
    - e. Tracer wire connection.
    - f. Ultraviolet shield.



- g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
- 4. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - 2) Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
    - 3) Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  - b. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Acetal collets.
  - e. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
- 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - 2) Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
    - 3) Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  - b. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
  - c. PE body tube.
  - d. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - e. Acetal collets.
  - f. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- 6. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
    - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
  - b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
  - e. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
  - 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
  - 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
  - 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
  - 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
  - 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.
- B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
  - 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
  - 2. Nitrile seals.
  - 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
  - 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
  - 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.
- C. Y-Pattern Strainers:
  - 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- D. Basket Strainers:
  - 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Strainer Screen: 60 mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

- E. T-Pattern Strainers:
  1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
  2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
  3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
  4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.
- F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

### 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lee Brass Company.
    - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Plug: Bronze.

4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - b. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
    - c. Xomox Corporation; a Crane company.
  2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
  3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
  4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
  5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
  6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- G. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Flowserve.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - d. Milliken Valve Company.
    - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
    - f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
  3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
  4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
  5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
  6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- H. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
    - b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - c. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  2. Body: PE.
  3. Ball: PE.
  4. Stem: Acetal.
  5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
  6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
  7. CWP Rating: 80 psig.
  8. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
  9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
  10. Include plastic valve extension.
  11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.
- I. Valve Boxes:
1. Cast-iron, two-section box.

2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

- A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Honeywell International Inc.
    - b. Johnson Controls.
  3. Body: Brass or aluminum.
  4. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  5. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
  6. Normally closed.
  7. Visual position indicator.
  8. Electrical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.
- B. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
    - b. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Climate & Industrial Controls Group; Skinner Valve Div.
    - c. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Pilot operated.
  3. Body: Brass or aluminum.
  4. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  5. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
  6. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
  7. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
  8. Normally closed.
  9. Visual position indicator.

## 2.6 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

- A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pacific Seismic Products, Inc.
  2. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Maximum Operating Pressure: 7 psig.
  4. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
  5. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
  6. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
  7. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
  8. Level indicator.
  9. End Connections: Threaded for valves NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for valves NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

## 2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
  2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
  3. Elevation compensator.
  4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Meter Company.
    - b. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.

- c. Invensys.
    - 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
    - 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
    - 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
    - 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
    - 6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
    - 7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
    - 8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
    - 9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
    - 10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
    - 11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
    - 12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
  - C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. American Meter Company.
      - b. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
      - c. Invensys.
      - d. Maxitrol Company.
    - 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
    - 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
    - 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
    - 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
    - 6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
    - 7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
    - 8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
    - 9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
    - 10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
    - 11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
    - 12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.
  - D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Maxitrol Company.
    - 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
    - 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
    - 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
    - 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
    - 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
    - 7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
    - 8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.
- 2.8 SERVICE METERS
- A. Diaphragm-Type Service Meters: Comply with ANSI B109.2.
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. American Meter Company.
      - b. Invensys.
    - 2. Case: Die-cast aluminum.
    - 3. Connections: Steel threads.
    - 4. Diaphragm: Synthetic fabric.
    - 5. Diaphragm Support Bearings: Self-lubricating.
    - 6. Compensation: Continuous temperature and pressure.
    - 7. Meter Index: Cubic feet.

8. Meter Case and Index: Tamper resistant.
  9. Remote meter reader compatible.
  10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
  11. Pressure Loss: Maximum 0.5-inch wg.
  12. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus 1.0 percent.
- B. Rotary-Type Service Meters: Comply with ANSI B109.3.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Meter Company.
    - b. Invensys.
  2. Case: Extruded aluminum.
  3. Connection: Flange.
  4. Impellers: Polished aluminum.
  5. Rotor Bearings: Self-lubricating.
  6. Compensation: Continuous temperature and pressure.
  7. Meter Index: Cubic feet.
  8. Tamper resistant.
  9. Remote meter reader compatible.
  10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
  11. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus 2.0 percent.
- C. Service-Meter Bars:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Meter Company.
    - b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
  2. Malleable- or cast-iron frame for supporting service meter.
  3. Include offset swivel pipes, meter nuts with o-ring seal, and factory- or field-installed dielectric unions.
  4. Omit meter offset swivel pipes if service-meter bar dimensions match service-meter connections.
- D. Service-Meter Bypass Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - b. Williamson, T. D., Inc.
  2. Ferrous, tee, pipe fitting with capped side inlet for temporary natural-gas supply.
  3. Integral ball-check bypass valve.
- 2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS
- A. Dielectric Unions:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
  2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
  4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
  5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
  2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
  4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
  5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.
- 2.10 SLEEVES
- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.11 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Metraflex Company.
    - b. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

#### 2.12 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube, and OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With exposed-rivet hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

#### 2.13 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink and non-metallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

#### 2.14 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 or the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 or the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

#### 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 or the International Fuel Gas Code acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- H. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- I. Install pressure gage downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

#### 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 or the International Fuel Gas Code acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - e. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
    - f. Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - d. Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
    - e. Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.



- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  - 5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- W. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- X. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.5 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground.
- B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
- C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.
- D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
- E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
- F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
- G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

### 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.

- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.
- H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

### 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
  5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 3/8: Maximum span, 48 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  2. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  3. NPS 3/4 and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
    - c. Color: Gray.
  - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
    - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
    - b. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
    - c. Color: Gray.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.12 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 or the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.14 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

### 3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - C. Underground, below building, piping shall be the following:
    1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
    2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
  - D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
  - E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- 3.17 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE
- A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
  - B. Underground:
    1. PE valves.
    2. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
    3. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated plug valves.
- 3.18 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE
- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
    1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
    2. Two-piece, regular-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    3. Bronze plug valve.
  - B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
    1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    2. Bronze plug valve.
    3. Cast-iron, non-lubricated plug valve.
  - C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
    1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
    2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    3. Bronze plug valve.
  - D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
    1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    2. Bronze plug valve.
    3. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
  - E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
    1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
    2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    3. Bronze plug valve.

**END OF SECTION 231123**

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.
7. Seismic-restraint devices.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
3. Division 23 Section "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
4. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. SMACNA's HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- B. ASCE SEI/ASCE 7-2016 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures, ASCE/SEI 2016.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - STANDARD SPECIFICATION FOR STEEL SHEET, ZINC-COATED (GALVANIZED) OR ZINC-IRON ALLOY-COATED (GALVANNEALED) BY THE HOT-DIP PROCESS.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.

10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment , seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
  4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  5. Design Calculations: Calculations , including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Perimeter moldings.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  3. AWS D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS
- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - c. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
  - B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
  - C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  - D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
    - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - e. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
      - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - B. Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Bonded Logic, Inc.
      - b. Reflectix Inc.
    2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested according to ASTM C 518.
    3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.
    4. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
      - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
    1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
    2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
    1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
    2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
    3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
    4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
    5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
    6. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
    7. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
      - a. Fan discharges.
      - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    8. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.
- 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS
- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
    1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
    2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
    3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
    4. Water resistant.
    5. Mold and mildew resistant.



6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
  9. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  10. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  11. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
  6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Non-corrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## 2.7 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Hilti Corp.
  - 3. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: Shop or field fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

- 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT
- A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
  - B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 12 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.
  - C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3.4 DUCT SEALING
- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
    1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
    3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
    4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
    5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
    6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
    7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
    8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
    9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
    10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
    11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
    12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
- 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION
- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
  - B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
    1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
    2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
    3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
    4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
    5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
  - C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
  - D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
  - E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
  - F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- 3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION
- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with ASCE/SEI 7.
    1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
    2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
  - B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
  - C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
  - D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
  - E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
  - G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
    1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
    2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
    3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
    4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
    5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.
- 3.7 CONNECTIONS
- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
  - B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.
- 3.8 PAINTING
- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - B. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.10 DUCT CLEANING
- A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
  - B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
    1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
    2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
    3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
  - C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
    1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
    2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
  - D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
    1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
    2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
    3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
    4. Coils and related components.
    5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
    6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
    7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
  - E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.11 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

#### A. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

#### B. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

#### C. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
  - a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
2. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
  - a. Concealed: Carbon-steel sheet.
  - b. Welded seams and joints.
  - c. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - d. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
  - e. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
3. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:
  - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
  - b. Exposed to View: No. 3 finish.
  - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
  - d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
  - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
  - f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.

- g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
- 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- D. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
  - 2. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.
- F. Liner:
  - 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Natural fiber, 2 inches thick.
  - 2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Natural fiber, 2 inches thick.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
    - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.
- H. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

**END OF SECTION 233113**

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manual volume dampers.
  - 2. Turning vanes.
  - 3. Duct-mounted access doors.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Flexible ducts.
  - 6. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
  - 2. Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. SMACNA's HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- B. ASTM A653/a653m - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (galvanized) or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) by the hot-dip process.
- C. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-rolled Stainless and Heat-resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip.
- D. ASTM B209 - 10 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- E. ASTM B221 - 12 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
- F. NFPA 90A, - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Duct security bars.
    - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 4. Ruskin Company.
  - 5. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg.
- E. Frame: 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. Electric actuators.
  - 4. Chain pulls.
  - 5. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  - 6. Screen Material: Aluminum.
  - 7. Screen Type: Bird.
  - 8. 90-degree stops.

### 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - b. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
    - c. Ruskin Company.
    - d. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating , with linkage outside airstream.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

4. Frames:
  - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - b. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
    - c. Ruskin Company.
    - d. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  2. Standard leakage rating.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - b. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
    - c. Ruskin Company.
    - d. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  2. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames:
    - a. Angle shaped.
    - b. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
    - c. Mitered and welded corners.
    - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.

- b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
    - 8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
    - 9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
    - 10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
    - 11. Accessories:
      - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - b. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
    - c. Ruskin Company.
    - d. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Angle-shaped, 0.10-inch thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch thick aluminum sheet.
    - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch thick extruded aluminum.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  - 9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
  - 10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  - 11. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- E. Jackshaft:
  - 1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  - 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware:
  - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.4 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.5 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Flame Gard, Inc.
  - 3. 3M.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0428-inch stainless steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch wide, 0.028-inch thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
- C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.
- D. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
  - 2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## 2.8 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
  - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
  - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- M. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- N. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
  - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

**END OF SECTION 233300**

## SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Ceiling-mounting ventilators.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.

#### 1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2016.
- B. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2005 (R2012).
- C. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 20016 (ANSI/AMCA 210, same as ANSI/ASHRAE 51).
- D. AMCA (DIR) - [Directory of] Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; <http://www.amca.org/certified/search/company.aspx>.
- E. MCA 300 - Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2014.
- F. ANSI/AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2014.
- G. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
- H. UL 705 - Power Ventilators; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  6. Roof curbs.
  7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
  2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.
- D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705 and/or UL 762.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck.
- B. Description: Direct-centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.
- C. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
  - 1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains and grease collector.
  - 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- E. Accessories:
  - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  - 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside or outside fan housing depending on selected unit, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  - 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  - 4. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
  - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
  - 2. Overall Height: See Drawings.
  - 3. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck.
- B. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.
- C. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- D. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- E. Grille: Plastic, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
  - 2. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
  - 3. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- B. Enclosure Type: Open drip proof.
- C. Type: See Drawings.

- 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
  - B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
  - B. Secure roof-mounting fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
  - C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
  - D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
  - E. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
    2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
    3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
    4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
    5. Adjust belt tension.
    6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
    7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
    8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
    9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
    10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
    11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- 3.3 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - B. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

**END OF SECTION 233423**



## SECTION 233433 - AIR CURTAINS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY:

- A. This Section includes air curtains.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS:

- A. AMCA 300 - Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2014.
- B. ANSI/AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2014.
- C. AMCA (DIR) - [Directory of] Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; <http://www.amca.org/certified/search/company.aspx>.
- D. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2016.
- E. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2005 (R2012).
- F. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
- G. UL 705 - Power Ventilators; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2016 (ANSI/AMCA 210, same as ANSI/ASHRAE 51).

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities and operating characteristics including but not limited to electrical ratings, motor quantities and horsepower, airflow, discharge velocity, outlet air velocity uniformity and noise rating, furnished specialties, and accessories for each unit.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of air curtains and are based on the specific product indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with AMCA 220, "Test Methods for Air Curtain Units," for airflow, outlet velocity, and power consumption.
- D. Comply with ARI 410, "Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils," for components, construction, and rating.
  - 1. Certify coils according to ARI 410.
- E. Comply with ANSI/NSF 37, "Air Curtains for Entrances in Food and Food Service Establishments" where specified.
- F. Comply with ANSI/UL 1995 where required.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION:

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of air curtains, mounting system and all components associated with the air curtains with other construction.
- B. Notify the architect/engineer of any coordination conflicts prior to installation of the air curtain or other associated parts and accessories so that the installation can be coordinated prior to installation. Any installation that is commenced or completed without coordination is subject to rejection of the work and must be redone as required to meet the intent of the contract documents.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY:

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air curtains that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: All components, coils, accessories and controls: Two years.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Powered Aire, Inc.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Housing Materials: Stainless steel.
- B. Intake Grille: Removable perforated stainless steel or fixed louver grille with bug screen.
- C. Discharge Nozzle: Integral part of the housing, containing a maximum 20 degree adjustable air foil vane.

### **2.3 FANS**

- A. Wheels: Galvanized steel centrifugal forward-curved, double inlet design with zinc-plated hubs, statically and dynamically balanced.
- B. Drives: Direct.

### **2.4 MOTORS:**

- A. Type: Variable speed, heavy duty, resiliently mounted, continuous duty, totally enclosed, air over with integral thermal-overload protection.
- B. Bearings: Heavy duty type permanently-sealed, shielded, lifetime, pre-lubricated ball bearings of equal size.
- C. Disconnect: Internally or externally-mounted NEMA 1 switch.

### **2.5 ELECTRIC HEATING COILS**

- A. Coil Assembly: Comply with UL 1995.
- B. Frame: Galvanized-steel frame.
- C. Heating Elements: Open-coil resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium, supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
- D. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from duct or unit.
  - 1. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually reset or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.
- E. Control Panel: Unit-mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
  - 1. Magnetic contactor.
  - 2. Toggle switches; one per step.
  - 3. Step controller.
  - 4. Time-delay relay.
  - 5. Airflow proving switch.

### **2.6 FILTERS**

- A. Filter Type: Removable and cleanable lifetime filter
- B. Access: Through air intake grille.

### **2.7 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Mounting Brackets: Steel construction of shape and size as coordinated with the mounting location.
- B. Automatic Door Switch: Magnetic, remotely installed in the door or window area to activate the unit each time the door opens and deactivate the unit each time the door closes.
- C. Adjustable Time Delay: Integral part of the unit, only used with an automatic door switch. Air curtain unit to operate until specified time (adjustable from 2.0 to 120 seconds) after the door or window closes.
- D. Heating Coil Lock-out: For electrically heated units, an outdoor air temperature sensor shall be connected to the heating control circuit to lock-out the heating coil when outdoor air temperatures are higher than 55 degrees Fahrenheit.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION:**

- A. Examine the installation location where each air curtain will be installed to confirm that the installation location is in accordance with the Contract Documents and the Manufacturer™s Installation Instructions.

- B. If there are any concerns regarding the installation location with respect to any aspect of the installation or performance of the air curtain notify the architect/engineer in order to resolve the concern.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION:
- A. Install each air curtain in accordance with the Installation Instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- 3.3 SYSTEM STARTUP
- A. Startup each air curtain in accordance with the manufacturer™s Operations and Maintenance Manual and Installation Instructions.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:
- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    1. After installing air curtains completely, perform visual and mechanical check of individual components.
    2. After electrical circuitry has been energized, start unit to confirm motor rotation and unit operation.
    3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING:
- A. Adjust air-directional vanes.
- 3.6 CLEANING:
- A. Clean the outside of each air curtain of any dirt, debris, grease, grime or other material.
  - B. Clean the inside of each air curtain of any dirt, debris, grease, grime or other material as necessary to ensure proper operation. Remove any loose debris that may be of harm to the air curtain operation.
  - C. Remove, clean and reinstall the cleanable air filters.
- 3.7 DEMONSTRATION:
- A. Contractor to instruct the Owner's maintenance personnel on how to adjust, operate, and maintain air curtains.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
  - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
  - A. Section Includes:
    - 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
    - 2. Perforated diffusers.
    - 3. Louver face diffusers.
    - 4. Adjustable bar registers and grilles.
  - B. Related Sections:
    - 1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
    - 2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. AMCA 500-L - Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; 2012 (R2015).
  - B. ASHRAE Std 70 - Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2006 (RA2011).
  - C. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards; 2005.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
    - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
    - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
  - B. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.
  - C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
    - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
    - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
    - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
    - 5. Duct access panels.
  - D. Source quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS
  - A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:
    - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Price Industries.
      - b. Titus.
    - 2. Material: Aluminum.
    - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
    - 4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.
    - 5. Face Style: Three cone.
    - 6. Mounting: T-bar.
    - 7. Pattern: Fixed.
    - 8. Dampers: Combination damper and grid.
    - 9. Accessories:

- a. Equalizing grid.
  - b. Plaster ring.
  - c. Safety chain.
  - d. Wire guard.
  - e. Sectorizing baffles.
  - f. Operating rod extension.
- B. Perforated Diffuser:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Price Industries.
    - b. Titus.
  - 2. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with aluminum face.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  - 5. Duct Inlet: Round.
  - 6. Face Style: Flush.
  - 7. Mounting: T-bar.
  - 8. Pattern Controller: None.
  - 9. Dampers: Combination damper and grid.
  - 10. Accessories:
    - a. Equalizing grid.
    - b. Plaster ring.
    - c. Safety chain.
    - d. Wire guard.
    - e. Sectorizing baffles.
    - f. Operating rod extension.
- C. Louver Face Diffuser:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Price Industries.
    - b. Titus.
  - 2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
  - 3. Material: Aluminum.
  - 4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 5. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  - 6. Mounting: T-bar.
  - 7. Pattern: One-way, Two-way, Two-way corner, Three-way, Four-way core style.
  - 8. Dampers: Combination damper and grid.
  - 9. Accessories:
    - a. Square to round neck adaptor.
    - b. Adjustable pattern vanes.
    - c. Throw reducing vanes.
    - d. Equalizing grid.
    - e. Plaster ring.
    - f. Safety chain.
    - g. Wire guard.
    - h. Sectorizing baffles.
    - i. Operating rod extension.

## 2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. Adjustable Bar Register:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Price Industries.
    - b. Titus.
  - 2. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
  - 5. Core Construction: Removable.
  - 6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
  - 7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
  - 8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
  - 9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
  - 10. Accessories:
    - a. Rear-blade gang operator.

- b. Filter.
- B. Adjustable Bar Grille:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Price Industries.
    - b. Titus.
  - 2. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
  - 5. Core Construction: Removable.
  - 6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
  - 7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
  - 8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

#### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

**END OF SECTION 233713**

## SECTION 233813 - COMMERCIAL-KITCHEN HOODS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes Type I and Type II commercial kitchen hoods.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports; 2015
- B. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for joint and seam welding; 2012.
- C. ASTM A123 / A123M - 12 Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017
- D. ASTM A480 / A480M - 12 Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat Rolled Stainless and Heat Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 2017.
- E. ASTM A653 / A653M - 11 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process; 2017.
- F. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- G. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2017.
- H. NSF 2 - Food Equipment; 2015.
- I. SMACNA (KVS) - Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines; 2001.
- J. SMACNA's - Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines.
- K. UL 710 - Standard for Safety for Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Listed Hood: A hood, factory fabricated and tested for compliance with UL 710 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standard Hood: A hood, usually field fabricated, that complies with design, construction, and performance criteria of applicable national and local codes.
- C. Type I Hood: A hood designed for grease exhaust applications.
- D. Type II Hood: A hood designed for heat and steam removal and for other nongrease applications.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Standard hoods.
  - 2. Filters/baffles.
  - 3. Fire-suppression systems.
  - 4. Lighting fixtures.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial kitchen hoods, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports; and AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for joint and seam welding.
  - B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate equipment layout and installation with adjacent Work, including lighting fixtures, HVAC equipment, plumbing, and fire-suppression system components.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 HOOD MATERIALS
- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
    - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.050 inch.
    - 2. Finish: Comply with SSINA's "Finishes for Stainless Steel" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
      - a. Finish shall be free from tool and die marks and stretch lines and shall have uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Grain shall run with long dimension of each piece.
    - 3. Concealed Stainless-Steel Surfaces: ASTM A 480, No. 2B finish (bright, cold-rolled, unpolished finish).
    - 4. Exposed Surfaces: ASTM A 480, No. 3 finish (intermediate polished surface).
    - 5. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  - B. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 1008, cold-rolled sheets; commercial quality; with oiled, exposed matte finish.
    - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.043 inch.
  - C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Lock-forming quality; ASTM A 653, G90 coating designation.
    - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 inch.
  - D. Zinc-Coated Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated according to ASTM A 123 requirements.
  - E. Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. Elastomeric sealant shall be NSF certified for commercial kitchen hood application. Sealants, when cured and washed, shall comply with requirements in 21 CFR, Section 177.2600, for use in areas that come in contact with food.
    - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 2. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene, in diameter larger than joint width.
  - F. Sound Dampening: NSF-certified, nonabsorbent, hard-drying, sound-deadening compound for permanent adhesion to metal in minimum 1/8-inch thickness that does not chip, flake, or blister.
  - G. Gaskets: NSF certified for end-use application indicated; of resilient rubber, neoprene, or PVC that is nontoxic, stable, odorless, nonabsorbent, and unaffected by exposure to foods and cleaning compounds, and that passes testing according to UL 710.
- 2.2 GENERAL HOOD FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS
- A. Welding: Use welding rod of same composition as metal being welded. Use methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metal. Make ductile welds free of mechanical imperfections such as gas holes, pits, or cracks.
    - 1. Welded Butt Joints: Full-penetration welds for full-joint length. Make joints flat, continuous, and homogenous with sheet metal without relying on straps under seams, filling in with solder, or spot welding.
    - 2. Grind exposed welded joints flush with adjoining material and polish to match adjoining surfaces.
    - 3. Where fasteners are welded to underside of equipment, finish reverse side of weld smooth and flush.
    - 4. Coat concealed stainless-steel welded joints with metallic-based paint to prevent corrosion.
    - 5. After zinc-coated steel is welded, clean welds and abraded areas and apply SSPC-Paint 20, high-zinc-dust-content, galvanizing repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.
  - B. For metal butt joints, comply with SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines."
  - C. Where stainless steel is joined to a dissimilar metal, use stainless-steel welding material or fastening devices.
  - D. Form metal with break bends that are not flaky, scaly, or cracked in appearance; where breaks mar uniform surface appearance of material, remove marks by grinding, polishing, and finishing.
  - E. Sheared Metal Edges: Finish free of burrs, fins, and irregular projections.



- F. In food zones, as defined in NSF, fabricate surfaces free from exposed fasteners.
- G. Cap exposed fastener threads, including those inside cabinets, with stainless-steel lock washers and stainless-steel cap (acorn) nuts.
- H. Fabricate pipe slots on equipment with turned-up edges sized to accommodate service and utility lines and mechanical connections.
- I. Fabricate enclosures, including panels, housings, and skirts, to conceal service lines, operating components, and mechanical and electrical devices including those inside cabinets, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Fabricate seismic restraints according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines," Appendix 1, "Guidelines for Seismic Restraints of Kitchen Equipment."
- K. Fabricate equipment edges and backsplashes according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines."
- L. Fabricate enclosure panels to ceiling and wall as follows:
  1. Wall Offset Spacer: Minimum of 3 inches.
  2. Wall Shelves and Overshelves: Fabricate according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines," with minimum 0.0625-inch thick, stainless-steel shelf tops.

### 2.3 TYPE I EXHAUST HOOD FABRICATION

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Weld all joints exposed to grease with continuous welds, and make filters/baffles or grease extractors and makeup air diffusers easily accessible for cleaning.
  1. Fabricate hoods according to NSF 2, "Food Equipment."
  2. Hoods shall be listed and labeled, according to UL 710, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Duct Collars: Minimum 0.0598-inch thick steel at least 3 inches long, continuously welded to top of hood and at corners. Fabricate a collar with a 0.5-inch wide duct flange.
- D. Hood Configuration: Exhaust only.
  1. Makeup air shall be introduced through laminar-flow-type, perforated metal diffusers mounted in the ceiling.
- E. Hood Style: Back shelf.
- F. Filters/Baffles: Removable, stainless-steel. Fabricate stainless steel for filter frame and removable collection cup and pitched trough. Exposed surfaces shall be pitched to drain to collection cup. Filters/baffles shall be tested according to UL 1046, "Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts," by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for hood controls.
- H. Hood Controls:
  1. Exhaust Fan: On-off switches on cooking equipment shall start and stop the exhaust fan. Interlock exhaust fan with makeup air supply fan to operate simultaneously. Interlock exhaust fan with fire-suppression system to operate fan(s) during fire-suppression-agent release and to remain in operation until manually stopped. Include red pilot light to indicate fan operation. Motor starters shall comply with Division 26 Section "Enclosed Controllers."

### 2.4 TYPE II EXHAUST HOOD FABRICATION

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. H&K
  2. Franke
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. H&K
  2. Franke
- C. Fabricate hoods according to NSF 2, "Food Equipment."
- D. Fabricate hoods to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible."
- E. Hood Configuration: Exhaust only.
  1. Makeup air shall be introduced through laminar-flow-type, perforated metal diffusers in ceiling.
- F. Hood Type: Heat and vapor removal.
- G. Hood Style: Wall-mounted canopy.
- H. Condensate Hood Baffles: Removable, stainless-steel baffles to drain into a hood drain trough, and stainless-steel drain piping.

- 2.5 WET-CHEMICAL FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEM
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1. Ansul
  - B. Description: Engineered distribution piping designed for automatic detection and release or manual release of fire-suppression agent by hood operator. Fire-suppression system shall be listed and labeled for complying with NFPA 17A, "Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems," by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1. Steel Pipe, NPS 2 and Smaller: ASTM A 53, Type S, Grade A, Schedule 40, plain ends.
    - 2. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300.
    - 3. Piping, fusible links and release mechanism, tank containing the suppression agent, and controls shall be factory installed. Controls shall be in stainless-steel control cabinet mounted on wall. Furnish manual pull station for wall mounting. Exposed piping shall be covered with chrome-plated aluminum tubing. Exposed fittings shall be chrome plated.
    - 4. Liquid Extinguishing Agent: Non-corrosive, low-pH liquid.
    - 5. Furnish electric-operated gas shutoff valve with clearly marked open and closed indicator for field installation.
    - 6. Fire-suppression system controls shall be integrated with controls for fans, lights, and fuel supply and located in a single cabinet for each group of hoods immediately adjacent.
    - 7. Wiring shall have color-coded, numbered terminal blocks and grounding bar. Spare terminals for fire alarm, optional wiring to start fan with fire alarm, red pilot light to indicate fan operation, and control switches shall all be factory wired in control cabinet with relays or starters. Include spare terminals for fire alarm, and wiring to start fan with fire alarm.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
  - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Complete field assembly of hoods where required.
    - 1. Make closed butt and contact joints that do not require filler.
    - 2. Grind field welds on stainless-steel equipment smooth, and polish to match adjacent finish. Comply with welding requirements in Part 2 "General Hood Fabrication Requirements" Article.
  - B. Install hoods and associated services with clearances and access for maintaining, cleaning, and servicing hoods, filters/baffles, grease extractor, and fire-suppression systems according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - C. Securely anchor and attach items and accessories to walls, floors, or bases with stainless-steel fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - D. Install hoods to operate free from vibration.
  - E. Install seismic restraints according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines," Appendix 1, "Guidelines for Seismic Restraints of Kitchen Equipment."
  - F. Install trim strips and similar items requiring fasteners in a bed of sealant. Fasten with stainless-steel fasteners at 48 inches o.c. maximum.
  - G. Install sealant in joints between equipment and abutting surfaces with continuous joint backing, unless otherwise indicated. Provide airtight, watertight, vermin-proof, sanitary joints.
  - H. Install lamps, with maximum recommended wattage, in equipment with integral lighting.
  - I. Set initial temperatures, and calibrate sensors.
  - J. Set field-adjustable switches.
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - B. Connect ducts according to requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories." Install flexible connectors on makeup air supply duct. Weld exhaust-duct connections with continuous liquidtight joint.
  - C. Install fire-suppression piping for remote-mounted suppression systems according to NFPA 17A, "Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems."

- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Perform tests and inspections.
    - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  - C. Tests and Inspections:
    - 1. Test each equipment item for proper operation. Repair or replace equipment that is defective, including units that operate below required capacity or that operate with excessive noise or vibration.
    - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - 3. Test water, drain, gas, and liquid-carrying components for leaks. Repair or replace leaking components.
    - 4. Perform hood performance tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 5. Perform fire-suppression system performance tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.5 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial kitchen hoods. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 233813**

## SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes factory-fabricated air-filter devices and media used to remove particulate matter from air for HVAC applications.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 850 - Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Air Filter Equipment; Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute; 2013.
- B. ASHRAE Std 52.1 - Gravimetric and Dust-Spot Procedures for Testing Air Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 1992.
- C. ASHRAE Std 52.2 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2017.
- D. NFPA 70A, National Electrical Code Requirements for One- and Two-Family Dwellings, 2005 Edition.
- E. NFPA 90A: Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems, 2015 Edition.
- F. UL 586 - High Efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter Units; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 900 - Standard for Air Filter Units; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. DOP: Dioctyl phthalate or bis-(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
- B. HEPA: High-efficiency particulate air.
- C. ULPA: Ultra low penetration air.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details to illustrate component assemblies and attachments.
  - 1. Show filter rack assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
  - 2. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of air filters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

#### 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Provide one complete set of filters for each filter bank.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Filters, Electrostatic Air Cleaners, and Filter-Holding Systems:
    - a. AAF International.
    - b. Farr Co.
    - c. International Air Filtration Corporation.

### **2.2 EXTENDED-SURFACE, DISPOSABLE PANEL FILTERS**

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface filters with holding frames.
- B. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with anti-microbial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.
- C. Media and Media-Grid Frame: Nonflammable cardboard.
- D. Duct-Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners, and suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

### **2.3 SIDE-SERVICE HOUSINGS**

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, side-service housings, constructed of galvanized steel, with flanges to connect to duct system.
- B. Access Doors: Continuous gaskets on perimeter and positive-locking devices.
- C. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing gasket material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install filter frames according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
- C. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
- D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling unit installations.
- E. Electrical wiring and connections are specified in Division 26 Sections.
- F. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### **3.2 CLEANING**

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

**END OF SECTION 234100**

## SECTION 237413 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:
  1. Direct-expansion cooling.
  2. Hot-gas reheat.
  3. Electric-heating coils or Gas Furnace.
  4. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
  5. Integral, space temperature controls.
  6. Roof curbs.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Standard for Performance Rating of Unitary Air Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute; 2008.
- B. AHRI 270 - Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment; Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute; 2015.
- C. ASTM C916 - 85(2007) Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation.
- D. ASTM C1071 - 16 Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material).
- E. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems; National Fire Protection Association; 2015.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
- B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.
- C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the outdoor-air stream to reject heat during cooling operations and to absorb heat during heating operations. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
- D. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant-Coil Fan: The outdoor-air refrigerant-coil fan in RTUs. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
- E. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.
- F. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.
- G. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.
- H. VVT: Variable-air volume and temperature.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: RTUs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Manufacturer Wind Loading Qualification Certification: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
    - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
    - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  - D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that RTUs, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
    - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  - E. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
    - 1. Structural members to which RTUs will be attached.
    - 2. Roof openings
    - 3. Roof curbs and flashing.
  - F. Field quality-control test reports.
  - G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. ARI Compliance:
    - 1. Comply with ARI 210/240 and ARI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
    - 2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
  - B. ASHRAE Compliance:
    - 1. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
    - 2. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
  - C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2010, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
  - D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
  - E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
  - F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - 2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - 4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS
- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
    - 1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
    - 2. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements and regional preferences, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Trane
  - 2. Lennox
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Trane
  - 2. Lennox

### 2.2 CASING

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
  - 1. Exterior Casing Thickness: 0.052 inch thick.
- C. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
  - 1. Inside Casing: Galvanized steel, 0.028 inch thick.
- D. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
  - 4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
- E. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of galvanized-steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2010.
  - 1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
  - 2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
  - 3. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound.
- F. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2010.

### 2.3 FANS

- A. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.
- B. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.
- C. Relief-Air Fan: Propeller, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.
- D. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate fan section, internal mounting frame and attachment to fans, fan housings, motors, casings, accessories, and other fan section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when fan-mounted frame and RTU-mounted frame are anchored to building structure.
- E. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

### 2.4 COILS

- A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Copper-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
  - 2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
  - 3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
  - 4. Condensate Drain Pan: Galvanized steel with corrosion-resistant coating formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2010.
  - 5. Coated condenser coil and evaporator coil to protect against salt erosion in coastal areas.
- B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Copper plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
  - 2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
- C. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil: (where indicated in equipment schedule)



1. Copper-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
  2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
- D. Electric-Resistance Heating: (where indicated in equipment schedule)
1. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium, supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
  2. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box.
  3. Overcurrent Protection: Manual-reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in each heater stage.
  4. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
    - a. Mercury contactors.
    - b. Step Controller: Pilot lights and override toggle switch for each step.
    - c. SCR Controller: Pilot lights operate on load ratio, a minimum of five steps.
    - d. Time-delay relay.
    - e. Airflow proving switch.
- 2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS
- A. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
1. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  2. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  3. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  4. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  5. Minimum off-time relay.
  6. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  7. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
  8. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
  9. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
  10. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.
- 2.6 AIR FILTRATION
- A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
1. Pleated: MERV 8.
- 2.7 GAS FURNACE (Where indicated in equipment schedule)
- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.
1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- B. Burners: Stainless steel.
1. Fuel: Propane gas.
  2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
  3. High-Altitude Kit: For Project elevations more than 2000 feet above sea level.
- C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan:
1. Aluminized steel.
  2. Stainless steel (where mixed air conditions are below 45-degrees F)
- D. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.
- E. Safety Controls:
1. Gas Control Valve: Two stage.
  2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.
- 2.8 DAMPERS
- A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with motorized damper filter.
- B. Dual Enthalpy Economizer with barometric relief and rain hoods.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

- A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- B. Basic Unit Controls:
  - 1. Control-voltage transformer.
  - 2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
    - a. Heat-cool-off switch.
    - b. Fan on-auto switch.
    - c. Fan-speed switch.
    - d. Manual changeover.
    - e. Adjustable deadband.
    - f. Exposed set point.
    - g. Exposed indication.
    - h. Degree F indication.
    - i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
    - j. Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.
  - 3. Wall-mounted humidistat or sensor with the following features:
    - a. Concealed set point.
    - b. Concealed indication.
  - 4. Remote Wall-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
    - a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
    - b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
    - c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.
- C. DDC Controller:
  - 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
  - 2. Safety Control Operation:
    - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
    - b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
    - c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm."
    - d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F.
    - e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
  - 3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on 365-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
  - 4. Unoccupied Period:
    - a. Heating Setback: 55 deg F.
    - b. Cooling Setback: System off.
    - c. Override Operation: Two hours.
  - 5. Supply Fan Operation:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
  - 6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.
    - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.
  - 7. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:

- a. Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles compressor.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.
  - 8. Gas Furnace Operation:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Stage burner to maintain room temperature.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.
  - 9. Electric-Heating-Coil Operation:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Stage coil to maintain room temperature.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Energize coil to maintain setback temperature.
  - 10. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Open to for minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity to comply with ASHRAE Cycle II. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F. Use mixed-air temperature and select between outdoor-air and return-air enthalpy to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
- 2.11 ROOF CURBS
- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
    - 1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
      - a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
      - b. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
    - 2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
      - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
      - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
      - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
      - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
  - C. Curb Height: 14 inches.
  - D. Wind and Seismic Restraints: Metal brackets compatible with the curb and casing, painted to match RTU, used to anchor unit to the curb, and designed for loads at Project site. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for wind-load requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
  - A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
  - B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
  - C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
  - D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
  - A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
  - B. Install wind and seismic restraints according to manufacturer's written instructions. Wind and seismically restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap.
- B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
  - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
  - 1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 4. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  - 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 8. Verify that filters are installed.
  - 9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  - 10. Clean flue and inspect for construction debris.
  - 11. Connect and purge gas line.
  - 12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  - 13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
  - 14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  - 15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  - 17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Start refrigeration system.
    - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
  - 18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  - 19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
    - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
    - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

21. Calibrate thermostats.
  22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
  24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
    - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
  26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
    - a. Supply-air volume.
    - b. Return-air volume.
    - c. Relief-air volume.
    - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
  27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
    - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
  28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
    - a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
    - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
    - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
    - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
    - e. Relief-air fan operation.
    - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
  29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING
- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.
- 3.7 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

**END OF SECTION 237413**

## SECTION 260500 – BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. All drawings and all Divisions of these specifications shall be considered as a whole and work of this Division shown anywhere therein shall be furnished under this Division.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate the general arrangement of equipment and wiring. Most direct routing of conduits and wiring is not assured. Exact requirements shall be governed by architectural, structural and mechanical conditions of the job. Consult all other drawings in preparation of the bid. Extra lengths of wiring or addition of pull or junction boxes, etc., necessitated by such conditions shall be included in the bid. Check all information and report any apparent discrepancies before submitting bid.
- C. Should there be any discrepancies or a question of intent, refer the matter to the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager for a decision before ordering any equipment, materials or before starting any related work.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- B. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (MC); National Electrical Contractors Association; 2012.
- C. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2009 (ANSI/NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658).
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 493 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Above Grade: Not buried in ground or embedded in concrete slab on grade.
- B. Below Grade: Buried in ground or embedded in concrete slab.
- C. Concealed: Inside building above grade and located within walls, furred spaces, crawl spaces, attics, above suspended ceilings, etc. Any item not visible or directly accessible.
- D. Connect: Complete hookup of item with required services, including conduit, wires and other accessories.
- E. Exposed: Either visible or subject to mechanical or weather damage, indoors or outdoors, including areas such as mechanical and storage rooms. In general any item that is directly accessible without removing panels, walls, ceilings, or other parts of structure.
- F. Furnish: Supply and deliver complete.
- G. Install: Place, secure and connect as required to make fully operational (Perform work).
- H. Provide: See furnish above.
- I. Underground: Buried in ground, including under building slabs
- J. Use (verb): Furnish and install as defined above.
- K. Wiring: Electrical raceway, conductors and connection.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Carefully examine the contract documents, visit the site, and thoroughly become familiar with the local conditions relating to the work. Failure to do so will not relieve the contractor of the obligations of the Contract.
- B. After all equipment, devices and raceways are installed and wires and cables are in place and connected to devices and equipment, test the system for continuity, proper phase rotation, short circuit, improper grounds, polarity and other defects. If defective condition is present, make all necessary corrections and retest for compliance. Test systems for proper operation and demonstrate the operation of the system to the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow.
  - 1. Set inserts and sleeves in poured-in-place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.
- C. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
  - 1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.
- D. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are concealed by finished surfaces.
- E. Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with completion of finished surface.
- F. Where electrical identification markings and devices will be concealed by acoustical ceilings and similar finishes, coordinate installation of these items before ceiling installation.

## 1.7 WORKMANSHIP AND INSTALLER'S QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Electrical installation shall be completed by licensed electricians, from an electrical contracting firm with at least five years of successful electrical installation experience on projects utilizing electrical components similar to those in both size and type, to those required for this project. All specialties, including computer isolated ground/ dedicated circuit power, and low voltage wiring installations shall be performed by an electrician qualified in the maintenance and installation of such systems.

## 1.8 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Furnish, erect, install, connect, clean, adjust, test, condition and place into service all material and equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's directions and recommendations except as otherwise noted and provide all labor required to complete the work shown on the drawings and/or specified in all Sections of Division 26 and all other work and miscellaneous items, not specifically mentioned, for a complete installation including all accessories required for testing the system. Such that the system is complete, code compliant and ready for operation.
- B. Apparatus, appliance, material or work not shown on drawings, but mentioned in the specifications, or vice versa, or any incidental accessories necessary to make the work complete and ready for operation, even though not specified or shown on the drawings, shall be furnished and installed without additional expense to the owner.
- C. Delivery and Storage: Receive, handle, and store electrical items and materials at the project site. Materials and electrical items shall be so placed that they are protected from damage, weather, environmental factors and deterioration.
- D. Secure and pay for all permits, governmental fees, taxes and licenses necessary for the proper execution and completion of Division 26 work.
- E. Submit to governmental agencies and utility companies shop drawings, cutsheets, calculations, or installation drawings for the emergency lighting and exit sign system, life safety/fire alarm system, or any other system or installation element that are required by these agencies, for their approval.
- F. Maintenance Manuals: Submit two copies of maintenance manuals in hard bound covers containing shop drawings and manufacturers' repair manuals, guarantees, operating instructions, wiring diagrams and parts lists to Area Construction Manager.
- G. Instruction Manuals: Submit two complete instruction manuals for any specialty system installed to Area Construction Manager.
- H. Field Record Drawings: Submit field record drawings for the work in accordance with the General Conditions to Area Construction Manager.

## 1.9 CODE COMPLIANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. All OSHA and safety code requirements.
- D. Materials and installation shall comply with codes, laws and ordinances of Federal, State, local governing bodies having jurisdiction.
- E. In every installation where regulations of electric utility and telephone companies apply, conformance with their regulations is mandatory and any costs involved shall be included in the Contract.

- F. In case of differences between building codes, State and Federal laws, local ordinances and utility company regulations and the Contract Documents, the most stringent shall govern.
  - G. In case of differences between means, materials, or methods indicated in these specifications and those indicated in the construction documents, the more stringent shall govern.
  - H. Should work be performed which does not comply with the requirements of the applicable building codes, State and Federal laws, local ordinances, industry standards and utility company regulations, changes for compliance shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - I. Notify the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager of any materials or apparatus believed to be inadequate, unsuitable, in violation of laws, ordinances, rules or regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1.10 **WARRANTY**
- A. General Warranty: This special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents."
- 1.11 **ALTERNATES**
- A. Alternate Materials, fixtures, apparatus or equipment installed without written approval shall be removed by the Contractor and replaced with specified equipment at the direction of the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager and without recourse for additional compensation.
  - B. Acceptance of alternates shall include provisions necessary to alter, adjust or otherwise modify work affected by the alteration.
  - C. Field record drawings shall include alternate work and shall reflect changes necessitated to other work.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 **MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**
- A. Materials, equipment and accessories shall be new, UL listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use, and shall bear the manufacturer's name, model number and other identification marking.
  - B. Materials and equipment shall be the standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of the required type of material or equipment for at least five years (unless specifically exempted by the Architect/Engineer) and shall be the manufacturer's latest design with published properties.
  - C. Equipment and materials of the same general type shall be of the same manufacture throughout the project to provide uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.
  - D. Equipment and materials shall be without blemish or defect and shall not be used for temporary light or power purposes, including lamps, without the Architect's/Engineer/Area Construction Manager's written authorization.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 **COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION**
- A. All listed materials and equipment shall be installed in accordance with their listing.
  - B. The drawings for work under Division 26 are diagrammatic and are intended to convey the scope of work and indicate the general arrangement of conduit, boxes, equipment, fixtures and other work included in the Contract.
  - C. Location of items required by the drawings or specifications not definitely fixed by dimensions are approximate only and exact locations necessary to secure the best conditions and results shall be determined at the site and shall be subject to the approval of the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager.
  - D. Follow drawings in laying out work, check drawings of other trades to verify spaces in which work will be installed, and maintain maximum headroom and space conditions at all points:
    - 1. Where headroom or space conditions appear inadequate, the Architect/Engineer/ Area Construction Manager shall be notified before proceeding with installation.
    - 2. Minor conduit rerouting and changes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.



3. Coordinate the mounting heights of electrical equipment and raceways to clear the opening heights of doors, the heights of vehicles (cars, trucks) and the heights of equipment which needs to be removed and replaced.
- E. Perform all work with skilled mechanics of the particular trade involved in a neat and workmanlike manner.
  - F. Perform all work in cooperation with other trades and the construction schedule.
  - G. Furnish other trades advance information on locations and sizes of frames, boxes, sleeves and openings needed for the work, and also furnish information and shop drawings necessary to permit trades affected to install their work properly and without delay.
  - H. Where there is evidence that work of one trade will interfere with the work of other trades, all trades shall assist in working out space allocations to make satisfactory adjustments.
  - I. With the approval of the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager and without additional cost to the Owner, make minor modifications in the work as required by structural interferences, by interferences with work of other trades or for proper execution of the work.
  - J. Work installed before coordinating with other trades so as to cause interference with the work of such other trades shall be changed to correct such condition without additional cost to the Owner and as directed by the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager.
  - K. Minor changes in the locations of outlets, fixtures and equipment shall be made prior to rough-in at the direction of the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager and at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - L. Electrical Contractor shall cooperate with other trades and coordinate work so that conflicts with other work are eliminated.
  - M. Equipment shall be installed with adequate space allowed for removal, repair or changes to equipment. Ready accessibility to removable parts of equipment and to wiring shall be provided without moving other equipment that is to be installed or which is in place. Electrical Contractor shall verify measurements. Discrepancies shall be brought to the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager's attention for interpretation.
  - N. Determine temporary openings in the buildings that will be required for the admission of apparatus furnished under this Division, and notify the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager accordingly. In the event of failure to give sufficient notice in time to arrange for these openings during construction, assume all costs of providing such openings thereafter.
  - O. Sequence, coordinate and integrate installations of electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
  - P. No work shall be concealed until after inspection and approval by proper authorities. If work is concealed without inspection and approval, the contractor shall be responsible for all work and costs required to open and restore the concealed areas in addition to all required modifications.
  - Q. Electrical Contractor shall refer to contract documents for details, reflected ceiling plans, and large scale drawings; will also verify any conflicts between various trades.
  - R. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
  - S. Coordinate connection/shut-off and disconnection of electrical service with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Also coordinate with owner and utility. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
  - T. Install systems, materials and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
  - U. Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces.
  - V. Verifications of Points of Connection:
    1. Before submitting his bid, Contractor shall visit site and contact city, owner and all utilities to verify location, size, depth and operating characteristics of points of connection.
    2. If Contractor fails to notify Area Construction Manager in writing, it will be assumed that his bid includes everything required to provide proper connections to all present points of connection as they actually exist or as they will be provided by city or utilities, and will pay for all utility point of connection modifications, relocations, replacements, additional runs and extensions, without increase in contract price.
    3. Electrical Contractor shall furnish all labor, material and equipment to completely install all work shown on drawings and specified herein, including:
      - a. Installation of and final connections within HVAC control system supplied by others.
      - b. Connection to mechanical equipment: HVAC power conductors and proper grounding conductors for HVAC equipment.
      - c. Final connections to kitchen equipment.
      - d. Complete and operable Telephone System.
      - e. Complete and operable Cable TV system as required.
      - f. Complete and operable Internet system as required.

### 3.2 COOPERATION

- A. Where jurisdictional rules require the assistance of electrical mechanics in the moving and setting of electrically powered equipment, provide such assistance.
- B. Where work covered by this section connects to equipment furnished under other sections, verify electrical work involved in the field and make proper connection to such equipment.

### 3.3 ALTERATIONS AND DEMOLITION

- A. Confer with the manufacturers of existing equipment that is to be revised or extended.
- B. Where existing electrical work prevents proper construction of new work as indicated, remove, reroute, relocate, or in other ways alter existing work in order to accommodate new work requirements.
- C. Remove suspended acoustical ceiling tiles necessary to facilitate the installation of the electrical work and restore the ceiling tiles after completion of the electrical work. Replace ceiling tiles damaged during the work with new tiles to match the existing in every respect.
- D. Where existing conduit, wire, supports, hangers, and other electrical work must be removed as a result of the alterations, they shall be completely removed, back to the first outlet which is left unaffected by the revision. Conduit which is buried in concrete or otherwise inaccessibly positioned may be abandoned. In such cases, wire shall be pulled out of conduit and the conduit itself plugged at each end.
- E. Existing electrical materials and equipment, including lighting fixtures, switches, receptacles, signal lights, speakers, intercom equipment, controls, conduit outlets, fittings, wire, cable, and other devices which are removed as a result of the alterations shall remain the property of the "Owner" and shall be stored on the site as directed.
- F. Existing electrical materials and equipment with the exception of wire and cable, as generally outlined in the previous paragraph, shall be re-used as completely as is found practicable. Examine the condition of such materials and equipment and make a prior determination of whether it is suitable for re-use. Present findings periodically to the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager who in turn will make the final decision regarding re-usability. All wire and cable shall be new.
- G. In order to coordinate the work of the mechanical and electrical trades, completely remove all existing electrical work in and above ceilings of these areas (as defined on the Drawings), after which install new work and re-install existing work to remain, as shown on the Drawings. Existing lighting fixtures, clocks, speakers, signals, and other equipment shall be re-used except as otherwise noted. If fixtures must be utilized in areas with new ceiling tile, make arrangements for cutting new tile to accommodate fixtures. Some exceptions may arise wherein equipment, either in altered areas or other areas, must be kept in service, requiring that feeders, signal conductors, conduits, boxes, etc. serving same also be kept in service. In such cases, those electrical feeders, signal conductors, conduits, etc. shall be re-routed and re-connected before present work is removed. If this is not possible, temporary wiring shall be provided to allow for installation of mechanical work, after which new work shall be installed and temporary wiring removed.
- H. Various signal, communications, and other services shall remain in service to provide continuous operation for the Owner's functions. No interruption of any service will be allowed without written approval of the Owner.
- I. Remove or reroute all electrical feeders, risers, branch circuits, and other wiring as required by the alterations. Wiring extending through remodeled areas but serving loads which must remain shall be rerouted as required, and reconnected to those loads.

### 3.4 EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING

- A. Excavating, bracing and shoring, testing, disposition of excess excavated material, provision of borrow, and placing of backfill shall be in accordance with Section Utilities Excavating and Backfilling.

### 3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Do drilling, cutting, fitting, and patching necessary for the installation of conduits, wireways, and other electrical equipment, and provide supports necessary for the same and for bracing and anchorage of work. No cutting of structural work or of fireproofing shall be done without the written consent of the Architect/Engineer.
- B. Conduits passing through roofs or other surfaces exposed to weather shall be properly flashed as specified in roofing and waterproofing sections. This flashing work shall be part of this division of work.

### 3.6 CLEAN UP

- A. The Contractor shall, at all times, keep the premises free from the accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by his work and, at the completion of the work, shall remove his rubbish, tools, equipment and surplus materials; and shall leave his work clean and ready for use.

- 3.7 EQUIPMENT NOISE LIMITATION
- A. Noise levels of electrical devices and equipment shall be within acceptable limits as established by NEMA or other valid noise rating agencies. Noise levels shall be subject to the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager's acceptance, based on practical and reasonable considerations of occupancy requirements.
  - B. Check and tighten the fastenings of sheet metal plates, covers, doors, trims, bus bars and all electrical connections to prevent vibration and chatter under normal conditions of use.
  - C. Transformers, reactors, dimmers, lamp ballasts, and solenoids shall be designed and rated for "quiet" operation.
  - D. Remove and replace any individual electrical item or device that is found to produce a sound energy output exceeding that of other identical devices installed at the project.
- 3.8 TRANSMISSION OF VIBRATION
- A. Electrical equipment, conduit, and fittings shall not be mounted to or supported by elements subject to vibration except by methods which will prevent transmission thereof. Where flexible lengths of conduit are utilized as a means of isolating equipment and conduit systems vibration, care shall be exercised to assure continuity of ground throughout.
- 3.9 MOUNTING HEIGHTS
- A. Mounting heights of electrical items shall be as listed on the drawings, unless otherwise required by local code requirements, the Americans with Disabilities Act, or by the Architect/Engineer's field instructions. Dimensions are above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. No switch, circuit breaker, fuse handle, disconnect or other similar device shall be mounted so that it is higher than 6'-7" AFF or working platform to comply with the readily accessible requirements of the code.
- 3.10 PROTECTION
- A. Protect conduit and wireway openings against the entrance of foreign matter by means of plugs or caps. Cover fixtures, materials, equipment and devices furnished or installed under this section or otherwise protect against damage, both before and after installation. Fixtures, materials, equipment, or devices damaged prior to final acceptance of the work shall be restored to their original condition or replaced.
  - B. Equipment shall be inherently safe and moving parts shall be covered with guards.
- 3.11 TEMPORARY UTILITIES, LIGHTING AND HEAT
- A. Contractor's attention is directed to Division 01, which sets forth respective responsibilities of all concerned with furnishing temporary water, electricity, lighting and heat for use during construction of the Project.
- 3.12 EXECUTION, CORRELATION AND INTENT OF DOCUMENTS
- A. In the event that conflicts, if any, cannot be settled promptly and amicably between the affected trades, with work proceeding in a workmanlike manner, then the Architect/Engineer/Area Construction Manager shall decide which work is to be relocated and their judgment shall be final and binding on this Contractor.
- 3.13 INSTRUCTIONS AND ADJUSTMENT
- A. The primary adjustments and operational instructions of the system(s) shall be accomplished by the Contractor to the complete satisfaction of the Owner and Architect/Engineer at the time of completion of the installation.

**END OF SECTION 260500**

## SECTION 260510 – BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Supporting devices for electrical components.
  2. Anchors, sleeves, inserts, hangers and supports.
  3. Manholes
  4. Access Panels
  5. Electrical identification.
  6. Electricity-metering components.
  7. Concrete equipment bases.
  8. Vibration isolation
  9. Electrical demolition.
  10. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.
  11. Touchup painting.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- B. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (MC); National Electrical Contractors Association; 2012.
- C. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2009 (ANSI/NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658).
- D. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013.
- E. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2011.
- F. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 493 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow.
  1. Set inserts and sleeves in poured-in-place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.
- C. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
  1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
  2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.

- D. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are concealed by finished surfaces.
- E. Where electrical identification devices are applied to field-finished surfaces, coordinate installation of identification devices with completion of finished surface.
- F. Where electrical identification markings and devices will be concealed by acoustical ceilings and similar finishes, coordinate installation of these items before ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORTING DEVICES

- A. See Division 05 "Metal Fabrications".

### 2.2 ANCHORS, SLEEVES, INSERTS, HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Anchor bolts, sleeves, inserts, hangers and supports required for the Electrical work shall be furnished and installed under Division 26.
- B. See Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for additional requirements.
- C. Hangers and Supports:
  1. Provide hangers, angles, channels, and other supports required by field conditions to install items of electrical equipment. Design of supports and methods of fastening to building structure shall be acceptable to the Architect/Engineer/ acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Provide spring hangers for vertical raceway supports.
  2. No electrical items shall rest on, or depend for support on, suspended ceiling media (tiles, lath, plaster, splines, etc).
  3. In suspended ceilings, support conduits directly from structural slabs, decks (or framing members). Do not support conduits on ceiling suspension members.
  4. Support surface or pendant lighting fixture:
    - a. From an outlet box by means of an interposed metal strap, where weight is less than 5 lbs.
    - b. From an outlet box by means of a hickey or other direct threaded connection, where weight is from 5 to 50 lb.
    - c. Directly from structural slab, deck or framing member, where weight exceeds 50 lbs.
  5. In addition to the above, provide cushioned, swivel type hangers with appropriate outlet boxes for pendant fixtures in mechanical areas. Such hangers shall have a support rating at least twice that of the load supported.
  6. Provide weight-distribution facilities, where required so as not to exceed the load-bearing capabilities of floors or walls that bear the weight of, or support, electrical items.
  7. Hangers and supports shall be hot dipped galvanized, unless noted otherwise.
  8. Equipment shall not be held in place by its own dead weight. Provide base anchor fasteners in each case.
  9. Trapeze type hangers may be used where several conduits are to be installed at the same elevation. The spacing of such trapeze hangers shall be in accordance with the NEC for the smallest conduit in the run.
- D. Sleeves and Openings:
  1. Provide sleeves and wireways where they pass through walls or floors.
  2. Sleeves shall be not less than 1" larger than outside dimension of raceways.
  3. Floor sleeves shall be galvanized steel pipe or plastic, as approved by code and stubbed 3" above floor. Unused sleeves shall be capped.
  4. Provide 3" high concrete curbs around openings through floors.
  5. Sleeves through kitchen or storage areas, and customer dining or other similar quiet area shall have the net openings packed with glass fiber insulation and both ends of sleeve caulked with waterproof mastic to prevent noise, dirt, air and water transmission. The utility companies shall pack the inside of their sleeves.
  6. Where conduits pass through floors or exterior walls, caulk sleeves with appropriate sealant at both ends to insure waterproofing around pipe.
  7. Where conduits pass through foundation walls, provide entrance seals.
  8. After the completed work is in place pack or fill sleeves and openings to prevent leakage of liquid and the spread of fire and smoke.
  9. Fire rated walls/floors shall be firestopped to match rating of original construction. Materials and methods shall comply with Underwriters Laboratories Directory "Fire Resistance - Vol. 1 and Vol. 11".
- E. Inserts:
  1. Inserts for suspended items in poured concrete construction shall be malleable-iron concrete inserts, adjustable type with insert nut.

2. Inserts for surface mounted items shall be suitable for the composition of the slab, wall, or structure on which installation is to be made.
- 2.3 CABLE SUPPORTS
- A. Cable supports shall be compatible with wire and cable type and conduit size.
- 2.4 CABLE LUBRICANT
- A. The lubricant shall contain no waxes, greases, silicones or polyalkylene glycol oils or waxes.
  - B. The lubricant shall have less than 6% solids residue after drying for 24 hours at 105°C.
- 2.5 CONDUCTIVE COMPOUNDS
- A. Copper base anti-corrosive conductive compound for conduit connections in earth or concrete in contact with earth.
- 2.6 MANHOLES
- A. Manholes shall be prefabricated reinforced concrete type suitable to sustain 100,000 lbs. live load of uniform distribution.
  - B. The manholes shall include the following items:
    1. Manhole cover and frame, heavy duty, U.S. Government standard design, clear opening 27"/30", approximate weight 600/800 lbs. Lids shall be lettered for respective service, either "Electric" or "Telephone". Cover shall be bolted to frame with 2 pentagon head special monel security bolts. Furnish "Owner" one special wrench/Neenah R-1640 Series.
    2. Pulling-in irons hot-dipped galvanized, placed one at each side.
    3. Cable support brackets, hot-dipped galvanized, place vertically at each side of manhole 24" on center.
    4. Sump - 8" soil pipe, 15" long and lightweight bar grate.
    5. 12" wide manhole steps spaced 12" apart.
    6. Ground rod 3/4" O.D. by 10'0" long/copper clad steel/stainless steel. Ground rod shall extend 4" above manhole floor.
- 2.7 ACCESS PANELS
- A. Panels shall be flangeless hinged type with vandal proof fasteners.
  - B. Panels shall be furnished under Division 26 and shall be turned over to the contractor who will install them.
- 2.8 IDENTIFICATION OF ELECTRICAL ITEMS
- A. Identification Devices: A single type of identification product for each application category. Use colors prescribed by ANSI A13.1, NFPA 70, and these Specifications.
  - B. Raceway and Cable Labels: Comply with ANSI A13.1, Table 3, for minimum size of letters for legend and minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size:
    1. Type: Pretensioned, wraparound plastic sleeves. Flexible, preprinted, color-coded, acrylic band sized to suit the diameter of the item it identifies.
    2. Type: Preprinted, flexible, self-adhesive, vinyl. Legend is overlaminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating.
    3. Color: Black letters on orange background.
    4. Legend: Indicates voltage.
  - C. Colored Adhesive Marking Tape for Raceways, Wires, and Cables: Self-adhesive vinyl tape, not less than 1 inch wide by 3 mils thick.
  - D. Underground Warning Tape: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, vinyl tape with the following features:
    1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
    2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
    3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
    4. Printed legend that indicates type of underground line.
  - E. Tape Markers for Wire: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive, wraparound type with preprinted numbers and letters.
  - F. Color-Coding Cable Ties: Type 6/6 nylon, self-locking type. Colors to suit coding scheme.
  - G. Engraved-Plastic Labels, Signs, and Instruction Plates: Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners 1/16-inch minimum thickness for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8-inch minimum thickness for larger sizes. Engraved legend in black letters on white background.

- H. Interior Warning and Caution Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145. Preprinted, aluminum, baked-enamel-finish signs, punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners, with colors, legend, and size appropriate to the application.
  - I. Exterior Warning and Caution Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch, galvanized-steel backing, with colors, legend, and size appropriate to the application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - J. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or No. 10/32 stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.
- 2.9 EQUIPMENT FOR UTILITY COMPANY'S ELECTRICITY METERING
- A. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical power utility company. Enclosure: NEMA Type 3R.
  - B. Meter Sockets: Comply with requirements of electrical power utility company.
  - C. Modular Meter Centers: Factory-coordinated assembly of a main meter center circuit-breaker unit with wireways, tenant meter socket modules, and tenant branch circuit breakers arranged in adjacent vertical sections, complete with interconnecting buses.
    1. Housing: NEMA 250, Enclosure: Indoor: Type 1, Outdoor: Type 3R.
    2. Tenant Branch Circuit Breakers: Series combination rated to protect circuit breakers in downstream panelboards that have 10,000-A interrupting capacity, minimum.
- 2.10 CONCRETE BASES
- A. Concrete Forms and Reinforcement Materials: As specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 2.11 VIBRATION ISOLATION
- A. Suspended vibration producing equipment shall have spring elements in the hanger rods or isolation pads under the equipment.
- 2.12 TOUCHUP PAINT
- A. For Equipment: Equipment manufacturer's paint selected to match installed equipment finish.
  - B. Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
- A. Different / Additional requirements will be necessary in areas requiring seismic restraints for electrical equipment and components. See Division 26 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems".
- 3.2 ELECTRICAL SUPPORTING DEVICE APPLICATION
- A. Damp Locations and Outdoors: Hot-dip galvanized materials or nonmetallic, U-channel system component.
  - B. Dry Locations: Steel materials.
  - C. Support Clamps for PVC Raceways: Click-type clamp system.
  - D. Selection of Supports: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - E. Strength of Supports: Adequate to carry present and future loads, times a safety factor of at least four; minimum of 200-lb design load.
- 3.3 SUPPORT INSTALLATION
- A. Install support devices to securely and permanently fasten and support electrical components.
  - B. Raceway Supports shall comply with NFPA 70, other applicable codes, and manufacturer's requirements.
  - C. Install individual and multiple raceway hangers and riser clamps to support raceways. Provide U-bolts, clamps, attachments, and other hardware necessary for hanger assemblies and for securing hanger rods and conduits.
  - D. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze- or bracket-type hangers.
  - E. Size supports for multiple raceway installations so capacity can be increased by a 25 percent minimum in the future.
  - F. Support individual horizontal raceways with separate, malleable-iron pipe hangers or clamps.
  - G. Install 1/4-inch diameter or larger threaded steel hanger rods, unless otherwise indicated.
  - H. Spring-steel fasteners specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing may be used instead of malleable-iron hangers for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving lighting and receptacle branch circuits above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.

- I. Arrange supports in vertical runs so the weight of raceways and enclosed conductors is carried entirely by raceway supports, with no weight load on raceway terminals.
  - J. Simultaneously install vertical conductor supports with conductors.
  - K. Separately support cast boxes that are threaded to raceways and used for fixture support. Support sheet-metal boxes directly from the building structure or by bar hangers. If bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of the box and support the raceway with an approved fastener not more than 24 inches from the box.
  - L. Install metal channel racks for mounting cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices unless components are mounted directly to structural elements of adequate strength.
  - M. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of concrete slabs and walls unless core-drilled holes are used. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of masonry and fire-rated gypsum walls and of all other fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Install sleeves during erection of concrete and masonry walls.
  - N. Securely fasten electrical items and their supports to the building structure, unless otherwise indicated. Perform fastening according to the following unless other fastening methods are indicated:
    - 1. Wood: Fasten with wood screws or screw-type nails.
    - 2. Masonry: Toggle bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion bolts on solid masonry units.
    - 3. New Concrete: Concrete inserts with machine screws and bolts.
    - 4. Existing Concrete: Expansion bolts.
    - 5. Instead of expansion bolts, threaded studs driven by a powder charge and provided with lock washers may be used in existing concrete if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
    - 6. Steel: Welded threaded studs or spring-tension clamps on steel:
      - a. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
    - 7. Welding to steel structure may be used only for threaded studs, not for conduits, pipe straps, or other items.
    - 8. Light Steel: Sheet-metal screws.
    - 9. Fasteners: Select so the load applied to each fastener does not exceed 25 percent of its proof-test load.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ACCESS PANELS
- A. Where items such as pull boxes, junction boxes, other specialties, or any piece of equipment or device requiring adjustment or service, are concealed in the construction, furnish an access panel for ceilings or walls to permit adjustment or service of concealed item. Design to be suitable for installation in the material forming the finished surface in which panel is mounted.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF EXPANSION FITTINGS
- A. At each building expansion joint and in each straight uninterrupted run of surface mounted conduit and vertical risers in excess of 100' an appropriate expansion fitting shall be provided, and the distance between fittings as installed shall not exceed 100 linear feet.
- 3.6 UTILITY COMPANY ELECTRICITY-METERING EQUIPMENT
- A. Install equipment according to utility company's written requirements. Provide grounding and empty conduits as required by utility company.
- 3.7 FIRESTOPPING
- A. Apply firestopping to cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to achieve fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.8 CONCRETE BASES
- A. The Contractor shall provide concrete pedestals, bases, pads, curbs, anchor blocks, anchor bolts, slab inserts, hangers, channels, cradles, saddles, etc. for installation of equipment and apparatus.
  - B. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger, in both directions, than supported unit. Follow supported equipment manufacturer's anchorage recommendations and setting templates for anchor-bolt and tie locations, unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.9 DEMOLITION
- A. Protect existing electrical equipment and installations indicated to remain. If damaged or disturbed in the course of the Work, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity, quality, and functionality.



- B. Accessible Work: Remove exposed electrical equipment and installations, indicated to be demolished, in their entirety.
  - C. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried raceway and wiring, indicated to be abandoned in place, 2 inches below the surface of adjacent construction. Cap raceways and patch surface to match existing finish.
  - D. Remove demolished material from Project site.
  - E. Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational components indicated for relocation.
- 3.10 CUTTING AND PATCHING
- A. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.
  - B. Repair and refinish disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. Install new fireproofing where existing firestopping has been disturbed. Repair and refinish materials and other surfaces by skilled mechanics of trades involved.
- 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Inspect installed components for damage and faulty work. Repair or replace as necessary; including the following:
    1. Raceways.
    2. Wire and Cable-600 Volt.
    3. Supporting devices for electrical components.
    4. Anchors, sleeves, inserts, hangers and supports.
    5. Contactors
    6. Lighting Contactors-Multiple Poles.
    7. Metallic Conduit and Fittings.
    8. Bushings.
    9. Conduit Seals.
    10. Expansion Fittings.
    11. Cable Supports.
    12. Cable Lubricant.
    13. Conductive Compounds.
    14. Cable and Feeder Taps and Splices.
    15. Junction and Pullboxes.
    16. Outlet Boxes.
    17. Non-Metallic Conduit and Fittings-PVC.
    18. Manholes.
    19. Access Panels.
    20. Time Switches and Photo Controls.
    21. Wiring Devices.
    22. Wiring Devices Plates.
    23. Electrical Identification.
    24. Electricity-Metering Components.
    25. Concrete Equipment Bases.
    26. Vibration Isolation.
    27. Electrical Demolition.
    28. Cutting and Patching for Electrical Construction.
    29. Touchup Painting.
- 3.12 REFINISHING AND TOUCHUP PAINTING
- A. Refinish and touch up paint. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 "Painting":
    1. Clean damaged and disturbed areas and apply primer, intermediate, and finish coats to suit the degree of damage at each location.
    2. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.
    3. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
    4. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.13 CLEANING CONDUITS AND DUCTS

- A. After conduits (ducts) and accessories have been installed, and concreting operations are completed, conduit runs shall be satisfactorily cleared of obstructions and foreign matter. Defects which might damage cable upon installation shall be corrected. Where conduits (ducts) installed are connected to conduits (ducts) installed by others, the entire run to the nearest box, manhole, or other termination point shall be cleaned. Clearing and cleaning shall be done by pulling through each conduit (duct) a flexible cylindrical mandrel having an outside diameter 1/4" less than the inside diameter of the conduit (duct). Defects and stoppages occurring in portions of the conduit (duct) run shall be corrected.

3.14 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. On completion of installation, including outlets, fittings, and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, paint spots, and construction debris.
- B. Protect equipment and installations and maintain conditions to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 260510**

**SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES  
(600V or Less)**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- B. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (MC); National Electrical Contractors Association; 2012.
- C. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2009 (ANSI/NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658).
- D. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013.
- E. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2011.
- F. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 493 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Underground Feeder and Branch-Circuit Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with latest edition of NFPA 70.
- D. Manufacturer's Seismic Qualification Certification: As required, submit certification that enclosures, cabinets, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems". Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on a calculation.
2. Dimensioned outline drawings of equipment unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of conductors and cables with other installations.
- B. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Aluminum and Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW, THHN-THWN, and XHHW.
- C. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire in lengths not exceeding 72 inches for use as final connection for lighting fixtures.

#### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: UL Listed Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Service Entrance, from C/T Meter to Main Circuit Breaker: Copper.
- B. Transformer to C/T Meter Cabinet: Copper or Aluminum.
- C. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

#### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THW, single conductors in raceway, Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway, Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway; or use - RHW insulated single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THW, single conductors in raceway, Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THW, use - RHW, or XHHW-2 insulated single conductors in raceway, Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THW, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THW or THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THW or THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THW or THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- I. Class 1 and Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, single insulated conductors in raceway.
- J. Fire Alarm Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, single insulated conductors in raceway or power limited, fire protective, signaling circuit cable as allowed by local authority having jurisdiction.
- K. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes, Power-limited tray cable, in cable tray.
- L. Metal Clad (MC) Cable: Where permitted by local codes, Type MC consisting of THHW/THWN single insulated conductors and integral ground wire in lengths not exceeding 72 inches may be utilized for final connections to lighting fixtures within accessible ceiling spaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Install wires and cables as indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions, and NECA's "Standards of Installations."
- B. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. All wiring shall be installed in raceway unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- E. Examine raceways and building finishes receiving conductors and cables for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- F. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- G. Remove existing wire and cable from raceway before pulling in new wire and cable. All conductors shall be pulled into raceway simultaneously where more than one wire or cable is being installed within the same raceway.
- H. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- I. Branch circuit homeruns for 120 volt circuits over 80'-0" long and for 277 volt circuits over 120'-0" long shall be one standard wire size larger than the ampere rating of protective device before the application of any NEC de-rating factors.
- J. Wiring at receptacles and switches: Install conductors at each receptacle and switch, with at least 12 inches of slack. Provide adequate length of conductors within electrical enclosures and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Make terminations so that no bare conductor is visible at the terminal.
- K. Support cables according to Manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- L. Feeder cable runs consisting of 4 more parallel conductors per phase shall have cable limiter lugs installed. Limiter lugs shall be provided on both ends of each phase cable. Lugs shall be installed per manufacturer's instructions.
- M. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- N. Seal around cables penetrating fire-rated elements according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
- C. Splices and taps in wires up to No. 8 shall be made with "Shotch-lok" or T&B PT Series or Ideal Wing Nut insulated electrical connectors. For wires No. 8 and larger, use copper solderless connectors covered with electrical putty and then wrapped with electrical tape. Use twist-on wire connectors for connecting lighting fixtures and small motor leads up to No. 8 wire.
- D. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.
- E. Terminal lugs for wires No. 8 and larger shall be compression type, unless noted otherwise. One-hole lugs for 4/0 AWG and smaller. Two-hole lugs for all sizes 250 KCMIL AWG and larger. Lug tang shall have full overlap contact at termination.

### 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
  - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
  - G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
  - I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies, or appropriate caulking as required by local Health Department.
  - J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
  - K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
  - L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
  - M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - N. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- 3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION
- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
  - B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- 3.7 FIRESTOPPING
- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Tests and Inspections:
    1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test conductors and cables for:
      - a. Electrical continuity.
      - b. Insulation integrity.
      - c. Demonstrate proper functioning of equipment.
    2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
    1. Test procedures used.
    2. Test results that comply with requirements.
    3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
  - D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 260519**

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by special requirements of systems described in other sections.
- B. Applications of electrical grounding and bonding work to be furnished and installed by the contractor in this section shall include, but not be limited to the following (as a minimum):
  1. Underground metal water piping electrode.
  2. Ground rod electrode.
  3. Concrete encased electrodes.
  4. Metal building frame electrodes.
  5. Electrical power systems.
  6. Other grounding electrodes.
  7. Isolated grounding.
  8. Telephone equipment.
  9. CCTV equipment.
  10. CATV equipment.
  11. Security equipment.
  12. Gas piping bonding.
  13. HVAC ductwork bonding.
  14. Raceways.
  15. Service equipment.
  16. Enclosures.
  17. Equipment.
  18. Lighting standards.
  19. Landscape lighting.
  20. Signs.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE 81 - Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System; 2012.
- B. NEMA GR 1 - Grounding Rod Electrodes and Grounding Rod Electrode Couplings; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2007.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit detailed drawings, calculations, and/or test results to the authorities having jurisdiction where required for approval, showing all grounding details, grounding installation and material specifications. The work shall not proceed until this approval has been obtained.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- C. Electrical System grounding and individual equipment grounding shall in all instances conform to the minimum requirements of NFPA 70, The National Electric Code, local codes or regulations, and regulations of the serving utilities, except where McDonald's corporate standards exceed those minimum requirements.
- D. Comply with latest NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Grounding Conductors:
  - 1. For insulated conductors, comply with Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."
  - 2. Material: Copper.
  - 3. Equipment Grounding Conductors: 600 Volt Insulated copper with green-colored insulation.
  - 4. Isolated Ground Conductors: 600 Volt Insulated copper with green-colored insulation with yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, use colored tape, alternating bands of green and yellow tape to provide a minimum of three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
  - 5. Grounding Electrode Conductors: 600 Volt stranded copper insulated conductors.
  - 6. Feeder Grounding Conductors: 600 Volt stranded copper insulated conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Copper Bonding Conductors: As follows:
    - a. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded copper conductor, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Bonding Jumper: Bare copper tape, braided bare copper conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inches thick.
  - 8. Grounding Bus: Bare, annealed copper bars of rectangular cross section, with insulators.

### 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

### 2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel 5/8 in diameter by 96 inches long.
- B. Concrete encased ground (Ufer).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Bolted or Welded connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.



### 3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- C. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- D. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- E. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- F. Technology/POS Isolated Ground/Dedicated Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor (green) and an insulated isolated grounding conductor (green with yellow strip) in a separate dedicated branch-circuit conduit run from subpanel to the junction box containing the isolated ground receptacle serving said equipment. Bond one end of the equipment grounding conductor (green) at the ground bus in source subpanel and the other to the junction box housing the isolated ground receptacle. Bond the isolated grounding conductor to the isolated ground bus in the source subpanel and the other to the isolated ground receptacle's isolated ground terminal.
- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
  - 1. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Provide a grounding electrode in addition to installing a separate equipment grounding conductor with supply branch-circuit conductors. Metal pole, grounding electrode, and equipment grounding conductor shall be bonded together to form a common ground point at the grounding lug of metal pole.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
  - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least two rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting or water meter is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
  - F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
  - G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart. Bond exposed steel to building grounding system.
  - H. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70, using a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
    1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
    2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding system at service entrance.
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - C. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
    2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
      - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
      - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
    3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
  - D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Engineer of Record promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

**END OF SECTION 260526**

## **SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

#### **1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2016.
- C. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2014 (ANSI/NEMA FB 1).
- D. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013 (ANSI/NEMA OS 1).
- E. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2014.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 514A - Metallic Outlet Boxes; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.4 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- F. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- G. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. The following wiring methods SHALL NOT be used: Non-Metallic sheathed cable (Romex, NM, NMC and NMS), Armored Cable Type AC (BX), Electrical Non-Metallic Tubing, Type ENT (Smurf-Tube).

#### **1.6 COORDINATION:**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system and partition assemblies.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL**

- A. Provide conduit and fittings of types, grades sizes and wall thickness for each service indicated. Where types and grades are not indicated, provide proper selection to fulfill wiring requirements listed within this specification and to comply with the applicable portions of the NEC and local, state and federal codes for raceways and installations.

- B. Provide complete raceway systems and enclosures for all wiring throughout the extent of the systems specified.

## 2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. RMC: Provide rigid steel, zinc coated, threaded type conforming to ANSI C80.1 and UL6.
- B. IMC: Rigid intermediate grade hot-dip galvanized, threaded type conforming to ANSI C80.6 and UL124Z.
- C. EMT and Fittings: Zinc coated steel conforming to ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
  - 1. Fittings: Set-screw or compression type by application and requirements listed in raceway application section. Indenter type and cast fittings shall not be utilized.
- D. FMC: Formed from continuous length of spirally wound, interlocked zinc-coated steel conforming to UL1.
- E. LFMC: Constructed with single strip, flexible, continuous, interlocked and double wrapped flexible steel; galvanized inside and outside; coated with liquid tight jacket of flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sunlight and UV resistant.
- F. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquid Tight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
- G. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

## 2.3 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. RNC: Heavy wall conduit: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC, 90° C UL-rated, constructed of polyvinyl chloride and suitable for direct burial use. Sunlight and UV resistant.
- B. RNC Fittings: NEMA TC 3; compatible with conduit type and suitable for use and location.

## 2.4 METAL WIREWAYS, FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Material and Construction: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated; Indoor: NEMA 1 Outdoor: NEMA 3R.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- C. Select features, unless otherwise indicated, as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type or as indicated in Construction Documents.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
- B. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Types, sizes, and channels as indicated and required for each application, with fittings that match and mate with raceways.

## 2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- B. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- C. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
- D. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- E. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- F. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- G. Cabinets:
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION**

- A. Outdoors: (for specific applications and appropriate fittings, see table 3.0 this section)
  - 1. Exposed Conduit: RMC, IMC.
  - 2. Concealed: RMC, IMC.
  - 3. Below Grade, Single Run: RNC, RMC.
  - 4. Below Grade, Grouped: RNC, RMC.
  - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  - 6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R or 4.
- B. Indoors: (for specific applications and appropriate fittings, see table 3.0 this section)
  - 1. Exposed Conduit: RMC, IMC.
  - 2. Concealed: EMT, IMC.
  - 3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC; except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  - 4. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except as follows:
    - a. Damp, Wet or kitchen Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel.
- C. Tab 3.0 – Application of raceways and fittings, unless otherwise specified.

<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>208V.</b>	<b>480V.</b>	<b>LOW ENERGY*</b>
<b>EXPOSED</b>			
Indoors	<1" EMT compress. ftgs. ≥1.25" IMC threaded ftgs.	IMC threaded ftgs.	EMT compr. ftgs.
Outdoors	RMC or IMC threaded ftgs.	RMC or IMC threaded ftgs.	RMC or IMC threaded ftgs.
<b>CONCEALED</b>			
Walls	<2" EMT set screw ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded ftgs.	≤2" EMT set screw. ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded ftgs.	EMT ½" - 2" set screw ftgs 2.5" – 4" compr. ftgs.
Air Handling Ceiling/Space	≤2" EMT compr. ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded. ftgs.	≤2" EMT compr. ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded. ftgs.	EMT compr. ftgs.
Non Air Handling Ceiling/Space	<2" EMT set screw ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded. ftgs.	≤2" EMT compr. ftgs. ≥2.5" IMC threaded. ftgs.	EMT ½" - 2" set screw ftgs 2.5" – 4" compr. ftgs.
<b>BELOW GRADE</b>			
Interior	IMC threaded ftgs. or Schedule 40 or 80 PVC	IMC threaded ftgs.	IMC threaded ftgs. Schedule 40 or 80 PVC
Exterior	Schedule 40 or 80 PVC or RMC threaded ftgs	Schedule 40 or 80 PVC or RMC threaded ftgs	Schedule 40 or 80 PVC or RMC threaded ftgs

- D. Install low energy conductors in designated conduit and fittings as required by code and authority having jurisdiction.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
- B. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- C. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.
- D. Keep raceways at least 12 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- E. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- F. Support raceways as specified in accordance with NFPA 70.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.

- H. Install no more than the equivalent of four 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.
- I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  3. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.
- N. Raceways for Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
  1. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
  1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- P. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 6' whip of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors. Installation shall include an intergral equipment grounding conductor.
  1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- Q. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
  1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
  5. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
  - D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line.
  - E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS
- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
  - B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
  - C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
    1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.
  - E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
  - F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
  - G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
  - I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
  - J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
  - K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
  - L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work and architectural drawings.
  - M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- 3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION
- A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
  - B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- 3.7 FIRESTOPPING
- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.8 PROTECTION
- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
    1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
    2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 260533**

## SECTION 260548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Isolation pads.
  2. Channel support systems.
  3. Restraint cables.
  4. Hanger rod stiffeners.
  5. Anchorage bushings and washers.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2016.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- C. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016.
- D. ASTM A603 - 98(2014)e1 Standard Specification for Zinc Coated Steel Structural Wire Rope.
- E. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2015.
- F. ASTM E488 / E488M - 15 Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete Elements
- G. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; Metal Framing Manufacturers Association; 2004.
- H. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- I. FEMA 413 - Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment; 2004.
- J. FEMA E-74 - Reducing the Risks of Nonstructural Earthquake Damage: A Practical Guide; 2012.
- K. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc.; 2017.
- L. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. The IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic restraint requirements in IBC, BOCA, California Building Code/Code of Regulations of OSHPD, SBC, and UBC, unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. If location of this electrical installation requires seismic considerations, seismic design and Shop Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional or structural engineer.
  1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints as required.
  2. Detail assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints.



- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind-load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 26 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    - 2. Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices.
    - 3. Field-fabricated supports.
    - 4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
      - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
      - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events.
  - C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
  - D. Welding certificates.
  - E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. All switchgear shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to IBC, BOCA, California Code/ Code of Regulations of OSHPD, SBC, and UBC, unless requirements in this Section are more stringent. The term "withstand" means the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified..
  - B. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage pre-approval OPA number from OSHPD, pre-approval by ICC-ES, or pre-approval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If pre-approved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - C. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES
- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
  - B. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
  - C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
  - D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.
  - E. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.
  - F. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.
  - G. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
  - H. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
  - I. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to E. ASTM E488 / E488M - 15.

## 2.2 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
  - 1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
  - 2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- D. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage as required by Authority having jurisdiction a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

**END OF SECTION 260548**

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification for raceways.
  - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
  - 3. Identification for conductors.
  - 4. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 5. Warning labels and signs.
  - 6. Instruction signs.
  - 7. Equipment identification labels.
  - 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- D. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z535.2 - American National Standard for Environmental and Facility Safety Signs; 2011.
- B. ANSI Z535.4 - American National Standard for Product Safety Signs and Labels; 2011.
- C. ASTM D638 - 14 Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. NFPA 70E - Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace; 2018.
- F. UL 969 - Marking and Labeling Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
  - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
  - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
  - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- B. Color and Printing:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
  - 2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.
  - 3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.

#### 2.2 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
    1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
    2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
    3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
  - D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
    1. Weather-resistant, non-fading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
    2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
    3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.
  - E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
    1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
    2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
- 2.3 INSTRUCTION SIGNS
- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
    1. Engraved legend with letter and face colors indicated on design documents or as required by code.
    2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
    3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
  - B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.
- 2.4 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS
- A. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.
  - B. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.
- 2.5 CABLE TIES
- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
    1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
    2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
    3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
    4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.
  - B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
    1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
    2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
    3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
    4. Color: Black.
  - C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
    1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
    2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
    3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
    4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
    5. Color: Black.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS
- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
  - B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16 inches overall.
- G. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. Emergency Power.
- B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Color-Coding for Phase Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
    - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.
      - 2) Phase B: Red.
      - 3) Phase C: Blue.
      - 4) Neutral: White.
      - 5) Ground: Green.
      - 6) Isolation Ground: Green with Yellow Strip.
    - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Brown.
      - 2) Phase B: Orange.
      - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
      - 4) Neutral: Gray.
      - 5) Ground: Green.
    - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- C. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags or marker tape to conductors and list source.
- D. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  - 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- E. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
  - 1. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- F. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.
  - 1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
  - 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
  - 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Power transfer switches.
  - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- G. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- H. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer load shedding.
- I. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label, or as indicated on drawings. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch high letters on 1-1/2-inch high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
    - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    - d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
  2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Switchgear.
    - e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    - f. Enclosed switches.
    - g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    - h. Enclosed controllers.
    - i. Push-button stations.
    - j. Power transfer equipment.
    - k. Contactors.
    - l. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    - m. Battery-inverter units.
    - n. Monitoring and control equipment.

**END OF SECTION 260553**

## **SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
  - 1. Time switches.
  - 2. Outdoor or indoor photoelectric switches.
  - 3. Indoor occupancy sensors.
  - 4. Lighting contactors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2016.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- D. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Fluorescent Ballasts; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2015.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 773 - Plug-in Locking Type Photocontrols for Use with Area Lighting; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 916 - Energy Management Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 917 - Clock-Operated Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- B. PIR: Passive infrared.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
  - 1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements as shown on Construction Documents.



- B. Electronic Programmable Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
  1. Contact Configuration: Form-C contacts for normally open and closed circuits.
  2. Contact Rating: 20-A ballast load, 120/240-V ac.
  3. Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
  4. Program: according to restaurant schedule.
  5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
  6. Astronomic Time: channels.
  7. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.
  8. Four (4) independently controlled outputs.

## 2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Description: Solid state, with SPDT dry contacts rated for, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.
  1. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 0 to 3500 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels.
  2. Time Delay: 15-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  3. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor, complying with IEEE C62.41.1, IEEE C62.41.2, and IEEE 62.45 for Category A1 locations.
  4. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

## 2.3 INDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Ceiling-Mounted Photoelectric Switch: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate relay unit, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye. Cadmium sulfide photoresistors are not acceptable.
  1. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
  2. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for, and for 1/2 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
  3. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  4. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling, with deadband adjustment.
  5. Indicator: Two LEDs to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

## 2.4 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.
  1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
  3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
  4. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
  6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
  7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
- B. PIR Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a combination of heat and movement in area of coverage.
  1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in.
  2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.

3. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot high ceiling.
- C. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a change in pattern of reflected ultrasonic energy in area of coverage.
  1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.
  5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
- D. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
  1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
  2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch high ceiling.

## 2.5 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as specified on drawings.
- C. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically or electrically held, as defined on Drawings, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
  2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

### 3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.
- B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work. Connect deficiencies, make necessary adjustments and retest. Verify that specified requirements are met.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Cleaning: Clean equipment and devices internally and externally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturers, and repair damaged finishes.

**END OF SECTION 260923**

## SECTION 262200 - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
  - 1. Distribution transformers.
  - 2. Buck-boost transformers.
  - 3. Control and signal transformers.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE C57.94 - Recommended Practice for Installation, Application, Operation, and Maintenance of Dry-Type General Purpose Distribution and Power Transformers; 1982 (R2015).
- B. IEEE C57.96 - Guide for Loading Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers; 1999 (R2013).
- C. NEMA ST 20 - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2014.
- D. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- E. NEMA TP 1 - Guide for Determining Energy Efficiency for Distribution Transformers; 2002.
- F. NEMA TP 2 - Standard Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Distribution Transformers; 2005.
- G. NEMA TP 3 - Standard for the Labeling of Distribution Transformer Efficiency; 2000.
- H. UL 506 - Standard for Specialty Transformers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 1561 - Standard for Dry-Type General Purpose and Power Transformers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: If required submit certification that transformers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Energy Efficient Transformers rated 15 kVA and larger. Certified as meeting NEMA TP-1, Class 1 efficiency levels when tested according to NEMA TP-2.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.
- C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
  - 1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  - 2. Coil Material: Copper.

### 2.2 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Cores: One leg per phase.
- D. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
  - 1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
- E. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, nonventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4X, stainless steel as indicated in Construction Documents.
  - 1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
- F. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250, for outdoor and indoor corrosion protection.
  - 1. Finish Color: Gray.
- G. Taps for Transformers Smaller than 3 kVA: None.
- H. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity.
- I. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.
- J. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
  - 1. Complying with NEMA TP 1, Class 1 efficiency levels.
  - 2. Tested according to NEMA TP 2.
- K. K-Factor Rating if required on Construction Documents: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
  - 1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
  - 2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
- L. Electrostatic Shielding if required on Construction Documents: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
  - 1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
  - 2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
  - 3. Shield Effectiveness:
    - a. Capacitance between Primary and Secondary Windings: Not to exceed 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
    - b. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 120 dBA at 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minimum of minus 65 dBA at 1.5 to 100 kHz.
    - c. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 52 dBA at 1.5 to 10 kHz.
- M. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.
- N. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91. Low-sound Level Requirements: Maximum sound level, when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91 as follows:
  - 1. NEMA ST 20 sound levels are as follows: Up to 9 kVA: 40 dBA; 30 to 50 kVA: 45 dBA; 51 to 150 kVA: 50 dBA; 151 to 300 kVA: 55 dBA; 301 to 500 kVA: 60 dBA.

- 2.3 BUCK-BOOST TRANSFORMERS
- A. Description: Self-cooled, two-winding dry type, rated for continuous duty and with wiring terminals suitable for connection as autotransformer. Transformers shall comply with NEMA ST 1 and shall be listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561.
  - B. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
    - 1. Finish Color: Gray.
- 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
  - B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
  - D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
  - E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
    - 1. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
  - C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
  - B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.
  - C. Output Settings Report: Prepare written report recording output voltages and tap settings.
- 3.5 CLEANING
- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

**END OF SECTION 16461**

## SECTION 262413 - SWITCHBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
  2. Surge protection devices.
  3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  4. Instrumentation.
  5. Control power.
  6. Accessory components and features.
  7. Identification and warning labels or signs

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C12.1 - American National Standard Code for Electricity Metering; 2014.
- B. ANSI C39.1 - American National Standard Requirements for Electrical Analog Indicating Instruments; 1981 (R1992).
- C. IEC 60051-1 - Direct Acting Indicating Analogue Electrical Measuring Instruments and Their Accessories - Part 1: Definitions and General Requirements Common To All Parts;; 2016.
- D. IEC 60051-2 - Direct Acting Indicating Analogue Electrical Measuring Instruments and Their Accessories - Part 2: Special Requirements for Ammeters and Voltmeters; 1984.
- E. IEEE C12.1 - American National Standard Code for Electricity Metering; Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers; 1988.
- F. IEEE C57.13 - IEEE Standard Requirements for Instrument Transformers; Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers; 2016.
- G. NECA 400 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Switchboards (ANSI); National Electrical Contractors Association; 2007.
- H. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013.
- I. NEMA PB 2 - Deadfront Distribution Switchboards; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2011.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.
  1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  2. Detail enclosure types.
  3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  5. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
  6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
  2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and NECA 400. The worker is trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
  - 2. Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components and accessories from approved suppliers.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Comply with UL 891.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Store indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- C. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchboards to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards; install electric heating (250-W per section) to prevent condensation.
- D. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NEMA PB 2.1 and NECA 400.
- E. Use only factory installed lifting provisions.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify dimensions by field measurements.
- B. Switchboards shall be located to meet or exceed all code clearance repair requirements.
- C. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.
- D. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
  - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
    - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- E. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, usual service conditions, as follows:
  - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
- F. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's, Area Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SWITCHBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Siemens and Square D.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
- C. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
  - 1. Main Devices: Panel mounted.
  - 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
- D. Nominal System Voltage: Per Construction Documents.
- E. Main-Bus Continuous: Per Construction Documents.
- F. All switchboards to comply with UL 67 and UL 489 requirements.
- G. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- H. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's custom color finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
- I. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R.
  - 1. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's custom color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.
  - 2. Enclosure: Downward, sloping roof for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
- J. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
- K. Insulation and isolation for main and vertical buses of feeder sections.
- L. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealed door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
- M. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
- N. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
  - 2. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
  - 3. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch-Minimum-size required by UL 891, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.
  - 4. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
  - 5. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
  - 6. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
- O. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, filler plates, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.
- P. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.
- Q. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- R. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
  - 1. UL label indicating series-connected rating with integral or remote upstream devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL series-connected short-circuit rating. Circuit breakers in branch panelboards shall have a minimum 10 kAIC rating. Upstream devices shall be rated at 65 kAIC minimum.
  - 2. Clearly and legibly mark on the doors of all panelboards "Caution – Series rated system \_\_\_\_\_ A. available. Identified replacement components required."
- S. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

### 2.2 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as specified on drawings:

- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
- C. Surge Protection Device Description: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, wired-in, solid-state, parallel-connected, non-modular type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, Third edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the switchboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
  1. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  2. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
  3. Integral disconnect switch.
  4. Redundant suppression circuits.
  5. Redundant replaceable modules.
  6. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
  7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  8. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
  9. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
- D. Minimum Single-Impulse Current Rating: 80 kA per phase.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SPD Third Edition for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
  1. Line to Neutral: 330 V for 208Y/120.
  2. Line to Ground: 330 V for 208Y/120.
  3. Neutral to Ground: 330 V for 208Y/120.
  4. Line to Line: 600 V for 208Y/120.

### 2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating or interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  3. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (5-6-mA trip).
  4. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  5. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1669; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  6. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits and Type HACR for heating, air conditioning and refrigerant equipment.
    - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    - e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    - f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit
- B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- C. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NECA 400.
- B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NOMA PB 1.1, NEC, NECA Standards and Manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, specified in Construction Drawings. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section.
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and transient voltage suppression devices.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - 3. Tighten all connections prior to energizing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. controls and equipment.
- C. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit breakers trip ranges.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

**END OF SECTION 262413**

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Distribution panelboards rated 600-V and less.
  2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards rated 600-V and less.
  3. Electronic-grade panelboards rated 600-V and less.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS W-C-375 - Circuit Breakers, Molded Case; Branch Circuit and Service; Federal Specification; Revision E, 2013.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- C. NECA 407 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- D. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013.
- E. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2011.
- F. NEMA PB 1.1 - General Instructions for Proper Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013.
- G. NETA STD ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems; International Electrical Testing Association; 2013.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. L 67 - Panelboards; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. GFCI: Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter.
- C. SPD: SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES.
- D. RMS: Root Mean Square.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- D. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Install final versions after load balancing.

- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations:
    - 1. Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
    - 2. Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components and accessories from approved suppliers.
  - B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
  - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
  - E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
  - B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Verify dimensions by field measurements.
  - B. Panelboards shall be located to meet or exceed all code clearance requirements.
  - C. Environmental Limitations:
    - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
    - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
      - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
      - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
  - D. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
    - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
    - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
  - E. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
    - 1. Notify Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
    - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner's written permission.
    - 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS
- A. When required fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
    - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
      - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

- b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
      - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X, stainless steel.
    - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
    - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
    - 4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
    - 5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
    - 6. Finishes:
      - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
      - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
    - 7. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
  - C. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom.
  - D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
    - 1. Bus: Tin Plated Aluminum Temp Rated or Copper Temp Rated as required. Provide 750 A per sq. inch Al or 1000 A per sq. inch Cu per local jurisdiction requirements. Bus shall be sequence phased from left to right.
    - 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
    - 3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  - E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
    - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type.
    - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression or Mechanical type.
    - 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
    - 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
    - 6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  - F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  - G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  - H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
    - 1. UL label indicating series-connected rating with integral or remote upstream devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL series-connected short-circuit rating. Circuit breakers in branch panelboards shall have a minimum 10 kAIC rating. Upstream devices shall be rated at 65 kAIC minimum.
    - 2. Clearly and legibly mark on the doors of all panelboards "Caution – Series rated system \_\_\_\_\_  
A. available. Identified replacement components required."
  - I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.
- 2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS
- A. Manufacturers: Siemens and Square D.
  - B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
  - C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
    - 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
  - D. Mains: Circuit breaker or as specified on drawings.
  - E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for all Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
  - F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as specified on drawings:
  - B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
  - C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.

- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

#### 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as specified on drawings:
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating or interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Class A ground-fault protection (5-6-mA trip).
  - 4. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  - 5. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  - 6. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Lugs: Compression or Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits. Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment.
    - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted or Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    - e. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
    - f. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.
    - g. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
  - 1. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
  - 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.

#### 2.5 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as specified on drawings:
- B. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, non-modular type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, Third edition, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, redundant suppression circuits, with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
  - 1. Accessories:
    - a. Fuses rated at 200 kA interrupting capacity.
    - b. Integral disconnect switch.
    - c. Redundant suppression circuits.
    - d. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
    - e. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    - f. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
    - g. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
  - 2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 80 kA per phase.
  - 3. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.
    - a. Line to Neutral: 40,000 A. (minimum)
    - b. Line to Ground: 40,000 A. (minimum)
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 60,000 A. (minimum)



- d. Line to Line: 80,000 A. (minimum)
- 4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SPDThirdEdition for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
  - a. Line to Neutral: 330 V for 208Y/120.
  - b. Line to Ground: 330 V for 208Y/120].
  - c. Neutral to Ground: 330 V for 208Y/120.
  - d. Line to Line: 600 V for 208Y/120.
  - e. Mcov: 150 V for 208Y/120.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1., NEC, NECA Standards and Manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
  - 2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
  - 5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount top of trim 79 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
- H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- I. Stub three 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future.
- J. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- K. Comply with NECA 1.

#### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

#### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but prior restaurant opening, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
  2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
  4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- 3.6 PROTECTION
- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.7 CLEANING
- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

**END OF SECTION 262416**

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  2. Twist-locking receptacles.
  3. Wall-box motion sensors.
  4. Isolated-ground receptacles.
  5. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  6. Communications outlets.
  7. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  8. Cord and plug sets.
  9. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS W-C-596 - Connector, Electrical, Power, General Specification for; Federal Specification; Revision H, 2014.
- B. FS W-S-896 - Switches, Toggle (Toggle and Lock), Flush-mounted (General Specification); Federal Specification; Revision G, 2017.
- C. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 1999 (R 2015).
- D. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device -- Dimensional Requirements; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2016.
- E. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. All devices used shall be UL listed and installed in compliance with its listing.
- E. All wiring devices shall be of specification grade or greater. Residential grade products shall not be utilized.
- F. All wiring devices shall be as specified within the construction documents and/or as contained herein.

- 1.7 COORDINATION
  - A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
    - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: As specified on drawings.

### 2.2 RECEPTACLES

- A. General: Each receptacle shall be constructed to include a grounding pole from which a wired connection to ground shall be provided.
- B. Straight-Blade-Type Receptacles: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, DSCC W-C-596G, and UL 498.
  - 1. Receptacles: 15 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-15R, side wired: Hubbell series 5262.
  - 2. Receptacles: 20 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-20R, side wired: Hubbell series 5362.
- C. Locking Receptacles: Heavy-Duty grade, applicable NEMA and UL standards.
- D. GFCI Receptacles (with 4-6mA personnel protection): Straight blade, feed-through type, Heavy-Duty grade, with integral NEMA WD 6, duplex receptacle; complying with UL 498 and UL 943. Design units for installation in a standard 2-3/4-inch-deep outlet box without an adapter.
  - 1. GFCI Receptacles: 15 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-15R GFCI side wired: Hubbell series GF5252.
  - 2. GFCI Receptacles: 20 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-20R GFCI side wired: Hubbell series GF5352.
- E. Tamper Resistant GFCI Receptacle: Straight blade, "Safelock" protection.
  - 1. 15 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-15R, Hubbell series GFTRST15 – I (Ivory)
  - 2. 20 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-20R, Hubbell series GFTRST20 – I (Ivory)
  - 3. 15 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-15R, Hubbell series GFTRST15 – W (White)
  - 4. 20 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-20R, Hubbell series GFTRST20 – W (White)
  - 5. 15 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-15R, Hubbell series GFTRST15 – AL (Almond)
  - 6. 20 Amp, 120 Volt, NEMA 5-20R, Hubbell series GFTRST20 – AL (Almond)
- F. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Straight blade and twist lock, Heavy-Duty grade, single or duplex receptacle, with isolated equipment grounding conductor connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device, with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap, integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
  - 1. IG Receptacles: 15 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-15R IG simplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG5261.
  - 2. IG Receptacles: 15 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-15R IG duplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG5262 or CR5252IG.
  - 3. IG Receptacles: 20 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-20R IG simplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG5361.
  - 4. IG Receptacles: 20 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA 5-20R IG duplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG5362 or CR5352IG.
  - 5. IG Receptacles (Twist lock): 15 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA L5-15R IG simplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG4710.
  - 6. IG Receptacles: (Twist-lock) 15 Amp, 120 Volt NEMA L5-15R IG duplex, side wired: Hubbell series IG4700A.
- G. Industrial Heavy-Duty Pin and Sleeve Devices: Comply with IEC 309-1.
- H. Enclosures: NEMA 1 unless otherwise noted.

### 2.3 WIRING DEVICE PLATES

- A. Provide plates for all outlets with opening configuration suitable for devices to be covered.
- B. Plates shall be Type 302 brushed satin finish stainless steel. Plates shall be secured in place with screws finished to match the plates.
- C. Plates for receptacles and switches in finished areas shall match hardware in room.
- D. Design and finish of switch and receptacle plates in the same area shall match in all respects.

### 2.4 PENDANT CORD/CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
  - 1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
  - 2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

## 2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
  - 1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
  - 2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## 2.6 TOGGLE SWITCHES AND DIMMERS

- A. Single- and Double-Pole Switches: Comply with DSCC W-C-896F and UL 20.
- B. Toggle switches shall be 120-277 Volt, 20 Amp, side wired with grounding connection: Hubbell series HBL1221.
- C. Snap Switches: Heavy-Duty grade, quiet type, UL 20.
- D. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on/off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters.
  - 1. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching to suit connections.
  - 2. Wattage rating shall exceed connected load by 30 percent minimum, except as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: Modular, 120 V, 60 Hz with continuously adjustable slider; single pole with soft tap or other quiet switch; EMI/RFI filter to eliminate interference; and 5-inch wire connecting leads.
  - 4. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness. Wattage and voltage ratings as indicated and electromagnetic filters to minimize noise and R8 and TV interference. Anodized heat sinks, 5" wire connecting leads.

## 2.7 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inchthick, satin-finished type 302 stainless steel, except as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
  - 4. Material for Outdoor Wet Locations: Provide UL listed and labeled enclosure that is weatherproof whether or not an attachment plug cap is inserted in the receptacle.
  - 5. Plates for Isolated Ground / Dedicated Circuit Receptacles shall be Hubbell PJ8C0 (1 GANG) and PJ82C0 (2 Gang).

## 2.8 WALL JACKS

- A. Telephone Jack: Compatible for use with phone system and intended use.
- B. Computer Jack: Compatible for use with computer system and intended use.

## 2.9 FINISHES

- A. Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange or as specified above, with orange triangle on face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring devices and accessories as indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, applicable requirements of NEC and in accordance with recognized industry practices to fulfill project requirements.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
  5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
  6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
  7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
  10. Install all switches in compliance with ADA requirements.
- E. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- F. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
  3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.
- 3.2 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- B. Switches: Where 3 or more switches are ganged, and elsewhere where indicated, identify each switch with approved legend engraved on wall plate.
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. When available, connections shall be made to terminal screws of wiring devices in lieu of utilizing spring or compression back-stab type connections. Connections shall be made utilizing solid copper conductors.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 5 percent or higher is not acceptable.
  3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.

6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 262726**

## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, panelboards, modular switchgear and enclosed controllers.
  2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2012.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. UL 248-1 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 1: General Requirements; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 248-4 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 4: Class CC Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 248-8 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 8: Class J Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 248-10 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 10: Class L Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 248-12 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 12: Class R Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
  5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
- B. Submit Fuse Operation and Maintenance Data: Including emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals to Owner:
  1. Provide a listing of fuse types and models installed by application to Building Owner/Operator for cross reference in replacement applications.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CARTRIDGE FUSES**

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Service Entrance: 800 Amperes or Greater, Class L, time delay or Class T, fast acting or Class RK or as specified on drawings.
  - 2. Main Feeders 601 Amperes or Greater: Class L, time delay, Class RK5, fast acting, Class RK5, time delay, Class J, fast acting, Class J, time delay or as specified on drawings.
  - 3. Main Feeders 400 - 600 Amperes: Class J, time delay or as specified on drawings.
  - 4. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay or as specified on drawings.
  - 5. Other Branch Circuits Less Than 600 Amperes: Class RK1, time delay or as specified on drawings.
  - 6. Control Circuits: Class CC, time delay or as specified on drawings.
  - 7. Individual Fluorescent Ballast Protection: GLR/HLR type.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- B. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- C. All fuses shall be of a common manufacturer and of a common type within any fusible device.

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused device and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

**END OF SECTION 262813**

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Receptacle switches.
  - 4. Shunt trip switches.
  - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 6. Molded-case switches.
  - 7. Enclosures.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS W-C-375 - Circuit Breakers, Molded Case; Branch Circuit and Service; Federal Specification; Revision E, 2013.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- D. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013.
- E. NETA STD ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems; International Electrical Testing Association; 2017.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Only use approved suppliers.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge fuse interiors to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
6. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
5. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products only from approved suppliers.

- B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- D. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- E. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Instantaneous trip.
  - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
- F. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- G. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- H. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (5-mA). Personnel protection sensitivity or 30-mA trip equipment protection sensitivity, as required by application.
- I. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  - 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.

#### 2.4 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products only from approved suppliers.
- B. General Requirements: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - 3. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.

#### 2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X or stainless steel as required.
  - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
  - D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
  - E. Comply with NECA 1.
  - F. Install disconnect switches and per local utility requirements. Provide suitable supports.
  - G. Install disconnect switches and circuit breakers level and plumb.
  - H. Connect disconnect switches and circuit breakers and components to building wiring system and ground as indicated in construction documents and as instructed by manufacturer's installation instructions. Installation shall comply with all requirements of the National Electrical Code.
- 3.3 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
    - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
    - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - B. Tests and Inspections:
    - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
    - 3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.6 CLEANING
- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of enclosures. Remove paint splatters and other spots and burrs. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces, chips, scratches, and abrasions to match original finish.

**END OF SECTION 262816**

## SECTION 262913 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
  1. Full-voltage manual.
  2. Full-voltage magnetic.

#### 1.3 REFERENCED STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- B. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control and Systems: Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays, Rated Not More Than 2000 Volts AC or 750 Volts DC; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2000 (R2005).
- C. NEMA ICS 5 - Industrial Control and Systems: Control Circuit and Pilot Devices; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2017.
- D. NEMA ICS 6 - Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 1993 (R2016).
- E. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum); National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2013.
- F. NETA STD ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems; International Electrical Testing Association; 2017.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- D. N.C.: Normally closed.
- E. N.O.: Normally open.
- F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- G. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
  2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
  3. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
  4. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.
  5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal and control wiring differentiate between Manufacturers installed and field installed wiring.
- B. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
- C. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
  - B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
    2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
  - B. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
    1. Notify Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
    2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
    3. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Architect, Area Construction Manager or Owner's written permission.
    4. Comply with NFPA 70E.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
  - B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
  - C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
  - D. Coordinate features of enclosed controllers and accessory devices with pilot devices and control circuits to which they connect.
  - E. Coordinate features, accessories and functions of each enclosed controller with ratings and characteristics of supply circuit, motor, required control sequence, and duty cycle of motor and load.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 FULL-VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS
- A. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Non Reversing Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
  - B. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
    1. Configuration: Non-reversing or as specified on Construction Documents.
    2. Surface mounting.
  - C. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
    1. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
    2. Surface mounting.
  - D. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
    1. Configuration: Non-reversing or as specified on Construction Drawings].
    2. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters and sensors in each phase, matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and having appropriate adjustment for duty cycle; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
    3. Surface mounting.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on 4-inch nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- C. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.
- F. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
- G. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
- H. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
  - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

### 3.4 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
  - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
  - 2. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:



1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
  2. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  4. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect, Area Construction Manager and Owner before starting the motor(s).
  5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  8. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 3.6 ADJUSTING
- A. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
  - B. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Architect before increasing settings.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
  - B. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.
- 3.8 CLEANING
- A. Clean enclosed controllers internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

**END OF SECTION 262913**

## SECTION 265100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
  - 2. Emergency lighting units.
  - 3. Exit signs.
  - 4. Lighting fixture supports.
  - 5. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C82.4 - American National Standard for Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low Pressure Sodium Lamps (Multiple-Supply Type); 2017
- B. ANSI C82.11 - American National Standard for Lamp Ballasts - High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts - Supplements; 2017.
- C. IEEE C62.41.2 - Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (R2012).
- D. IESNA LM-63 - ANSI Approved Standard File Format for Electronic Transfer of Photometric Data and Related Information; 2002 (Reaffirmed 2008).
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2015.
- F. NECA/IESNA 500 - Standard for Installing Indoor Commercial Lighting Systems; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2006.
- G. NECA/IESNA 502 - Standard for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems; National Electrical Contractors Association; 2006.
- H. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Fluorescent Ballasts; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; 2015.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. NFPA 101 - Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings and Structures; National Fire Protection Association; 2018.
- K. UL 844 - Luminaires for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 935 - Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 1029 - High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. BF: Ballast factor.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. CU: Coefficient of utilization.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. LED: Light Emitting Diode.
- F. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- H. RCR: Room cavity ratio.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - 1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
  - 2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
  - 3. Ballast.
  - 4. Energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Life, output, and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
  - 6. Photometric data, in IESNA format, based on laboratory tests of each lighting fixture type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    - a. Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. LED compliance testing documentation in accordance with IESNA LM-80 and the DOE CALiPER testing documentation for all solid state luminaires.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Indicate dimensions, weights, methods of field assembly, components, features, and accessories.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Lighting fixtures.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
  - 4. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Air outlets and inlets.
    - b. Speakers.
    - c. Sprinklers.
    - d. Smoke and fire detectors.
    - e. Occupancy sensors.
    - f. Access panels.
  - 5. Perimeter moldings.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: This special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Eight (8) years from date of Substantial Completion. Full Warranty shall apply for first three (3) years, and prorated warranty for the remaining five years.
- C. Special Warranty for Ballasts: Manufacturer's standard form in which ballast manufacturer agrees to repair or replace ballasts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Special Warranty for Fluorescent Lamps: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by lamp manufacturer agreeing to replace lamps that fail in materials or workmanship, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products, installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule where titles below are column or row headings that introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacture specified.

#### 2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
- D. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- E. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- F. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated, 22 Gauge minimum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- G. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
  - 4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.
- I. Plastic Diffusers, Covers, and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, A12 pattern. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless different thickness is indicated.
    - b. UV stabilized.
  - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. All panels shall be destaticized at the factory before shipping.
  - 4. Provide non-iridescent type louvers for fixtures using T8 or compact fluorescent lamps.
  - 5. Metal halide lighting fixtures shall have a tempered glass lens to contain a lamp failure and the associated hot quartz and shattered glass.

#### 2.3 LED LUMINAIRES

- A. LED luminaires shall provide a continuous and controllable light source. Lamp output and dimensions shall be in accordance with contract drawings and specifications. LED luminaire lumen output will be in accordance with the specifications and shall not depreciate more than 20% after 10,000 hours of use. Rated lumen output for LED luminaires to operate in ambient temperature of minus 4°F -20°C to 122°F +50°C. Luminaires to have minimum life of 50,000 hours.
- B. All LEDs used in the LED luminaires will be of high brightness and proven quality. All LEDs shall be driven digitally with pulse width modulation control to prolong life and maintain consistency of lumen output.
- C. All connections to luminaires will be reverse polarity protected and provide high voltage protection in the event connections are reversed or shorted during the installation process.
- D. Fuse Protection: All power supply outputs will be either fuse protected or PTC- protected as per Class 2 UL listing. All luminaires will have built-in fuse protection. All power supplies will provide for knockouts for conduit connections or clamp-style connection for the low-voltage wiring

## 2.4 LED DRIVERS (POWER SUPPLIES)

- A. All LED drivers to be compatible with LEDs. All LED luminaires and drivers (power supplies) shall be furnished by single manufacture to insure compatibility.
- B. Electric Characteristics (at 77°F ambient temperature)
- C. Input Voltage Range - 108V to 132V
- D. Efficiency Minimum – 80%
- E. Output Current Regulation Range (+/-) 5%A
- F. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) – 20% maximum
- G. Power Factor – 0.9 minimum
- H. Crest Factor (LED Current) – 1.5 maximum
- I. FCC Class B for Conducted EMI
- J. FCC Class A for Radiated EMI
- K. Drivers life – 50,000 hours minimum

## 2.5 BALLASTS FOR LINEAR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Electronic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.11; instant-start type, unless otherwise indicated, and designed for type and quantity of lamps served. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated.
  - 1. Sound Rating: A.
  - 2. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
  - 3. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  - 4. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
  - 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
  - 6. BF: 0.85 or higher.
  - 7. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
  - 8. Ballast shall not contain polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB's)
  - 9. Lamp and ballast characteristics shall be matched.
- B. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
  - 1. Temperatures 0 Deg F and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
  - 2. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with high-output lamps.
- C. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic-Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.
- D. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
  - 1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - 2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
  - 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
- E. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
  - 1. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - b. Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - 2. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  - 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.

## 2.6 BALLASTS FOR COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Description: Electronic programmed rapid-start type, complying with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
  - 1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  - 2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
  - 3. Sound Rating: A.
  - 4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
  - 5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  - 6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
  - 7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
  - 8. BF: 0.95 or higher, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.

10. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
  11. Ballast Case Temperature: 75 deg C, maximum.
- B. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
  3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
- 2.7 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER UNIT
- A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924 and NFPA 101.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate two outer fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 600 – 700 lumens each. If required connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
  2. Night-Light Connection: Operate all fluorescent lamps continuously.
  3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  4. Battery: 1-1/2 Hour Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type with minimum seven (7) year nominal life. Battery shall have a suitable rating and capacity to supply and maintain at not less than 87.5% of the nominal voltage for the lamp load associated with the unit for a period of at least 1-1/2 hours.
  5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
- B. External Type (retrofit applications only): Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate two outer fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 600 – 700 lumens each. If required connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
  2. Night-Light Connection: Operate all fluorescent lamps in a remote fixture continuously.
  3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type, with minimum seven year nominal life. Battery shall have a suitable rating and capacity to supply and maintain at not less than 87.5% of the nominal voltage for the lamp load associated with the unit for a period of at least 1-1/2 hours.
  4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  5. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure, plenum rated where required.
  6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
- 2.8 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS
- A. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F for single-lamp ballasts.
  3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F.
  4. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
  5. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- B. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  2. Sound Rating: A.
  3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 15 percent.
  4. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
  6. Power Factor: .90 or higher.
  7. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for non-consumer equipment.
  8. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.

9. Retain subparagraph and associated subparagraphs below for bi-level ballasts.
10. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
  - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Low-Level Operation: 50 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
11. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.
  - a. Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
  - b. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
- C. Auxiliary Instant-On Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.
- D. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter-starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
  1. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
    - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
    - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F.
  3. Open-circuit operation shall not reduce average lamp life.

## 2.9 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 70,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
    - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
    - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
    - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
    - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

## 2.10 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. Description: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
  1. Battery: 1-1/2 hour, sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type with minimum 10-year normal life and special warranty. Battery shall have a suitable rating and capacity to supply and maintain at not less than 87.5% of the nominal battery voltage for the lamp load associated with the unit for a period of at least 1-1/2 hours.
  2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures as indicated on Drawings.
  7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage. Time delay permits HID lamps to restrike and develop adequate output.

8. Provide remote head(s), weatherproof for outdoor applications, as indicated on plans.

#### 2.11 FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Low-Mercury Lamps: Comply with EPA's toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2 mg of mercury per liter when tested according to NEMA LL 1.
- B. T8 rapid-start low-mercury lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches, 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. T5 rapid-start low-mercury lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches, 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. T5HO rapid-start, high-output low-mercury lamps, rated 54 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches, 5000 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, low mercury, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at 3 hours operation per start, and suitable for use with dimming ballasts, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. 13 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 900 initial lumens (minimum).
  2. 18 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1200 initial lumens (minimum).
  3. 26 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1800 initial lumens (minimum).
  4. 32 W: T4, triple tube, rated 2400 initial lumens (minimum).
  5. 42 W: T4, triple tube, rated 3200 initial lumens (minimum).

#### 2.12 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 22 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
  1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
- B. Metal Halide and High Pressure Sodium lamps shall be of the clear type unless noted otherwise.
- C. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- D. Low wattage HID lamps shall be provided with an inner arc tube to prevent rupture of lamp.
- E. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- F. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 3500 K.

#### 2.13 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- B. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage minimum.
- D. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580, or A 580 M Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage minimum.
- E. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- F. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- G. Aircraft Cable Support: Use cable, anchorages and intermediate supports recommended by fixture Manufacturer.

#### 2.14 RETROFIT KITS FOR FLUORESCENT LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Comply with UL 1598 listing requirements.
  1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
  2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Support for Lighting Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid as a support element.



1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from lighting fixture corners.
  2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
  3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
  4. In seismic areas, install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
- C. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
  3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
- D. Adjust aimable lighting fixtures to provide required light intensities.
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Furnish and install all lamp required, including replacements for burned-out lamps, until final acceptance of the completed work. No lighting fixture or sign will be installed without lamps.
- G. If permanent lighting fixtures are to be used in lieu of temporary lighting facilities during the construction period, this shall be done only as permitted by the Architect/Engineer, who may require that new lamps be installed and fixtures cleaned at the time of turn-over to the "Owner".
- H. Downlight reflectors and parabolic louvers shall be installed in place after the project is completed and dust-free. Installer shall wear white gloves to preclude smudging the reflector surface.
- I. Install tubular quartz and HID (mercury vapor, metal halide and high pressure sodium) lamps in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions with regard to handling and lamp burning position.
- J. Adjust aimable fixtures to provide required light intensities.
- K. Bond all fixtures to electrical grounding system in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and the National Electrical Code.
- L. Install and position emergency lighting unit lamps and remote lamps (as required) to provide foot candle levels required by authority having jurisdiction.
- M. Shielding such as plastic shields, plastic sleeves with end caps, shatterproof bulbs and/or other approved devices shall be provided for all artificial lighting fixtures located in areas where there is exposed food; clean equipment, utensils, and linens; or unwrapped single-service and single-use articles.
- N. Clean all fixtures after installation. Use methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.2 DESIGN
- A. Indoor lighting shall be designed primarily for the safety and convenience of the customer and the staff and crew and, at the same time, create an attractive indoor environment. Indoor maintained lighting levels shall be as follows:
1. Maintained footcandle schedule (at 30 inches above finished floor)
    - a. Kitchen: 60 F.C.
    - b. Kitchen Support Area: 50 F.C.
    - c. Customer Service 50 F.C.
    - d. Dining Area: 15 – 40 F.C.
    - e. Crew Room 20 – 30 F.C.
    - f. Toilets 15 - 25 F.C.
    - g. Stockroom Area: 35 F.C.
    - h. Manager's Office: 30 F.C.
    - i. Training Room: 30 -40 F.C.
    - j. General Office Space: 40 F.C.
    - k. Remote Kitchen Support Areas: 35 F.C.
    - l. Mechanical/Electrical Rooms: 30 F.C.
    - m. Janitor's Closet: 25 F.C.
    - n. Storage other than Stockroom: 25 F.C.
    - o. Emergency Lighting: 1 F.C. in path of egress (minimum)
    - p. PlayPlace: 40 – 60 F.C.

- B. The F.C. levels in the above schedule may be decreased for compliance with local energy codes. However, they shall not be less than 50 foot candles maintained at a surface where a food employee is working with unpackaged potentially hazardous food or with food, utensils, and equipment such as knives, slicers, grinders, or saws where employee safety is a factor. Areas where fresh warewashing, and equipment and utensil storage; and in toilet rooms shall be provided with at least 15 foot candles of light measured at a distance of 30" from the floor. A light intensity of at least 10 foot candles (110 lux) shall be provided in all areas and rooms during periods of cleaning (measured at a distance of 30" from the floor).

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

**END OF SECTION 265100**

## SECTION 265600 - EXTERIOR SITE LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General, Division 01 Specification Sections, and Definitions apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Pole, hand hole, anchor bolt kits.
  2. Pole accessories including luminaires with lamps, ballasts, solid-state lighting, and mounting brackets.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO LTS - Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; 6th Edition, with 2013 Interim Revisions.
- B. ANSI C82.4 - American National Standard for Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low Pressure Sodium Lamps (Multiple-Supply Type); 2017.
- C. ANSI C136.10 - American National Standard for Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Locking-Type Photocontrol Devices and Mating Receptacles - Physical and Electrical Interchangeability and Testing; 2010.
- D. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code; 2017.
- E. IEEE C62.41.2 - Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (R2008).
- F. IESNA LM-63 - ANSI Approved Standard File Format for Electronic Transfer of Photometric Data and Related Information; 2002 (Reaffirmed 2008).
- G. IESNA LM-64 - Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas; 2001 (Reaffirmed 2007).
- H. IESNA RP-8 - American National Standard Practice for Roadway Lighting; Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; 2000(R2014) (ANSI/IES RP8).
- I. NECA/IESNA 501 - Recommended Practice for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems; 2006.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; National Fire Protection Association; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. UL 1029 - High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Pole (Standard): luminaire support structure
- B. Hand hole: electrical access panel
- C. Anchor bolt kit: headed anchor bolt, leveling nut, washers, structural nut, jam nut, bolt hole template.
- D. Galvanizing: a corrosion protection method that includes the forming of a metallurgical bond between the coating and underlying steel or iron.
- E. Luminaire: complete lighting fixture including ballast and SSL driver housing if provided
- F. SSL: solid state lighting
- G. B. HID: high intensity discharge
- H. C. CRI: color rendering index
- I. D. EPA: effective projected area

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: for each pole, luminaire and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  1. Pole: materials, dimensions, EPA, galvanizing process, hand hole.
  2. Luminaires: materials, dimensions, EPA.
  3. Ballasts, photoelectric relays and SSL drivers and accessories.
  4. Lamps: life, output, energy efficiency data.
  5. Luminaire mounting accessories.
  6. Hot dipped galvanizing process.

7. Anchor bolt kit: hot dipped galvanized headed anchor bolts, leveling nuts, washers, structural nuts, jam nuts.
  8. Photometric plan: include luminaire type with indicated lamps, ballasts, SSL drivers and accessories. Lighting pattern must represent illumination levels calculated from laboratory data under controlled conditions in accordance with Illuminating Engineering Society methods. Plan must include site specific wind load rating per municipality or current ASCE wind loading regulations.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Installation drawings including power and control wiring diagrams
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Comply with Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) C2, æNational Electrical Code for safeguarding persons against electrical hazards during the installation, operation and maintenance of electric supply and communication lines.
  - B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70: National Electric Code (NEC). The NEC addresses the installation of electrical conductors, equipment, and raceways; signaling and communications conductors, equipment, and raceways; and optical fiber cables and raceways in commercial, residential, and industrial occupancies. Adopted in all 50 states, the NEC is the benchmark for safe electrical design, installation, and inspection to protect people and property from electrical hazards.
  - C. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  - D. Luminaire photometric data testing laboratory qualifications: Provided by manufacturers™ laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Package duplex finished pole (hot dipped galvanized and powder coat painted) for shipping according to manufacturer's requirements.
  - B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
  - C. Retain factory-applied pole wrapping on metal poles until right before installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. The special warranties identified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights that the Owner may have under other provisions of the contract documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the contract documents. Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse or unauthorized repairs or alterations for special warranty coverage.
    1. Warranty period for poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer™s standard warranty period but not less than three years from substantial completion.
    2. Warranty period for luminaires: five years from date of substantial completion.
    3. Warranty period for SSL luminaires and drivers: five years from date of substantial completion.
    4. Warranty period for lamps, ballasts, relays: replace lamps and fuses, ballasts, and relays that fail within 24 months from date of substantial completion. Furnish replacement lamps and fuses, ballasts, and relays that fail within the second 24 months from date of substantial completion.
    5. Warranty period for metal corrosion: five years from date of substantial completion.
    6. Warranty period for color retention: five years from date of substantial completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by approved supplier.

## 2.2 POLES, HANDHOLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pole Structural Characteristics: one piece square straight steel shafts complying with American Association of State Highway and Traffic Officials (AASHTO) standard specification for structural supports for highway signs, luminaires and traffic signals, fifth edition, 2009 or current adopted edition by McDonald™s USA, LLC and American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) 500 or current adopted edition by McDonald™s USA, LLC.
1. Wind load strength of pole: adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated by American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) 7-05 or current adopted edition by McDonald™s USA, LLC, with a gust factor of 1.14.
  2. Strength analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
  3. Welds: Longitudinal weld seams, visually inspected with no cracks. All scabs or tear drops shall be removed.
    - a. The sum of all diameters of piping porosity shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{8}$ " in any linear inch of weld and shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{4}$ " in any 12" length of weld.
    - b. Weld projections (high-low) plate shall be removed if they exceed  $\frac{1}{32}$ ".
  4. Certification: supplier shall include with each shipment certification documents for the purpose of material identification including lot number, minimum yield strength, and conformance to the dimensional requirements indicated in the approved shop drawings.
  5. Galvanizing Process: Pole shall be hot dipped galvanized per the process followed by the American Galvanizers Association (AGA) including the three basic elements: surface preparation, galvanizing, and inspections. The coating thickness should be a minimum of 3 mil.
  6. Pole Finish: Provide Lektrocote® paint and finishing process or approved equal. Process shall meet or exceed the following:
    - a. Exterior Durability " up to 5 years Florida exposure with 10% or less gloss reduction.
    - b. ASTM B-117 " 1000 hour salt spray test
    - c. ASTM D-2247 " 1000 hour humidity test
    - d. ASTM D-2794 " Impact test resistant to 160 inch pounds
    - e. ASTM D-522 " Flexibility test
    - f. ASTM 3359B " Adhesion test
- B. Hand Hole Characteristics: electrical access panel dimensions shall be 3" x 5.175". Hand hole cover shall be soft corner .050 aluminum, finished in a polyester powder coat finish and provided with a close cell EPDM rubber gasket to provide a weather proof seal to the pole.
- C. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturer™s mounting requirements. Use stainless steel fasteners and mounting bolts, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Anchor Bolt Kit and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant item compatible with support components.
  1. Materials: shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
  2. Anchor Bolt Kit: anchor bolts shall be ASTM F1554 grade 55 steel, completely hot dipped galvanized per ASTM F2329; nuts shall be heavy hex ASTM A563 grade DH, completely hot dipped galvanized per ASTM A153; jam nut shall be completely hot dipped galvanized per ASTM A153; base plate shall be ASTM A572 grade 50, completely hot dipped galvanized per ASTM A153.
- E. Anchor Bolt Hole Template: Factory supplied steel anchor bolt template standard for 4" poles and provides a fixed location  $7 \frac{5}{8}$ " centered mounting point designed to accommodate 1" anchorage.
- F. Pole Foundations: per McDonald™s engineered design to be verified, signed and sealed for site specific conditions by Civil Engineer.

## 2.3 LUMINAIRES, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Luminaires shall comply with Underwriters Laboratory (UL) 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with the Illuminating Engineers Society of North America (IESNA) RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- C. Metal Parts: to be free of burrs, sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: corrosion-resistant aluminum, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleanings or replacing lenses, designed to disconnect ballast and SSL driver when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light shields: metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arrange to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
- J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. White surfaces: 85%
  2. Specular surfaces: 83%
  3. Diffusing specular surfaces: 75%
- K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer™s weather proof, powder-coat paint finish to be applied to factory assembled and tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish of luminaire with finish of pole and support materials.

#### 2.4 FLUORESCENT BALLASTS AND LAMPS

- A. Low-Temperature Ballast Capability: Rated by its manufacturer for reliable starting and operation of indicated lamp(s) at temperatures minus 20 degrees F and higher.
- B. Ballast Characteristics:
  1. Power factor: 90% minimum.
  2. Sound Rating: A, except B for T12/HO ballasts.
  3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20%
  4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C82.1, energy saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
  5. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 degrees C, maximum.
  6. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41 Category A or better.
- C. Fluorescent Lamps: low-mercury type. Comply with the Environmental Protection Agency™s toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2mg of mercury per liter when tested according to National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) LL 1.

#### 2.5 SSL LUMINAIRES

- A. LED Package (Component) Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. LED Luminaires: comply with UL 1598 in addition to the requirements contained in UL Subject 8750. Photometric data complying with IES LM-79. Energy Star rated by the U.S. Department of Energy, CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 5100k, white light produced by binary complementary wavelength conversion. Color mixing red, green, and blue LEDs is not acceptable. Listed for damp or wet locations according to application.
  1. LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules: binned for color consistency per NEMA SSL 3: and B50, L70 rating of at least 50,000 hours when tested according to IES LM-80.
  2. LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules: shall be field replaceable without having to replace the entire luminaire.
    - a. DRIVERS FOR SSL LUMINAIRES
- C. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements.
- D. Electronic Drivers: comply with American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C82.11, NEMA SSL 1, and UL 935 in addition to the requirements contained in UL Subject 8750; UL Class 2 listed power supply, isolated output, and designed for type and quantity of LEDs served, listed for damp or wet locations according to application.
  1. Input Rating: 120 to 277 V, 60 Hz plus or minus 10%.
  2. Output Rating: 12 or 24 V dc, 350mA, plus or minus 5%.
  3. Sound Rating: Class A.
  4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: less than 20%.
  5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
  6. Minimum Operating Temperature: minus 40 degrees F.
  7. Power Factor: 0.90 or higher.
    - a. BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS
- E. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ballast Circuit: constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: minus 22 degrees F.
  3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 degrees F.
  4. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
- F. Auxiliary, Instant-On, Quartz System: factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60% of light output.
- G. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 degrees C.
1. Instant-Restrike Device: integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
    - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
    - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
  2. Minimum Starting Temperature: minus 40 degrees F.
    - a. HID LAMPS
- H. High Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8% to 15% of normal light output.
- I. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- J. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- K. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire per manufacturers instructions.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
  1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.

#### 3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section æGrounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
  1. Install grounding electrode for each pole, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section æGrounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
  1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
  2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
  3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.
    - a. 3.3 DESIGN
- C. Lot lighting levels are as follows or as dictated by local municipality:
  1. Standard Lighting Levels:
 

a. Entrance and Exit Drives:	3-4 F.C.	
b. Menu Board Area:	3-4 F.C.	
c. Trash Area:		3-4 F.C.
d. Parking:	3-4 F.C.	
e. Balance of Site:	3-4 F.C.	
  2. High-Security Lighting Levels:
    - a. Entire Site: 8 F.C.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Illumination Observations: verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
  1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

- C. Illumination Test:
  - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
    - a. IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas".
    - b. IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data".
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

**END OF SECTION 265600**



## SECTION 271300 – VOICE AND DATA COMMUNICATIONS CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes wire, cable, connecting devices, installation, and testing for wiring systems to be used as signal pathways for voice and high-speed data transmission.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. CEA-310 - Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment; Consumer Electronics Association; Revision E, 2005.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. TIA/EIA-568-C.1 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 1: General Requirements; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-7.
- D. TIA/EIA-568-C.2 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 2: Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-11.
- E. TIA/EIA-568-C.3 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard, and Addendum 1 - Additional Transmission Performance Specifications for 50/125 um Optical Fiber Cables; Rev C, 2012; Addendum 1.
- F. TIA-569 - Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2012.
- G. TIA/EIA-606 - Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure; Rev B, 2012.
- H. ANSI/J-STD-607 - Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications; Rev A, 2002.
- I. UL 444 - Communications Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 497 - Standard for Protectors for Paired-Conductor Communications Circuits; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 1581 - Reference Standard for Electrical Wires, Cables, and Flexible Cords; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1863 - Standard for Communications-Circuit Accessories; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
- E. STP: Shielded twisted pair.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include dimensioned plan and elevation views. Show equipment assemblies, method of field assembly, workspace requirements, and access for cable connections.
- C. Product Certificates:
  - 1. For each type of cable, connector, and terminal equipment, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that distribution racks and their components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Work" when required by authority having jurisdiction. Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based. Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation:
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity of each rack-mounted component and of each assembled rack type, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For voice and data communication cabling to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: As a minimum the installer must be certified by the termination manufacturer or by Building Industry Consulting Service International (BISCSI).
  - B. Source Limitations: Obtain all products except twisted-pair and fiber cables through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  - D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of voice and data communication cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
    1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
    2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute to other participants.
    3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames and cross-connect and patch panels in equipment rooms and wiring closets to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Requirements: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.
  - B. Expansion Capability: Unless otherwise indicated, provide spare fibers and conductor pairs in cables, positions in cross-connect and patch panels, and terminal strips to accommodate 20 percent future increase. As a minimum, provide 10 pair or more TelCo service entrance cable.
- 2.2 MOUNTING ELEMENTS
- A. Cable Supports: Comply with Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
  - B. Raceways and Boxes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
  - C. Backboards: 3/4-inch, interior-grade, fire-retardant-treated plywood.
  - D. Distribution Racks: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
- 2.3 TWISTED-PAIR CABLES, CONNECTORS, AND TERMINAL EQUIPMENT
- A. Tables: Listed as complying with Category 3 and 5 of TIA/EIA-568-A.
  - B. Conductors: Solid copper.
  - C. UTP Cable: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-A. Four, thermoplastic-insulated, individually twisted pairs of conductors; No. 24 AWG, color-coded; enclosed in PVC jacket.
  - D. STP Cable: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-1-3. Two, thermoplastic-insulated, individually twisted pairs of conductors; No. 22 AWG, color-coded, overall aluminum and polyester shield and No. 22 AWG, tinned-copper drain wire; enclosed in PVC jacket.
  - E. UTP and STP Plenum Cable: Listed for use in air-handling spaces. Features are as specified for cables, conductors, UTP cable, and STP workstation cable except materials are modified as required for listing.
  - F. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-1-3. IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
    1. IDC Terminal Block Modules: Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
    2. IDC Connecting Hardware: Consistent throughout Project.

- G. STP Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-1-3 for connectors, plugs, and jack assemblies.
  - H. Cross-Connect Panel: Modular array of IDC terminal blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
    - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
    - 2. Mounting: Backboard or Rack.
  - I. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
    - 1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to satisfy specified expansion criteria.
    - 2. Mounting: Backboard or Rack.
  - J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies for UTP Cable: Modular, color-coded, RJ-11 or RJ-45 receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals. Use keyed jacks for data service.
  - K. UTP Patch Cords: Four-pair cables in 48-inch lengths, terminated with RJ-45 plug at each end. Use keyed plugs for data service.
  - L. STP Patch Cords: Two-pair cables in 48-inch lengths, terminated with STP plug connectors at both ends. Match plug connectors with patch-panel connectors.
  - M. Data Outlets: Dual jack-connector assemblies mounted in single or multi-gang faceplate.
    - 1. Faceplate: High-impact plastic.
    - 2. Mounting: Flush, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3. Legend: Factory labeled, "Voice" and "Data," by silk-screening or engraving.
- 2.4 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE, CONNECTORS, AND TERMINAL EQUIPMENT
- A. Cables: Factory fabricated, jacketed, low loss, glass type, fiber optic, multimode, graded index, operating at 850 and 1300 nm:
    - 1. Data, Strands per Cable: Two.
    - 2. Backbone, Strands per Cable: 12, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3. Dimensions: 62.5-micrometer core diameter; 125-micrometer cladding diameter.
    - 4. Maximum Attenuation: Minus 3.75 dB/km at 850 nm; minus 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
    - 5. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz/km at 850 nm; 500 MHz/km at 1300 nm.
    - 6. Operating Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
  - B. Plenum Cable: Listed for use in plenums.
  - C. Cable Connectors: Quick-connect, simplex- and duplex-type SC couplers with self-centering, axial alignment mechanisms. Insertion loss not more than 0.7 dB.
  - D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
    - 1. Permanent Connection: Permanently connect one end of each connector module to installed cable fiber.
    - 2. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to satisfy specified expansion criteria.
    - 3. Mounting: Backboard or Rack.
  - E. Patch Cords: Dual fiber cables in 36-inch lengths:
    - 1. Terminations: Two duplex connectors arranged to mate with patch-panel connectors, one at each end of each fiber in cord.
  - F. Data Outlets: Flush dual fiber-optic connector assemblies mounted in two-gang faceplate with flush dual RJ-45 jack assembly.
    - 1. Faceplate: High-impact plastic.
    - 2. Mounting: Flush, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3. Legend: Factory labeled, fiber-optic connectors "Data" and RJ-45 jacks "Voice/Data," by engraving.
- 2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS
- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and the following:
    - 1. Cable Labels: Self-adhesive vinyl or vinyl-cloth wraparound tape markers, machine printed with alphanumeric cable designations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, cable supports, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces where unenclosed wiring supports method may be used. Use UL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- B. Install cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5 rating of components and that ensure Category 5 performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- C. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
- D. Do not bend cables, in handling or in installing, to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
  - 1. Pull cables simultaneously if more than one is being installed in same raceway.
  - 2. Use pulling compound or lubricant if necessary. Use compounds that will not damage conductor or insulation.
  - 3. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire or cable grips, that will not damage media or raceway.
- F. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- G. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- H. Wiring within Wiring Cabinets and Enclosures: Provide conductors of adequate length. Train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Use lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- I. Separation of Wires: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A rules for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cabling from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines, conduits, lighting fixtures, motors, transformers, and other electrical equipment.
- J. Make splices, taps, and terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
- K. Use splice and tap connectors compatible with media types.

### 3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- C. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- D. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate in each cabinet and enclosure; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION IN EQUIPMENT ROOMS

- A. Install plywood backboards on wall of equipment room(s).
- B. Mount patch panels, terminal strips, and other connecting hardware on backboards, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- D. Use patch panels to terminate cables entering the space, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION STANDARDS

- A. Comply with requirements in TIA/EIA-568-A and TIA/EIA-569-A.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to requirements in this Article, comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems " and TIA/EIA-606.
- B. Data jack location: Label cables within outlet boxes.
- C. Distribution Cabinets, Racks, Enclosures and Frames: Label each unit and field within that unit.

- D. Within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
  - E. Cables, General: Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - F. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
  - G. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover.
  - H. Use jacket color coding standard for cabling serving different functions such as voice, data, security, and video.
- 3.7 CLEANING
- A. On completion of system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - 1. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
    - 2. Copper Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use Class 2, bi-directional, Category 5 tester. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA/EIA-TSB67, "Transmission Performance Specifications for Field Testing of Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cabling Systems." Link performance for UTP cables must meet minimum criteria of TIA/EIA-568-A.
    - 3. Fiber-Optic Cable Procedures: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test, including optional procedures, stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.25. Certify compliance with test parameters and manufacturer's written recommendations. Test optical performance with optical power meter capable of generating light at all appropriate wavelengths.
  - B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 271300**

## SECTION 271500 – CONTROL/SIGNAL TRANSMISSION MEDIA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes premises wiring for telephone distribution, including installations for service by local telephone exchange carrier.
- B. This Section also includes the following types of control and signal transmission media:
  - 1. Coaxial cable.
  - 2. Twisted-pair cable.
  - 3. Video-pair cable.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
  - 2. Division 27 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ICEA S-90-661 - Category 3, 5, & 5e Individually Unshielded Twisted Pair Indoor Cables (With or Without An Overall Shield) For Use in General Purpose and LAN Communications Wiring Systems Technical Requirements; Insulated Cable Engineers Association; 2012.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. TIA/EIA-568-C.1 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 1: General Requirements; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-7.
- D. TIA/EIA-568-C.2 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 2: Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components; Rev C, 2012; Addenda 1-11.
- E. TIA/EIA-568-C.3 - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard - Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard, and Addendum 1 - Additional Transmission Performance Specifications for 50/125 um Optical Fiber Cables; Rev C, 2012; Addendum 1.
- F. TIA-569 - Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces; 2012.
- G. ANSI/J-STD-607 - Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications; Rev A, 2002.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel.
- D. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
- E. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- F. Distribution Circuit: Circuit from the network interface device to a distribution device, such as a terminal block or junction box.
- G. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- H. Exchange Access Line: Circuit carrying telephone service into the premises.
- I. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- J. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
- K. LAN: Local area network.
- L. Local Exchange Carrier: Telephone utility or other entity that provides an access line from a local exchange into the premises.
- M. MUTOA: Multi-user telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.
- N. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.

- O. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- P. Solid-Bottom or Non-ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom without ventilation openings.
- Q. Station Circuit: Circuit from a distribution device to a telecommunications outlet.
- R. Telecommunications Outlet: Telephone jack for connecting equipment to communication circuits.
- S. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom having openings for the passage of air.
- T. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for control/signal transmission media.
- C. Product certificates, acknowledged by the communication system manufacturers, certifying that the cables are suitable for the connected equipment as described in "Quality Assurance" Article below.
- D. Field test reports indicating and interpreting test results.
- E. Maintenance data for cables to include in the "Operating and Maintenance Manual" specified in Division 01.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Connected Equipment Manufacturer Certification: Where cables specified in this Section are used to provide signal paths for systems specified in other Sections of these Specifications, or for systems furnished under other contracts, obtain review of the cable characteristics and certification for use with the connected system equipment by the connected equipment manufacturers.
- B. Testing Firm Qualifications: In addition to the requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Control Services," an independent testing firm shall meet OSHA criteria for accreditation of testing laboratories, Title 29, Part 1907, or shall be a full member company of the International Electrical Testing Association (NETA).
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by an approved testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.
- D. Meet performance requirements specified in ANSIE/EIA/TIA 568A and EIA/TIA 570.
- E. Comply with latest edition of NFPA 70.
- F. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
  1. The Terms "Listed and Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
  2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.
- G. Single-Source Responsibility: All cable of each kind shall be the product of a single manufacturer.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate premises wiring with requirements of local telephone exchange carrier.
- B. Coordinate premises wiring with requirements of telephone equipment supplier.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ELECTRONIC CABLE

- A. Single Conductor Coaxial: 50-ohm characteristic impedance, cellular polyethylene core, 97 percent coverage, bare copper-braid shield, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket; conforming to MIL-C-17, Type RG-58/U.
- B. Single Conductor Coaxial: 75-ohm characteristic impedance, solid polyethylene core, 97 percent coverage, copper-braid shield, polyethylene jacket; conforming to MIL-C-17, Type RG-6A/U.
- C. Direct Burial Coaxial: Single conductor, 75-ohm characteristic impedance, 18 AWG copper-clad, steel-center conductor, solid polyethylene dielectric, 34 AWG bare copper-braid outer conductor shield with 95 percent coverage, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket.
- D. Aerial Coaxial: Single conductor, 75-ohm characteristic impedance, 18 AWG copper-clad, steel-center conductor, cellular expanded polyethylene dielectric, 34 AWG bare copper-braid outer conductor shield with 95 percent coverage, ultraviolet-resistant polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket.
- E. Single Conductor Plenum Coaxial: 75-ohm characteristic impedance, solid bare copper central conductor, foamed Teflon dielectric, 100 percent coverage tinned-copper, double-braid shield, Teflon jacket, suitable for installation in air-handling spaces; conforming to MIL-C-17, Type RG-11/U.
- F. Twin Lead: Bare copper-covered steel, 2-conductor parallel, 300-ohm characteristic impedance, polyethylene insulation and web between conductors, cellular polyethylene oval jacket.

- G. Multi conductor Cable: Quantity of conductors indicated; 18 AWG tinned-copper conductors; color coded, low-loss polyvinyl chloride (PVC) insulation; aluminum/mylar shield and 22 AWG tinned-copper drain wire; PVC jacket.
- H. Twisted Pair: Single twisted pair of 22 AWG tinned-copper conductors; color-coded, low-loss polyethylene insulation; unshielded.
- I. Twisted Pair: Quantity of twisted pairs indicated; 22 AWG tinned-copper conductors; color-coded, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) insulation; overall aluminum/polyester shield and 22 AWG tinned-copper drain wire; PVC jacket.
- J. Twisted-Pair Plenum: Quantity of twisted pairs indicated; 24 AWG, 7-strand, tinned-copper conductors; Teflon insulation; overall aluminum/polyester shield and 22 AWG tinned-copper drain wire; Teflon jacket; suitable for use in air-handling spaces.
- K. Video Pair: Balanced pair coaxial cable, 125-ohm characteristic impedance, 16 AWG soft-drawn, bare copper conductors twisted to form pairs, expanded polyethylene core insulation, copper shielding tape, expanded polyester film covering.

## 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with EIA/TIA 568A and EIA/TIA 570.
- B. Telecommunications and Auxiliary Disconnect Outlets: Four-position modular, latching, plug-type, jack-in, flush-mounting wall plate, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wall Plates: Designed for telephone service. Match those indicated for power receptacle outlets in same spaces for materials and finish. For wall telephone units, include provision for support of unit.
- D. Distribution and Station Cable: Four-pair, No. 24 AWG, solid-copper, unshielded, twisted-pair construction in PVC sheath.
  - 1. Comply with ICEA S-80-576.
  - 2. Plenum cable listed for use in plenums where required.
- E. Cabinets: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" Furnish cabinets with backboard.
- F. Backboard: 3/4-inch interior grade plywood.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine raceways and other elements to receive cable for compliance with installation tolerances and other adverse conditions. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install transmission media without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
  - 2. Do not bend cable, in handling or installation, to smaller radii than minimum recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
  - 1. Pull cables simultaneously where more than one is being installed in same raceway.
  - 2. Use pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
  - 3. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage media or raceway.
- C. Install exposed cable parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- D. Use splice and tap connectors that are compatible with cable material.
  - 1. Make no splices except at indicated splice points.
- E. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- F. Connect components to wiring system and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer. Tighten connectors and terminals, including screws and bolts, according to equipment manufacturer's published torque-tightening values for equipment connectors. Where manufacturer's torquing requirements are not indicated, tighten connectors and terminals according to tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A.
- G. Telephone Service: Comply with local telephone exchange carrier's requirements for details of telephone service. Provide a complete and fully functional telephone service for restaurant.
- H. Install 10 pair or more multiconductor telephone cable in underground raceway, as required in Division 27 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling", between restaurant and telephone demarcation point.



- I. Existing Telephone Outlets and Wiring: Maintain fully operational until new system has been tested and is operational. As new outlets are installed, label them "Not in Service" with temporary labels.
  - J. Install outlet boxes and telecommunications outlets.
  - K. Install cable without damaging conductors and jacket.
    - 1. Do not bend cable to a smaller radius than minimum recommended by manufacturer.
  - L. Install premises wiring in raceways, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1. Install cables in raceway and terminate raceway with a bushing in ceiling space above outlet.
    - 2. Use pulling methods that will not damage cable or raceway, including fish tape, cable, rope, and wire-cable grips. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
    - 3. Pull cables simultaneously where more than one is being installed in the same raceway or at the same location.
    - 4. Conceal raceway, except in unfinished spaces and as indicated.
  - M. Secure cable to independent supports at intervals as required to prevent sagging between supports.
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Ground equipment.
    - 1. Install ground terminal at local exchange carrier service location and connect according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" and "Identification for Electrical System".
    - 2. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturers published torque-tightening values. If manufacturers torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- 3.4 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Identify components and circuits according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
  - B. Identify telephone system backboards and cabinets with the legend "Telephone."
  - C. Identify terminals at terminal strips, telecommunications outlets, and pull-and-join boxes with approved designations.
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing: Upon installation of cable and before energizing, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
    - 1. Copper Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test cable for continuity and shorts. Use time domain reflectometer with strip chart recording capability and anomaly resolution to within 12 inches in runs up to 1000 feet in length. Test cable segments for faulty connectors, splices, terminations, and the integrity of the cable and its component parts.
    - 2. Test continuity of each circuit pair loop.
  - B. Correct malfunctioning units at site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.
- 3.6 CLEANING
- A. Upon completion of system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.
- 3.7 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Operate control/signal systems to demonstrate proper functioning. Replace malfunctioning cable with new materials, and then retest and re-commission until satisfactory performance is achieved.

**END OF SECTION 271500**

## SECTION 283111 - FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control panel.
2. Manual stations.
3. Detectors.
4. Signal Equipment.
5. Controls.
6. Devices.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for door closers/holders/smoke detectors, electric door locks, and release devices that interface with fire alarm systems.
2. Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
3. Division 27 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Final Rule; current edition; (ADA Standards for Accessible Design).
- B. IEEE C62.41.2 - Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (R2008).
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code and Signaling Code ; 2013.
- E. FPA 101 - Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings and Structures; 2012.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. FACP: Fire alarm control panel.
- B. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- C. Definitions in NFPA 72 apply to fire alarm terms used in this Section.

#### 1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Noncoded, zoned system with manual and automatic alarm initiation; and hard-wired for signal transmission, using separate individual circuits for each zone of alarm initiation and notification appliances, or an addressable type system, per building requirements, and the requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

##### A. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Construction documents indicate design intent for the fire alarm system only. Contractor shall provide all required submittals and drawings to Authority Having Jurisdiction meeting local requirements and requirements listed below.

##### B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### C. Shop Drawings:

1. Show details of graphic enunciator at FACP.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems differentiating between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified.
3. Include battery-size calculations.
4. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
5. Device Address List (Addressable Systems): Coordinate with final system programming.

6. System Operation Description: Detailed description for this Project, including method of operation and supervision of each type of circuit and sequence of operations for manually and automatically initiated system inputs and outputs. Manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are not acceptable.
  7. Voltage drop calculations.
  8. Operating Instructions: For mounting at the FACP.
  9. Identify terminals, wire designation, and wiring color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
  10. Indicate types and sizes of field installed system wiring.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, sections, and elevations drawn to scale and coordinating installation of smoke detectors in ducts and access to them. Show the following near each duct smoke provision of detector installation:
    1. Size and location of ducts, including lining.
    2. Size and location of piping.
    3. Size and arrangement of structural elements.
    4. Size and location of duct smoke detector, including air-sampling elements.
  - E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of system components certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
  - F. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
  - G. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements. Comply with NFPA 72.
  - H. Maintenance Data: For fire alarm systems to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 01. Comply with NFPA 72.
  - I. Submissions to Authorities Having Jurisdiction: In addition to distribution requirements for Submittals specified in Division 01 Section "Submittals," make an identical submission to authorities having jurisdiction. Include copies of annotated Contract Drawings as needed to depict component locations to facilitate review. Resubmit if required to make clarifications or revisions to obtain approval. On receipt of comments from authorities having jurisdiction, submit them to Area Construction Manager for review.
  - J. Certificate of Completion: Comply with NFPA 72.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing code compliant fire-alarm systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
    1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer or qualified fire alarm system designer, as required by the local authority having jurisdiction.
  - B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a minimum five year record of successful in-service performance.
  - C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer.
  - D. Coordinate fire alarm system design with fire suppression system as required.
  - E. Compliance with Local Requirements: Comply with applicable building code, local ordinances and regulations, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - F. Comply with NFPA 72.
- 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING
- A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.
  - B. Installer's responsibilities include designing fabricating, and installing code compliant fire alarm systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibilities, or as required by authority having jurisdiction.
  - C. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring and restore damaged surfaces.
    1. Package operational fire alarm and detection equipment that has been removed and deliver to Owner/Area Construction Manager.
    2. Remove from site and legally dispose of existing material not designated for other disposition.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- A. Control of System: By the FACP.
- B. System Supervision: Automatically detect and report open circuits, shorts, and grounds of wiring for initiating device, signaling line, and notification-appliance circuits.
- C. Priority of Signals: Automatic alarm response functions resulting from an alarm signal from one zone or device are not altered by subsequent alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals. An alarm signal is the highest priority. Supervisory and trouble signals have second- and third-level priority. Higher-priority signals take precedence over signals of lower priority, even when the lower-priority condition occurs first. Annunciate and display all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals regardless of priority or order received.
- D. Noninterference: A signal on one zone shall not prevent the receipt of signals from other zones.
- E. System Reset: All zones are manually resettable from the FACP after initiating devices are restored to normal.
- F. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically route alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station by means of a digital alarm communicator transmitter and telephone lines or radio frequency where required by Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- G. System Alarm Capability during Circuit Fault Conditions: System wiring and circuit arrangement shall not prevent alarm capability when a single ground occurs in an initiating device circuit, signal line circuit, or notification-appliance circuit.
- H. Loss of primary power at the FACP initiates a trouble signal at the FACP. The FACP indicates when the fire alarm system is operating on the secondary power supply.
- I. Basic Alarm Performance Requirements: Unless otherwise indicated, operation of a manual station, automatic alarm operation of a smoke, heat, duct, or flame or heat detector, activation of fire suppression unit, or operation of a sprinkler flow device initiates the following:
  - 1. Notification-appliance operation.
  - 2. Identification at the FACP of the zone originating the alarm.
  - 3. Identification at the FACP of the device originating the alarm (Addressable Systems).
  - 4. Transmission of an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
  - 5. Unlocking of electric door locks in designated egress paths.
  - 6. Release of fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
  - 7. Shutdown of fans and other air-handling equipment serving zone when alarm was initiated.
  - 8. Closing of smoke dampers in air ducts of system serving zone where alarm was initiated.
  - 9. Recording of the event in the system memory.
- J. Alarm Silencing, System Reset and Indication: Controlled by switches in the FACP:
  - 1. Silencing-switch operation halts alarm operation of notification appliances and activates an "alarm silence" light. Display of identity of the alarm zone or device is retained.
  - 2. Subsequent alarm signals from other devices or zones reactivate notification appliances until silencing switch is operated again.
  - 3. When alarm-initiating devices return to normal and system reset switch is operated, notification appliances operate again until alarm silence switch is reset.
- K. Water-flow alarm switch operation initiates the following:
  - 1. Notification-appliance operation.
  - 2. Flashing of the device location-indicating light for the device that has operated.
- L. Sprinkler valve-supervisory (tamper) switch operation initiates the following:
  - 1. A supervisory, audible, and visible "valve-tamper" signal indication at the FACP.
  - 2. Flashing of the device location-indicating light for the device that has operated.
  - 3. Transmission of supervisory signal to remote alarm receiving station.
- M. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system initiates the following:
  - 1. A supervisory, audible, and visible "sprinkler trouble" signal indication at the FACP.
  - 2. Flashing of the device location-indicating light for the device that has operated.
  - 3. Transmission of trouble signal to remote central station.
- N. Remote Detector Sensitivity Adjustment (Addressable Systems): Manipulation of controls at the FACP causes the selection of specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display of their current status and sensitivity settings, and control of changes in those settings. Same controls can be used to program repetitive, scheduled, automated changes in sensitivity of specific detectors. Sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes are recorded in system memory.
- O. Removal of an alarm-initiating device or a notification appliance initiates the following:
  - 1. A "trouble" signal indication at the FACP for the device or zone involved.
  - 2. Transmission of trouble signal to remote alarm receiving station.

- P. FACP Alphanumeric Display: Plain-English-language descriptions of alarm, supervisory, and trouble events; and addresses and locations of alarm-initiating or supervisory devices originating the report. Display monitoring actions, system and component status, system commands, programming information, and data from the system's historical memory.

## 2.2 MANUAL PULL STATIONS

- A. Description: Fabricated of metal or plastic, and finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions of contrasting color, acceptable to authority having jurisdiction:
  1. Single-action mechanism initiates an alarm.
  2. Double-action mechanism requires two actions, such as a push and a pull, to initiate an alarm (where required by Authority Having Jurisdiction).
  3. Station Reset: Key or wrench operated; double pole, double throw; switch rated for the voltage and current at which it operates.
  4. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure, hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false alarm operation.
  5. Integral Addressable Module (Addressable Systems): Arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.

## 2.3 SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General: Include the following features:
  1. Operating Voltage: To match voltage of fire alarm system.
  2. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  3. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components are mounted in a module that connects in a tamper-resistant manner to a fixed base with a twist-locking plug connection. Terminals in the fixed base accept building wiring.
  4. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type. Indicates detector has operated.
  5. Sensitivity: Can be tested and adjusted in-place after installation.
  6. Integral Addressable Module (Addressable Systems): Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
  7. Remote Controllability (Addressable Systems): Unless otherwise indicated, detectors are analog-addressable type, individually monitored at the FACP for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition, and individually adjustable for sensitivity from the FACP.
- B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors: Include the following features:
  1. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
  2. Detector Sensitivity: Between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.
  3. Integral Thermal Detector: Fixed-temperature type with 135 deg F setting.
- C. Ionization Detector: Include the following features:
  1. Responsive to both visible and invisible products of combustion.
  2. Self-compensating for changes in environmental conditions.
- D. Beam-Type Smoke Detector: Each detector consists of a separate transmitter and receiver with the following features:
  1. Adjustable Sensitivity: More than a six-level range, minimum.
  2. Linear Range of Coverage: 600 feet minimum.
  3. Tamper Switch: Initiates trouble signal at the central FACP when either transmitter or receiver is disturbed.
  4. Separate Color-Coded LEDs: Indicate normal, alarm, and trouble status. Any detector trouble, including power loss, is reported to the central FACP as a composite "trouble" signal.
- E. Duct Smoke Detector: Ionization type:
  1. Sampling Tube: Design and dimensions as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  2. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.4 OTHER DETECTORS

- A. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or rate of rise of temperature that exceeds 15 deg F per minute, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke detector bases.
  2. Integral Addressable Module (Addressable Systems): Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.

- B. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F.
    - 1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke detector bases.
    - 2. Integral Addressable Module (Addressable Systems): Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
  - C. Flame Detector: Ultraviolet type with solid-state amplifier-switching circuit set for 10-second delay, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke detector bases.
    - 2. Integral Addressable Module (Addressable Systems): Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
- 2.5 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES
- A. Description: Equip for mounting as indicated and have screw terminals for system connections.
    - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly.
  - B. Bells: Electric-vibrating, 24-V dc, under-dome type; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind the bell. When operating, bells provide a sound-pressure level of 94 dB, measured 10 feet from the bell. 10-inch size, unless otherwise indicated. Bells are weatherproof where indicated.
  - C. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75 dB minimum rated output.
  - D. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81 dB minimum rated output.
  - E. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Horns produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dB, measured 10 feet from the horn.
  - F. Visible Alarm Devices: Xenon strobe lights listed under UL 1971 with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens. Mount lens on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch letters on the lens.
    - 1. Rated Light Output: 75 candela.
  - G. Tone Speakers:
    - 1. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
    - 2. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
    - 3. Mounting: Flush, semirecessed, surface, or surface-mounted; bidirectional as indicated.
    - 4. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to the acoustical environment of the speaker location.
- 2.6 REMOTE DEVICE LOCATION-INDICATING LIGHTS AND IDENTIFICATION PLATES
- A. Description: LED indicating light near each smoke or duct detector that may not be readily visible, and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch. Light is connected to flash when the associated device is in an alarm or trouble mode. Lamp is flush mounted in a single gang wall plate. A red, laminated, phenolic-resin identification plate at the indicating light identifies, in engraved white letters, device initiating the signal and room where the smoke detector or valve is located. For water-flow switches, the identification plate also designates protected spaces downstream from the water-flow switch.
- 2.7 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS
- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching door plate.
    - 1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
    - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3. Rating: To match fire alarm system.
  - B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.
- 2.8 CENTRAL FACP
- A. Cabinet: Lockable steel enclosure. Arrange interior components so operations required for testing or for normal maintenance of the system are performed from the front of the enclosure. If more than one unit is required to form a complete control panel, fabricate with matching modular unit enclosure to accommodate components and to allow ample gutter space for field wiring and interconnecting panels.
    - 1. Identify each enclosure with an engraved, red, laminated, phenolic-resin nameplate with lettering not less than 1 inch high. Identify individual components and modules within cabinets with permanent labels.
    - 2. Mounting: Flush or Surface per application.
  - B. Alarm and Supervisory Systems: Separate and independent in the FACP. Alarm-initiating zone boards consist of plug-in cards. Construction requiring removal of field wiring for module replacement is unacceptable.
  - C. Control Modules: Include types and capacities required to perform all functions of fire alarm systems.

- D. Indications: Local, visible, and audible signals announce alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions. Each type of audible alarm has a different sound.
  - E. Indicating Lights and System Controls: Individual LED devices identify zones transmitting signals. Zone lights distinguish between alarm and trouble signals, and indicate the type of device originating the signal. Manual switches and push-to-test buttons do not require a key to operate. Controls include the following.
    - 1. Alarm acknowledge switch.
    - 2. Alarm silence switch.
    - 3. System reset switch.
    - 4. LED test switch.
  - F. Resetting Controls: Prevent the resetting of alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals while the alarm or trouble condition still exists.
  - G. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at the FACP and addressable system components, including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
    - 1. Display: Liquid-crystal type, 40 characters, minimum.
    - 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
  - H. Instructions: Printed or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.
- 2.9 EMERGENCY POWER SUPPLY
- A. General: Components include nickel-cadmium battery, charger, and an automatic transfer switch:
    - 1. Battery Nominal Life Expectancy: 20 years, minimum.
  - B. Battery Capacity: Comply with NFPA 72.
    - 1. Magnetic door holders are not served by emergency power. Magnetic door holders are released when normal power fails.
  - C. Battery Charger: Solid-state, fully automatic, variable-charging-rate type. Provide capacity for 150 percent of the connected system load while maintaining batteries at full charge. If batteries are fully discharged, the charger recharges them completely within four hours. Charger output is supervised as part of system power supply supervision.
  - D. Integral Automatic Transfer Switch: Transfers the load to the battery without loss of signals or status indications when normal power fails.
- 2.10 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE
- A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module listed for use in providing a multiplex system address for listed fire and sprinkler alarm-initiating devices with normally open contacts.
- 2.11 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER
- A. Utilized where required by Authority Having Jurisdiction.
  - B. Listed and labeled under UL 864 and NFPA 72.
  - C. Functional Performance: Unit receives an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from the FACP panel, and automatically captures one or two telephone lines and dials a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with the central station(s), the signal is transmitted. The unit supervises up to two telephone lines. Where supervising two lines, if service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, the unit initiates a local trouble signal and transmits a signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. When telephone service is restored, unit automatically reports that event to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, the local trouble signal is initiated.
  - D. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger. Battery capacity is adequate to comply with NFPA 72 requirements.
  - E. Self Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station or as required by NFPA 72 and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- 2.12 WIRE
- A. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
    - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 14 AWG, minimum.
    - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
  - B. Power-Limited Circuits: NFPA 70, Types FPL, FPLR, or FPLP, as recommended by manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.
- B. Connect the FACP with a disconnect switch with lockable handle or cover.
- C. Manual Pull Stations: Mount semiflush in recessed back boxes.
- D. Water-Flow Detectors and Valve Supervisory Switches: Connect for each sprinkler valve station required to be supervised.
- E. Ceiling-Mounted Smoke Detectors: Not less than 4 inches from a side wall to the near edge. For exposed solid-joist construction, mount detectors on the bottom of joists. On smooth ceilings, install not more than 30 feet apart in any direction.
- F. Wall-Mounted Smoke Detectors: At least 4 inches but not more than 12 inches below the ceiling.
- G. Smoke Detectors near Air Registers: Install no closer than 60 inches.
- H. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Verify that each unit is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
  - 2. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of the duct.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Combine audible and visible alarms at the same location into a single unit.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn per the requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Mount at 80" AFF per ADA requirements or at least 6 inches below the ceiling, whichever is lower.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- L. FACP: Surface mount with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

### 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems". Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by the manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- C. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- D. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and a different color-code for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from the FACP.
- C. Paint power-supply disconnect switch red and label "FIRE ALARM."

### 3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment according to system manufacturer's written instructions to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- C. Ground equipment and conductor and cable shields. For audio circuits, minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.



### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and connections and to supervise pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system. Report results in writing.
- B. Pretesting: After installation, align, adjust, and balance the system and perform complete pretesting. Determine, through pretesting, the compliance of the system with requirements of Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new ones, and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results.
- C. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable, including the names and titles of witnesses to preliminary tests.
- D. Final Test Notice: Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing by Area Construction Manager and Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- E. Minimum System Tests: Test the system according to procedures outlined in NFPA 72. Minimum required tests are as follows:
  - 1. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground.
  - 2. Test all conductors for short circuits using an insulation-testing device.
  - 3. With each circuit pair, short circuit at the far end of the circuit and measure the circuit resistance with an ohmmeter. Record the circuit resistance of each circuit on record drawings.
  - 4. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's operation and maintenance manual.
  - 5. Test initiating and indicating circuits for proper signal transmission under open circuit conditions. One connection each should be opened at not less than 10 percent of initiating and indicating devices. Observe proper signal transmission according to class of wiring used.
  - 6. Test each initiating and indicating device for alarm operation and proper response at the control unit per manufacturer's testing requirements.
  - 7. Test the system for all specified functions according to the approved operation and maintenance manual. Systematically initiate specified functional performance items at each station, including making all possible alarm and monitoring initiations and using all communications options. For each item, observe related performance at all devices required to be affected by the item under all system sequences. Observe indicating lights, displays, signal tones, and annunciator indications.
  - 8. Test Both Primary and Secondary Power: Verify by test that the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the period and in the manner specified.
- F. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify by the system test that the total system meets Specifications and complies with applicable standards.
- G. Report of Tests and Inspections: Provide a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log. Submit log on the satisfactory completion of tests.
- H. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components at which tests have been satisfactorily completed.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Cleaning: Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Touch up scratches and marred finish to match original finish. Clean unit internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 283111**

## SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Protecting existing trees to remain.
  - 2. Removal of designated trees and other vegetation.
  - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  - 5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - 6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
  - 7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 02 Section "Structure Demolition" for demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.
- B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
  - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Area Construction Manager.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to a sediment and erosion control plan, specific to the site, complying with EPA 832/R-92-005 or requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

### 3.3 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
  - 1. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within fenced area.
  - 2. Do not permit vehicles, equipment, or foot traffic within fenced area.
  - 3. Maintain fenced area free of weeds and trash.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where excavation for new construction is required within tree protection zones, hand clear and excavate to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.
  - 1. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
  - 2. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
  - 3. Coat cut faces of roots more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other approved coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues.
  - 4. Backfill with soil as soon as possible.
- D. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
  - 1. Employ an arborist, licensed in jurisdiction where Project is located, to submit details of proposed repairs and to repair damage to trees and shrubs.
  - 2. Replace trees that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by arborist.

### 3.4 UTILITIES

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving adjacent facilities unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- C. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

### 3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
  - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
  - 2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
  - 3. Grind stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
  - 4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within tree protection zone.
  - 5. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
  1. Remove subsoil and non-soil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
  2. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.
  3. Dispose of excess topsoil as specified for waste material disposal.
  4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
  1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
  2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

3.8 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
  1. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other non-recyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities.

**END OF SECTION 311000**

## SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
  - 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  - 3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
  - 5. Subbase and base course for asphalt paving.
  - 6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
  - 7. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
  - 8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above and below grade improvements and utilities.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches when tested by an independent geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
  - 3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 2 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.
  - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

#### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.

#### 3.2 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

### 3.3 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross-sections, elevations and subgrades.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated. Provide 12 inch clearance at each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
  - 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
  - 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
  - 3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

### 3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting and replace with compacted backfill or fill.
- B. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

### 3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

### 3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.10 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  4. Removing concrete formwork.
  5. Removing trash and debris.
  6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- 3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL
- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
  - B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
  - C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - D. Provide 4-inch thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
  - E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
  - F. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
  - G. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.
- 3.12 SOIL FILL
- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
  - B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
    1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
    2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
    3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
    4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
    5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
  - C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- 3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL
- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
    1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
    2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.
- 3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS
- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
  - B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
  - C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557:
    1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
    2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
    3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.



4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

### 3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### 3.16 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
  1. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  2. Place subbase and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  3. Place subbase and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  4. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557.

### 3.17 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under concrete slabs-on-grade as follows, or as noted in the site specific geotechnical report:
  1. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  2. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  3. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
  1. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable.
- D. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.19 PROTECTION

- A. Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

- 3.20 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS
- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 312000**

## **SECTION 312500 - EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Installation of temporary and permanent erosion and sedimentation control systems.
- B. Installation of temporary and permanent slope protection systems.
- C. Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 311000 - Site Clearing
- B. Section 312000 - Earthwork
- C. Section 329000 – Plants
- D. Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan
- E. Construction Drawings

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Erosion Control Technology Council (ECTC) Standard Specifications.

#### ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- B. Protect adjacent properties, any identified endangered or threatened species or critical habitat, any identified cultural or historic resources, and receiving water resources from erosion and sediment damage until final stabilization.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Seed, sod, and ground covers for the establishment of vegetation in accordance with Section 329000.
- B. Sediment control devices as specified on the Construction Drawings.
- C. Rolled erosion control products according to Erosion Control Technology Council (ECTC) standard specifications.
- D. Temporary mulches such as loose straw, wood cellulose, or agricultural silage.
- E. Riprap as specified in Section 313700.
- F. Temporary and permanent outfall structures as specified on the drawings.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Review the drawings and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.
- B. Revise SWPPP as necessary to address potential pollution from site identified after issuance of the SWPPP at no additional cost to owner.
- C. Conduct storm water pre-construction meeting with Site Contractor, all ground-disturbing Sub-contractors, and state or local agency personnel in accordance with Owner's requirements.

#### 3.2 EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL AND SLOPE PROTECTION IMPLEMENTATION

- A. Place erosion and sediment control systems in accordance with the drawings and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan or as may be dictated by site conditions in order to maintain the intent of the specifications and permits.
- B. Deficiencies or changes on the drawings or Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan shall be corrected or implemented as site conditions change. Changes during construction shall be noted in the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan and posted on the drawings (Site Maps).
- C. Owner has authority to limit surface area of erodible earth material exposed by clearing and grubbing, excavation, borrow and embankment operations and to direct Contractor to provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures.
- D. Maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation control systems as dictated by site conditions, indicated in the construction documents, or as directed by governing authorities or Owner to control sediment until final stabilization. Contractor shall respond to maintenance or additional work ordered by Owner or governing authorities immediately, or within the timeframe stated in the General Permit, at no additional cost to the Owner.

- E. Contractor shall incorporate permanent erosion control features, paving, permanent slope stabilization, and vegetation into project at earliest practical time to minimize need for temporary controls.
- F. Permanently seed and mulch cut slopes as excavation proceeds to extent considered desirable and practical.
- G. Unless required within a shorter timeframe by the applicable General Permit for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity, slopes that erode easily or that will not be graded for a period of 14 days or more, shall be temporarily stabilized as work progresses with vegetation or other acceptable means in accordance with Section 329000 unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents. In the event it is not practical to seed areas, slopes must be stabilized with mulch and tackifier, bonded fiber matrix, netting, blankets or other means to reduce the erosive potential of the area.

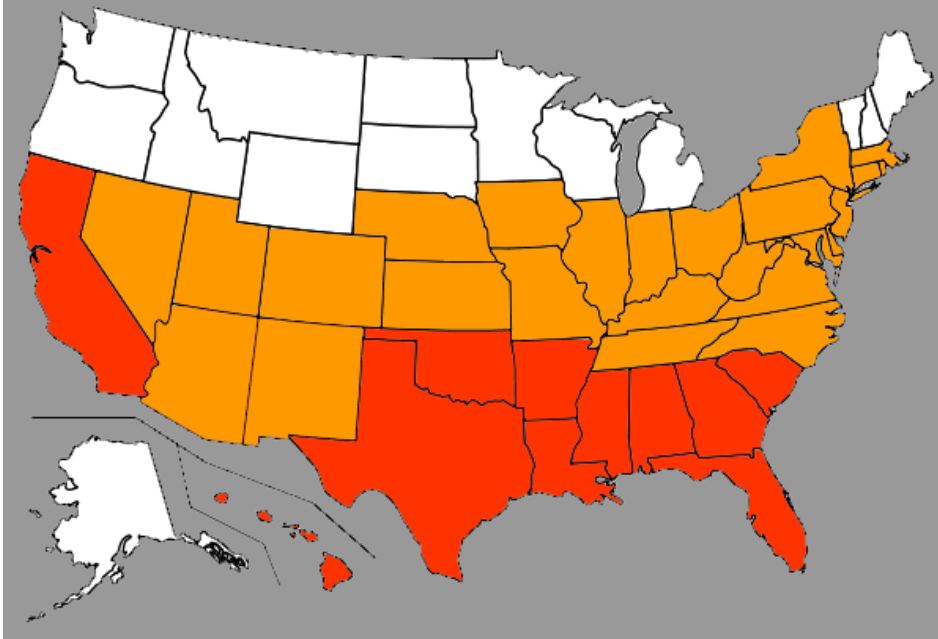
**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes termite control.
- B. McDonalds USA has the following regional requirement criteria based on the map shown below.



#### STATE TERMITE CONTROL STRATEGY COLOR KEY:

**RED** – Required termite strategy utilizing this specification section and additional details such as a galvanized termite barrier shield located below the wolmanized sole plate, for all Wood/Wood construction projects.

**ORANGE** – Recommended for all Wood/Wood construction depending on community history and local code; guidance and coordination is expected from regional office.

**WHITE** – May use standard Wood/Wood construction methods with no special termite strategy above normal practice.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 1.3 REFERENC STANDARDS

- A. Title 7, United States Code, 136 through 136y - Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act; United States Code; 1947 (Revised 2001).

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of termite control product.
  1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, and keyed large-scale details drawn at a scale of not less than 3" = 1'-0". Distinguish between shop and field-assembled work. Include the following:
  1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
  3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
  4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.

5. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, crickets and counter flashings as applicable.
  6. Details of special conditions.
  7. Details of connections to adjoining work.
  - C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
    1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
  - D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installers.
  - E. Product Certificates: For termite control products, signed by manufacturer, certifying that proposed materials comply with specifications, and with requirements and regulations, including environmental regulations, of local authorities having jurisdiction.
  - F. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
    1. Date and time of application.
    2. Moisture content of soil before application.
    3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
    4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
    5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
    6. Areas of application.
    7. Water source for application.
  - G. Application Reports: For additional or alternate protection procedures required by local authorities having jurisdiction, submit the following report(s):
    1. Wood Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
      - a. Date and time of application.
      - b. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
      - c. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
      - d. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
      - e. Areas of application.
    2. Bait-Station System Application Report: After installation of bait-station system is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
      - a. Location of areas and sites conducive to termite feeding and activity.
      - b. Plan drawing showing number and locations of bait stations.
      - c. Dated report for each monitoring and inspection occurrence indicating level of termite activity, procedure, and treatment applied before time of Substantial Completion.
      - d. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
      - e. Quantities of termiticide and nontoxic termite bait used.
      - f. Schedule of inspections for one year from date of Substantial Completion.
    3. Additional Reports: Submit additional reports as may be required by local authorities having jurisdiction, including local or state offices of the EPA. Format shall be in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
  - H. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications – Termiticides: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located, and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.
  - B. Installer Qualifications – Sheet Metal Barriers: Engage a firm that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  - C. Regulatory Requirements:
    1. EPA Labeling: Formulate and apply termiticides and termiticide devices according to the EPA-Registered Label.
    2. Comply with local, state, and federal environmental laws and regulations regarding the application of termite control products and procedures.
  - D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - E. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.
  - F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.
- C. If required by local authorities having jurisdiction, apply wood treatment after framing, sheathing, and exterior weather protection is completed but before electrical and mechanical systems are installed.
- D. If required by local authorities having jurisdiction, install bait-station system during construction to determine areas of termite activity and continue monitoring stations after construction, including landscaping, is completed.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Wood Treatment Special Warranty (If Required): Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied wood termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite damage is discovered during warranty period, repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation and treat replacement wood.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Continuing Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' continuing service including monitoring, inspection, and re-treatment for occurrences of termite activity. Provide a standard continuing service agreement. State services, obligations, conditions, terms for agreement period, and terms for future renewal options.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Requirements of Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Comply with regulations and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction regarding the termite control products and methods required to be employed on the Project, as well as application and/or installation procedures to be followed.

### 2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: Provide an EPA-Registered termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.
  - 1. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

### 2.3 SHEET METAL BARRIERS

- A. Metal Termite Barriers: Provide metal barrier flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim," and the following:
  - 1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process.
    - a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; structural quality, not less than 0.022-inch thick.
    - b. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 2. Fabrication:
    - a. Fabricate continuous sheet metal barriers in lengths not less than 96 inches, but not exceeding 10 feet, in length.

- b. Fabricated sheet metal barriers with drip edge/barrier as indicated on the Drawings. Fabricate by extending flashing 3/4-inch out from wall, then bent down at 45 degrees for 2-inches, then extending a vertical leg, 1/4-inch long, downward, with a hemmed edge.
- c. Fabricate corners from a single piece of metal – diagonal joints at corners are not allowed – extending not less than 6-inches in each direction from the corner, measured from the interior side of the corner.
  - 1) Where interior and exterior portions are cut at the corner, provide sheet metal infill pieces from the same metal and formed to exactly match the profile of the barrier, to provide a continuous barrier, free of holes, gaps, or other means for termites to pass through the barriers.

#### 2.4 WOOD TREATMENT (IF REQUIRED)

- A. Borate: Provide an EPA-Registered borate termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution for spray application and a gel solution for pressure injection, formulated to prevent termite infestation in wood. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum diffusible borate concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

#### 2.5 BAIT-STATION SYSTEM (IF REQUIRED)

- A. Provide bait stations based on the dimensions of building perimeter indicated on Drawings, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for product, manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations or requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction, and the following:
  - 1. No fewer than one bait station per 20 linear feet, unless more frequent placement is required by manufacturer or local authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. If required by local authorities having jurisdiction, provide bait station clusters in number and at spacing required.

#### 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sag, nontoxic, non-staining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label requirements, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
  - 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.



### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for products.

### 3.4 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.
  1. Slabs-on-Grade: Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
  2. Foundations: Adjacent soil, including soil along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing. Avoid soil washout around footings.
  3. Masonry: Treat voids.
  4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.
- B. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- C. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.
- D. Post warning signs in areas of application.
- E. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

### 3.5 INSTALLING SHEET METAL BARRIERS

- A. General: Install sheet metal barriers complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim." Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement, and true to line and level.
- B. Metal Protection: Prior to installing sheet metal barriers directly over cementitious substrates, install a continuous layer of felt, with joints lapped not less than two inches. Install a second layer of felt, in an identical manner to the first, over the sheet metal flashing prior to installation of the wood sill plates.
- C. Set sheet metal barriers in a full bed of nonhardening butyl sealant, to ensure a continuous seal beneath the sheet metal barriers.

### 3.6 APPLYING WOOD TREATMENT (IF REQUIRED)

- A. Application: Mix wood treatment solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of borate, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, so that wood framing, sheathing, siding, and structural members subject to infestation receive treatment.
  1. Framing and Sheathing: Apply termiticide solution by spray to bare wood for complete coverage.
  2. Wood Members More Than 4 Inches Thick: Inject termiticide gel solution under pressure into holes of size and spacing required by manufacturer for treatment.
    - a. Location and sizing of holes required by termiticide manufacturer must be reviewed and approved by Structural Engineer of Record for the Project prior to beginning the Work to ensure the structural integrity of the framing members being treated is not compromised. Location and sizing of drilled holes shall be adjusted as required by Structural Engineer.

### 3.7 INSTALLING BAIT-STATION SYSTEM (IF REQUIRED)

- A. Place bait stations according to the EPA-Registered Label for the product and manufacturer's written instructions, and as acceptable to local authorities having jurisdiction. Locations for bait stations may include, but not be limited to, the following areas conducive to termite feeding and activity:
  1. In mulch beds and other landscaped areas adjacent to the building.
  2. Areas of high soil moisture.
  3. Near irrigation sprinkler heads.
  4. At plumbing penetrations through ground-supported slabs.
  5. Other sites and locations as determined by licensed Installer and as recommended or required by local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Inspect and service bait stations from time of their application until Substantial Completion, unless extended by continuing service agreement, according to the EPA-Registered Label for product and manufacturer's written instructions for termite management system and bait products.

**END OF SECTION 313116**

## SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Asphalt surface treatments.
  - 3. Pavement-marking paint.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
  - 2. Section 321713 for Parking Bumpers..
  - 3. Section 321723 for Pavement Markings.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AI MS-2 - Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types; The Asphalt Institute; 1997.
- B. I MS-19 - A Basic Asphalt Emulsion Manual; The Asphalt Institute; Fourth Edition.
- C. ASTM D8 - 12 Standard Terminology Relating to Materials for Roads and Pavements.
- D. ASTM D692 / D692M - 09 Standard Specification for Coarse Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures.
- E. ASTM D946 - Standard Specification for Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement for Use in Pavement Construction; 2009a.
- F. ASTM D977 - 12b Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt.
- G. ASTM D2397 - 12 Standard Specification for Cationic Emulsified Asphalt.
- H. FS TT-B-1325 - Beads (Glass Spheres); Retro-Reflective; Rev. D, 2007.
- I. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute Approved Products List; Master Painters and Decorators Association; current edition, [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
- J. FHWA MUTCD - Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways; U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration; <http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov>; current edition.

#### 1.4 DEFINITION

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
  - 1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
- C. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of applicable State DOT for asphalt paving work.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
    - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
    - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.

- d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 2. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 3. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
  - 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

#### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320 or AASHTO MP 1a, PG 64-22.
- B. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- C. Water: Potable.

#### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than three minutes.
  - 1. Color: Yellow, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- C. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.
- D. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.
  - 1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4-inch diameter, 10-inch minimum length.

#### 2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
  - 2. Base Course: 2-inches, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and/or as indicated in the site specific geotechnical report.
  - 3. Surface Course: 1-1/2 inches, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and/or as indicated in the site specific geotechnical report.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  - 1. Mill to a depth of 2-inches.
  - 2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
  - 3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
  - 4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
  - 5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
  - 6. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
  - 7. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

### 3.3 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- C. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

### 3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
  - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
  - 1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
  - 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
  - 2. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
  - 3. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
  - 1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.7 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
  - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  - 1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
  - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

### 3.9 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Refer to section 321723 for pavement marking specifications.
- B. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- C. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- D. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

### 3.10 WHEEL STOPS

- A. Refer to section 321713 for Parking Bumpers specifications.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979.
  - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.12 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

**END OF SECTION 321216**

## SECTION 321236 – ASPHALT SEALCOATS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Crack and joint sealing.
  2. Asphalt seal coating.
  3. Application, or reapplication, of pavement-marking paint.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for hot-mix asphalt paving, asphalt surface treatments and pavement-marking paint.
- 1.3 REFERECE STANDARDS
- A. ASTM D8 - 12 Standard Terminology Relating to Materials for Roads and Pavements.
- B. ASTM D5711-03 Standard Test Method for Determining the Adherent Coating on Coarse Aggregates.
- C. Asphalt Sealcoat Manufacturers Association (ASMA)
- 1.4 DEFINITION
- A. Asphalt Sealcoat: Emulsified asphalt coating that is surface applied to existing or newly laid asphalt concrete pavement as a weather protective, water resistive coating, and that is recommended for minor repair, rejuvenation of existing asphalt surfaces, and routine asphalt pavement maintenance.
- B. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.
- 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Asphalt materials shall comply with the following performance performance requirements:
1. Provide not less than four years satisfactory performance, including no visual evidence of sagging, flowing, cracking, delamination, bubbling, or other visual defects, as determined by field testing or observation, and analysis of actual installations that are similar in extent, use, and traffic volume to the intended project.
  2. Provide not less than 55% residual coverage at the end of four years, when subjected to anticipated traffic load and environmental conditions.
- 1.6 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated or proposed, based on existing field conditions encountered. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- B. Shop Drawings: For newly installed asphalt lots, submit a parking lot plan indicating pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
- C. Material Certificates:
1. For asphalt sealcoat, signed by manufacturer, certifying that product is acceptable for application intended, and is appropriate for installation in geographic region and location of project, including climatic conditions and environmental exposures that can reasonably be expected or anticipated to be encountered.
  2. For crack filler and sealcoat materials, signed by manufacturer, certifying that materials are compatible with one another, based on recent lab testing by manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For applicator/installer.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer with not less than 5 years experience in the application of asphalt seal coat materials of the type indicated on projects of a similar, or larger, scale, and whose work has resulted in a history of successful in-service performance, free of premature delamination, peeling, or other visual signs of deterioration.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fine aggregates of a uniform quality from a single source. Aggregates from multiple sources are not to be used.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Materials, including traffic marking paints, shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Attendees are to include Contractor, Applicator, McDonald's Project Manager, and technical representative of sealcoat manufacturer.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to patching and replacement of hot-mix asphalt (as required), repair and filling of cracks, and sealcoat installation including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review proposed sources of materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt for patching.
    - b. Review condition of pavement and preparatory work required, including treatment(s) for existing pavement that is impregnated with vehicle oils and/or fuel, areas of pavement to be repaired, and areas of pavement to be replaced prior to start of sealcoat installation.
    - c. Review requirements for protecting sealcoat work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for manufacturer's recommended time period following installation.
    - d. Review striping plan, making notes on plan as to conditions that are not consistent with plan of original installation.
    - e. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver asphalt sealcoat and pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store asphalt sealcoat and pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not apply sealcoat if pavement surface is wet, excessively damp, or has standing water, if rain is imminent or forecast within 24 hours following time of application.
    - a. Asphalt pavement may be misted with water, in accordance with sealcoat manufacturer's written recommendations, immediately prior to installation during periods of high ambient air temperatures.
  - 2. Apply sealcoat when ambient air temperature is 50 deg F and rising, but less than 85 deg F, and forecasted to remain above 50 deg F for not less than 48 hours following time of application.
    - a. Ambient air temperature is to be measured in the shade, away from paved surfaces and other artificial sources of heat.
  - 3. Apply sealcoat to pavement surfaces that are at least 50 deg F at time of application and anticipated to remain above 50 deg F for not less than 12 hours following time of application.
  - 4. Apply traffic marking and striping paint when pavement surface temperature is not less than 55 deg F, but not more than 95 deg F, and when ambient air temperature is not less 55 deg F during installation and within temperature range required by paint manufacturer following installation.
- B. Close areas to receive asphalt sealcoat to traffic during installation and for not less than 24 hours following installation, or as recommended by sealcoat manufacturer, but not less than time required for sealcoat to cure sufficiently so to be non-tracking.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EMUSIFIED ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Emulsified Asphalt: Polymer modified asphalt emulsion, specifically formulated as a water resistive, weather protective coating to be applied over existing asphalt pavement surfaces. Sealcoat to be a non-tracking type.
  - 1. Properties:
    - a. Color: Black, when fully cured.
    - b. Flash Point: Not less than 212 deg F.
    - c. Cone Pen Viscosity: 350-450 (ASTM D 217).
    - d. Solids by Volume: 55 – 65% (ASTM D 2697).
    - e. Solids by Weight: Not less than 55% (ASTM D 1644).
    - f. Weight per Gallon: Not less than 11 lbs.
- B. Water: Potable, free of soluble salts and other deleterious substances, and not less than 50 deg F.



## 2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Fine Aggregate: Clean and dry natural silica sand, free of foreign material, including organic matter, with no more than two percent (2%) retained on a 30 mesh sieve and no more than three percent (3%) passing a 60 mesh sieve.
- B. Crack Filler/Sealant: Manufacturer's standard hot- or cold-poured elastomeric crack sealant that is compatible with sealcoat.
- C. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- D. Pavement-Marking Paint: Refer to Division 32 Section, "Asphalt Paving."
  - 1. Color: Yellow, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is clean, dry, free of loose materials, structurally sound, and in suitable condition to begin sealing.
- B. Proceed with sealing only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PATCHING AND REPAIRS

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
  - 1. Apply tack coat as required to vertical surfaces as required to ensure proper adhesion of asphalt patching materials to existing and allow to fully cure prior to placement of hot-mix asphalt patching materials. Remove spillages and clean adjacent surfaces as required.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use cold- or hot-poured joint sealant as required to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
- C. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.
- D. Leveling Course: Install and compact hot-mix asphalt leveling course, in compacted lifts not exceeding 3-inches thick, as required to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1-inch in existing pavements.
- E. Curing Period: Do not apply asphalt sealcoat until after asphalt pavement has been allowed to cure fully, but not less than 30 days.

### 3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt sealcoat materials, remove loose and deleterious material from pavement surfaces. Ensure that prepared pavement is clean, dry, and ready to receive sealcoat.
- B. Surface Preparation: Cleaning existing pavement may be done by blowing with oil-free compressed-air, vacuum, mechanical sweeper, washing or other techniques approved in writing by sealcoat manufacturer. If washing is used, the surface shall not have any standing water prior to application of sealcoat.
- C. Extraordinary Pavement Cleaning Measures: Oil, grease, fuel, salt, deicing agents, fertilizers, hard water deposits and other such chemicals must be removed prior to sealant application in accordance with sealcoat manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Provide protection against overspray, blowing of material, or spillage at existing concrete curbs, lighting standards, building walls, sidewalks, concrete pavement, and other surfaces and materials adjacent to or near pavement receiving sealcoat.
  - 1. If existing materials or surfaces receive sealcoat material, despite protection, the sealcoat material shall be immediately removed in a manner that does not visually alter or damage the existing surfaces.

3.4 ASPHALT SEALCOAT PLACING

- A. Apply the asphalt sealcoat either manually, or by means of mechanical equipment, at application rate recommended by sealcoat manufacturer to properly coat and seal pavement surfaces, in continuous, straight, parallel lines across installation area and immediately spread using rubber faced squeegees, brooms, or a combination of these or other techniques in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use only equipment specially designed to apply emulsified asphalt, that continually mixes materials to ensure a homogeneous solution is provided to the applicator, resulting in a uniformly coated surface throughout the installation area.
  - 2. Finished coat shall be of a uniform thickness, smooth and level, and free of gaps and ridges.
- B. Apply a minimum of two sealcoats. Allow each coat to thoroughly dry and cure before proceeding with subsequent coat.
  - 1. Apply three coats to drive lanes and other areas of high traffic volume, as recommended by sealcoat manufacturer and as directed by Architect or McDonald's Project Manager.
- C. Excessively rough or extremely aged surfaces should be evaluated for replacement with Architect.
- D. Provide a tack coat or other primer, as recommended by sealcoat manufacturer, when applying asphalt emulsion sealcoat materials over pavement previously treated with coal tar products.

3.5 PAVEMENT MARKING/STRIPING

- A. Allow sealcoat to cure for not less than 24 hours before starting pavement marking/stripping.
- B. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- C. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
  - 1. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lbs./gal.

3.6 WHEEL STOPS

- A. Secure wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Remove and replace or install additional asphalt sealcoat where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with manufacturer's requirements.

3.8 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

**END OF SECTION 321236**

## SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation and placement of Portland cement concrete parking areas.
- B. Preparation and placement of Portland cement concrete roads and entrances.
- C. Aggregate base below slab.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Procedures for inspection, testing, and documentation by testing laboratory.
- C. Section 312000 - Earth Moving: Excavation, backfill, compaction for subgrades.
- D. Section 321723 - Pavement Markings.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. ACI 117 - Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary.
  - 2. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.
  - 3. ACI 305.1 - Specifications for Hot Weather Concreting.
  - 4. ACI 306.1 - Standard Specifications for Cold Weather Concreting.
  - 5. ACI 308.1 - Standard Specifications for Curing Concrete.
  - 6. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete and Commentary.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A 36 - Structural Steel.
  - 2. ASTM A185 - Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 3. ASTM A615 - Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 4. ASTM C31 - Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
  - 5. ASTM C33 - Concrete Aggregates.
  - 6. ASTM C 39 - Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
  - 7. ASTM C42 - Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
  - 8. ASTM C94 - Ready-Mixed Concrete.
  - 9. ASTM C138 - Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.
  - 10. ASTM C143 - Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
  - 11. ASTM C150 - Portland Cement.
  - 12. ASTM C172 - Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
  - 13. ASTM C231 - Air-Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
  - 14. ASTM C260 - Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
  - 15. ASTM C309 - Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
  - 16. ASTM C403 - Time of Setting of Concrete Mixtures by Penetration Resistance
  - 17. ASTM C618 - Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
  - 18. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  - 19. ASTM C989 - Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete and Mortars.
  - 20. ASTM C1064 - Temperature of Freshly Mixed Portland Concrete Cement.
  - 21. ASTM C1218 - Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and Concrete.
  - 22. ASTM C1602 - Mixing Water used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
  - 23. ASTM D98 - Calcium Chloride
  - 24. ASTM D 698 - Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 5.5 lb Hammer and 12-in (305 mm) Drop.
  - 25. ASTM D994 - Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous).
  - 26. ASTM D1241 - Materials for Soil-Aggregate Subbase, Base and Surface Courses
  - 27. ASTM D1751 - Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
  - 28. ASTM D1752: Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.
  - 29. ASTM D2628 - Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements.

- 30. ASTM D3575: Standard Test Methods for Flexible Cellular Materials Made From Olefin Polymers.
- D. Federal Specifications (FS)
  - 1. FS HH-F-341 - Fillers, Expansion Joint: Bituminous (Asphalt & Tar)
- E. International Code Council, Inc.:
  - 1. International Building Code (IBC).
- F. State Highway Department Standard Specifications.
- G. National Ready-Mixed Concrete Association:
  - 1. NRMCA Inspection Standards

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Procedures: Unless otherwise specified herein, submit in accordance with procedures specified in Section 013000.
- B. Obtain Civil Engineering Consultant of Record's approval for Mix Design and Pavement Joint and Placement Plan prior to commencement of work.
- C. Submit submittal items required within this section in a single submittal. Do not submit submittals of this section together with submittals in section 033000 or any other section. Identify submittals explicitly in accordance with Procedures paragraphs in Section 013000.
- D. Sieve Analysis for Aggregate Base: Submit current sieve analysis report, sampled and tested within the last 60 days of submittal date, for aggregate base and choker material.
- E. Concrete Batch Plant Certifications: Submit name and address of the concrete supplier's batch plant and plant certification(s) by National Ready-Mix Concrete Association and/or State Department of Transportation.
- F. Mix Design: Fill out and submit a Concrete Mix Design Submittal Form. Submit three copies of each proposed mix design in accordance with ACI 301, Sections 3.9 "Proportioning on the basis of previous field experience or trial mixture", or 3.10 "Proportioning based on empirical data". Submit separate mix design for concrete to be placed by pumping in addition to the mix design for concrete to be placed directly from the truck chute. Submit mix design to the Civil Engineering Consultant of Record and the Construction Testing Laboratory. Include all applicable information shown on the Mix Design Submittal Form including the following:
  - 1. Proportions of cementitious materials, fine and coarse aggregate, and water.
  - 2. Water-cementitious material ratio, 28-day compressive design strength, slump, and air content.
  - 3. Type of cement, fly ash, slag and aggregate.
  - 4. Individual aggregate gradations.
  - 5. Type and dosage of admixtures.
  - 6. Special requirements for pumping.
  - 7. Range of ambient temperature and humidity for which design is valid.
  - 8. Special characteristics of mix which require precautions in mixing, placing, or finishing techniques to achieve finished product specified.
  - 9. Materials and methods for curing concrete.
- G. Attachments to Concrete Mix Design: Submit the following as attachments to be included with the Concrete Mix Design:
  - 1. Cementitious materials mill test reports for the following:
    - a. Portland cement
    - b. Fly ash
    - c. Slag
  - 2. Designation, type, quality, and source (natural or manufactured) of coarse and fine aggregate materials.
  - 3. Sieve Analysis Reports: Provide separate sieve analysis of percentages passing for coarse and fine aggregate. Show values for each sieve size shown on the mix design form. Do not leave any line blank. Sieve analysis sampling and testing for each aggregate source shall be conducted within 60 days of concrete submittal date.
  - 4. Aggregate Supplier Statement:
    - a. Stating if aggregate is possibly alkali-reactive based on tests or past service.
    - b. Stating if aggregate can possibly cause pop-outs, "D" cracking, or other disruptions due to moisture gain, freezing, or other mechanisms, based on tests or past service.
  - 5. Product data for the following concrete materials admixtures:
    - a. Water reducing
    - b. Set retarding
    - c. Set accelerating
    - d. Data indicating chloride ion content information for each admixture
  - 6. Concrete compressive strength data as required by ACI 318.
  - 7. Concrete supplier approval of mix design.

8. Chloride-Ion Content: Measured water-soluble chloride-ion content (percent by weight of cementitious materials) in accordance with ASTM C1218.
9. Time of Initial Setting: Initial setting time in accordance with ASTM C403.
- H. Pavement Joint and Placement Plan: For projects with all-concrete parking lots, provide a placement plan identifying the items listed below.
  1. Concrete truck access location.
  2. Extent of placements including width, length, slab placement area and volume.
  3. Locations of construction joints.
  4. Location of sawn contraction joints if different from those shown on the civil drawings.
- I. Delivery Tickets:
  1. Copies of delivery tickets for each load of concrete delivered to site.
  2. Indicate information required by ASTM C 94 on each ticket including additional information required for slabs.
  3. Information on ticket shall include quantities of material batched including the amount of free water in the aggregate and the quantity of water that can be added at the site without exceeding the maximum water cementitious ratio of the approved mix design. Aggregate moisture corrections shall be based on ASTM definitions of aggregate moisture content and absorption.
  4. Mix identification number on ticket shall match number on submitted and approved mix design.
  5. Submit copies to Testing Laboratory with each concrete delivery.
- J. Installation Certification: Submit certification in writing that final placement is in accordance with specification requirements.
- K. Statement of Approval of Concrete Supplier: Submit statement with information specified in Quality Assurance paragraph below.

#### 1.5 TESTING

- A. Construction Testing Laboratory (CTL) will perform concrete testing and inspection specified in Part 3 and elsewhere in this section as specified at no cost to the Contractor in accordance with Section 014000 - Quality Requirements.
- B. CTL is neither authorized to change any specified requirement nor to approve any portion of the work.
- C. Failure to detect defective material or Work will neither prevent rejection when defects are discovered later nor will it obligate Owner to make final acceptance.
- D. Responsibilities and Duties of Contractor Relative to Testing:
  1. Notify CTL in advance of concrete placement to allow sufficient time to prepare for required testing.
  2. Assist CTL in securing field specimens.
  3. Provide and maintain for sole use of CTL, facilities for safe storage and proper curing of concrete test cylinders at project site as required by ASTM C31 and acceptable to Testing Laboratory.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Concrete Truck Inspection:
  1. Conform to ASTM C94, NRMCA, and Department of Transportation standards in state where project is located.
  2. Perform inspections immediately before starting concreting operations.
  3. Record acceptable truck numbers.
  4. Record the identification numbers of those trucks found to be acceptable on the basis of inspections.
  5. Do not bring on site for concreting operations, any truck whose identification numbers are not recorded as acceptable. Notify Testing Lab if non-conforming trucks are used to deliver concrete for slabs and pavements.
- B. Tolerances:
  1. Conform to most stringent requirements of ACI 117 and ACI 301 except as specified herein.
  2. Conform to ACI 117 thickness tolerances for slabs-on-ground.
- C. Concrete Supplier Approval:
  1. The concrete supplier shall be fully approved and acceptable by the concrete subcontractor as the producer of concrete for which the subcontractor is to place and finish. Prepare Statement of Approval of Concrete Supplier stating project name, name of concrete supplier, along with the statement of approval and the signatures of the Contractor and concrete pavement subcontractor.
- D. Workmanship:
  1. When directed by the Owner, remove and replace or repair concrete and related Work which does not conform to specified requirements including strength, tolerances and finishes.
  2. Bear cost of corrections or delays to other work affected by, or resulting from, corrections to concrete Work.

3. If results of compressive strength tests reveal deficiencies in concrete, meet requirements of ACI 318 and ACI 301.
  4. Establish and maintain required lines and elevations.
  5. Check surface areas at intervals necessary to eliminate ponding areas.
- E. Pre-installation Meeting: Convene a pre-installation meeting at the site at least two weeks prior to commencing work of this Section. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this Section, including, but not limited to, the Owner's representative, CTL's representative and inspector, Contractor, concrete sub-contractor and job foreman, concrete supplier, and base fine grading contractor.
1. Contact Owner's Agent thirty days prior to pre-installation conference to confirm schedule.
  2. Record discussions of meeting and decisions and agreements (or disagreements) reached and furnish copy of record to each party attending. Review foreseeable methods and procedures related to paving work, including the following:
    3. CTL's testing and inspection procedures.
    4. Concrete finishes and finishing.
    5. Cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures.
    6. Curing procedures.
    7. Concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials.
    8. Proposed sources of concrete materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture concrete.
    9. Tour, inspect and discuss condition of subgrade, drainage structures, and other preparatory work.
    10. Requirements for protecting concrete work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
    11. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
    12. Concrete paving requirements (drawings, specifications and other contract documents).
    13. Required submittals, both completed and yet to be completed.
    14. Weather and forecasted weather conditions, and procedures for coping with unfavorable conditions.
    15. Safety precautions relating to placement of concrete.
    16. Changes to the contract documents from recommendations or discussions at the Pre-Construction meeting shall be approved in writing by the Owner's Construction Manager prior to implementation.

#### 1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Concreting in Hot, Dry, or Windy Weather:
1. Employ precautions to avoid cracking when the concrete rate of evaporation exceeds 0.1 pounds per square foot per hour or when any combination of concrete materials and weather conditions are favorable for the formation of plastic shrinkage cracks.
  2. Maintain an accurate reading thermometer at the job site to check temperature of concrete.
  3. Reject concrete if more than one slump adjustment, as defined in ASTM C 94, is required.
  4. Do not place concrete when forms, subgrade, aggregate base, or reinforcing bars are more than 120 F or the temperature differential between the forms, aggregate base, or reinforcing bars and concrete will create conditions favorable for settlement cracks or thermal cracking.
- B. Concreting in Cold Weather:
1. Conform to ACI 306.1 when temperature and other environmental conditions are as noted therein.
  2. Subgrade shall be thawed to depth of 12 inches immediately before placing concrete.
  3. Measure and record concrete temperature during protection period in each placement at regular time intervals, but not less than 3 times per 24-hour period.
  4. Do not place slabs on subgrade or base that is more than 20°F cooler than concrete. Warm subgrade or base to decrease temperature differential to 20 F or less

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities. Utilize temporary striping, flagmen, barricades, warning signs, and warning lights as required.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Forms: Steel, wood, or other suitable material of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Use straight forms, free of distortion and defects. Use flexible spring steel forms or laminated boards to form radius bends as required. Coat forms with nonstaining type of coating that will not discolor or deface surface of concrete.
- B. Aggregate Base and Choker Materials:

1. Aggregate Base Material:
    - a. Gradation: Conform to gradation shown on the Civil Drawings.
    - b. Equivalent Gradation: Equivalent gradations may be used upon approval of the Civil Engineer of Record. Submit proposed equivalent gradation to the Architect for approval within 30 days after the award of contract. Equivalent gradation shall be one of the following.
      - 1) Any state DOT approved road base material meeting the following gradation:
 

<u>Standard Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
Number 1-1/2	100
Number 4	15 - 55
Number 200	5 - 12
      - 2) Material conforming to the General Requirements and of the Gradation "A", "C", or "D" requirements (with the modified allowance of 5% to 12% passing the No. 200 sieve) as defined by ASTM D1241
  2. Aggregate Choker Material: Clean granular fill with less than 3% clay and/or friable particles. Use one of the following gradations:
    - a. ASTM 448 No. 10 with 6% to 12% passing No. 200 sieve.
    - b. Material meeting the following gradation:
 

<u>Standard Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
Number 4	85 - 100
Number 8	75 - 95
Number 16	55 - 75
Number 50	22 - 45
Number 100	10 - 30
Number 200	6 - 12
- C. Reinforcement:
1. Welded Wire Mesh: Welded plain cold-drawn steel wire fabric, ASTM A185. Furnish in flat sheets.
  2. Reinforcing Bars: Deformed steel bars, ASTM A615, Grade 60.
  3. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615, grade 40 minimum, smooth round plain steel bars, or ASTM A36, smooth round or square plain steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs. Epoxy coat per State Highway Department Standard Specifications.
- D. Cementitious Materials:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, Use only one brand throughout project.
  2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F. Use only one type and source throughout project.
  3. Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120. Use only one type and source throughout project.
- E. Pavement Joint Materials:
1. Joint Back-up Material: Polyethylene foam, 100% closed cell
  2. Soft Preformed Joint Filler: Flexible closed-cell non-extruding synthetic foam expansion joint strips.
    - a. Ceramar Flexibe Foam Expansion Joint, by W.R. Meadows.
    - b. Deck-O-Foam Expansion Joint Filler, by W.R. Meadows
    - c. Expansion Joint Filler, by BASF Building Systems (Degussa) (Formerly Sonneborn Sonolastic).
- F. Sealant:
1. Dow 888, by Dow Corning.
    - a. 301 NS by Pecora.
    - b. Spectrum 800 or 900 by Tremco.
- G. Concrete Aggregate:
1. Conform to ASTM C33.
  2. Aggregate shall contain no coal or lignite in concrete that will not be covered by soil.
  3. Fine Aggregate:
    - a. Conform to fine aggregate grading requirements as defined in section 6.1 of ASTM C 33 unless approved by the Civil Engineer.
    - b. If manufactured sand is used, blend with minimum 25% natural sand unless otherwise approved by Civil Engineer.
  4. Coarse Aggregate:
    - a. Nominal maximum coarse aggregate size shall be 1 inch for slabs < 5-1/2 inch thick.
    - b. The nominal maximum size of an aggregate is the smallest sieve size through which the major portion of the aggregate must pass, with a minimal amount retained on the maximum sieve size. Maximum 4% shall be retained on the nominal maximum size sieve.
  5. Adjust proportions of combined coarse, intermediate, and fine aggregates to provide the following particle size distribution characteristics, unless otherwise approved:
    - a. Coarseness Factor of 60 to 75%.

- 1) The Coarseness Factor (CF) is the percent of combined aggregate retained on the #8 sieve that is also retained on the 3/8" sieve.
- 2) The Coarseness Factor is calculated as follows:
  - (a)  $CF = \text{Aggregate retained on } 3/8" \text{ sieve} / \text{Aggregate retained on } \#8 \text{ sieve.}$ 
    - b. Adjusted Workability Factor
      - 1) The Workability Factor (WF) is the percent of combined aggregate that passes the #8 sieve.
      - 2) The Adjusted Workability Factor (Adj-WF) is calculated as follows:
        - (a)  $\text{Adj-WF} = WF + [(\text{Cementitious Material} - 564 \text{ lbs}) / 37.6]$
        - 3) The range of accepted Adj-WF for a given CF is as follows:
          - (a)  $\text{Adj-WF} = [(11.25 - .15 \text{ CF}) + 33] \pm 2.5$
          - 4) Combined percent retained on any given sieve size shall not exceed 24%.
6. Gradation requirement of ASTM C33 may be waived in order to meet ranges specified.
- H. Water: ASTM C 1602.
- I. Air Entrainment: ASTM C260.
  1. Air-Mix or AEA-92, by Euclid.
  2. MB-VR MB-AE 90, or Micro-Air, BASF.
  3. Daravair or Darex Series, by W.R. Grace.
  4. Equivalent approved products.
- J. Evaporation Retardant: Water-based polymer, sprayable.
  1. Euco-Bar, by Euclid
  2. Confilm, by BASF Admixtures (Master Builders)
  3. Aquafilm, by Dayton Superior.
- K. Liquid Membrane Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type I, Class A or B, 25% minimum solids content, clear non-yellowing with no styrene-butadiene.
  1. Water Based, VOC less than 350 g/l:
    - a. Super Aqua Cure, by Euclid Chemical Corp.
    - b. Kure 1315 by BASF.
  2. Solvent Based (For use below 40F)
    - a. Super Rez-Seal, by Euclid Chemical Corp.
    - b. Kure-N-Seal 30 by BASF.
  3. Dissipating Curing Compound (For use below 40F): ASTM C 309 Type 1, Class A or B.
    - a. Solvent base, VOC less than 350 g/l: Cetri Vex EnvioCure 100 by Vexcon.

## 2.2 CONCRETE MIX

- A. Design mix shall produce normal weight concrete consisting of Portland cement, supplementary cementitious materials, aggregates, admixtures, and water to produce specified requirements.
- B. Geographical Weather Exposure Classification: Reference IBC Figure 1904.2.2. Uncertainty of classification due to a project location near a border of a classification shall be referred to Owner's Construction Manager for clarification.
- C. Compressive Strength at 28 days, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings:
  1. Negligible exposure classification: 3,500 psi with a maximum water-cementitious ratio of 0.53.
  2. Moderate exposure classification: 4,000 psi with a maximum water-cementitious ratio of 0.48.
  3. Severe exposure classification: 4,500 psi with a maximum water-cementitious ratio of 0.45.
- D. Slump Range: 2"-4" for hand placed concrete, 1-1/4" to 3" for machine placed (slipform) concrete.
- E. Air Entrainment as shown below:

<u>Nominal Maximum Size</u> <u>Aggregate (inch)</u>	<u>Average Air Content,</u> <u>Negligible (%)</u>	<u>Average Air Content,</u> <u>Moderate (%)</u>	<u>Average Air Content,</u> <u>Severe (%)</u>
3/8	4.5	6.0	7.5
1/2	4.0	5.5	7.0
3/4	3.5	5.0	6.0
1	3.0	4.5	6.0
1-1/2	2.5	4.5	5.5

- F. Supplementary Cementitious Materials (SCM):
  1. Concrete mix shall contain SCM at the amounts specified unless other amounts are approved by the Civil Engineer.
  2. Fly Ash: Substitute fly ash for Portland cement at 15% of the total cementitious content. Use of fly ash in the concrete mix is mandatory.
    - a. If used to mitigate potential aggregate reactivity, only Type F fly ash may be used and shall have the following maximum properties: 1.5% available alkali and 8.0% CaO. When a maximum of 25% replacement is used, up to 10.0% CaO is permitted.



3. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS): GGBFS may be used at the option of the Contractor. If used, GGBFS shall be substituted for Portland cement at 20% of the total cementitious content. If required to mitigate potential sulfate exposure or aggregate reactivity, up to 50% substitution of Portland cement is allowed.
  4. Maintain air-entrainment at specified levels.
- G. Calcium Chloride:
1. Calcium chloride (Type L) may be used in solution form as part of the mixing water to accelerate concrete setting and early-strength development.
  2. Amount of calcium chloride added shall not be more than necessary to produce the desired results and shall not exceed 2% by weight of cement.
  3. The dosage range for the calcium chloride for the entire project shall not vary by more than 1%. Range is defined as the difference between the maximum and minimum dosages of calcium chloride for the entire project.
  4. Calcium chloride shall not be used in the following applications unless approved by the Civil Engineer:
    - a. concrete containing embedded dissimilar metals or aluminum
    - b. slabs supported on permanent galvanized steel forms
    - c. concrete exposed to deicing chemicals
    - d. prestressed or post-tension concrete
    - e. concrete containing aggregates with potentially deleterious reactivity and concrete exposed to soil
    - f. concrete exposed to soil or water containing sulfates.
  5. Use calcium chloride in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.
  6. Chloride-ion Concentration: Maximum water-soluble chloride-ion concentrations in hardened concrete at ages from 28 to 42 days contributed from the ingredients including water, aggregates, cementitious materials, and admixtures shall not exceed the following limits unless approved by the Civil Engineer:
 

<u>Type of Member</u>	<u>Maximum Water-Soluble Chloride Ion (Cl-) Content in Concrete (percent by weight of cement)</u>
Prestressed concrete	0.06
Reinforced concrete exposed to chloride in service	0.15
Reinforced concrete that will be dry or protected from moisture in service	1.00
Other reinforced concrete construction	0.30
  7. When using calcium chloride or other admixtures containing chlorides, measure water-soluble chloride-ion content (percent by weight of cement) per ASTM C 1218. Sample shall be from concrete representing the submitted mix design and maximum chloride dosage anticipated for the project.

2.3 MIXING

- A. Mix concrete and deliver in accordance with ASTM C 94.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Proofroll prepared base material surface to check for unstable areas in accordance with Section 312000 including documentation and re-proof rolling as required. Paving work shall begin only after unsuitable areas have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted base material surface to produce firm, smooth surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.2 AGGREGATE BASE PLACEMENT

- A. Unless otherwise specified on the Drawings, place aggregate base as specified herein.
- B. Aggregate Base:
  1. Install aggregate base where shown on Drawings.
  2. Compact to final thickness shown in layers not exceeding 6 inches with minimum of 2 passes per layer with vibratory compactor.
  3. Compact fill to 98% of aggregate's Standard Proctor as determined by Method D of ASTM D698.
  4. Leave base up to 2 inches low until just prior to concrete placement.

- C. Aggregate Base Fine Grading:
  1. Compact to final thickness shown with 2 passes minimum vibratory compactor to produce smooth, flat, dense surface.
  2. Do not allow excess moisture in or on base at time of placing concrete.
  3. Level off aggregate base top surface with a maximum 3/4" thick aggregate choker material to achieve the following:
    - a. To reduce surface friction and to meet specified fine grade tolerances specified below.
    - b. To level areas exposed to rain, traffic, or excavations for buried utilities.
    - c. At areas where aggregate base material does not have sufficient fine particles to produce a surface that is free of exposed aggregate or surface voids greater than 3/8" in size at time of slab installation.
  4. Construction Testing Laboratory shall verify adequate fines at surface immediately prior to concrete slab placement.
  5. Provide dry, smooth, flat, dense surface
  6. Proof-roll 48 hrs maximum prior to concrete placement. Depression under a fully loaded ready mix truck shall not exceed 1/2 inch.
- D. Pavement Aggregate Base Fine Grade Tolerance: +0 inch, -3/4 inch with transition no greater than 3/4 inch vertically to 8 inches horizontally.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Form Construction
  1. Set forms to required grades and lines, rigidly braced and secured.
  2. Install sufficient quantity of forms to allow continuance of work and so that forms remain in place minimum of 24 hours after concrete placement.
  3. Check completed formwork for grade and alignment to following tolerances:
    - a. Top of forms not more than 1/8-inch in 10'-0".
    - b. Vertical face on longitudinal axis, not more than 1/4-inch in 10'-0".
  4. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent as often as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.
- B. Reinforcement: Fasten reinforcing bars or welded wire fabric (if required) accurately and securely in place with suitable supports and ties. Remove from reinforcement all dirt, oil, loose mill scale, rust, and other substances that will prevent proper bonding of the concrete to the reinforcement.
- C. Concrete Placement
  1. Mix and place concrete when the air temperature in the shade and away from artificial heat is a minimum of 35 degrees F and rising. Hot and cold weather concreting shall be in accordance with ACI 305.1 (hot weather) and 306.1 (cold weather).
  2. Do not place concrete until base material and forms have been checked for alignment and grade. Concrete shall not be placed around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
  3. Place concrete using methods that prevent segregation of mix. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocation of reinforcing, dowels, and joint devices.
  4. Deposit and spread concrete in continuous operation between transverse joints, as far as possible. If interrupted for more than 1/2 hour, place construction joint.
- D. Contraction and Construction Joints: Construct contraction and construction joints straight with face perpendicular to concrete surface. Construct transverse joints perpendicular to centerline, unless otherwise detailed.
  1. Contraction Joints: Provide joints at spacing of 12'-0" on centers, maximum each way. Construct control joints for depth equal to at least 1/4 of the concrete thickness, as follows:
    - a. Form tooled joints in fresh concrete by grooving top with recommended tool and finishing edge with jointer.
    - b. Sawed Contraction Joints:
      - 1) Use saws, blades, skid plates, and accessories by Soff-Cut International, Inc. or approved equal.
      - 2) Start cutting sawed joints as soon as concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent raveling or dislodging of aggregates. This will typically be from 1 hour in hot weather to 4 hours in cold weather after completing finishing of slab in that joint location.
      - 3) Provide at least two "Soff-Cut" saws on site with blades capable of achieving the required depth of saw cut.

- 4) Extend sawed joint to the slab boundaries and abutments, including columns, drains, and other penetrations in the path of a defined joint. Implement methods and timing of the saw cut beyond the limits of the Soff-Cut saw reach to provide a consistent depth of cut with minimal raveling of joint edges.
  2. Construction Joints: Place construction joints at end of placements and at locations where placement operations are stopped for period of more than 1/2 hour. Construct joints in accordance with details shown.
  - E. Isolation and Fixed Object Joints: Construct joint at locations and in accordance with details shown.
  - F. Pavement Joint Materials: Place joint fillers, back-up material, and sealants at locations shown and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
    1. Soft Preformed Joint Fillers: Extend preformed joint fillers full-width and depth of joint, and not less than 1/2-inch or more than 1-inch below finished surface. Furnish preformed joint fillers in 1-piece lengths for full width being placed, wherever possible. Where more than 1 length is required, lace or clip preformed joint filler sections together in a single plane.
- 3.4 CONCRETE FINISHING
- A. After initial striking off and consolidating of concrete paving, smooth surface using either magnesium straight edge, wood, or magnesium channel float.
  - B. Round edges of slabs and formed joints to 1/2-inch radius with edging tool. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surface.
  - C. After completion of straightedge / floating and when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, uniformly finish surface to provide a coarse, nonslip finish by scoring surface with stiff-bristled broom perpendicular to flow of traffic so as to produce regular corrugations not over 1/16 of an inch deep. Initial nonslip finishing shall be approved by the Owner's Construction Manager.
  - D. Do not remove forms for 24 hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point up minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects, as directed by Owner.
- 3.5 CURING AND PROTECTION
- A. Protect and cure finished concrete paving using curing compound. Cure for a period not less than 7 days.
  - B. Use solvent based curing compound when compound is applied below 40 F.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING
- A. Sweep concrete pavement and wash free of stains, discolorations, dirt, and other foreign material just prior to final inspection.
  - B. Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of work. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials.
- 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Field quality control tests specified herein will be conducted by the Construction Testing Laboratory at the Contractor's expense in accordance with Section 014000. The Contractor shall perform additional testing as considered necessary by the Contractor for assurance of quality control. Retesting required as a result of failed initial tests shall be at the Contractor's expense.
  - B. Field testing, frequency, and methods may vary as determined by and between the Owner and the Testing Laboratory.
  - C. Review the Contractor's proposed materials and mix design for conformance with specifications.
  - D. Perform testing in accordance with ACI 301 and testing standards listed herein.
  - E. Strength Tests:
    1. Secure composite samples in accordance with ASTM C172. Sample at regularly spaced intervals from middle portion of the batch. Sampling time shall not exceed 15 minutes.
    2. Mold and cure specimens in accordance with ASTM C31.
      - a. A minimum of four concrete test cylinders shall be taken for every 100 cubic yards or less of each class of concrete placed each day and not less than once for each 5000 square feet of paved area.
      - b. During the initial 24 hours (plus or minus 8 hours) after molding, the temperature immediately adjacent to the specimens shall be maintained in the range of 60 to 80 degrees F. Control loss of moisture from the specimens by shielding from the direct rays of the sun and from radiant heating devices.
      - c. Specimens transported prior to 48 hours after molding shall not be demolded, but shall continue initial curing at 60 to 80 degrees F until time for transporting.

- d. Specimens transported after 48 hours age shall be demolded in 24 hours (plus or minus 8 hours). Curing shall then be continued but in saturated limewater at 73.4 degrees (plus or minus 3 degrees F) until the time of transporting.
  - e. Wet cure cylinders under controlled temperature until testing.
3. Test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C39.
- a. Size of specimen test cylinder shall be 6" x 12".
  - b. Date test cylinders and number consecutively. Give each cylinder of each set an identifying letter (i.e. A, B, C, D). Prepare a sketch of the site plan for each test set identifying location of placed concrete.
  - c. Test one cylinder (A) at 7 days for information..
  - d. Test two cylinders (B and C) at 28 days and the average of the breaks shall constitute the compressive strength of the concrete sample.
  - e. Retain fourth cylinder (D) for further testing if needed, but do not retain cylinder more than 90 days.
4. Evaluation and Acceptance:
- a. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if the average of all sets of three consecutive strength tests equal or exceed specified strength and no individual strength test (average of two cylinders) results are below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
  - b. Complete concrete work will not be accepted unless requirements of ACI 301, have been met, including dimensional tolerances, appearance, and strength of structure.
  - c. Where average strength of cylinders, as shown by tests is not satisfactory, Owner reserves the right to require Contractor to provide improved curing conditions of temperature and moisture to secure required strength. If average strength of laboratory control cylinders should fall so low as to cause portions of structure to be in question by Owner, follow core procedure set forth in ASTM C42. If results of core test indicate, in opinion of Owner, that strength of structure is inadequate, provide without additional cost to Owner, replacement, load testing, or strengthening as may be ordered by Owner. If core tests are so ordered and results of such tests disclose that strength of structure is as required, cost of test will be paid by Owner.
- F. Slump Test: Conduct slump test for each cylinder set taken in accordance with ASTM C143. Make additional slump tests for every other load from a stationary mixer or truck to test consistency. Sampling shall be in accordance with ASTM C172.
- G. Air Content: Conduct air content test for each cylinder set for concrete in accordance with ASTM C 231, ASTM C 173, or ASTM C 138. Indicate test method on report. Make test at same time as slump test.
- 1. Perform air content test for first and second truck for each class of concrete placed each day. If either test fails, perform air test on every truck until two consecutive air tests comply with the requirements of the project specifications.
- H. Unit Weight: ASTM C 138.
- I. Temperature Test: Conduct temperature test for each cylinder set taken in accordance with ASTM C1064. Test hourly when air temperature is 40 F and below or 80 F and above. Determine temperature of concrete sample and ambient air for each strength test.
- J. In addition to required information noted previously in this Section, record the following information on concrete compression reports:
- 1. Test cylinder number and letter.
  - 2. Specific foundations or structures covered by this test.
  - 3. Proportions of concrete mix or mix identification.
  - 4. Maximum size coarse aggregate.
  - 5. Specified compressive strength.
  - 6. Tested compressive strength.
  - 7. Slump, air-content.
  - 8. Concrete plastic unit weight.
  - 9. Concrete Temperature.
  - 10. Elapsed time from batching at plant to discharge from delivery truck at project.
  - 11. Date and time concrete was placed.
  - 12. Ambient temperature, wind speed, and relative humidity during concrete placement.
  - 13. Name of technician securing samples.
  - 14. Curing conditions for concrete strength test specimens (field and laboratory).
  - 15. Date strength specimens transported to laboratory.
  - 16. Age of strength specimens when tested.
  - 17. Type of fracture during test.

- K. At the start of each day's mixing, report any significant deviations from approved mix design including temperature, moisture and condition of aggregate.
- L. Review each delivery ticket of concrete. Report type of concrete delivered, amount of water added and time at which cement and aggregate were loaded into truck, and time at which concrete was discharged from truck
- M. In Place Pavement Testing: Randomly core pavement in low traffic volume areas at minimum rate of 1 core per 20,000 sq. ft of pavement, with minimum of 3 cores. Sample and test cores in accordance with ASTM C42. Core will be tested for thickness and quality of aggregate distribution. Core holes shall be patched by the Contractor immediately with Portland cement concrete and shall be finished to provide level surface as specified herein.
- N. Additional Tests: Additional in-place tests shall be conducted as directed by the Owner's Construction Manager when specified concrete strengths and other characteristics have not been attained in the structures.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 321613 - CONCRETE CURBS AND GUTTERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Portland cement concrete curbs, gutters, and sidewalks except sidewalks adjacent to building.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312000 - Earth Moving: Preparation of subgrades.
- B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Exterior sidewalks adjacent to building.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.

- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI)

- 1. ACI 305R - Hot Weather Concreting
- 2. ACI 306R - Cold Weather Concreting
- 3. ACI 306.1 - Cold Weather Concreting.
- 4. ACI 308 - Curing Concrete

- C. ASTM International (ASTM)

- 1. ASTM A185 - Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
- 2. ASTM A615 - Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel for Concrete Reinforcement.
- 3. ASTM C31 - Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
- 4. ASTM C39 - Comprehensive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
- 5. ASTM C42 - Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
- 6. ASTM C94 - Ready-Mixed Concrete.
- 7. ASTM C138 - Test Method for Unit Weight, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.
- 8. ASTM C143 - Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
- 9. ASTM C231 - Air-Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
- 10. ASTM C172 - Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
- 11. ASTM C173 - Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
- 12. ASTM C260 - Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
- 13. ASTM C309 - Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
- 14. ASTM C618 - Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
- 15. ASTM C989 - Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete and Mortars.
- 16. ASTM C1064 - Temperature of Freshly Mixed Portland Concrete Cement.
- 17. ASTM C1218 - Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and Concrete.
- 18. ASTM D98 - Calcium Chloride.
- 19. ASTM D994 - Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous).
- 20. ASTM D1190 - Concrete Joint Sealer, Hot Poured, Elastic Type.
- 21. ASTM D1751 - Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
- 22. ASTM D2628 - Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements.

- D. Federal Specifications (FS)

- 1. FS HH-F-341 - Fillers, Expansion Joint: Bituminous (Asphalt & Tar)

- E. State Highway Department Standard Specifications

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Mix Design: Fill out and submit a Concrete Mix Design Submittal Form. Submit three copies of each proposed mix design in accordance with ACI 301, Sections 3.9 "Proportioning on the basis of previous field experience or trial mixture", or 3.10 "Proportioning based on empirical data". Submit separate mix design for concrete to be placed by pumping in addition to the mix design for concrete to be placed directly from the truck chute. Submit mix design to the Civil Engineering Consultant of Record and the Construction Testing Laboratory. Include applicable information shown on the Mix Design Submittal Form and the following:

- 1. Proportions of cementitious materials, fine and coarse aggregate, and water.
- 2. Water-cementitious material ratio, 28-day compressive design strength, slump, and air content.
- 3. Type of cement, fly ash, slag and aggregate.
- 4. Aggregate gradation.

- 5. Type and dosage of admixtures.
  - 6. Special requirements for pumping.
  - 7. Range of ambient temperature and humidity for which design is valid.
  - 8. Special characteristics of mix which require precautions in mixing, placing, or finishing techniques to achieve finished product specified.
  - 9. Materials and methods for curing concrete.
- B. Test Reports: Submit field quality control test reports.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Establish and maintain required lines and elevations.
  - B. Check surface areas at intervals necessary to eliminate ponding areas. Remove and replace unacceptable work as directed by Owner.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities. Utilize temporary striping, flagmen, barricades, warning signs, and warning lights as required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Forms: Steel, wood, or other suitable material of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Use straight forms, free of distortion and defects. Use flexible spring steel forms or laminated boards to form radius bends as required. Forms shall be of depth equal to depth of curbing or sidewalk, and so designed as to permit secure fastening together at tops. Coat forms with nonstaining type of coating that will not discolor or deface surface of concrete.
  - B. Welded Wire Mesh: Welded plain cold-drawn steel wire fabric, ASTM A185. Furnish in flat sheets.
  - C. Reinforcing Steel: Deformed steel bars, ASTM A615, Grade 60.
  - D. Portland Cement: Shall conform to ASTM C150, Type I.
  - E. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F. Use only one type and source throughout project.
  - F. Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120. Use only one type and source throughout project.
  - G. Exterior Pavement Joint Materials
    - 1. Joint Back-up Material: Polyethylene foam, 100% closed cell.
    - 2. Sealant:
      - a. Dow 888, by Dow Corning.
      - b. 301 NS by Pecora.
      - c. Spectrum 800 or 900 by Tremco.
  - H. Aggregate: ASTM C33.
  - I. Water: Clean and potable
  - J. Dowel Bars: ASTM A615, grade 60, and plain steel bars.
  - K. Air Entrainment: ASTM C260.
    - 1. Air-Mix or AEA-92, by Euclid Chemical Corp.
    - 2. MB-VR MB-AE 90, or Micro-Air, by BASF.
    - 3. Daravair or Darex Series, by W.R. Grace.
    - 4. Equivalent approved products.
  - L. Liquid Membrane Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C1315, Type I, Class A or B, 25% minimum solids content, clear non-yellowing with no styrene-butadiene.
    - 1. Water Based, VOC less than 350 g/l:
      - a. Super Aqua Cure, by Euclid Chemical Corp.
      - b. Kure 1315 by BASF.
    - 2. Solvent Based
      - a. Super Rez-Seal, by Euclid Chemical Corp.
      - b. Kure-N-Seal 30 by BASF.
  - M. Dissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309 Type 1, Class A or B.
    - 1. Solvent base, VOC less than 350 g/l: Cetri Vex EnvioCure 100 by Vexcon.
- 2.2 CONCRETE MIXING
- A. Mix concrete and deliver in accordance with ASTM C94. Design mix shall produce normal weight concrete consisting of Portland cement, supplementary cementitious materials, aggregates, admixtures and water to produce the following:
    - 1. Compressive Strength: 3,500 psi minimum at 28 days unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

2. Slump Range: 2• -4• for hand placed concrete, 1-1/4• to 3• for machine placed (slipform) concrete.
3. Air Entrainment: 5 to 8 percent.
- B. Supplementary Cementitious Materials (SCM):
  1. Concrete mix shall contain SCM at the amounts specified unless other amounts are approved by the Civil Engineer.
  2. Fly Ash: Substitute fly ash for Portland cement at 15% of the total cementitious content. Use of fly ash in the concrete mix is mandatory.
    - a. If used to mitigate potential aggregate reactivity, only Type F fly ash may be used and shall have the following maximum properties: 1.5% available alkali and 8.0% CaO. When a maximum of 30% replacement is used, up to 10.0% CaO is permitted.
  3. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS): GGBFS may be used at the option of the Contractor. If used, GGBFS shall be substituted for Portland cement at 20% of the total cementitious content. If required to mitigate potential sulfate exposure or aggregate reactivity, up to 50% substitution of Portland cement is allowed.
  4. Ternary mix (combination of fly ash, GGBFS, and Portland cement): If used, the fly ash and GGBFS combination shall be substituted for Portland cement at a maximum of 40% or when approved, up to 55% of the total cementitious content.
  5. Maintain air-entrainment at specified levels.
- C. Calcium chloride:
  1. Calcium chloride (Type L) may be used in solution form as part of the mixing water to accelerate concrete setting and early-strength development.
    - a. Amount of calcium chloride added shall not be more than necessary to produce the desired results and shall not exceed 2% by weight of cement.
    - b. The dosage range for the calcium chloride for the entire project shall not vary by more than 1%. Range is defined as the difference between the maximum and minimum dosages of calcium chloride for the entire project.
    - c. Calcium chloride shall not be used in the following applications unless approved by the Civil Engineer:
      - 1) concrete containing embedded dissimilar metals or aluminum
      - 2) slabs supported on permanent galvanized steel forms
      - 3) concrete exposed to deicing chemicals
      - 4) prestressed or post-tension concrete
      - 5) concrete containing aggregates with potentially deleterious reactivity and concrete exposed to soil
      - 6) concrete exposed to soil or water containing sulfates.
  2. Use calcium chloride in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.
  3. Chloride-ion Concentration:
    - a. Maximum water-soluble chloride-ion concentrations in hardened concrete at ages from 28 to 42 days contributed from the ingredients including water, aggregates, cementitious material, and admixtures shall not exceed the following limits unless approved by the Civil Engineer:
 

<u>Type of Member</u>	<u>Maximum Water-Soluble Chloride Ion (Cl-) Content in Concrete (percent by weight of cement)</u>
Prestressed concrete	0.06
Reinforced concrete exposed to chloride in service	0.15
Reinforced concrete that will be dry or protected from moisture in service	1.00
Other reinforced concrete construction	0.30
  4. When using calcium chloride or other admixtures containing chlorides, measure water-soluble chloride-ion content (percent by weight of cementitious materials) per ASTM C1218. Sample shall be from concrete representing the submitted mix design and maximum chloride dosage anticipated for the project.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Begin paving work only after unsuitable areas have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted base material surface to produce firm, smooth surface immediately before placing concrete.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Form Construction



1. Set forms to required grades and lines, rigidly braced and secured.
  2. Install sufficient quantity of forms to allow continuance of work and so that forms remain in place minimum of 24 hours after concrete placement.
  3. Check completed formwork for grade and alignment to following tolerances:
    - a. Top of forms not more than 1/8-inch in 10'-0".
    - b. Vertical face on longitudinal axis, not more than 1/4-inch in 10'-0".
  4. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent as often as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.
- B. Reinforcement: Fasten reinforcing bars or welded wire fabric (if required) accurately and securely in place with suitable supports and ties. Remove from reinforcement all dirt, oil, loose mill scale, rust, and other substances that will prevent proper bonding of the concrete to the reinforcement.
- C. Concrete Placement
1. Concrete shall be mixed and placed when the air temperature in the shade and away from artificial heat is a minimum of 35 degrees F and rising. Hot and cold weather concreting shall be in accordance with ACI 305R (hot weather) and 306.1 and 306R (cold weather). Do not place concrete until base material and forms have been checked for line and grade. Moisten base material if required to provide uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until set at required finish elevation and alignment.
  2. Place concrete using methods that prevent segregation of mix. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocation of reinforcing, dowels, and joint devices.
  3. Deposit and spread concrete in continuous operation between transverse joints, as far as possible. If interrupted for more than 1/2 hour, place construction joint. Automatic machine may be used for curb and gutter placement. Machine placement shall be at required cross section, line, grade, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not acceptable, remove and replace with formed concrete as specified herein.
- D. Joint Construction
1. Contraction Joints: Construct concrete curb or combination concrete curb and gutter, where specified on Construction Drawings, in uniform sections of length specified on Construction Drawings. Form joints between sections either by steel templates, 1/8-inch in thickness, of length equal to width of curb and gutter, and with depth which will penetrate at least 2-inches below surface of curb and gutter; or with 3/4-inch thick performed expansion joint filler cut to exact cross section of curb and gutter; or by sawing to depth of at least 2-inches while concrete is between 4 and 24 hours old. If steel templates are used, they shall be left in place until concrete has set enough to hold its shape, but shall be removed while forms are still in place.
  2. Longitudinal Construction Joints: Tie concrete curb or combination concrete curb and gutter, where specified on Construction Drawings, to concrete pavement with 1/2-inch round deformed reinforcement bars of length and spacing shown on Construction Drawings.
  3. Transverse Expansion Joints: Concrete curb, combination concrete curb and gutter, or concrete sidewalk shall have filler cut to exact cross section of curb, gutter, or sidewalk. Joints shall be similar to type of expansion joint used in adjacent pavement.
- E. Joint Fillers: Extend joint fillers full-width and depth of joint, and not less than 1/2-inch or more than 1-inch below finished surface where joint sealer is indicated. Furnish joint fillers in 1-piece lengths for full width being placed, wherever possible. Where more than 1 length is required, lace or clip joint filler sections together.
- F. Joint Sealants: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- 3.3 CONCRETE FINISHING
- A. After striking off and consolidating concrete, smooth surface by screeding and floating. Adjust floating to compact surface and produce uniform texture. After floating, test surface for trueness with 10'-0" straightedge. Distribute concrete as required to remove surface irregularities, and refloat repaired areas to provide continuous smooth finish.
  - B. Work edges of sidewalks, gutters, back top edge of curb, and formed joints with edging tool, rounding edge to 1/2-inch radius. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surface. After completion of floating and trowelling, when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, complete surface finishing, as follows:
    1. Curbs, gutters, and sidewalks: Broom finish by drawing fine-hair broom across surface perpendicular to flow of traffic. Repeat operation as necessary to produce fine line texture.
  - C. Do not remove forms for 24 hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point up minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects as directed Owner.
- 3.4 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect and cure finished concrete paving using with curing compound or with acceptable moist-curing methods in accordance with "water-curing" section of ACI 308. Cure for a period not less than 7 days.
  - B. Use solvent based curing compound when compound is applied below 40 F.
- 3.5 BACKFILL
- A. After concrete has set sufficiently, spaces on either side of concrete curb, combination concrete curb and gutter, or concrete sidewalk shall be refilled to required elevation with suitable material compacted in accordance with Section 312000.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Sweep concrete pavement and wash free of stains, discolorations, dirt, and other foreign material just prior to final inspection.
  - B. Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of work. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials.
- 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Field quality control tests specified herein will be conducted by the Construction Testing Laboratory at the Contractor's expense in accordance with Section 014000. The Contractor shall perform additional testing as considered necessary by the Contractor for assurance of quality control. Retesting required as a result of failed initial tests shall be at the Contractor's expense.
  - B. Field testing, frequency, and methods may vary as determined by and between the Owner and the Testing Laboratory.
  - C. Review the Contractor's proposed materials and mix design for conformance with specifications.
  - D. Perform sampling testing and evaluation in accordance with ASTM C94 and as follows.
  - E. Strength Tests:
    - 1. Secure composite samples in accordance with ASTM C172. Sample at regularly spaced intervals from middle portion of the batch. Sampling time shall not exceed 15 minutes.
    - 2. Mold and cure specimens in accordance with ASTM C31.
      - a. A minimum of four concrete test cylinders shall be taken for every 50 cubic yards or less of concrete placed each day.
      - b. Owner's Construction Manager may choose to waive testing requirements on concrete placements less than 9 cubic yards.
    - 3. Test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C39.
  - F. Slump Test: Conduct slump test for each cylinder set taken in accordance with ASTM C143.
  - G. Air Content: Conduct air content test for each cylinder set for concrete exposed to freeze-thaw in accordance with ASTM C231, ASTM C173, or ASTM C138.
    - 1. Perform air content test for first and second truck for each class of concrete placed each day. If either test fails, perform air test on every truck until two consecutive air tests comply with the requirements of the project specifications.

**END OF SECTION**

## **SECTION 321713 - PARKING BUMPERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Precast concrete parking bumpers and anchorage.
- 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ASTM A 615/A 615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2007.
  - B. ASTM C 33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2007.
  - C. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2007.
  - D. ASTM C 260 - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete; 2006.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS
  - A. Parking Bumpers: Precast concrete, conforming to the following:
    - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Portland Type I - Normal; white color.
    - 2. Concrete Materials: ASTM C 33 aggregate, water, and sand.
    - 3. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed steel bars; unfinished finish, strength and size commensurate with precast unit design.
    - 4. Air Entrainment Admixture: ASTM C 260.
    - 5. Concrete Mix: Minimum 5000 psi, 28 day strength, air entrained to 5 to 7 percent.
    - 6. Use rigid molds, constructed to maintain precast units uniform in shape, size and finish. Maintain consistent quality during manufacture.
    - 7. Embed reinforcing steel, and drill or sleeve for two dowels.
    - 8. Cure units to develop concrete quality, and to minimize appearance blemishes such as non-uniformity, staining, or surface cracking.
    - 9. Minor patching in plant is acceptable, providing appearance of units is not impaired.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
  - A. Install units without damage to shape or finish. Replace or repair damaged units.
  - B. Install units in alignment with adjacent work.
  - C. A. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

**END OF SECTION**

## **SECTION 321723 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Painting and marking of pavements, curbs, guard posts, and light pole bases.
- 1.2 REFERENCES
  - A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
  - B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation (AASHTO)
    - 1. AASHTO M248 - Ready-Mixed White and Yellow Traffic Paints
  - C. ASTM International (ASTM)
    - 1. ASTM D4414 - Standard Practice for Measurement of Wet Film Thickness by Notched Gauges.
  - D. Federal Specifications (FS)
    - 1. FS A-A-2886 - Paint, Traffic, Solvent Based (supersedes FS TT-P-85 and FS TT-P-115, Type I)
    - 2. FS TT-P-1952 - Paint, Traffic And Airfield Marking, Waterborne
- 1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS
  - A. Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities. Utilize flagmen, barricades, warning signs, and warning lights as required.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Use trained and experienced personnel in applying the products and operating the equipment required for properly performed work.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS
  - A. Paint shall be waterborne or solvent borne, colors as shown or specified herein. Pavement marking paints shall comply with applicable state and local laws enacted to ensure compliance with Federal Clean Air Standards. Paint materials shall conform to the restrictions of the local Air Pollution Control District.
  - B. Waterborne Paint: Paints shall conform to FS TT-P-1952.
  - C. Solvent Borne Paint: Paint shall conform to FS A-A-2886 or AASHTO M248. Paint shall be non-bleeding, quick-drying, and alkyd petroleum base paint suitable for traffic-bearing surface and be mixed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application for colors White, Yellow, Blue, and Red.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
  - A. Examine the work area and correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
  - A. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
  - B. Where existing pavement markings are indicated on Construction Drawings to be removed or would interfere with adhesion of new paint, a motorized abrasive device shall be used to remove the markings. Equipment employed shall not damage existing paving or create surfaces hazardous to vehicle or pedestrian traffic. Within public rights-of-way, appropriate governing authority shall approve method of marking removal.
  - C. New pavement surfaces shall be allowed to cure for not less than 30 days before application of marking materials.

### 3.3 CLEANING EXISTING PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. In general, markings shall not be placed over existing pavement marking patterns. Existing pavement markings, which are in good condition but interfere or conflict with the newly applied marking patterns, shall be removed. Deteriorated or obscured markings that are not misleading or confusing or do not interfere with the adhesion of the new marking material do not require removal. Whenever grinding, scraping, sandblasting or other operations are performed, the work shall be conducted in such a manner that the finished pavement surface is not damaged or left in a pattern that is misleading or confusing. When these operations are completed the pavement surface shall be blown off with compressed air to remove residue and debris resulting from the cleaning work.

### 3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Apply two coats of paint at manufacturer's recommended rate, without addition of thinner, with maximum of 100 square feet per gallon or as required to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils and dry film thickness of 7 ½ mils per coat. Paint shall be applied for a total dry film thickness of 15 mils. Apply with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. At sidewalk curbs and crosswalks, use straightedge to ensure uniform, clean, and straight stripe.
  - 1. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.
- B. Install pavement markings according to manufacturer's recommended procedures for the specified material.
- C. Following items shall be painted with colors noted below:
  - 1. Pedestrian Crosswalks: White
  - 2. Exterior Sidewalk Curbs, Light Pole Bases, and Guard posts: Yellow
  - 3. Fire Lanes: Red or per local code
  - 4. Lane Striping where separating traffic moving in opposite directions: Yellow
  - 5. Lane Striping where separating traffic moving in the same direction: White
  - 6. ADA Symbols: Blue or per local code
  - 7. ADA parking space markings as shown on the drawings.
  - 8. Parking Stall Striping: White, unless otherwise noted on Construction Drawings

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Responsibilities: Unless otherwise specified, the quality control tests and inspections specified below will be conducted by the Construction Testing Laboratory (CTL) at the Contractor's expense in accordance with Section 014000. The Contractor shall perform additional testing or inspection as considered necessary by the Contractor for assurance of quality control. Field testing, frequency, and methods may vary as determined by and between the Owner and CTL.
- B. Inspection: After the paint has thoroughly dried, visually inspect the entire application and touch up as required to provide clean, straight lines and surfaces throughout.
- C. Testing: Testing of wet film thickness shall be performed a minimum of two times on each parking row (including striped islands) and pedestrian cross walks, and a minimum of one test on each lane/alignment striping. At least one test shall be performed after refilling paint striping machine, changing operators of striping machine, and changing paint types, brands, etc. This shall be performed in addition to the testing stated above. These tests shall be performed on each coat applied. Testing shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D4414.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Waste materials shall be removed at the end of each workday. Upon completion of the work, all containers and debris shall be removed from the site. Paint spots upon adjacent surfaces shall be carefully removed by approved procedures that will not damage the surfaces and the entire job left clean and acceptable.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 329300 - PLANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Preparation of subsoil.
  - B. Topsoil bedding.
  - C. New trees, plants, and ground cover.
  - D. Mulch and Fertilizer.
  - E. Maintenance.
  - F. Tree Pruning.
- 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. ANSI/ANLA Z60.1 - American Standard for Nursery Stock; 2004.
  - B. ANSI A300 Part 1 - American National Standard for Tree Care Operations -- Tree, Shrub and Other Woody Plant Maintenance -- Standard Practices; 2001.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
  - A. Weeds: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.
  - B. Weeds: Any plant life not specified or scheduled.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
  - A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
  - B. Maintenance Data: Include cutting and trimming method; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer.
  - C. Submit list of plant life sources.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Nursery Qualifications: Company specializing in growing and cultivating the plants with three years documented experience.
  - B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing and planting the plants with 5 years experience.
- 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Comply with regulatory agencies for fertilizer and herbicide composition.
  - B. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of plants, fertilizer and herbicide mixture.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.
  - B. Protect and maintain plant life until planted.
  - C. Deliver plant life materials immediately prior to placement. Keep plants moist.
- 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS
  - A. Do not install plant life when ambient temperatures may drop below 35 degrees F or rise above 90 degrees F.
  - B. Do not install plant life when wind velocity exceeds 30 mph.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
  - A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
  - B. Warranty: Include coverage for one continuous growing season; replace dead or unhealthy plants.
  - C. Replacements: Plants of same size and species as specified, planted in the next growing season, with a new warranty commencing on date of replacement.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 TREES, PLANTS, AND GROUND COVER
  - A. Trees: Species and size identifiable in plant schedule on landscape drawing, grown in climatic conditions similar to those in locality of the Work.
- 2.2 SOIL MATERIALS
  - A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; minimum pH value of 5.4 and maximum 7.0.
- 2.3 MULCH MATERIALS
  - A. Mulching Material: Cypress species wood shavings, free of growth or germination inhibiting ingredients.
- 2.4 ACCESSORIES
  - A. Wrapping Materials: Burlap.
  - B. Stakes: Softwood lumber, pointed end.
  - C. Cable, Wire, Eye Bolts and Turnbuckles: Non-corrosive, of sufficient strength to withstand wind pressure and resulting movement of plant life.
  - D. Plant Protectors: Rubber sleeves over cable to protect plant stems, trunks, and branches.
  - E. Tree Protectors: Metal with galvanized rings.
- 2.5 TOP SOIL MIX
  - A. A uniform mixture of 1 part peat and 3 parts topsoil by volume.
- 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. Provide analysis of topsoil; comply with requirements of Section 014000.
  - B. Provide testing of imported topsoil.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify that prepared subsoil and planters are ready to receive work.
  - B. Saturate soil with water to test drainage.
- 3.2 PREPARATION OF SUBSOIL
  - A. Prepare subsoil to eliminate uneven areas. Maintain profiles and contours. Make changes in grade gradual. Blend slopes into level areas.
  - B. Remove foreign materials, weeds and undesirable plants and their roots. Remove contaminated subsoil.
  - C. Scarify subsoil to a depth of 3 inches where plants are to be placed. Repeat cultivation in areas where equipment, used for hauling and spreading topsoil, has compacted subsoil.
  - D. Dig pits and beds 6 inches larger than plant root system.
- 3.3 PLACING TOPSOIL
  - A. Spread topsoil to a minimum depth of 4 inches over area to be planted. Rake smooth.
  - B. Place topsoil during dry weather and on dry unfrozen subgrade.
  - C. Remove vegetable matter and foreign non-organic material from topsoil while spreading.
  - D. Grade topsoil to eliminate rough, low or soft areas, and to ensure positive drainage.
  - E. Install topsoil into pits and beds intended for plant root balls, to a minimum thickness of 6 inches.
- 3.4 FERTILIZING
  - A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - B. Apply after initial raking of topsoil.
  - C. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
  - D. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.
- 3.5 PLANTING
  - A. Place plants for best appearance.
  - B. Set plants vertical.
  - C. Remove non-biodegradable root containers.

- D. Set plants in pits or beds, partly filled with prepared plant mix, at a minimum depth of 6 inches under each plant. Remove burlap, ropes, and wires, from the root ball.
  - E. Place bare root plant materials so roots lie in a natural position. Backfill soil mixture in 6 inch layers. Maintain plant life in vertical position.
  - F. Saturate soil with water when the pit or bed is half full of topsoil and again when full.
- 3.6 PLANT SUPPORT
- A. Brace plants vertically with plant protector wrapped guy wires and stakes to the following:
    1. Tree Caliper: 1 inch; Tree Support Method: 1 stake with one tie
    2. Tree Caliper: 1 to 2 inches; Tree Support Method: 2 stakes with two ties
    3. Tree Caliper: 2 to 4 inches; Tree Support Method: 3 guy wires with eye bolts and turn buckles
    4. Tree Caliper: Over 4 inches; Tree Support Method: 4 guy wires with eye bolts and turn buckles
- 3.7 TREE PRUNING
- A. Perform pruning of trees as recommended in ANSI A300.
  - B. Prune newly planted trees as required to remove dead, broken, and split branches.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 014000.
  - B. Plants will be rejected if a ball of earth surrounding roots has been disturbed or damaged prior to or during planting.
- 3.9 MAINTENANCE
- A. Provide maintenance at no extra cost to Owner; Owner will pay for water.
  - B. Maintain plant life immediately after placement and until plants are well established and exhibit a vigorous growing condition. Continue maintenance until termination of warranty period.
  - C. Irrigate sufficiently to saturate root system and prevent soil from drying out.
  - D. Remove dead or broken branches and treat pruned areas or other wounds.
  - E. Neatly trim plants where necessary.
  - F. Immediately remove clippings after trimming.
  - G. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - H. Control insect damage and disease. Apply pesticides in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
  - I. Remedy damage from use of herbicides and pesticides.
  - J. Replace mulch when deteriorated.
  - K. Maintain wrappings, guys, turnbuckles, and stakes. Adjust turnbuckles to keep guy wires tight. Repair or replace accessories when required.
- 3.10 SCHEDULE - PLANT LIST
- A. Refer to landscape drawing: L1.1

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 330513 - MANHOLES AND STRUCTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Monolithic concrete, modular precast concrete, masonry, and precast polyethylene manhole assemblies.
- 1.2 Related Sections
- A. Section 312000 - Earth Moving: Excavation, backfill, and compaction.
  - B. Section 333100 - Sanitary Utility Sewerage Piping
  - C. Section 334100 - Storm Utility Drainage Piping
- 1.3 REFERENCES
- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
  - B. ASTM International (ASTM)
    - 1. ASTM A48 - Gray Iron Castings.
    - 2. ASTM C55 - Concrete Building Brick.
    - 3. ASTM C478 - Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections.
    - 4. ASTM C923 - Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures and Pipes.
    - 5. ASTM D1248 - Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials.
    - 6. ASTM D2412 - Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-Plate Loading.
  - C. International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council (IMIAC)
    - 1. Recommended Practices and Guide Specification for Cold Weather Masonry Construction.
  - D. State Department of Transportation (DOT), Construction and Material Specifications.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANHOLES
- A. Cast-In-Place Concrete: Nonreinforced cast in place concrete barrel.
    - 1. Concrete: 3500 psi concrete conforming to Section 03300.
    - 2. Forms: Steel sheet accurately shaped and fabricated of sufficient strength to form dense watertight walls to true dimensions.
  - B. Precast Concrete: Reinforced precast concrete barrel.
    - 1. Manhole sections conforming to ASTM C478 with gaskets in accordance with ASTM C923.
    - 2. Construct manholes of precast concrete sections as required by Construction Drawings to size, shape, and depth indicated.
  - C. Concrete Brick: ASTM C55, Grade N Type I-moisture controlled, normal weight, of same grade, type and weight as block units, nominal modular size of 3 5/8-inches x 7 5/8-inches x 2 1/4-inches.
  - D. Precast Polyethylene:
    - 1. Manufacturer: Advanced Drainage Systems (ADS) or approved equal.
    - 2. Precast polyethylene in accordance with ASTM D1248. Nominal cylinder internal diameter shall be 48-inches and shall be designed to accept concrete filled polyethylene manhole lids and standard cast iron frames with lid or grate.
    - 3. Manholes shall have compressive strength that meets ASTM D2412 standards.
  - E. Mortar and Grout: Mortar for finishing and sealing shall be Class "C". Honeycombing less than 2-inches deep shall be repaired using Class "D" mortar.
  - F. Brick Transition Reinforcement: Formed steel 8-gauge wire with galvanized finish.
  - G. Configuration:
    - 1. Barrel Construction: Concentric with eccentric cone top section.
    - 2. Shape: Cylindrical.
    - 3. Clear Inside Dimensions: 48-inches diameter minimum or as indicated on Construction Drawings.
    - 4. Design Depth: As indicated on Construction Drawings.
    - 5. Clear Lid Opening: 22-inches minimum.
    - 6. Pipe Entry: Provide openings as indicated on Construction Drawings.
    - 7. Main and Lateral Pipes: Neatly cut off main and lateral pipes flush with inside of manhole or inlet where they enter structure walls. Point up irregularities and rough edges with nonshrinking grout.
  - H. Inverts: Shape inverts for smooth flow across structure floor as indicated on Construction Drawings. Use concrete and mortar to obtain proper grade and contour. Finish surface with fine textured wood float.

## 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Lid and Frame:
  - 1. Manufacturer: Neenah Foundry Company, East Jordan Iron Works, or approved equal.
  - 2. ASTM A48, Class 30B heavy duty cast iron construction, machined flat bearing surface.
  - 3. Removable lid, closed or open as indicated on Construction Drawings, sealing gasket.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify items specified by other Sections are properly sized and located.
- B. Verify that built-in items are in proper location and ready for roughing into work.
- C. Verify that the excavation for manholes is correct.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate placement of inlet and outlet pipe or duct sleeves as indicated on Construction Drawings.

### 3.3 PRECAST MANHOLE CONSTRUCTION

- A. Place base pad to proper elevation and location and trowel top surface level for placement of manhole barrel.
- B. Place manhole barrel plumb and level to correct elevations and anchor to base pad.
  - 1. After completion of slab foundation, lower first joint of manhole barrel into position, grooved end first, and set level and plumb on concrete base. Align and adjust to proper grade prior to placing and forming invert. Pour invert immediately after setting of first section of manhole barrel.
  - 2. Prior to setting subsequent manhole barrel sections, apply primer to tongue and groove ends and allow to set in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Place "Ram-nek", or equivalent, plastic rope on tongue end. Lower next section into position, and remove excess material from interior of structure. Add additional material on exterior of joint, if necessary, for completely watertight joint.
- C. Set cover frames and lids level without tipping, to correct elevations. Utilize pre-cast rings or brick and mortar to achieve final rim elevation. Maximum limit, 4 courses.

### 3.4 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLE CONSTRUCTION

- A. Cast-in-place concrete shall conform to the applicable requirements of concrete in Division 3. Utilize steel forms.
- B. Place base pad to proper elevation and location and pour monolithically with invert. Base shall support pipe to first joint.
- C. Deposit concrete in evenly distributed layers of about 18 inches, with each layer vibrated to bond to preceding layer.
- D. Place gasket between all joints and paint exterior of manhole within 5' of the joint with mastic waterproofing.
- E. Place precast concrete cone.
- F. Set section cover frames and lids level without tipping, to correct elevations. Utilize pre-cast rings or brick and mortar to achieve final rim elevation. Maximum limit, 4 courses.

### 3.5 MASONRY MANHOLE CONSTRUCTION

- A. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- B. Lay masonry units in running bond. Course 3 brick units and 3 mortar joints to equal 8 inches.
- C. Form flush mortar joints
- D. Lay masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- E. Install joint reinforcement 16 inches on center
- F. Place joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above base pad and below lid frame opening
- G. As work progresses, build in fabricated metal items
- H. Cut and fit masonry for pipes as specified herein
- I. Set cover frames and covers level to correct elevations without tipping.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 331116 - SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Site water piping and fittings including domestic potable waterline and fire protection system supply waterline, valves, and fire hydrants.
- 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS
- A. Section 312000 - Earth Moving: Trenching, backfill, and compaction for utilities.
- 1.3 REFERENCES
- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
1. ASME B 16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings.
- C. ASTM International (ASTM)
1. ASTM B88 - Seamless Copper Water Tube.
2. ASTM D1784 - Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.
3. ASTM D2241 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR-Series).
4. ASTM D2564 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Solvent Cement.
5. ASTM D2672 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Integrally Molded Bell Ends For Solvent - Cemented Pipe Joints.
6. ASTM D3139 - Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.
7. ASTM F477 - Elastomeric Gaskets And Lubricant.
8. ASTM F656 - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Cement Primer.
- D. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
1. AWWA C104 - Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water.
2. AWWA C105 - Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile Iron Piping for Water and other Liquids.
3. AWWA C116 - Protective Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coatings for the Interior and Exterior Surfaces of Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings for Watersupply Service.
4. AWWA C151 - Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water or Other Liquids.
5. AWWA C153 - Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings for Water Service.
6. AWWA C504 - Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves.
7. AWWA C509 - Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service.
8. AWWA C550 - Protective Interior Coatings for Valves And Hydrants.
9. AWWA C600 - Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Appurtenances.
10. AWWA C605 - Installation of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fittings for Water.
11. AWWA C651 - Disinfecting Water Mains.
12. AWWA C900 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 Inches Through 12 Inches, for Water Distribution.
- E. National Fire Protection Associations (NFPA)
1. NFPA 24 - Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Products, where marked for compliance with code or test standards, shall also mark specific standard as required in the Contract Documents.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with utility company or municipality requirements.
- C. Valves: Mark manufacturer's name and pressure rating on valve body.
- D. Perform disinfection of potable lines in accordance with AWWA C651.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Furnish 1 copy of results of meter test and hydrostatic pressure test to Owner, Owner's Civil Engineering Consultant (CEC), and utility company upon completion of water distribution backfilling operations.
- B. Project Record Documents:
1. Disinfection report: Record the following:
- a. Type and form of disinfectant used.
- b. Date and time disinfectant injection start and time of completion.
- c. Test locations.

- d. Initial and 24 hour disinfectant residuals (quantity in treated water) in ppm for each outlet tested.
- e. Date and time of flushing start and completion.
- f. Disinfectant residual after flushing in ppm for each outlet tested.
- 2. Bacteriological report: Record the following:
  - a. Date issued, project name, testing laboratory name, address, and telephone number.
  - b. Time and date of water sample collection.
  - c. Name of person collecting samples.
  - d. Test locations.
  - e. Initial and 24 hour disinfectant residuals in ppm for each outlet tested.
  - f. Coliform bacteria test results for each outlet tested.
  - g. Certification that water conforms, or fails to conform, to bacterial standards.
  - h. Bacteriologist's signature and authority.
- 3. Accurately record actual locations of piping mains, valves, connections, and top of pipe elevations.
- 4. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions and location of uncharted utilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE

- A. Pipe sizes less than 3-inches that are installed below grade and outside building shall comply with one or combination of following:
  - 1. Seamless Copper Tubing: Type "K" soft copper, ASTM B88.
    - a. Fittings: Wrought copper (95-5 Tin Antimony solder joint), ASME B 16.22.
  - 2. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Water Pipe: Pipe, ASTM D 2241, with SDR 21 rating, continually marked with manufacturer's name, pipe size, cell classification, SDR rating, and ASTM D1784 material classification.
    - a. Pipe joints: Integrally molded bell ends, ASTM D2672.
    - b. Cement primer: ASTM F656.
    - c. Solvent cement: ASTM D2564.
- B. Pipe sizes 4 to 16 inches that are installed below grade and outside building shall comply with one or combination of following:
  - 1. Ductile Iron Water Pipe: AWWA C151, Pressure class 350 Pressure Class 250.
    - a. Fittings: Either mechanical joint or push-on joint, AWWA C153, and shall be coated with a 6-8 mil nominal thickness fusion bonded epoxy conforming to the requirements of AWWA C550 and C116, or cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104.
    - b. Elastomeric gaskets and lubricant: ASTM F477.
  - 2. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Water Pipe: Pipe, AWWA C900, rated DR 18 (Class 150), continually marked as required.
    - a. Elastomeric gaskets and lubricant: ASTM F477 for smaller pipes.
    - b. Pipe joints: Integrally molded bell ends, ASTM D3139.

### 2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate Valves, 2-Inches and Larger:
  - 1. Manufacturer and Model: Mueller Resilient Wedge Gate Valves or approved equal.
  - 2. AWWA C509, iron body, non-rising stem with square nut, single wedge, resilient seat, flanged or mechanical joint ends, control rod, post indicator where indicated on Construction Drawings, extension box and valve key.
- B. Ball Valves, 2-Inches and Smaller:
  - 1. Manufacturer and Model: Mueller Oriseal or approved equal.
  - 2. Brass body, teflon coated brass ball, rubber seats and stem seals, Tee stem pre-drilled for control rod, AWWA compression inlet end, compression outlet with electrical ground connector, with control rod, extension box and valve key.
- C. Butterfly Valves, From 2-Inch to 24-Inch: AWWA C504, Iron body, bronze disc, resilient replaceable seat, water or lug ends, infinite position lever handle.
- D. Check Valves, Post Indicator Valves, And Backflow Preventors:
  - 1. Refer to Section 210000 - Fire Suppression in Architectural/Building Specifications.

### 2.3 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Fire Hydrants: Type as required by utility company/Local Fire Department and as shown on Construction Drawings.
- B. Hydrant Extensions: Fabricate in multiples of 6-inches with rod and coupling to increase barrel length.

- C. Hose and Steamer Connections: Match sizes with utility company, with two hose nozzles, one pumper nozzle.
- D. Finish: Apply primer and 2 coats of enamel or special coating to color as required by utility company.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thrust Blocking: Place 2500 psi concrete to provide sufficient bearing area to transmit unbalanced thrust from bends, tees, caps, or plugs to undisturbed soil without loading undisturbed soil in excess of 2,500 pounds per square foot when water main pressure is 100 psi.

1. Minimum Thrust Blocking Bearing Areas:

<u>Pipe Diameter</u>	<u>Tees (s.f.)</u>	<u>90 Degree Bend (s.f.)</u>	<u>45 Degree Bend (s.f.)</u>	<u>22 1/2 Degree Bend (s.f.)</u>	<u>11 1/4 Degree Bend (s.f.)</u>	<u>5 5/8 Degree Bend (s.f.)</u>	<u>Cap / Plug (s.f.)</u>
3"	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5
4"	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	2.0
6"	1.0	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	3.0
8"	2.5	3.5	1.8	1.0	1.0	1.0	4.0
10"	4.0	5.5	2.8	1.5	1.0	1.0	6.0
12"	6.0	8.0	4.0	2.0	1.5	1.0	8.5
14"	8.0	11.0	5.5	3.0	2.0	1.5	12.0
16"	10.0	14.2	7.0	4.0	3.0	2.5	15.0
18"	21.0	21.0	12.0	6.0	4.0	3.5	24.0

- B. Locked mechanical joint fittings shall be installed where vertical changes in direction are required and, if approved by Owner and governing authority, can be installed in lieu of above thrust blocking requirements.
- C. Polyethylene Encasement: Single layer of two ply cross-laminated high density polyethylene encasement per AWWA C105, Section 4.1.2, Type III, Class C (Black), Grade 33, tensile strength 5,000 psi minimum, elongation 100 percent, thickness nominal 0.004 inch (4 mil).
- D. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor, (#12 Copper) brightly colored plastic covering imprinted with  $\infty$ Water Service  $\square$  in large letters.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that building service connection and municipal utility water main size, location, and depth are as indicated on Construction Drawings.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly.
- C. Prepare pipe for connections to equipment with flanges or unions.
- D. Protect benchmarks, property corners, and other survey monuments from damage or displacement. If marker needs to be removed it shall be referenced by licensed land surveyor and replaced, as necessary, by same.

3.3 TRENCHING AND BEDDING

- A. Excavate pipe trench and place bedding material in accordance with Section 312000.

3.4 INSTALLATION - PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Maintain separation of water main from sanitary and storm sewer piping in accordance with state or local codes.
- B. Install ductile iron pipe and fittings in accordance with AWWA C600.
- C. Install PVC pipe and fittings in accordance with AWWA C605.
- D. Ductile iron pipe and fittings shall be installed with polyethylene encasement around the pipe for the entire length of the project except where water main is within steel casing or is concrete encased. Install polyethylene encasement in accordance with AWWA C105, Method A.
- E. Install pipe to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints or as specified by pipe manufacturer.
- F. Install access fittings in accordance with local codes to permit disinfection of water system performed under this Section.

- G. Connections with Existing Pipelines: Where connections are made between new work and existing piping, make connection using suitable fittings for conditions encountered. Make each connection with existing pipe at time and under conditions with least interference with operation of existing pipeline and in compliance with local utility company.
  - H. Form and place concrete for thrust blocks or other specified methods of retainage at each change of direction or end of pipe main.
  - I. Place pipe to depth in accordance with Section 312000.
  - J. Backfill trench in accordance with Section 312000.
  - K. Install trace wire continuous over top of non-metal pipe. Bury a minimum of 6 inches below finish grade, and above pipeline.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION - VALVES AND HYDRANTS
- A. Install gate valves as indicated on Construction Drawings. Support valve on concrete pads with valve stem vertical and plumb. Install valve boxes in manner that will not transmit loads, stress, or shock to valve body. Center valve box over operating nut of valve vertical and plumb. Securely fit valve box together leaving cover flush with finished surface.
  - B. Install fire hydrant assemblies as indicated on Construction Drawings in vertical and plumb position with steamer/pumper nozzle pointed perpendicular to traffic where hydrant is adjacent to street, roadway, or parking lot drive or toward protected building unless otherwise directed by local authorities. Support hydrant assembly on concrete pad and firmly brace on side opposite inlet pipe against undisturbed soil and concrete blocking. Place minimum of 6-cubic feet of crushed stone or gravel around hydrant base and barrel after thrust blocking has cured at least 24 hours. Maintain vertical position of hydrant backfilling and compacting.
- 3.6 DISINFECTION OF DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEM
- A. Disinfect distribution system with chlorine before acceptance for domestic operation. Chlorine dosage shall be not less than 50 parts per million. Flush lines before introduction of chlorinating materials and after contact period of not less than 24 hours. Flush with clean water after contact period until residual chlorine content is not greater than 1.0 part per million. Flush water discharged from water supply lines or hydrants shall not be allowed to discharge directly onto exposed soil or turf which could result in erosion of soil. If potential for erosion exists at discharge point, measures shall be taken to prevent erosion. Open and close valves in lines being disinfected several times during contact period. After disinfection, take water sample and bacteriological test in accordance with AWWA C651. Do not place distribution system in service until approval is obtained from local governing authorities.
  - B. Contractor shall provide a means of neutralizing the super-chlorinated water before releasing into the environment. This may be accomplished by either a method of dechlorination, direct release into a detention area approved by Owner, or any method acceptable to federal, state, and local codes. Direct release to open ground shall not be allowed, unless contained within an on site detention facility with 6" permanent storage. In this case, the Contractor shall time the release to assure that no rainstorms are imminent. The intent of this condition is to allow the majority of the chlorine to evaporate into the atmosphere before a rainstorm has the opportunity to wash the residual downstream. Contractor shall not release super-chlorinated water directly into the sanitary sewer system, private or public, nor any storm drain system not directly discharging into the detention facility.
- 3.7 SERVICE CONNECTIONS
- A. Provide water service connection in compliance with utility company requirements including reduced pressure backflow preventor (if required) and water meter with by-pass valves and sand strainer.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Test water distribution system pipe installed below grade and outside building in accordance with the following procedures:
    1. Perform testing of pipe materials, joints, and other materials incorporated into construction of water mains and force mains to determine leakage and water tightness. Test pressure pipeline in accordance with Section 4 of AWWA C600 and NFPA 24. In the event state or local code requires more stringent test, more stringent test shall take precedence.
    2. Pressure Test: After pipe has been laid, subject newly laid pipe or valved section to hydrostatic pressure of at least 1.5 times working pressure at point of testing and not less than 1.25 times working pressure at highest point along test section.

3. Leakage Test: Conduct leakage test concurrently with pressure test. Leakage is defined as quantity of water that must be supplied into newly laid pipeline or valved section thereof to maintain pressure within 5 psi of specified test pressure after air in pipeline has been expelled and pipeline has been filled with water. Leakage shall not be measured by drop in pressure in test section over period of time.
  - a. Leakage test for ductile iron pipe shall not be greater than that determined by the following formula:
    - 1)  $L = [SDP^{(1/2)}] / 133,200$ 
      - a) Where:
        - 2) L = allowable leakage, (gallons per hour)
        - 3) S = length of pipe tested, (feet)
        - 4) D = nominal diameter of pipe, (inches)
        - 5) P = average test pressure during test, (psig)
    - b. Leakage test for PVC pipe shall be in accordance with AWWA Standard C605.
  4. Visible Leakage: Repair visible leaks regardless of amount of leakage measured.
  5. Acceptance of Installation: If test of pipe laid in place discloses leakage greater than that specified, Contractor shall, at his own expense, locate leak and make repairs as necessary until leakage is within specified allowance. Supply water for testing at no expense to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 333100 - SANITARY UTILITY SEWERAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Sanitary sewer drainage piping, fittings, accessories, cleanouts, and bedding.
  - B. Connection of site sanitary sewer system to municipal sanitary sewer systems.
- 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS
- A. Section 312000 - Earth Moving: Trenching, backfill, and compaction for utilities.
  - B. Section 330513 - Manholes and Structures
  - C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete
- 1.3 REFERENCES
- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.
  - B. ASTM International (ASTM)
    1. ASTM A74 - Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
    2. ASTM A746 - Ductile Iron Gravity Sewer Pipe
    3. ASTM C425 - Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings
    4. ASTM C564 - Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
    5. ASTM C700 - Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated
    6. ASTM D2241 - Poly (vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
    7. ASTM D2657 - Heat-Joining Polyolefin pipe and Fittings
    8. ASTM D3034 - Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
    9. ASTM D3035 - Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
    10. ASTM D3139 - Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipe Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
    11. ASTM D3261 - Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings For Polyethylene Plastic Pipe And Tubing
    12. ASTM F477 - Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
    13. ASTM F1417 - Standard Test Method for Installation Acceptance of Plastic Gravity Sewer Lines Using Low-Pressure Air.
  - C. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
    1. AWWA C111 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings
    2. AWWA C600 - Ductile-Iron Water Mains And Their Appurtenances
    3. AWWA C900 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 In. Through 12 In, For Water Distribution
    4. AWWA C901 - Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe, Tubing And Fittings 1/2 Inch Through 3 Inches, For Water Distribution
    5. AWWA C906 - Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe And Fittings, 4 Inch Through 63 Inch, For Water Distribution
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Project Record Documents:
    1. Accurately record actual locations of pipe runs, connections, cleanouts, and invert elevations.
    2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions and location of uncharted utilities.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Coordinate work with termination of sanitary sewer connection outside building and connection to municipal sewer utility service.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SEWER PIPE, FITTINGS, AND JOINTS
- A. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC): ASTM D 3034, rated SDR 35 unless otherwise specified by the utility company. Pipe shall be continually marked with manufacturer's name, pipe size, cell classification, SDR rating, and ASTM D 3034 classification.
    1. Pipe joints: Integrally molded bell ends, ASTM D 3034, Table 2, with factory supplied elastomeric gaskets and lubricant.
  - B. Vitrified Clay Pipe (VCP): ASTM C700: Use only if required by local jurisdiction.
    1. Fittings: ASTM C700



2. Joints: ASTM C425
  3. Gaskets: ASTM C425. Gaskets shall be manufactured from high grade, properly vulcanized elastomeric compound consisting of either basic natural or synthetic rubber. Gasket manufacturing tolerances shall comply with Rubber Manufacturer's Association tolerances for gaskets.
  4. Lubricant: Suitable for lubricating joint components; no deteriorating effects on gasket or pipe material, will not support growth of fungi or bacteria, and shall be of type recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- C. Force Main:
1. High-Density Polyethylene Pipe (HDPE): AWWA C901 and C906, ASTM D3035, SDR 11 for 150 psi pressure rating.
    - a. Fittings: Molded, AWWA C901 or C906.
    - b. Joints: Butt fusion, ASTM D2657, flanged gasket joints at interface
  2. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC): For less than 4 inches in diameter, ASTM D2241 for push-on or solvent weld joints, and for pipe 4 inches in diameter and larger, AWWA C900, Class 150 with push-on joints.
    - a. Joints/Fittings: Push-on, ASTM D3139 with ASTM F477 gaskets.
    - b. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.
  3. Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP): ASTM A746, Class 50, inside nominal diameter as shown on the drawings, bell and spigot end.
    - a. Ductile Iron Pipe Joint Device: AWWA C111, rubber gasket joint devices.
- 2.2 PIPE ACCESSORIES
- A. Pipe Joints: Mechanical clamp ring type, stainless steel expanding and contracting sleeve, neoprene-ribbed gasket for positive seal.
  - B. Fittings: Same material as pipe molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in required tee, bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps, etc.
- 2.3 CLEANOUTS AND MANHOLES
- A. Manholes shall conform to Section 330513.
  - B. Lid and Frame: Provide in accordance with Section 330513. Provide traffic grade and rated covers and frames where cleanouts and manholes are within pavement, with the letters "SSCO" or "SANITARY SEWER" respectively cast into the cover.
  - C. Shaft Construction: Cast iron shaft of internal diameter as specified on Construction Drawings with 2500 psi concrete collar for cleanouts.
- 2.4 APPURTENANCES
- A. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor (#12 copper), brightly colored plastic covering, imprinted with "Sanitary Sewer Service" in large letters.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify that trench cut and excavation is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on Construction Drawings.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Hand trim excavations to required elevations. Correct over excavation with bedding material.
  - B. Remove large stones or other hard matter that could damage pipe or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
- 3.3 BEDDING
- A. Excavate trench and place bedding material in accordance with Section 02300.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION - PIPE
- A. Install type and class of pipe as shown on the drawings. Pipes shall be laid and maintained to the required line and grade with necessary fittings, bends, manhole risers, cleanouts and other appurtenances placed at the required locations. The pipe shall be installed with uniform bearing under the full length of the barrel of the pipe. The pipe shall be inspected for defects and cracks before being lowered into the trench. Defective, damaged or unsound pipe, or pipe that has had its grade disturbed after laying shall be taken up and replaced. Commence installation at lowest point with the bell end upgrade.
  - B. No pipe shall be laid in water or when trench conditions are unsuitable for work.

- C. Pipe connecting to manholes or other structures shall terminate flush inside of the structure wall.
- D. Joints for PVC and CISP shall be thoroughly lubricated with an approved lubricant before pipe sections are slipped together. Open ends shall be fully protected with a stopper to prevent earth or other material from entering the pipe during construction. Carefully free interior of the pipe from dirt, cement and other deleterious material as the work progresses.
- E. Maintain separation of potable water main from sewer piping at crossings a minimum of 10 feet horizontal and 18 inches vertical.
- F. Install HDPE piping and fittings to AWWA C901 and C906. Butt fusion welded per ASTM D3261.
- G. Route pipe in straight line parallel to roads, buildings and adjacent utilities and as shown on the drawings.
- H. Establish elevations of buried piping with sufficient cover as recommended by pipe manufacturer to ensure not less than 3 feet of cover, except as noted on drawings.
- I. Form and place concrete for thrust blocks at each elbow of pipe force main. See construction drawing for details of construction.
- J. Backfill trench in accordance with Section 312000.
- K. Install trace wire continuous over top of non-metal pipe. Bury 6 inches minimum below finish grade, above pipeline.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION - CLEANOUTS AND MANHOLES

- A. Form bottom of excavation clean and smooth to correct elevation.
- B. For cleanouts, form and place cast-in-place concrete base pad with provision for sanitary sewer pipe to be installed to proper elevations.
- C. For manholes, construct inverts according to the following guidelines:
  1. Invert channel shall be smooth and accurately shaped to a semicircular bottom to match with the inside of the adjacent sewer section.
  2. Invert channels and structure bottoms shall be shaped with mortar and lean concrete.
  3. Changes in size and grade of invert shall be made gradually and evenly.
  4. Changes in the direction of the sewer entering branch or branches shall have a true curve of as large a radius as the manhole will permit.
- D. For manholes, provide manhole rings, frame, and cover as shown on the construction drawings.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field quality control shall be conducted by the Contractor in accordance with Section 014000.
- B. Pipes and joints shall not be completely backfilled until after inspection, testing, and approval by the Owner and local jurisdiction.
- C. Prior to testing for leakage, the pipe trench shall be backfilled to at least the spring line of the pipe. If required to prevent pipe movement during testing, additional backfill shall be added leaving the pipe joints uncovered to permit inspection.
- D. Exfiltration Test
  1. Each section of sewer line between successive manholes shall be tested by closing the lower end of the sewer to be tested and the inlet sewer of the upper manhole, using stoppers.
  2. Fill the manhole and pipe with water to a point which produces a maximum of 3 feet of head above the invert of the sewer at the center of the upper manhole; or if groundwater is present, 3 feet of head above the average adjacent groundwater level.
  3. The allowable leakage shall be 200 gal/inch of pipe diameter/mile/day
- E. Infiltration Test
  1. If excessive ground water is encountered in the construction of a section of the sewer, the exfiltration test shall not be used.
  2. The upper and lower ends of the sewer to be tested shall be closed sufficiently to prevent the entrance of water.
  3. Pumping of ground water shall be discontinued for at least 3 days; then infiltration shall be tested.
  4. Infiltration into each section of sewer between adjoining manholes shall not exceed that allowed for the exfiltration test, except that head conditions shall be a maximum of 6 feet.
- F. The Exfiltration Test may be limited to the manholes only when the authority having jurisdiction does not require the test and the Owner's Construction Manager waives the test. The Infiltration Test will always be required when excessive ground water is encountered in addition to the air test.
- G. Air Test: Gravity systems shall be air tested between manholes at 3.5 psi for 5 minutes per ASTM F1417 for plastic pipes.
- H. Deflection Test:
  1. Deflection tests shall be conducted on all plastic pipe using a mandrel with a diameter equal to 95 percent of the inside diameter of the pipe. The test shall be performed without mechanical pulling devices.

2. Allowable Deflection: Maximum allowable pipe deflection shall not exceed 5 percent of nominal inside diameter.
  3. Mandrel: Mandrel, go/no-go, device shall be cylindrical in shape and constructed with either 9 or 16 evenly spaced arms or prongs. Mandrels with fewer arms will be rejected as not sufficiently accurate. Contact length of mandrel's arms shall equal or exceed nominal inside diameter of sewer to be inspected. Critical mandrel dimensions shall carry tolerance of 0.01-inch maximum. Contractor shall provide mandrel and necessary equipment for mandrel test.
  4. Procedure: Mandrel shall be hand-pulled through flexible pipe sewer lines no earlier than 30 days after trench has been completely backfilled. Sections of sewer not passing mandrel shall be uncovered and rebedded, rerounded, or replaced to satisfaction of Owner or governing agency. Repaired section shall be retested.
- I. Hydrostatic Test: Force main piping shall be hydrostatically tested at 150 psi in accordance with AWWA C 600.
  - J. Provide measuring devices, meters, water, materials, and labor for making the required tests.
  - K. Tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Owner's Construction Manager or his designee. Test data shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

**END OF SECTION**